Relion® 670 SERIES

Bay control REC670
Version 2.2 IEC
Application manual
Copyright

This document and parts thereof must not be reproduced or copied without written permission from ABB, and the contents thereof must not be imparted to a third party, nor used for any unauthorized purpose.

The software and hardware described in this document is furnished under a license and may be used or disclosed only in accordance with the terms of such license.

This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.openssl.org/) This product includes cryptographic software written/developed by: Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) and Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

 Trademarks

ABB and Relion are registered trademarks of the ABB Group. All other brand or product names mentioned in this document may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

 Warranty

Please inquire about the terms of warranty from your nearest ABB representative.
Disclaimer

The data, examples and diagrams in this manual are included solely for the concept or product description and are not to be deemed as a statement of guaranteed properties. All persons responsible for applying the equipment addressed in this manual must satisfy themselves that each intended application is suitable and acceptable, including that any applicable safety or other operational requirements are complied with. In particular, any risks in applications where a system failure and/or product failure would create a risk for harm to property or persons (including but not limited to personal injuries or death) shall be the sole responsibility of the person or entity applying the equipment, and those so responsible are hereby requested to ensure that all measures are taken to exclude or mitigate such risks.

This document has been carefully checked by ABB but deviations cannot be completely ruled out. In case any errors are detected, the reader is kindly requested to notify the manufacturer. Other than under explicit contractual commitments, in no event shall ABB be responsible or liable for any loss or damage resulting from the use of this manual or the application of the equipment.
Conformity

This product complies with the directive of the Council of the European Communities on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility (EMC Directive 2004/108/EC) and concerning electrical equipment for use within specified voltage limits (Low-voltage directive 2006/95/EC). This conformity is the result of tests conducted by ABB in accordance with the product standard EN 60255-26 for the EMC directive, and with the product standards EN 60255-1 and EN 60255-27 for the low voltage directive. The product is designed in accordance with the international standards of the IEC 60255 series.
# Table of contents

## Section 1  Introduction
- 1.1 This manual ................................................................. 19
- 1.2 Intended audience .......................................................... 19
- 1.3 Product documentation .................................................... 19
  - 1.3.1 Product documentation set ............................................. 19
  - 1.3.2 Document revision history ............................................. 20
  - 1.3.3 Related documents ..................................................... 21
- 1.4 Document symbols and conventions ................................. 21
  - 1.4.1 Symbols ................................................................. 21
  - 1.4.2 Document conventions ................................................ 22
- 1.5 IEC 61850 edition 1 / edition 2 mapping .............................. 23

## Section 2  Application
- 2.1 General IED application .................................................. 31
- 2.2 Main protection functions ................................................ 32
- 2.3 Back-up protection functions ............................................ 33
- 2.4 Control and monitoring functions ..................................... 35
- 2.5 Communication ............................................................ 45
- 2.6 Basic IED functions ......................................................... 48

## Section 3  Configuration
- 3.1 Description of configuration REC670 ............................... 51
  - 3.1.1 Introduction .............................................................. 51
    - 3.1.1.1 Description of configuration A30 .............................. 51
    - 3.1.1.2 Description of configuration B30 .............................. 52
    - 3.1.1.3 Description of configuration C30 .............................. 53
    - 3.1.1.4 Description of configuration D30 .............................. 55

## Section 4  Analog inputs
- 4.1 Introduction ................................................................. 57
- 4.2 Setting guidelines .......................................................... 57
  - 4.2.1 Setting of the phase reference channel ......................... 57
    - 4.2.1.1 Example ........................................................... 58
  - 4.2.2 Setting of current channels ........................................ 58
    - 4.2.2.1 Example 1 ......................................................... 58
    - 4.2.2.2 Example 2 ......................................................... 59
    - 4.2.2.3 Example 3 ......................................................... 60
    - 4.2.2.4 Examples on how to connect, configure and set CT inputs for most commonly used CT connections ................................................................. 64
  - 4.2.2.5 Example on how to connect a star connected three-phase CT set to the IED .......... 65
  - 4.2.2.6 Example how to connect delta connected three-phase CT set to the IED .......... 68
  - 4.2.2.7 Example how to connect single-phase CT to the IED .......... 70
Section 5  Local HMI .................................................................................................................. 83
  5.1 Display..................................................................................................................................... 84
  5.2 LEDs.......................................................................................................................................... 85
  5.3 Keypad....................................................................................................................................... 86
  5.4 Local HMI functionality.............................................................................................................. 88
    5.4.1 Protection and alarm indication............................................................................................. 88
    5.4.2 Parameter management ........................................................................................................ 89
    5.4.3 Front communication............................................................................................................. 89

Section 6  Wide area measurement system.................................................................................... 91
  6.1 C37.118 Phasor Measurement Data Streaming Protocol Configuration PMUCONF............. 91
    6.1.1 Identification......................................................................................................................... 91
    6.1.2 Application............................................................................................................................ 91
    6.1.3 Operation principle............................................................................................................... 91
      6.1.3.1 Short guidance for use of TCP....................................................................................... 92
      6.1.3.2 Short guidance for use of UDP..................................................................................... 93
    6.2 Protocol reporting via IEEE 1344 and C37.118 PMUREPORT............................................... 94
      6.2.1 Identification....................................................................................................................... 94
      6.2.2 Application.......................................................................................................................... 94
      6.2.3 Operation principle.............................................................................................................. 97
        6.2.3.1 Frequency reporting....................................................................................................... 98
        6.2.3.2 Reporting filters........................................................................................................... 99
        6.2.3.3 Scaling Factors for ANALOGREPORT channels...................................................... 100
        6.2.3.4 PMU Report Function Blocks Connection Rules in PCM600 Application
                  Configuration Tool (ACT)................................................................................................. 101
      6.2.4 Setting guidelines.............................................................................................................. 107

Section 7  Differential protection ................................................................................................... 111
  7.1 High impedance differential protection, single phase HZPDIF............................................... 111
    7.1.1 Identification....................................................................................................................... 111
    7.1.2 Application.......................................................................................................................... 111
      7.1.2.1 The basics of the high impedance principle................................................................. 113
    7.1.3 Connection examples for high impedance differential protection................................. 118
      7.1.3.1 Connections for three-phase high impedance differential protection.......................... 118
Section 8 Current protection

8.1 Instantaneous phase overcurrent protection PHPIOC
8.1.1 Identification
8.1.2 Application
8.1.3 Setting guidelines
8.1.3.1 Meshed network without parallel line
8.1.3.2 Meshed network with parallel line
8.1.3.2 Setting example

8.2 Directional phase overcurrent protection, four steps OC4PTOC
8.2.1 Identification
8.2.2 Application
8.2.3 Setting guidelines
8.2.3.1 Settings for each step
8.2.3.2 Setting example

8.3 Instantaneous residual overcurrent protection EFPIOC
8.3.1 Identification
8.3.2 Application
8.3.3 Setting guidelines

8.4 Directional residual overcurrent protection, four steps EF4PTOC
8.4.1 Identification
8.4.2 Application
8.4.3 Setting guidelines
8.4.3.1 Common settings for all steps
8.4.3.2 2nd harmonic restrain
8.4.3.3 Parallel transformer inrush current logic
8.4.3.4 Switch onto fault logic
8.4.3.5 Settings for each step (x = 1, 2, 3 and 4)
8.4.3.6 Line application example

8.5 Four step directional negative phase sequence overcurrent protection NS4PTOC
8.5.1 Identification
8.5.2 Application
8.5.3 Setting guidelines
8.5.3.1 Settings for each step
8.5.3.2 Common settings for all steps

8.6 Sensitive directional residual overcurrent and power protection SDEPSDE
8.6.1 Identification
8.6.2 Application
8.6.3 Setting guidelines

8.7 Thermal overload protection, one time constant, Celsius/Fahrenheit
LCPTTR/LFPTTR

Bay control REC670
Application manual

© Copyright 2017 ABB. All rights reserved
Table of contents

8.7.1 Identification .......................................................................................................................... 168
8.7.2 Application ............................................................................................................................ 168
8.7.3 Setting guideline .................................................................................................................... 169
8.8 Thermal overload protection, two time constants TRPTTR .................................................... 170
8.8.1 Identification ........................................................................................................................ 170
8.8.2 Application ........................................................................................................................... 170
8.8.3 Setting guideline ................................................................................................................... 171
8.8.3.1 Setting example ................................................................................................................. 173
8.9 Breaker failure protection CCRBRF ......................................................................................... 174
8.9.1 Identification ....................................................................................................................... 175
8.9.2 Application ............................................................................................................................ 175
8.9.3 Setting guidelines .................................................................................................................. 175
8.10 Stub protection STBPTOC ......................................................................................................... 183
8.10.1 Identification ....................................................................................................................... 183
8.10.2 Application ........................................................................................................................... 183
8.10.3 Setting guidelines ................................................................................................................ 184
8.11 Pole discordance protection CCPDSC ...................................................................................... 184
8.11.1 Identification ....................................................................................................................... 185
8.11.2 Application ............................................................................................................................ 185
8.11.3 Setting guidelines ................................................................................................................ 185
8.12 Directional underpower protection GUPPDUP ......................................................................... 186
8.12.1 Identification ....................................................................................................................... 186
8.12.2 Application ............................................................................................................................ 186
8.12.3 Setting guidelines ................................................................................................................ 188
8.13 Directional overpower protection GOPPDOP ........................................................................ 191
8.13.1 Identification ....................................................................................................................... 191
8.13.2 Application ............................................................................................................................ 191
8.13.3 Setting guidelines ................................................................................................................ 193
8.14 Broken conductor check BRCPTOC ......................................................................................... 196
8.14.1 Identification ....................................................................................................................... 196
8.14.2 Application ............................................................................................................................ 196
8.14.3 Setting guidelines ................................................................................................................ 196
8.15 Capacitor bank protection CBPGAPC ..................................................................................... 196
8.15.1 Identification ....................................................................................................................... 197
8.15.2 Application ............................................................................................................................ 197
8.15.2.1 SCB protection ................................................................................................................... 199
8.15.3 Setting guidelines ................................................................................................................ 200
8.15.3.1 Restrike detection ............................................................................................................. 202
8.16 Voltage-restrained time overcurrent protection VRPVOC .................................................... 202
8.16.1 Identification ....................................................................................................................... 202
8.16.2 Application ............................................................................................................................ 203
8.16.2.1 Base quantities .................................................................................................................. 203
8.16.2.2 Application possibilities ..................................................................................................... 203
8.16.2.3 Undervoltage seal-in ....................................................................................................... 204
8.16.3 Setting guidelines ................................................................................................................ 204
8.16.3.1 Explanation of the setting parameters .............................................................................. 204
Section 9 Voltage protection

9.1 Two step undervoltage protection UV2PTUV ................................................................. 207
9.1.1 Identification ................................................................................................................. 207
9.1.2 Application ..................................................................................................................... 207
9.1.3 Setting guidelines .......................................................................................................... 207
9.1.3.1 Equipment protection, such as for motors and generators ........................................ 208
9.1.3.2 Disconnected equipment detection ............................................................................... 208
9.1.3.3 Power supply quality ................................................................................................... 208
9.1.3.4 Voltage instability mitigation ........................................................................................ 208
9.1.3.5 Backup protection for power system faults ................................................................. 208
9.1.3.6 Settings for two step undervoltage protection .............................................................. 208
9.2 Two step overvoltage protection OV2PTOV ................................................................. 209
9.2.1 Identification ................................................................................................................. 210
9.2.2 Application ..................................................................................................................... 210
9.2.3 Setting guidelines .......................................................................................................... 210
9.2.3.1 Equipment protection, such as for motors, generators, reactors and transformers ...... 211
9.2.3.2 Equipment protection, capacitors ................................................................................ 211
9.2.3.3 Power supply quality ................................................................................................... 211
9.2.3.4 High impedance earthed systems ............................................................................... 211
9.2.3.5 The following settings can be done for the two step overvoltage protection ............... 211
9.3 Two step residual overvoltage protection ROV2PTOV .................................................. 213
9.3.1 Identification ................................................................................................................. 213
9.3.2 Application ..................................................................................................................... 213
9.3.3 Setting guidelines .......................................................................................................... 213
9.3.3.1 Equipment protection, such as for motors, generators, reactors and transformers ...... 214
9.3.3.2 Equipment protection, capacitors ................................................................................ 214
9.3.3.3 Power supply quality ................................................................................................... 214
9.3.3.4 High impedance earthed systems ............................................................................... 214
9.3.3.5 Direct earthed system .................................................................................................. 215
9.3.3.6 Settings for two step residual overvoltage protection .................................................. 215
9.4 Voltage differential protection VDCPTOV ................................................................. 217
9.4.1 Identification ................................................................................................................. 217
9.4.2 Application ..................................................................................................................... 217
9.4.3 Setting guidelines .......................................................................................................... 219
9.5 Loss of voltage check LOVPTUV ................................................................................. 220
9.5.1 Identification ................................................................................................................. 220
9.5.2 Application ..................................................................................................................... 220
9.5.3 Setting guidelines .......................................................................................................... 220
9.5.3.1 Advanced users settings ............................................................................................... 221

Section 10 Frequency protection

8.16.3.2 Voltage-restrained overcurrent protection for generator and step-up transformer ................................................................. 205
8.16.3.3 Overcurrent protection with undervoltage seal-in .................................................. 206
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section 11</th>
<th>Multipurpose protection</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>General current and voltage protection CVGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.2.1</td>
<td>Current and voltage selection for CVGAPC function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.2.2</td>
<td>Base quantities for CVGAPC function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.2.3</td>
<td>Application possibilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.2.4</td>
<td>Inadvertent generator energization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.3</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.3.1</td>
<td>Directional negative sequence overcurrent protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.3.2</td>
<td>Negative sequence overcurrent protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.3.3</td>
<td>Generator stator overload protection in accordance with IEC or ANSI standards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.3.4</td>
<td>Open phase protection for transformer, lines or generators and circuit breaker head flashover protection for generators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.3.5</td>
<td>Voltage restrained overcurrent protection for generator and step-up transformer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.3.6</td>
<td>Loss of excitation protection for a generator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1.3.7</td>
<td>Undercurrent protection for capacitor bank</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section 12</th>
<th>System protection and control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>Multipurpose filter SMAIHPAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.1.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.1.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.1.3</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.1.3.1</td>
<td>Setting example</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section 13</th>
<th>Secondary system supervision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>Current circuit supervision CCSSPVC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Section 14 Control

14.1 Synchrocheck, energizing check, and synchronizing SESRSYN
14.1.1 Identification
14.1.2 Application
14.1.2.1 Synchronizing
14.1.2.2 Synchrocheck
14.1.2.3 Energizing check
14.1.2.4 Voltage selection
14.1.2.5 External fuse failure
14.1.3 Application examples
14.1.3.1 Single circuit breaker with single busbar
14.1.3.2 Single circuit breaker with double busbar, external voltage selection
14.1.3.3 Single circuit breaker with double busbar, internal voltage selection
14.1.3.4 Double circuit breaker
14.1.3.5 1 1/2 circuit breaker
14.1.4 Setting guidelines
14.2 Autorecloser for 1 phase, 2 phase and/or 3 phase operation SMBRREC
14.2.1 Identification
Table of contents

14.2.2 Application...........................................................................................................................276
14.2.2.1 Auto reclosing operation Off and On.................................................................278
14.2.2.2 Start auto reclosing and conditions for start of a reclosing cycle.......................279
14.2.2.3 Start auto reclosing from circuit breaker open information.................................279
14.2.2.4 Blocking of the auto recloser.................................................................279
14.2.2.5 Control of the auto reclosing dead time for shot 1..................................................280
14.2.2.6 Long trip signal.................................................................................................280
14.2.2.7 Maximum number of reclosing shots.................................................................280
14.2.2.8 \textit{ARMode} = 3ph, (normal setting for a three-phase shot).................................280
14.2.2.9 \textit{ARMode} = 1/2/3ph.........................................................................................280
14.2.2.10 \textit{ARMode} = 1/2ph, 1-phase or 2-phase reclosing in the first shot......................281
14.2.2.11 \textit{ARMode} = 1ph+1*2ph, 1-phase or 2-phase reclosing in the first shot..............281
14.2.2.12 \textit{ARMode} = 1/2ph + 1*3ph, 1-phase, 2-phase or 3-phase reclosing in the first shot..281
14.2.2.13 \textit{ARMode} = 1ph + 1*2/3ph, 1-phase, 2-phase or 3-phase reclosing in the first shot......281
14.2.2.14 External selection of auto reclosing mode...........................................................282
14.2.2.15 Auto reclosing reclaim timer................................................................................283
14.2.2.16 Pulsing of the circuit breaker closing command and counter...............................283
14.2.2.17 Transient fault......................................................................................................283
14.2.2.18 Permanent fault and reclosing unsuccessful signal..............................................283
14.2.2.19 Lock-out initiation..............................................................................................283
14.2.2.20 Evolving fault.....................................................................................................284
14.2.2.21 Automatic continuation of the auto reclosing sequence.......................................285
14.2.2.22 Thermal overload protection holding the auto recloser back................................285
14.2.3 Setting guidelines..............................................................................................................285
14.2.3.1 Configuration.......................................................................................................285
14.2.3.2 Auto recloser settings.........................................................................................293
14.3 Apparatus control..................................................................................................................296
14.3.1 Application.....................................................................................................................296
14.3.2 Bay control QCBAY.................................................................................................300
14.3.3 Switch controller SCSWI..........................................................................................301
14.3.4 Switches SXCBR/SXSWI........................................................................................302
14.3.5 Proxy for signals from switching device via GOOSE XLNPROXY..........................302
14.3.6 Reservation function (QCRSV and RESIN)...............................................................304
14.3.7 Interaction between modules......................................................................................306
14.3.8 Setting guidelines........................................................................................................308
14.3.8.1 Bay control (QCBAY).........................................................................................308
14.3.8.2 Switch controller (SCSWI)..................................................................................309
14.3.8.3 Switch (SXCBR/SXSWI)....................................................................................310
14.3.8.4 Proxy for signals from switching device via GOOSE XLNPROXY.......................310
14.3.8.5 Bay Reserve (QCRSV).......................................................................................311
14.3.8.6 Reservation input (RESIN)...............................................................................311
14.4 Interlocking..........................................................................................................................311
14.4.1 Configuration guidelines.............................................................................................312
14.4.2 Interlocking for line bay ABC_LINE........................................................................312

© Copyright 2017 ABB. All rights reserved
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14.4.2.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.2.2</td>
<td>Signals from bypass busbar</td>
<td>313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.2.3</td>
<td>Signals from bus-coupler</td>
<td>314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.2.4</td>
<td>Configuration setting</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.3</td>
<td>Interlocking for bus-coupler bay ABC_BC</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.3.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.3.2</td>
<td>Configuration</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.3.3</td>
<td>Signals from all feeders</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.3.4</td>
<td>Signals from bus-coupler</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.3.5</td>
<td>Configuration setting</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.4</td>
<td>Interlocking for transformer bay AB_TRAFO</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.4.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.4.2</td>
<td>Signals from bus-coupler</td>
<td>323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.4.3</td>
<td>Configuration setting</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.5</td>
<td>Interlocking for bus-section breaker A1A2_BS</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.5.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.5.2</td>
<td>Signals from all feeders</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.5.3</td>
<td>Configuration setting</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.6</td>
<td>Interlocking for bus-section disconnector A1A2_DC</td>
<td>327</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.6.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.6.2</td>
<td>Signals in single breaker arrangement</td>
<td>328</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.6.3</td>
<td>Signals in double-breaker arrangement</td>
<td>331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.6.4</td>
<td>Signals in 1 1/2 breaker arrangement</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.7</td>
<td>Interlocking for busbar earthing switch BB_ES</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.7.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.7.2</td>
<td>Signals in single breaker arrangement</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.7.3</td>
<td>Signals in double-breaker arrangement</td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.7.4</td>
<td>Signals in 1 1/2 breaker arrangement</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.8</td>
<td>Interlocking for double CB bay DB</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.8.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.8.2</td>
<td>Configuration setting</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.9</td>
<td>Interlocking for 1 1/2 CB BH</td>
<td>340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.9.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4.9.2</td>
<td>Configuration setting</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5</td>
<td>Voltage control</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>342</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5.3</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5.3.1</td>
<td>TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC general settings</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5.3.2</td>
<td>TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC Setting group</td>
<td>370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5.3.3</td>
<td>TCMLTCTC and TCLYLTCTC general settings</td>
<td>377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.6</td>
<td>Logic rotating switch for function selection and LHMI presentation SLGAPC</td>
<td>377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.6.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.6.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.6.3</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.7</td>
<td>Selector mini switch VSGAPC</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Section 15 Scheme communication............................................................................. 385

15.1 Scheme communication logic for distance or overcurrent protection ZCPSCH...... 385
  15.1.1 Identification...........................................................................................................385
  15.1.2 Application...............................................................................................................385
  15.1.3.1 Blocking scheme......................................................................................................386
  15.1.3.2 Delta blocking scheme............................................................................................387
  15.1.3.3 Permissive underreaching scheme............................................................................390
  15.1.3.4 Permissive overreaching scheme..............................................................................391
  15.1.3.5 Unblocking scheme..................................................................................................391
  15.1.3.6 Intertrip scheme.......................................................................................................391

15.2 Current reversal and Weak-end infeed logic for distance protection 3-phase ZCRWPSCH .........................................................................................................................391
  15.2.1 Identification...........................................................................................................391
  15.2.2 Application...............................................................................................................392
  15.2.2.1 Current reversal logic............................................................................................392
  15.2.2.2 Weak-end infeed logic..........................................................................................392
  15.2.3 Setting guidelines......................................................................................................393
  15.2.3.1 Current reversal logic............................................................................................393
  15.2.3.2 Weak-end infeed logic..........................................................................................393

15.3 Local acceleration logic ZCLCP SCH..................................................................... 394
  15.3.1 Identification...........................................................................................................394
  15.3.2 Application...............................................................................................................394
# Section 16 Logic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16.1</td>
<td>Tripping logic SMPPTRC</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.1.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.1.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.1.2.1</td>
<td>Three-phase tripping</td>
<td>402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.1.2.2</td>
<td>Single- and/or three-phase tripping</td>
<td>402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.1.2.3</td>
<td>Single-, two- or three-phase tripping</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.1.2.4</td>
<td>Lock-out</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.1.2.5</td>
<td>Example of directional data</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.1.2.6</td>
<td>Blocking of the function block</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.1.3</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.2</td>
<td>Trip matrix logic TMAGAPC</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.2.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.2.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.2.3</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.3</td>
<td>Logic for group alarm ALMCALH</td>
<td>407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.3.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.3.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.3.3</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.4</td>
<td>Logic for group alarm WRNCALH</td>
<td>407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.4.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.4.1.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.4.1.2</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>Logic for group indication INDCALH</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.5.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.5.1.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.5.1.2</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.6</td>
<td>Configurable logic blocks</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.6.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.6.2</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.6.2.1</td>
<td>Configuration</td>
<td>409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>Fixed signal function block FXDSIGN</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table of contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.3</td>
<td>Boolean 16 to Integer conversion B16I</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.4</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.5</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.6</td>
<td>Boolean to integer conversion with logical node representation, 16 bit BTIGAPC</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.8</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.9</td>
<td>Integer to Boolean 16 conversion IB16</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.10</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.11</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.12</td>
<td>Elapsed time integrator with limit transgression and overflow supervision</td>
<td>415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.12.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.12.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.12.3</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.13</td>
<td>Comparator for integer inputs - INTCOMP</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.13.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.13.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.13.3</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.13.4</td>
<td>Setting example</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.14</td>
<td>Comparator for real inputs - REALCOMP</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.14.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.14.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.14.3</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.14.4</td>
<td>Setting example</td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Section 17 Monitoring

17.1 Measurement .............................................................................................................. 421
17.1.1 Identification ........................................................................................................ 421
17.1.2 Application ............................................................................................................. 421
17.1.3 Zero clamping ........................................................................................................... 422
17.1.4 Setting guidelines ................................................................................................. 423
17.1.4.1 Setting examples ............................................................................................... 425
17.2 Gas medium supervision SSIMG .................................................................................... 431
17.2.1 Identification ........................................................................................................ 431
17.2.2 Application ............................................................................................................. 431
17.2.3 Setting guidelines ................................................................................................. 431
17.3 Liquid medium supervision SSIML ................................................................................ 432
17.3.1 Identification ........................................................................................................ 432
17.3.2 Application ............................................................................................................. 432
17.3.3 Setting guidelines ................................................................................................. 432
17.4 Breaker monitoring SSCBR ............................................................................................. 433
17.4.1 Identification ........................................................................................................ 433
17.4.2 Application........................................................................................................................................... 433
17.4.3 Setting guidelines.................................................................................................................................. 435
17.4.3.1 Setting procedure on the IED............................................................................................................ 436
17.5 Event function EVENT.................................................................................................................................. 437
17.5.1 Identification............................................................................................................................................ 437
17.5.2 Application............................................................................................................................................ 437
17.5.3 Setting guidelines.................................................................................................................................. 437
17.6 Disturbance report DRPRDRE.................................................................................................................. 438
17.6.1 Identification............................................................................................................................................ 438
17.6.2 Application............................................................................................................................................ 438
17.6.3 Setting guidelines.................................................................................................................................. 439
17.6.3.1 Recording times.................................................................................................................................. 441
17.6.3.2 Binary input signals............................................................................................................................ 442
17.6.3.3 Analog input signals............................................................................................................................ 442
17.6.3.4 Sub-function parameters.................................................................................................................... 443
17.6.3.5 Consideration..................................................................................................................................... 443
17.7 Logical signal status report BINSTATREP............................................................................................... 444
17.7.1 Identification............................................................................................................................................ 444
17.7.2 Application............................................................................................................................................ 444
17.7.3 Setting guidelines.................................................................................................................................. 444
17.8 Fault locator LMBRFLO........................................................................................................................... 445
17.8.1 Identification............................................................................................................................................ 445
17.8.2 Application............................................................................................................................................ 445
17.8.3 Setting guidelines.................................................................................................................................. 445
17.8.3.1 Connection of analog currents............................................................................................................ 446
17.9 Limit counter L4UFCNT............................................................................................................................. 447
17.9.1 Identification............................................................................................................................................ 447
17.9.2 Application............................................................................................................................................ 447
17.9.3 Setting guidelines.................................................................................................................................. 448
17.10 Running hour-meter TEILGAPC.............................................................................................................. 448
17.10.1 Identification............................................................................................................................................ 448
17.10.2 Application............................................................................................................................................ 448
17.10.3 Setting guidelines.................................................................................................................................. 448
17.11 Estimation of transformer insulation life LOLSPTR.................................................................................. 448
17.11.1 Application............................................................................................................................................ 449
17.11.2 Setting guidelines.................................................................................................................................. 452
17.11.3 Setting example.................................................................................................................................... 459
17.11.3.1 Transformer Rated Data.................................................................................................................... 459
17.11.3.2 Setting parameters for insulation loss of life calculation function (LOL1)........................................ 459
17.12 Through fault monitoring PTRSTHR...................................................................................................... 463
17.12.1 Identification............................................................................................................................................ 463
17.12.2 Application............................................................................................................................................ 463
17.12.3 Setting guidelines.................................................................................................................................. 465
17.12.3.1 Setting procedure on the IED............................................................................................................ 465
17.12.3.2 Consideration of zero sequence currents......................................................................................... 465
17.12.3.3 On-line correction with on-load tap changer position....................................................................... 466
Section 18

Metering

18.1 Pulse-counter logic PCFCNT

18.1.1 Identification

18.1.2 Application

18.1.3 Setting guidelines

18.2 Function for energy calculation and demand handling ETPMMTR

18.2.1 Identification

18.2.2 Application

18.2.3 Setting guidelines

Section 19

Ethernet-based communication

19.1 Access point

19.1.1 Application

19.1.2 Setting guidelines

19.2 Redundant communication

19.2.1 Identification

19.2.2 Application

19.2.3 Setting guidelines

19.3 Merging unit

19.3.1 Application

19.3.2 Setting guidelines

19.4 Routes

19.4.1 Application

19.4.2 Setting guidelines

Section 20

Station communication

20.1 Communication protocols

20.2 IEC 61850-8-1 communication protocol

20.2.1 Application IEC 61850-8-1
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20.2.2</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>496</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.2.3</td>
<td>Horizontal communication via GOOSE</td>
<td>497</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.2.3.1</td>
<td>Sending data</td>
<td>497</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.2.3.2</td>
<td>Receiving data</td>
<td>497</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3</td>
<td>IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE communication protocol</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.2</td>
<td>Faulty merging unit for bay in service</td>
<td>500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.3</td>
<td>Bay out of service for maintenance</td>
<td>501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.4</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.4.1</td>
<td>Specific settings related to the IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE communication</td>
<td>502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.4.2</td>
<td>Setting examples for IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE and time synchronization</td>
<td>505</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.5</td>
<td>IEC 61850 quality expander QUALEXP</td>
<td>509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4</td>
<td>LON communication protocol</td>
<td>510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.2</td>
<td>MULTICMDRCV and MULTICMDSND</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.2.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.2.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.2.3</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.5</td>
<td>SPA communication protocol</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.5.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>512</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.5.2</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>513</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.6</td>
<td>IEC 60870-5-103 communication protocol</td>
<td>514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.6.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>514</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.6.1.1</td>
<td>Functionality</td>
<td>515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.6.1.2</td>
<td>Design</td>
<td>515</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.6.2</td>
<td>Settings</td>
<td>517</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.6.2.1</td>
<td>Settings for RS485 and optical serial communication</td>
<td>517</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.6.2.2</td>
<td>Settings from PCM600</td>
<td>518</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.6.3</td>
<td>Function and information types</td>
<td>520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.7</td>
<td>DNP3 Communication protocol</td>
<td>520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.7.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.1</td>
<td>Binary signal transfer</td>
<td>521</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.1.1</td>
<td>Identification</td>
<td>521</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.1.2</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>521</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.1.2.1</td>
<td>Communication hardware solutions</td>
<td>522</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.1.3</td>
<td>Setting guidelines</td>
<td>523</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.1</td>
<td>Authority status ATHSTAT</td>
<td>529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.1.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.2</td>
<td>Self supervision with internal event list INTERRSIG</td>
<td>529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.2.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.3</td>
<td>Change lock CHNGLCK</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.3.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
<td>530</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.4</td>
<td>Denial of service SCHLCCH/RCHLCCH</td>
<td>531</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Section 21** Remote communication .......................................................... 521

- Binary signal transfer
  - Identification
  - Application
  - Communication hardware solutions
  - Setting guidelines

**Section 22** Security .................................................................................. 529

- Authority status ATHSTAT
  - Application
- Self supervision with internal event list INTERRSIG
  - Application
- Change lock CHNGLCK
  - Application
- Denial of service SCHLCCH/RCHLCCH
Section 23 Basic IED functions

23.1 IED identifiers TERMINALID
23.1.1 Application
23.1.2 Factory defined settings
23.1.3 Measurement values

23.2 Product information PRODINF
23.2.1 Application
23.2.2 Factory defined settings

23.3 Measured value expander block RANGE_XP
23.3.1 Identification
23.3.2 Application
23.3.3 Setting guidelines

23.4 Parameter setting groups
23.4.1 Application
23.4.2 Setting guidelines

23.5 Rated system frequency PRIMVAL
23.5.1 Identification
23.5.2 Application
23.5.3 Setting guidelines

23.6 Summation block 3 phase 3PHSUM
23.6.1 Application
23.6.2 Setting guidelines

23.7 Global base values GBASVAL
23.7.1 Identification
23.7.2 Application
23.7.3 Setting guidelines

23.8 Signal matrix for binary inputs SMBI
23.8.1 Application
23.8.2 Setting guidelines

23.9 Signal matrix for binary outputs SMBO
23.9.1 Application
23.9.2 Setting guidelines

23.10 Signal matrix for mA inputs SMMI
23.10.1 Application
23.10.2 Setting guidelines

23.11 Signal matrix for analog inputs SMAI
23.11.1 Application
23.11.2 Frequency values
23.11.3 Setting guidelines

23.12 Test mode functionality TESTMODE
23.12.1 Application
23.12.2 Setting guidelines

23.13 Time synchronization TIMESYNCHGEN
23.13.1 Application
23.13.2 Setting guidelines..................................................................................................................546
23.13.2.1 System time.......................................................................................................................546
23.13.2.2 Synchronization................................................................................................................546
23.13.2.3 Process bus IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE synchronization.................................................549

Section 24 Requirements................................................................................................................551
24.1 Current transformer requirements..........................................................................................551
24.1.1 Current transformer basic classification and requirements...............................................551
24.1.2 Conditions...............................................................................................................................552
24.1.3 Fault current............................................................................................................................553
24.1.4 Secondary wire resistance and additional load.................................................................553
24.1.5 General current transformer requirements.........................................................................554
24.1.6 Rated equivalent secondary e.m.f. requirements.................................................................554
24.1.6.1 Breaker failure protection...............................................................................................554
24.1.6.2 Non-directional instantaneous and definitive time, phase and residual overcurrent protection....................................................................................................555
24.1.6.3 Non-directional inverse time delayed phase and residual overcurrent protection........555
24.1.6.4 Directional phase and residual overcurrent protection....................................................556
24.1.7 Current transformer requirements for CTs according to other standards.........................557
24.1.7.1 Current transformers according to IEC 61869-2, class P, PR.......................................557
24.1.7.2 Current transformers according to IEC 61869-2, class PX, PXR (and old IEC 60044-6, class TPS and old British Standard, class X)..............................................557
24.1.7.3 Current transformers according to ANSI/IEEE.............................................................557
24.2 Voltage transformer requirements.........................................................................................558
24.3 SNTP server requirements.......................................................................................................558
24.4 PTP requirements......................................................................................................................558
24.5 Sample specification of communication requirements for the protection and control terminals in digital telecommunication networks.........................................................559
24.6 IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE Merging unit requirements ..............................................................560

Section 25 Glossary......................................................................................................................561
Section 1  Introduction

1.1  This manual

The application manual contains application descriptions and setting guidelines sorted per function. The manual can be used to find out when and for what purpose a typical protection function can be used. The manual can also provide assistance for calculating settings.

1.2  Intended audience

This manual addresses the protection and control engineer responsible for planning, pre-engineering and engineering.

The protection and control engineer must be experienced in electrical power engineering and have knowledge of related technology, such as protection schemes and communication principles.

1.3  Product documentation

1.3.1  Product documentation set

Figure 1:  The intended use of manuals throughout the product lifecycle
The engineering manual contains instructions on how to engineer the IEDs using the various tools available within the PCM600 software. The manual provides instructions on how to set up a PCM600 project and insert IEDs to the project structure. The manual also recommends a sequence for the engineering of protection and control functions, as well as communication engineering for IEC 61850.

The installation manual contains instructions on how to install the IED. The manual provides procedures for mechanical and electrical installation. The chapters are organized in the chronological order in which the IED should be installed.

The commissioning manual contains instructions on how to commission the IED. The manual can also be used by system engineers and maintenance personnel for assistance during the testing phase. The manual provides procedures for the checking of external circuitry and energizing the IED, parameter setting and configuration as well as verifying settings by secondary injection. The manual describes the process of testing an IED in a substation which is not in service. The chapters are organized in the chronological order in which the IED should be commissioned. The relevant procedures may be followed also during the service and maintenance activities.

The operation manual contains instructions on how to operate the IED once it has been commissioned. The manual provides instructions for the monitoring, controlling and setting of the IED. The manual also describes how to identify disturbances and how to view calculated and measured power grid data to determine the cause of a fault.

The application manual contains application descriptions and setting guidelines sorted per function. The manual can be used to find out when and for what purpose a typical protection function can be used. The manual can also provide assistance for calculating settings.

The technical manual contains operation principle descriptions, and lists function blocks, logic diagrams, input and output signals, setting parameters and technical data, sorted per function. The manual can be used as a technical reference during the engineering phase, installation and commissioning phase, and during normal service.

The communication protocol manual describes the communication protocols supported by the IED. The manual concentrates on the vendor-specific implementations.

The point list manual describes the outlook and properties of the data points specific to the IED. The manual should be used in conjunction with the corresponding communication protocol manual.

The cyber security deployment guideline describes the process for handling cyber security when communicating with the IED. Certification, Authorization with role based access control, and product engineering for cyber security related events are described and sorted by function. The guideline can be used as a technical reference during the engineering phase, installation and commissioning phase, and during normal service.

### 1.3.2 Document revision history

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Document revision</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Product revision</th>
<th>History</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>2017-05</td>
<td>2.2.0</td>
<td>First release for product version 2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>2017-10</td>
<td>2.2.1</td>
<td>Ethernet ports with RJ45 connector added.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Enhancements/updates made to ZMFPDIS and ZMFCDIS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>2018-03</td>
<td>2.2.1</td>
<td>Document enhancements and corrections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>2018-06</td>
<td>2.2.2</td>
<td>LDCM galvanic X.21 added. Function PTRSTHR added. Ordering section updated.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
### Related documents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Documents related to REC670</th>
<th>Document numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Application manual</td>
<td>1MRK 511 401-UEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commissioning manual</td>
<td>1MRK 511 403-UEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Product guide</td>
<td>1MRK 511 404-BEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Technical manual</td>
<td>1MRK 511 402-UEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type test certificate</td>
<td>1MRK 511 404-TEN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>670 series manuals</th>
<th>Document numbers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operation manual</td>
<td>1MRK 500 127-UEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Engineering manual</td>
<td>1MRK 511 398-UEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Installation manual</td>
<td>1MRK 514 026-UEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication protocol manual, DNP3</td>
<td>1MRK 511 391-UUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication protocol manual, IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>1MRK 511 394-UEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication protocol manual, IEC 61850 Edition 1</td>
<td>1MRK 511 392-UEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication protocol manual, IEC 61850 Edition 2</td>
<td>1MRK 511 393-UEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication protocol manual, LON</td>
<td>1MRK 511 395-UEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication protocol manual, SPA</td>
<td>1MRK 511 396-UEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Point list manual, DNP3</td>
<td>1MRK 511 397-UUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accessories guide</td>
<td>1MRK 514 012-BEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyber security deployment guideline</td>
<td>1MRK 511 399-UEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection and Installation components</td>
<td>1MRK 513 003-BEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test system, COMBITEST</td>
<td>1MRK 512 001-BEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Application guide, Communication set-up</td>
<td>1MRK 505 382-UEN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 1.4 Document symbols and conventions

#### 1.4.1 Symbols

The electrical warning icon indicates the presence of a hazard which could result in electrical shock.
The warning icon indicates the presence of a hazard which could result in personal injury.

The caution hot surface icon indicates important information or warning about the temperature of product surfaces.

Class 1 Laser product. Take adequate measures to protect the eyes and do not view directly with optical instruments.

The caution icon indicates important information or warning related to the concept discussed in the text. It might indicate the presence of a hazard which could result in corruption of software or damage to equipment or property.

The information icon alerts the reader of important facts and conditions.

The tip icon indicates advice on, for example, how to design your project or how to use a certain function.

Although warning hazards are related to personal injury, it is necessary to understand that under certain operational conditions, operation of damaged equipment may result in degraded process performance leading to personal injury or death. It is important that the user fully complies with all warning and cautionary notices.

### 1.4.2 Document conventions

- Abbreviations and acronyms in this manual are spelled out in the glossary. The glossary also contains definitions of important terms.
- Push button navigation in the LHMI menu structure is presented by using the push button icons.
  
  For example, to navigate between the options, use 🔁 and 🔽.
- HMI menu paths are presented in bold.
  
  For example, select **Main menu/Settings**.
- LHMI messages are shown in Courier font.
  
  For example, to save the changes in non-volatile memory, select Yes and press ✅.
- Parameter names are shown in italics.
  
  For example, the function can be enabled and disabled with the **Operation** setting.
- Each function block symbol shows the available input/output signal.
  
  - the character ^ in front of an input/output signal name indicates that the signal name may be customized using the PCM600 software.
  - the character * after an input signal name indicates that the signal must be connected to another function block in the application configuration to achieve a valid application configuration.
- Dimensions are provided both in inches and millimeters. If it is not specifically mentioned then the dimension is in millimeters.
1.5 IEC 61850 edition 1 / edition 2 mapping

Function block names are used in ACT and PST to identify functions. Respective function block names of Edition 1 logical nodes and Edition 2 logical nodes are shown in the table below.

Table 1: IEC 61850 edition 1 / edition 2 mapping

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function block name</th>
<th>Edition 1 logical nodes</th>
<th>Edition 2 logical nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AEGPVOC</td>
<td>AEGGAPC</td>
<td>AEGPVOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGSAL</td>
<td>AGSAL</td>
<td>AGSAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALMCALH</td>
<td>ALMCALH</td>
<td>ALMCALH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTIM</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ALTIM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTMS</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ALTMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTRK</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ALTRK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCZPDIF</td>
<td>BCZPDIF</td>
<td>BCZPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCZSPDIF</td>
<td>BCZSPDIF</td>
<td>BCZSPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCZTPDIF</td>
<td>BCZTPDIF</td>
<td>BCZTPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BDCGAPC</td>
<td>SWSGGIO</td>
<td>BBCSWI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BDZSGAPC</td>
<td>BBSDLN0 BDZSGAPC</td>
<td>LLN0 BDZSGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F01</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F02</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F03</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F04</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F05</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F06</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F07</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F08</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F09</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F10</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F11</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F12</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F13</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F14</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F15</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F16</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F17</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F18</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F19</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F20</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F21</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F22</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F23</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFTRC_F24</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
<td>BFTRC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function block name</th>
<th>Edition 1 logical nodes</th>
<th>Edition 2 logical nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BICPTRC_01</td>
<td>BICPTRC</td>
<td>BICPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BICPTRC_02</td>
<td>BICPTRC</td>
<td>BICPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BICPTRC_03</td>
<td>BICPTRC</td>
<td>BICPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BICPTRC_04</td>
<td>BICPTRC</td>
<td>BICPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BICPTRC_05</td>
<td>BICPTRC</td>
<td>BICPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRCP TOC</td>
<td>BRCP TOC</td>
<td>BRCP TOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRPTOC</td>
<td>BRPTOC</td>
<td>BRPTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BT IGAPC</td>
<td>B16 FCVI</td>
<td>BT IGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUSPTRC_B1</td>
<td>BUSPTRC</td>
<td>BUSPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B1</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B2</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B3</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B4</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B5</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B6</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B7</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B8</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B9</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B10</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B11</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B12</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B13</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B14</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B15</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B16</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B17</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B18</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B19</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B20</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B21</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B22</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B23</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B24</td>
<td>BUSPTRC_B24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B1</td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B2</td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B3</td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B4</td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B5</td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B6</td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B7</td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B8</td>
<td>BUTPTRC_B8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BZISGGIO</td>
<td>BZISGGIO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function block name</th>
<th>Edition 1 logical nodes</th>
<th>Edition 2 logical nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BZITGGIO</td>
<td>BZITGGIO</td>
<td>BZITGGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BZNPDIF_Z1</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BZNPDIF_Z2</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BZNPDIF_Z3</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BZNPDIF_Z4</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BZNPDIF_Z5</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BZNPDIF_Z6</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BZNPDIF_A</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
<td>BZASGAPC  BZASPDIF  BZNSGAPC  BZNSPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BZNPDIF_B</td>
<td>BZNPDIF</td>
<td>BZBSGAPC  BZBSPDIF  BZNTGAPC  BZNTPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BZNTPDIF_A</td>
<td>BZNTPDIF</td>
<td>BZATGAPC  BZATPDIF  BZNTGAPC  BZNTPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BZNTPDIF_B</td>
<td>BZNTPDIF</td>
<td>BZBTGAPC  BZBTPDIF  BZNTGAPC  BZNTPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBPGAPC</td>
<td>CBPLLNO  CBPMMXU  CBPPTRC  HOPPTOV  HPHPTOV  PH3PTUC  PH3PTOC  RP3PDOP</td>
<td>CBPMMXU  CBPPTRC  HOPPTOV  HPHPTOV  PH3PTOC  PH3PTUC  RP3PDOP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCPDSC</td>
<td>CCRPLD</td>
<td>CCPDSC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCRBRF</td>
<td>CCRBRF</td>
<td>CCRBRF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCRWRBRF</td>
<td>CCRWRBRF</td>
<td>CCRWRBRF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSRBRF</td>
<td>CCSRBRF</td>
<td>CCSRBRF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSSPVC</td>
<td>CCSRDIF</td>
<td>CCSSPVC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMMXU</td>
<td>CMMXU</td>
<td>CMMXU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMSQI</td>
<td>CMSQI</td>
<td>CMSQI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COUVGAPC</td>
<td>COUVLLNO  COUVPTOV  COUVPTUV</td>
<td>COUVTMOV  COUVPTUV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVGAPC</td>
<td>GF2LLNO  GF2MMXN  GF2PHAR  GF2PTOV  GF2PTUC  GF2PTUV  GF2PVOC  PH1PTRC</td>
<td>GF2MMXN  GF2PHAR  GF2PTOV  GF2PTUC  GF2PTUV  GF2PVOC  PH1PTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVMMXN</td>
<td>CVMMXN</td>
<td>CVMMXN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2PTOC</td>
<td>D2LLN0  D2PTOC  PH1PTRC</td>
<td>D2PTOC  PH1PTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPGAPC</td>
<td>DPGGIIO</td>
<td>DPGAPC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function block name</th>
<th>Edition 1 logical nodes</th>
<th>Edition 2 logical nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DRPRDRE</td>
<td>DRPRDRE</td>
<td>DRPRDRE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECPSCH</td>
<td>ECPSCH</td>
<td>ECPSCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECRWPSCH</td>
<td>ECRWPSCH</td>
<td>ECRWPSCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EF2PTOC</td>
<td>EF2LLN0 EF2PTRC EF2RDIR GEN2PHAR PH1PTOC</td>
<td>EF2PTRC EF2RDIR GEN2PHAR PH1PTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EF4PTOC</td>
<td>EF4LLN0 EF4PTRC EF4RDIR GEN4PHAR PH1PTOC</td>
<td>EF4PTRC EF4RDIR GEN4PHAR PH1PTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFPIOC</td>
<td>EFPIOC</td>
<td>EFPIOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFRWPIOC</td>
<td>EFRWPIOC</td>
<td>EFRWPIOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETPMMTR</td>
<td>ETPMMTR</td>
<td>ETPMMTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDPSPDIS</td>
<td>FDPSPDIS</td>
<td>FDPSPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMPSPDIS</td>
<td>FMPSPDIS</td>
<td>FMPSPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRPSPDIS</td>
<td>FPSPRDPDIS</td>
<td>FPSPRDPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTAQFVR</td>
<td>FTAQFVR</td>
<td>FTAQFVR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUFSVPVC</td>
<td>SDDRUFU SDDSPVC</td>
<td>FUFSVPVC SDDSPVC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GENPDIF</td>
<td>GENPDIF</td>
<td>GENPDIF GENGAPC GENPDIF GENPHAR GENPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOPPDOP</td>
<td>GOPPDOP</td>
<td>GOPPDOP PH1PTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRPTTR</td>
<td>GRPTTR</td>
<td>GRPTTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSPTTR</td>
<td>GSPTTR</td>
<td>GSPTTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUPPDUP</td>
<td>GUPPDUP</td>
<td>GUPPDUP PH1PTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HZPDIF</td>
<td>HZPDIF</td>
<td>HZPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDCALCH</td>
<td>INDCALH</td>
<td>INDCALH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITBGAPC</td>
<td>IB16FCVB</td>
<td>ITBGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L3CPDIF</td>
<td>L3CPDIF</td>
<td>L3CPDIF L3CGAPC L3CPDP L3CPHAR L3CPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L4CPDIF</td>
<td>L4CLLN0 L4CPDIF L4CPTRC</td>
<td>LLN0 L4CPDIF L4CPDIP L4CPHAR L4CPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L4UCNT</td>
<td>L4UCNT</td>
<td>L4UCNT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L6CPDIF</td>
<td>L6CPDIF</td>
<td>L6CPDIF L6CPDP L6CPHAR L6CPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAPPGAPC</td>
<td>LAPPMLN0 LAPPDDUP LAPPUPF</td>
<td>LAPPDDUP LAPPUPF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function block name</th>
<th>Edition 1 logical nodes</th>
<th>Edition 2 logical nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LCCRPTRC</td>
<td>LCCRPTRC</td>
<td>LCCRPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCNSPTOC</td>
<td>LCNSPTOC</td>
<td>LCNSPTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCNSPTOV</td>
<td>LCNSPTOV</td>
<td>LCNSPTOV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCP3PTOC</td>
<td>LCP3PTOC</td>
<td>LCP3PTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCP3PTUC</td>
<td>LCP3PTUC</td>
<td>LCP3PTUC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCPTTR</td>
<td>LCPTTR</td>
<td>LCPTTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCZSPTOC</td>
<td>LCZSPTOC</td>
<td>LCZSPTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCZSPTOV</td>
<td>LCZSPTOV</td>
<td>LCZSPTOV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LD0LLN0</td>
<td>LLN0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDLPSCH</td>
<td>LDLPDIF</td>
<td>LDLPSCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDRGFC</td>
<td>STSGGIO</td>
<td>LDRGFC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEXPDIS</td>
<td>LEXPDIS</td>
<td>LEXPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LFPTTR</td>
<td>LFPTTR</td>
<td>LFPTTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMBRFLO</td>
<td>LMBRFLO</td>
<td>LMBRFLO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOLSPTR</td>
<td>LOLSPTR</td>
<td>LOLSPTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOVPTUV</td>
<td>LOVPTUV</td>
<td>LOVPTUV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPHD</td>
<td></td>
<td>LPHD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPTTR</td>
<td>LPTTR</td>
<td>LPTTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LT3CPDIF</td>
<td>LT3CPDIF</td>
<td>LT3CGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LT3CPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LT3CPHAR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LT3CPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LT6CPDIF</td>
<td>LT6CPDIF</td>
<td>LT6CGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LT6CPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LT6CPHAR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LT6CPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MVGAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>MVGGIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NS2PTOC</td>
<td>NS2LLN0</td>
<td>NS2PTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NS2PTOC</td>
<td>NS2PTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NS4PTOC</td>
<td>EF4LLN0</td>
<td>EF4PTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EF4PDIR</td>
<td>EF4RDIR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GEN4PHAR</td>
<td>GEN4PHAR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PH1PTOC</td>
<td>PH1PTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O2RWPTOV</td>
<td>GEN2LLN0</td>
<td>O2RWPTOV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>O2RWPTOV</td>
<td>PH1PTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OC4PTOC</td>
<td>OC4LLN0</td>
<td>GEN4PHAR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GEN4PHAR</td>
<td>PH3PTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PH3PTOC</td>
<td>PH3PTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OEXPVPH</td>
<td></td>
<td>OEXPVPH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OOSPPAM</td>
<td></td>
<td>OOSPPAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OOSPPAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OV2PTOV</td>
<td>GEN2LLN0</td>
<td>OV2PTOV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OV2PTOV</td>
<td>PH1PTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAPGAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>PAPGAPC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function block name</th>
<th>Edition 1 logical nodes</th>
<th>Edition 2 logical nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCFCNT</td>
<td>PCGGIO</td>
<td>PCFCNT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PH4SPTOC</td>
<td>GEN4PHAR</td>
<td>GEN4PHAR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>OCNDLLN0</td>
<td>PH1BPTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PHIBPTOC</td>
<td>PH1PTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHPIOC</td>
<td>PHPIOC</td>
<td>PHPIOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSLPSCH</td>
<td>ZMRRPSL</td>
<td>PSLPSCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSPPPAM</td>
<td>PSPPPAM</td>
<td>PSPPPAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PSPPTRC</td>
<td>PSPPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QCBAY</td>
<td>QCBAY</td>
<td>BAY/LLN0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QCRSV</td>
<td>QCRSV</td>
<td>QCRSV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCHLCCH</td>
<td>RCHLCCH</td>
<td>RCHLCCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFPDIF</td>
<td>REFPDIF</td>
<td>REFPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROTIPHIZ</td>
<td>ROTIPHIZ</td>
<td>ROTIPHIZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GEN2LLN0</td>
<td>PH1PTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PH1PTRC</td>
<td>PH1PTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ROV2PTOV</td>
<td>ROV2PTOV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAPFRC</td>
<td>SAPFRC</td>
<td>SAPFRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAPTOF</td>
<td>SAPTOF</td>
<td>SAPTOF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAPTUF</td>
<td>SAPTUF</td>
<td>SAPTUF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCCVPTOC</td>
<td>SCCVPTOC</td>
<td>SCCVPTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCHLCCH</td>
<td>SCHLCCH</td>
<td>SCHLCCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCILO</td>
<td>SCILO</td>
<td>SCILO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSWI</td>
<td>SCSWI</td>
<td>SCSWI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDEPSDE</td>
<td>SDEPSDE</td>
<td>SDEPSDE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SESRSYN</td>
<td>RSY1LLN0</td>
<td>AUT1RSYN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AUT1RSYN</td>
<td>MAN1RSYN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SYR1RSYN</td>
<td>SYR1RSYN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLGAPC</td>
<td>SLGGIO</td>
<td>SLGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMBRREC</td>
<td>SMBRREC</td>
<td>SMBRREC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMPPTRC</td>
<td>SMPPTRC</td>
<td>SMPPTRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPI16GAPC</td>
<td>SPI16GGIO</td>
<td>SPI16GAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPC8GAPC</td>
<td>SPC8GGIO</td>
<td>SPC8GAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPGAPC</td>
<td>SPGGIO</td>
<td>SPGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSCBR</td>
<td>SSCBR</td>
<td>SSCBR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSIMG</td>
<td>SSIMG</td>
<td>SSIMG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSIML</td>
<td>SSIML</td>
<td>SSIML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTRSTHR</td>
<td>PTRSTHR</td>
<td>PTRSTHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STBPTOC</td>
<td>STBPTOC</td>
<td>BBPMSS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>STBPTOC</td>
<td>STBPTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STEFPHIZ</td>
<td>STEFPHIZ</td>
<td>STEFPHIZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STTIPHIZ</td>
<td>STTIPHIZ</td>
<td>STTIPHIZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SXCBR</td>
<td>SXCBR</td>
<td>SXCBR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function block name</th>
<th>Edition 1 logical nodes</th>
<th>Edition 2 logical nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SXSWI</td>
<td>SXSWI</td>
<td>SXSWI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T2WPDIF</td>
<td>T2WPDIF</td>
<td>T2WGAPC T2WPDIF T2WPHAR T2WPTTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T3WPDIF</td>
<td>T3WPDIF</td>
<td>T3WGAPC T3WPDIF T3WPHAR T3WPTTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCLYLTC</td>
<td>TCLYLTC</td>
<td>TCLYLTC TCSLTC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCMYLTCC</td>
<td>TCMYLTCC</td>
<td>TCMYLTCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEIGAPC</td>
<td>TEIGGIO</td>
<td>TEIGAPC TEIGGIO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIELGAPC</td>
<td>TIELGGIO</td>
<td>TIELGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMAGAPC</td>
<td>TMAGGIO</td>
<td>TMAGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPIIOC</td>
<td>TPIIOC</td>
<td>TPIIOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRIATCC</td>
<td>TRIATCC</td>
<td>TRIATCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TR8ATCC</td>
<td>TR8ATCC</td>
<td>TR8ATCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRPTTR</td>
<td>TRPTTR</td>
<td>TRPTTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U2RWPTUV</td>
<td>GEN2LLN0 PH1PTTR U2RWPTUV</td>
<td>PH1PTTR U2RWPTUV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UV2PTUV</td>
<td>GEN2LLN0 PH1PTTR UV2PTUV</td>
<td>PH1PTTR UV2PTUV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VDCPTOV</td>
<td>VDCPTOV</td>
<td>VDCPTOV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VDSPVC</td>
<td>VDRFU</td>
<td>VDSPVC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMMXU</td>
<td>VMMXU</td>
<td>VMMXU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMSQI</td>
<td>VMSQI</td>
<td>VMSQI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VNMMXU</td>
<td>VNMMXU</td>
<td>VNMMXU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VRPVOC</td>
<td>VRLLN0 PH1PTTR PH1PTUV VRPVOC</td>
<td>PH1PTTR PH1PTUV VRPVOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSGAPC</td>
<td>VSGGIO</td>
<td>VSGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WRNCALH</td>
<td>WRNCALH</td>
<td>WRNCALH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZC1PPSCH</td>
<td>ZPCPSCH</td>
<td>ZPCPSCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZC1WPSCH</td>
<td>ZPCWPSCH</td>
<td>ZPCWPSCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZCLCPSC</td>
<td>ZCLCPAL</td>
<td>ZCLCPAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZCPSCH</td>
<td>ZCPSCH</td>
<td>ZCPSCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZCRWPSCH</td>
<td>ZCRWPSCH</td>
<td>ZCRWPSCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZCVPSOF</td>
<td>ZCVPSOF</td>
<td>ZCVPSOF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZGVPDIS</td>
<td>ZGVLLN0 PH1PTTR ZGVPDIS ZGVPTUV</td>
<td>PH1PTTR ZGVPDIS ZGVPTUV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZMCPDIS</td>
<td>ZMCAPDIS</td>
<td>ZMCAPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZMCPDIS</td>
<td>ZMCAPDIS</td>
<td>ZMCAPDIS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function block name</th>
<th>Edition 1 logical nodes</th>
<th>Edition 2 logical nodes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZMFCPDIS</td>
<td>ZMFCLLN0</td>
<td>PSFPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PSFPDIS</td>
<td>ZMFPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ZMFDDIS</td>
<td>ZMFPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ZMFPTRC</td>
<td>ZMFPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ZMMMXU</td>
<td>ZMFPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZMFPDIS</td>
<td>ZMFDDIS</td>
<td>PSFPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PSFPDIS</td>
<td>ZMFPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ZMFDDIS</td>
<td>ZMFPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ZMFPTRC</td>
<td>ZMFPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ZMMMXU</td>
<td>ZMFPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZMHPPDIS</td>
<td>ZMHPPDIS</td>
<td>ZMHPPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZMMAPDIS</td>
<td>ZMMAPDIS</td>
<td>ZMMAPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZMMPDIS</td>
<td>ZMMPDIS</td>
<td>ZMMPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZMQAPDIS</td>
<td>ZMQAPDIS</td>
<td>ZMQAPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZMQPDIS</td>
<td>ZMQPDIS</td>
<td>ZMQPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZMRAPDIS</td>
<td>ZMRAPDIS</td>
<td>ZMRAPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZMRPDIS</td>
<td>ZMRPDIS</td>
<td>ZMRPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZMRPSB</td>
<td>ZMRPSB</td>
<td>ZMRPSB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZSMGAPC</td>
<td>ZSMGAPC</td>
<td>ZSMGAPC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Section 2  Application

2.1  General IED application

The Intelligent Electronic Device (IED) is used for the control, protection and monitoring of different types of bays in power networks. The IED is especially suitable for applications in control systems where the IEC 61850–8–1 Ed 1 or Ed 2 station bus features of the IED can be fully utilized. It is used for station-wide interlocking via GOOSE messages and vertical client-server MMS communication to a local station or remote SCADA operator workplace. This supports the architecture with distributed control IEDs in all bays with high demands on reliability. Redundant communication is obtained through the built-in PRP and HSR features which can be used in star or ringbus architectures. The IED can be used on all voltage levels. It is suitable for the control of all apparatuses in any type of switchgear arrangement.

The control is performed from remote (SCADA/Station) through the IEC 61850–8–1 Ed1 or Ed2 station communication or from the built-in multi-display local HMI. Cyber security measures are implemented to secure safe autonomous operation of the protection and control functions even if simultaneous cyber attacks occur. For all common types of switchgear arrangements, there are different pre-configurations for control and interlocking. One control IED can be used for single bay or multi-bay applications. The control operation is based on the select-before-execute principle to give highest possible security. There are synchrocheck functions available to assist optimal breaker closing at the right instance in synchronous as well as asynchronous networks.

A number of protection functions are available for flexibility in use for different station types and busbar arrangements. To fulfil the user’s application requirements, the IED features, for example, up to six instantaneous phase and earth overcurrent functions, 4–step directional or non-directional delayed-phase and earth overcurrent functions, thermal overload and frequency functions, two instances of 2–step under- and overvoltage functions, autorecloser functions and several different measuring functions. This, together with the multi-display local HMI that can show one or more pages per feeder allows using the IED for protection and control for up to six bays in a substation.

The auto-reclose for single-, two-, and/or three-phase reclose includes priority circuits for multi-breaker arrangements. It co-operates with the synchrocheck function with high-speed or delayed reclosing. Several breaker failure functions are available to provide a breaker failure function independent from the protection IEDs, also for a complete one- and a half breaker diameter.

Disturbance recording and fault locator are available to allow independent post-fault analysis after primary disturbances in case of a failure in the protection system.

Duplex communication channels for transfer of up to 192 intertrip and binary signals are available on each remote-end data communication card (LDCM). Typical applications are the communication between IEDs inside the station or with IEDs in a remote station as remote I/O.

The IED can be used in applications with the IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE process bus with up to eight Merging Units (MU). Each MU has eight analogue channels, four current and four voltages. Conventional input transformer module and Merging Unit channels can be mixed freely in your application.

Logic is prepared with a graphical tool. The advanced logic capability allows special applications such as automatic opening of disconnectors in multi-breaker arrangements, closing of breaker rings, load transfer logics and so on. The graphical configuration tool ensures simple and fast testing and commissioning.
Forcing of binary inputs and outputs is a convenient way to test wiring in substations as well as testing configuration logic in the IEDs. Basically it means that all binary inputs and outputs on the IED I/O modules (BOM, BIM, IOM & SOM) can be forced to arbitrary values.

Central Account Management is an authentication infrastructure that offers a secure solution for enforcing access control to IEDs and other systems within a substation. This incorporates management of user accounts, roles and certificates and the distribution of such, a procedure completely transparent to the user.

Flexible Product Naming allows the customer to use an IED-vendor independent IEC 61850 model of the IED. This customer model will be used as the IEC 61850 data model, but all other aspects of the IED will remain unchanged (e.g., names on the local HMI and names in the tools). This offers significant flexibility to adapt the IED to the customers’ system and standard solution.

The following tables list all the functions available in the IED. Those functions that are not exposed to the user or do not need to be configured are not described in this manual.

### 2.2 Main protection functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or ANSI</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>Bay control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Differential protection</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HZPDIF 87</td>
<td>High impedance differential protection, single phase</td>
<td>00-12 3-A02 3-A02 6-A07 3-A02</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Example of quantities*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2</th>
<th>= number of basic instances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0-3</td>
<td>= option quantities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-A03</td>
<td>= optional function included in packages A03 (refer to ordering details)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 2.3 Back-up protection functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or function name</th>
<th>ANSI</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>Bay control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>REC670 (A30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Current protection</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHPIOC</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Instantaneous phase overcurrent protection</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OC4PTOC</td>
<td>51_{67}</td>
<td>Directional phase overcurrent protection, four steps</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFPIOC</td>
<td>50N</td>
<td>Instantaneous residual overcurrent protection</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EF4PTOC</td>
<td>51N_{67}</td>
<td>Directional residual overcurrent protection, four steps</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NS4PTOC</td>
<td>46i2</td>
<td>Four step directional negative phase sequence overcurrent protection</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDEPSDE</td>
<td>67N</td>
<td>Sensitive directional residual overcurrent and power protection</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCPTTR</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Thermal overload protection, one time constant, Celsius</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LFPTTR</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>Thermal overload protection, one time constant, Fahrenheit</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRPTTR</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>Thermal overload protection, two time constants</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCRBRF</td>
<td>50BF</td>
<td>Breaker failure protection</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STBPTOC</td>
<td>50STB</td>
<td>Stub protection</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCPDSC</td>
<td>52PD</td>
<td>Pole discordance protection</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GUPPDUP</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>Directional underpower protection</td>
<td>0-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOPPDOP</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>Directional overpower protection</td>
<td>0-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRCPTOC</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>Broken conductor check</td>
<td>0-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBPGAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>Capacitor bank protection</td>
<td>0-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VRPVOC</td>
<td>51V</td>
<td>Voltage restrained overcurrent protection</td>
<td>0-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or ANSI function name</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>REC670 (A30)</th>
<th>REC670 (B30)</th>
<th>REC670 (C30)</th>
<th>REC670 (D30)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Voltage protection</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UV2PTUV 27</td>
<td>Two step undervoltage protection</td>
<td>0-4</td>
<td>2-D02</td>
<td>2-D02</td>
<td>2-D02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OV2PTOV 59</td>
<td>Two step overvoltage protection</td>
<td>0-4</td>
<td>2-D02</td>
<td>2-D02</td>
<td>2-D02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROV2PTOV 59N</td>
<td>Two step residual overvoltage protection</td>
<td>0-2</td>
<td>2-D02</td>
<td>2-D02</td>
<td>2-D02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VDCPTOV 60</td>
<td>Voltage differential protection</td>
<td>0-6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOVPTUV 27</td>
<td>Loss of voltage check</td>
<td>0-2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Frequency protection</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAPTF 81</td>
<td>Underfrequency protection</td>
<td>0-6</td>
<td>6-E01</td>
<td>6-E01</td>
<td>6-E01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAPTOF 81</td>
<td>Overfrequency protection</td>
<td>0-6</td>
<td>6-E01</td>
<td>6-E01</td>
<td>6-E01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAPFRC 81</td>
<td>Rate-of-change of frequency protection</td>
<td>0-6</td>
<td>6-E01</td>
<td>6-E01</td>
<td>6-E01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTAQFVR 81A</td>
<td>Frequency time accumulation protection</td>
<td>0-12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multipurpose protection</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVGAPC</td>
<td>General current and voltage protection</td>
<td>0-9</td>
<td>4-F01</td>
<td>4-F01</td>
<td>4-F01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMAIPAC</td>
<td>Multipurpose filter</td>
<td>0-6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) 67 requires voltage
2) 67N requires voltage
# Control and monitoring functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or function name</th>
<th>ANSI</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>Bay control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Bay control REC670 (Customized)</td>
<td>REC670 (A30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Control</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SESRSYN</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Synchrocheck, energizing check and synchronizing</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMBRREC</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>Autorecloser</td>
<td>0-6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APC10</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Control functionality for a single bay, max 10 objects (1CB), including interlocking (see Table 4)</td>
<td>0-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APC15</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Control functionality for a single bay, max 15 objects (2CB), including interlocking (see Table 5)</td>
<td>0-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APC30</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Control functionality for up to 6 bays, max 30 objects (6CBs), including interlocking (see Table 6)</td>
<td>0-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QCBAY</td>
<td></td>
<td>Bay control</td>
<td>1+5/APC30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCREM</td>
<td></td>
<td>Handling of LR-switch positions</td>
<td>1+5/APC30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOCREMCTRL</td>
<td></td>
<td>LHMI control of PSTO</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SXCBR</td>
<td></td>
<td>Circuit breaker</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRIATCC</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>Automatic voltage control for tap changer, single control</td>
<td>0-4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or ANSI function name</th>
<th>ANSI</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>Bay control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>REC670 (Customized)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TR8ATCC</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>Automatic voltage control for tap changer, parallel control</td>
<td>0-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCMYLT C</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>Tap changer control and supervision, 6 binary inputs</td>
<td>0-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TCLYLT C</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>Tap changer control and supervision, 32 binary inputs</td>
<td>0-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLGAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>Logic rotating switch for function selection and LHMI presentation</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSGAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>Selector mini switch</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPGAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>Generic communication function for Double Point indication</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPC8GAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>Single point generic control function 8 signals</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTOBITS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Automation bits, command function for DNP3.0</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SINGLECMD</td>
<td></td>
<td>Single command, 16 signals</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I103CMD</td>
<td></td>
<td>Function commands for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I103GENCMD</td>
<td></td>
<td>Function commands generic for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or function name</th>
<th>ANSI</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>REC670 (Customized)</th>
<th>REC670 (A30)</th>
<th>REC670 (B30)</th>
<th>REC670 (C30)</th>
<th>REC670 (D30)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I103POSCMD</td>
<td></td>
<td>IED commands with position and select for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I103POSCMDV</td>
<td></td>
<td>IED direct commands with position for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I103IEDCMD</td>
<td></td>
<td>IED commands for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I103USRCMD</td>
<td></td>
<td>Function commands user defined for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Secondary system supervision</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCSSPVC</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>Current circuit supervision</td>
<td>0-6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUFSPPVC</td>
<td></td>
<td>Fuse failure supervision</td>
<td>0-4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VDSPVC</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Fuse failure supervision based on voltage difference</td>
<td>0-2</td>
<td>1-G03</td>
<td>1-G03</td>
<td>1-G03</td>
<td>1-G03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELVSPVC</td>
<td>7V_78 V</td>
<td>Voltage delta supervision, 2 phase</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELISPVC</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>Current delta supervision, 2 phase</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELSPVC</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>Real delta supervision, real</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Logic</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMPPTRC</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>Tripping logic</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMAGAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>General start matrix block</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STARTCOMB</td>
<td></td>
<td>Start combinator</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMAGAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>Trip matrix logic</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or ANSI function name</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>REC670 (Customized)</th>
<th>REC670 (B30)</th>
<th>REC670 (C30)</th>
<th>REC670 (D30)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ALMCALH</td>
<td>Logic for group alarm</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WRNCALH</td>
<td>Logic for group warning</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDCALH</td>
<td>Logic for group indication</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND, GATE, INV, LLD, OR, PULSE TIMER, RSMEMORY, TIMERSET, XOR</td>
<td>Basic configurable logic blocks (see Table 3)</td>
<td>40-420</td>
<td>40-420</td>
<td>40-420</td>
<td>40-420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANDQT, INDCOMBSPQT, INDEXTSPQT, INVALIDQT, INVERTERQT, ORQT, PULSE TIMER Q/T, RSMEMORY Q/T, SRM EMORY Q/T, TIMERSET Q/T, XORQT</td>
<td>Configurable logic blocks Q/T (see Table 7)</td>
<td>0-1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND, GATE, INV, LLD, OR, PULSE TIMER, RSMEMORY, SLGAPC, SRM EMORY, TIMERSET, VSGAPC, XOR</td>
<td>Extension logic package (see Table 8)</td>
<td>0-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FXDSIGN</td>
<td>Fixed signal function block</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B16I</td>
<td>Boolean to integer conversion, 16 bit</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BTIGAPC</td>
<td>Boolean to integer conversion with logical node representation, 16 bit</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB16</td>
<td>Integer to Boolean 16 conversion</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or function name</th>
<th>ANSI</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>Bay control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>REC670 (Customized)</td>
<td>REC670 (A30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITBGAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>Integer to Boolean 16 conversion with Logic Node representation</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEIGAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>Elapsed time integrator with limit transgression and overflow supervision</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTCOMP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Comparator for integer inputs</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REALCOMP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Comparator for real inputs</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3: Total number of instances for basic configurable logic blocks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic configurable logic block</th>
<th>Total number of instances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GATE</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INV</td>
<td>420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LLD</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PULSETIMER</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSMEMORY</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRMEMORY</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMERSET</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XOR</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 4: Number of function instances in APC10

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function name</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>Total number of instances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCILO</td>
<td>Interlocking</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BB_ES</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1A2_BS</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1A2_DC</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC_BC</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BH_CONN</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BH_LINE_A</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BH_LINE_B</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_BUS_A</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_BUS_B</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_LINE</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC_LINE</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AB_TRAFO</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSWI</td>
<td>Switch controller</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SXSWI</td>
<td>Circuit switch</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QCRSV</td>
<td>Apparatus control</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESIN1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESIN2</td>
<td></td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POS_EVAL</td>
<td>Evaluation of position indication</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLNPROXY</td>
<td>Proxy for signals from switching device via GOOSE</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEXLNRCV</td>
<td>GOOSE function block to receive a switching device</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 5: Number of function instances in APC15

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function name</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>Total number of instances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCILO</td>
<td>Interlocking</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BB_ES</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1A2_BS</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1A2_DC</td>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC_BC</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BH_CONN</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BH_LINE_A</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BH_LINE_B</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_BUS_A</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_BUS_B</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DB_LINE</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC_LINE</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AB_TRAFO</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCSWI</td>
<td>Switch controller</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SXSWI</td>
<td>Circuit switch</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
### Table 6: Number of function instances in APC30

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function name</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>Total number of instances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QCRSV</td>
<td>Apparatus control</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESIN1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RESIN2</td>
<td></td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POS_EVAL</td>
<td>Evaluation of position indication</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XLNPROXY</td>
<td>Proxy for signals from switching device via GOOSE</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEXLNRCV</td>
<td>GOOSE function block to receive a switching device</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 7: Total number of instances for configurable logic blocks Q/T

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Configurable logic blocks Q/T</th>
<th>Total number of instances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANDQT</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDCOMBSPQT</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEXTSPQT</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INVALIDQ</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
### Configurable logic blocks Q/T

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extended configurable logic block</th>
<th>Total number of instances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INVERTERQT</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ORQT</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PULSETIMERQT</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSMEMORYQT</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRMEMORYQT</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMERSETQT</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XORQT</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 8: Total number of instances for extended logic package

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extended configurable logic block</th>
<th>Total number of instances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GATE</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INV</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LLD</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PULSETIMER</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSMEMORY</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLGAPC</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRMEMORY</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMERSET</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSGAPC</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XOR</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or function name</th>
<th>ANSI</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>Bay control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>REC670 (Customized)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitoring</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVMMXN</td>
<td></td>
<td>Power system measuremen t</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMMXU</td>
<td></td>
<td>Current measuremen t</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VMMXU</td>
<td></td>
<td>Voltage measuremen t phase</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMSQI</td>
<td></td>
<td>Current sequence measuremen t</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or function name</th>
<th>ANSI</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>REC670 (Customized)</th>
<th>REC670 (A30)</th>
<th>REC670 (B30)</th>
<th>REC670 (C30)</th>
<th>REC670 (D30)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VMSQI</td>
<td></td>
<td>Voltage sequence measurement</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VNMMMXU</td>
<td></td>
<td>Voltage measurement phase-earth</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AISVBA</td>
<td></td>
<td>General service value presentation of analog inputs</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVENT</td>
<td></td>
<td>Event function</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRPRDRE, A4RADR, B1RGBDR-B22RBDR</td>
<td></td>
<td>Disturbance report</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPGAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>Generic communication function for Single Point indication</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SP16GAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>Generic communication function for Single Point indication 16 inputs</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MVGAPC</td>
<td></td>
<td>Generic communication function for measured values</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BINSTATREP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Logical signal status report</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RANGE_XP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Measured value expander block</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSIMG</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>Insulation supervision for gas medium</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSIML</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>Insulation supervision for liquid medium</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSCBR</td>
<td></td>
<td>Circuit breaker condition monitoring</td>
<td>0-18</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or ANSI function name</th>
<th>ANSI Function description</th>
<th>Bay control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LMBRFLO</td>
<td>Fault locator</td>
<td>0-1 1 1 1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOLSPTR</td>
<td>Transformer insulation loss of life monitoring</td>
<td>0-4 4-M21 4-M21 4-M21 4-M21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I103MEAS</td>
<td>Measurands for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>1 1 1 1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I103MEASUSR</td>
<td>Measurands user defined signals for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>3 3 3 3 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I103AR</td>
<td>Function status auto-recloser for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>1 1 1 1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I103EF</td>
<td>Function status earth-fault for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>1 1 1 1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I103FLTPROT</td>
<td>Function status fault protection for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>1 1 1 1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I103IED</td>
<td>IED status for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>1 1 1 1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I103SUPERV</td>
<td>Supervision status for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>1 1 1 1 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I103USRDEF</td>
<td>Status for user defined signals for IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>20 20 20 20 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L4UFCNT</td>
<td>Event counter with limit supervision</td>
<td>30 30 30 30 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TEILGAPC</td>
<td>Running hour meter</td>
<td>6 6 6 6 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTRSTHR</td>
<td>Through fault monitoring</td>
<td>0-2 2-M22 2-M22 2-M22 2-M22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHMMHAI</td>
<td>Current harmonic monitoring, 3 phase</td>
<td>0-3 0-3 0-3 0-3 0-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
### 2.5 Communication

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or function name</th>
<th>ANSI</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>Bay control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>REC670 (Customized)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Station communication</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADE</td>
<td></td>
<td>LON communication protocol</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORZCOMM</td>
<td></td>
<td>Network variables via LON</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC 61850-8-1</td>
<td>IEC 61850</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEINLKRCV</td>
<td></td>
<td>Horizontal communication via GOOSE for interlocking</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEBINRCV</td>
<td></td>
<td>GOOSE binary receive</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEDPRCV</td>
<td></td>
<td>GOOSE function block to receive a double point value</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEINTRCV</td>
<td></td>
<td>GOOSE function block to receive an integer value</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEMVRCV</td>
<td></td>
<td>GOOSE function block to receive a measurand value</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSESPRVCV</td>
<td></td>
<td>GOOSE function block to receive a single point value</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VCTRSEND</td>
<td></td>
<td>Horizontal communication via GOOSE for VCTR</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or function name</th>
<th>ANSI</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>Bay control</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEVCTRRCV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>REC670 (Customized)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Horizontal communication via GOOSE for VCTR</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEVCTRCONF</td>
<td></td>
<td>GOOSE VCTR configuration for send and receive</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MULTICMDCRCV, MULTICMDSND</td>
<td></td>
<td>Multiple command and transmit</td>
<td>60/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGSAL</td>
<td></td>
<td>Generic security application component</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDOLLN0</td>
<td></td>
<td>IEC 61850 LD0 LLN0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYSLLN0</td>
<td></td>
<td>IEC 61850 SYS LLN0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPHD</td>
<td></td>
<td>Physical device information</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCMACCS</td>
<td></td>
<td>IED configuration protocol</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSTACCS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Field service tool access</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>IEC 61850-9-2 Process bus communication, 8 merging units</td>
<td>0-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACTIVLOG</td>
<td></td>
<td>Activity logging</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTRK</td>
<td></td>
<td>Service tracking</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRP</td>
<td></td>
<td>IEC 62439-3 Parallel redundancy protocol</td>
<td>0-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSR</td>
<td></td>
<td>IEC 62439-3 High-availability seamless redundancy</td>
<td>0-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMUCONF, PMUREPORT, PHASORREPORT1, ANALOGREPORT1, BINARYREPORT1, SMA11 - SMA112, 3PHSUM, PMUSTATUS</td>
<td></td>
<td>Synchrophasor report, 8 phasors (see Table 9)</td>
<td>0-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTP</td>
<td></td>
<td>Precision time protocol</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCHLCCH</td>
<td></td>
<td>Access point diagnostic for non-redundant Ethernet port</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCHLCCH</td>
<td></td>
<td>Access point diagnostic for redundant Ethernet ports</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QUALEXP</td>
<td></td>
<td>IEC 61850 quality expander</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Remote communication


Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or function name</th>
<th>ANSI</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>REC670 (Customized)</th>
<th>REC670 (A30)</th>
<th>REC670 (B30)</th>
<th>REC670 (C30)</th>
<th>REC670 (D30)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BinSignTrans1_1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BinSignTrans1_2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BinSignTransm2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BinSigRec1_12M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BinSigRec1_22M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BinSigTran1_12M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BinSigTran1_22M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDCMTRN</td>
<td></td>
<td>Transmission of analog data from LDCM</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDCMTRN_2M</td>
<td></td>
<td>Transmission of analog data from LDCM, 2Mbit</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDCMRecBinStat2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Receive binary status from remote LDCM</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDCMRecBinStat3_2M</td>
<td></td>
<td>Receive binary status from remote LDCM, 2Mbit</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Scheme communication**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>Number of instances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ZCPSCH</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>Scheme communication logic with delta based blocking scheme signal transmit</td>
<td>0-1 1-K01 1-K01 1-K01 1-K01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZCRWPSCH</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>Current reversal and weak-end infeed logic for distance protection</td>
<td>0-1 1-K01 1-K01 1-K01 1-K01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZCLCPSCH</td>
<td></td>
<td>Local acceleration logic</td>
<td>0-1 1-K01 1-K01 1-K01 1-K01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECPSCCH</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>Scheme communication logic for residual overcurrent protection</td>
<td>0-1 1-C51 1-C52 1-C53 1-C51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECRWPSCH</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>Current reversal and weak-end infeed logic for residual overcurrent protection</td>
<td>0-1 1-C51 1-C52 1-C53 1-C51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 9: Number of function instances in Synchronphasor report, 8 phasors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function name</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>Number of instances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PMUCONF</td>
<td>Configuration parameters for C37.118 2011 and IEEE1344 protocol</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMUREPORT</td>
<td>Protocol reporting via IEEE 1344 and C37.118</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHASORREPORT1</td>
<td>Protocol reporting of phasor data via IEEE 1344 and C37.118, phasors 1-8</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANALOGREPORT1</td>
<td>Protocol reporting of analog data via IEEE 1344 and C37.118, analogs 1-8</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BINARYREPORT1</td>
<td>Protocol reporting of binary data via IEEE 1344 and C37.118, binary 1-8</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMAI1–SMAI12</td>
<td>Signal matrix for analog inputs</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3PHSUM</td>
<td>Summation block 3 phase</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMUSTATUS</td>
<td>Diagnostics for C37.118 2011 and IEEE1344 protocol</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 2.6 Basic IED functions

### Table 10: Basic IED functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or function name</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>INTERSIG</td>
<td>Self supervision with internal event list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMESYNCHGEN</td>
<td>Time synchronization module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BININPUT, SYNCHCAN, SYNCHGPS, SYNCHMPPS, SYNCHLON, SYNCHPPH, SYNCHPPS, SNTF, SYNCHSPA</td>
<td>Time synchronization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMEZONE</td>
<td>Time synchronization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRIG-B</td>
<td>Time synchronization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SETGRPS</td>
<td>Number of setting groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACTVGRP</td>
<td>Parameter setting groups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TESTMODE</td>
<td>Test mode functionality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHNGLCK</td>
<td>Change lock function</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMBI</td>
<td>Signal matrix for binary inputs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMBO</td>
<td>Signal matrix for binary outputs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMMI</td>
<td>Signal matrix for mA inputs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMAI1 - SMAI12</td>
<td>Signal matrix for analog inputs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3PHSUM</td>
<td>Summation block 3 phase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATHSTAT</td>
<td>Authority status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATHCHCK</td>
<td>Authority check</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTHMAN</td>
<td>Authority management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTPACCS</td>
<td>FTP access with password</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBASVAL</td>
<td>Global base values for settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTMS</td>
<td>Time master supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALTIM</td>
<td>Time management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMSTATUS</td>
<td>Protocol diagnostic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 11: Local HMI functions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or function name</th>
<th>ANSI</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LHMICTRL</td>
<td></td>
<td>Local HMI signals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LANGUAGE</td>
<td></td>
<td>Local human machine language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCREEN</td>
<td></td>
<td>Local HMI Local human machine screen behavior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FNKEYTY1-FNKEYTY5 FNKEYMD1-FNKEYMD5</td>
<td></td>
<td>Parameter setting function for HMI in PCM600</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC 61850 or function name</th>
<th>ANSI</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LEDGEN</td>
<td></td>
<td>General LED indication part for LHMI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPENCLOSE_LED</td>
<td></td>
<td>LHMI LEDs for open and close keys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRP1_LED1–GRP1_LED15</td>
<td></td>
<td>Basic part for CP HW LED indication module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRP2_LED1–GRP2_LED15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRP3_LED1–GRP3_LED15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Section 3   Configuration

3.1   Description of configuration REC670

3.1.1   Introduction

3.1.1.1   Description of configuration A30

The configuration of the IED is shown in Figure 2.

This configuration is used in single breaker arrangements with single or double busbar.

Control, measuring and interlocking is fully configured.

The following should be noted. The configuration is made with the binary input and binary output boards in the basic delivery. In many cases this is sufficient, in other cases, for example with full control of all apparatuses included, more IO cards are required. Our proposal for a full version with control is to use two binary input modules and one binary output module.
3.1.1.2  Description of configuration B30

The configuration of the IED is shown in Figure 3.

This configuration is used in double breaker arrangements.

Control, measuring and interlocking is fully configured, including communication with other bays such as other lines and the bus coupler over GOOSE.

The following should be noted. The configuration is made with the binary input and binary output boards in the basic IED delivery. In many cases this is sufficient, in other cases e.g. with full control of all apparatuses included more IO cards are required. Our proposal for a full
version with control is to use two binary input modules and one or two binary output modules. For systems without Substation Automation a second binary output board might be required.

Figure 3: Configuration diagram for configuration B30

3.1.1.3 Description of configuration C30

The configuration of the IED is shown on Figure 4.

This configuration is used in one-and-a-half breaker arrangements for a full diameter. The configuration can also be used for a section of the diameter with utilization of a part of the apparatuses only.
Control, measuring and interlocking is fully configured, including communication with other bays such as other lines and the bus coupler over GOOSE.

The following should be noted. The configuration is made with the binary input and binary output boards in the basic IED delivery. In many cases this is sufficient, in other cases, for example with full control of all apparatuses included more IO cards are required. Our proposal for a full version with control is to use three binary input modules and two binary output modules. For systems without Substation Automation a second binary output board might be required.

Figure 4: Configuration diagram for configuration C30
3.1.4 Description of configuration D30

Four packages have been defined for following applications:

- Single breaker (double or single bus) arrangement (A30)
- Double breaker arrangement (B30)
- 1½ breaker arrangement for a complete diameter (C30)
- Single breaker (double bus) arrangement with PMU functionality (D30)

Optional functions are available in PCM600 Application Configuration Tool and can be configured by the user. Interface to analog and binary IO:s are configurable without need of configuration changes. Analog and control circuits have been pre-defined. Other signals need to be applied as required for each application. The main differences between the packages above are the interlocking modules and the number of apparatuses to control.
Section 4  Analog inputs

4.1  Introduction

Analog input channels must be configured and set properly in order to get correct measurement results and correct protection operations. For power measuring, all directional and differential functions, the directions of the input currents must be defined in order to reflect the way the current transformers are installed/connected in the field (primary and secondary connections). Measuring and protection algorithms in the IED use primary system quantities. Setting values are in primary quantities as well and it is important to set the data about the connected current and voltage transformers properly.

An AISVBAS reference PhaseAngleRef can be defined to facilitate service values reading. This analog channel's phase angle will always be fixed to zero degrees and remaining analog channel's phase angle information will be shown in relation to this analog input. During testing and commissioning of the IED, the reference channel can be changed to facilitate testing and service values reading.

The IED has the ability to receive analog values from primary equipment, that are sampled by Merging units (MU) connected to a process bus, via the IEC 61850-9-2 LE protocol.

The availability of VT inputs depends on the ordered transformer input module (TRM) type.

4.2  Setting guidelines

The available setting parameters related to analog inputs are depending on the actual hardware (TRM) and the logic configuration made in PCM600.

If a second TRM is used, at least one TRM channel must be configured to get the service values. However, the MU physical channel must be configured to get service values from that channel.

4.2.1  Setting of the phase reference channel

All phase angles are calculated in relation to a defined reference. An appropriate analog input channel is selected and used as phase reference. The parameter PhaseAngleRef defines the analog channel that is used as phase angle reference.
4.2.1.1 Example

Usually the L1 phase-to-earth voltage connected to the first VT channel number of the transformer input module (TRM) is selected as the phase reference. The first VT channel number depends on the type of transformer input module.

For a TRM with 6 current and 6 voltage inputs the first VT channel is 7. The setting `PhaseAngleRef=7` shall be used if the phase reference voltage is connected to that channel.

4.2.2 Setting of current channels

The direction of a current to the IED is depending on the connection of the CT. Unless indicated otherwise, the main CTs are supposed to be star connected and can be connected with the earthing point to the object or from the object. This information must be set in the IED. The convention of the directionality is defined as follows: A positive value of current, power, and so on means that the quantity has the direction into the object and a negative value means direction out from the object. For directional functions the direction into the object is defined as Forward and the direction out from the object is defined as Reverse. See Figure 6

A positive value of current, power, and so on (forward) means that the quantity flows towards the object. A negative value of current, power, and so on (reverse) means that the quantity flows away from the object. See Figure 6.

Figure 6: Internal convention of the directionality in the IED

With correct setting of the primary CT direction, `CTStarPoint` set to `FromObject` or `ToObject`, a positive quantities always flowing towards the protected object and a direction defined as Forward always is looking towards the protected object. The following examples show the principle.

4.2.2.1 Example 1

Two IEDs used for protection of two objects.
Figure 7: Example how to set CTStarPoint parameters in the IED

Figure 7 shows the normal case where the objects have their own CTs. The settings for CT direction shall be done according to the figure. To protect the line, direction of the directional functions of the line protection shall be set to Forward. This means that the protection is looking towards the line.

4.2.2.2 Example 2

Two IEDs used for protection of two objects and sharing a CT.
Figure 8: Example how to set CTStarPoint parameters in the IED

This example is similar to example 1, but here the transformer is feeding just one line and the line protection uses the same CT as the transformer protection does. The CT direction is set with different reference objects for the two IEDs though it is the same current from the same CT that is feeding the two IEDs. With these settings, the directional functions of the line protection shall be set to Forward to look towards the line.

4.2.2.3 Example 3

One IED used to protect two objects.
Figure 9: Example how to set CTStarPoint parameters in the IED

In this example, one IED includes both transformer and line protections and the line protection uses the same CT as the transformer protection does. For both current input channels, the CT direction is set with the transformer as reference object. This means that the direction Forward for the line protection is towards the transformer. To look towards the line, the direction of the directional functions of the line protection must be set to Reverse. The direction Forward/Reverse is related to the reference object that is the transformer in this case.

When a function is set to Reverse and shall protect an object in reverse direction, it shall be noted that some directional functions are not symmetrical regarding the reach in forward and reverse direction. It is in first hand the reach of the directional criteria that can differ. Normally it is not any limitation but it is advisable to have it in mind and check if it is acceptable for the application in question.

If the IED has sufficient number of analog current inputs, an alternative solution is shown in Figure 10. The same currents are fed to two separate groups of inputs and the line and transformer protection functions are configured to the different inputs. The CT direction for the current channels to the line protection is set with the line as reference object and the directional functions of the line protection shall be set to Forward to protect the line.
Figure 10: Example how to set CTStarPoint parameters in the IED
Figure 11: Example how to set CTStarPoint parameters in the IED

For busbar protection, it is possible to set the CTStarPoint parameters in two ways.

The first solution will be to use busbar as a reference object. In that case for all CT inputs marked with 1 in Figure 11, set CTStarPoint = TObject, and for all CT inputs marked with 2 in Figure 11, set CTStarPoint = FromObject.

The second solution will be to use all connected bays as reference objects. In that case for all CT inputs marked with 1 in Figure 11, set CTStarPoint = FromObject, and for all CT inputs marked with 2 in Figure 11, set CTStarPoint = TObject.

Regardless which one of the above two options is selected, busbar differential protection will behave correctly.

The main CT ratios must also be set. This is done by setting the two parameters CTsec and CTprim for each current channel. For a 1000/1 A CT, the following settings shall be used:

- CTprim = 1000 (value in A)
- CTsec = 1 (value in A).
4.2.2.4 Examples on how to connect, configure and set CT inputs for most commonly used CT connections

Figure 12 defines the marking of current transformer terminals commonly used around the world:

In the SMAI function block, you have to set if the SMAI block is measuring current or voltage. This is done with the parameter: AnalogInputType: Current/Voltage. The ConnectionType: phase-phase/phase-earth and GlobalBaseSel.

![Diagram of CT terminals](en06000641.vsd)

**Figure 12: Commonly used markings of CT terminals**

Where:

a) is symbol and terminal marking used in this document. Terminals marked with a square indicates the primary and secondary winding terminals with the same (that is, positive) polarity

b) and c) are equivalent symbols and terminal marking used by IEC (ANSI) standard for CTs. Note that for these two cases the CT polarity marking is correct!

It shall be noted that depending on national standard and utility practices, the rated secondary current of a CT has typically one of the following values:

- 1A
- 5A

However, in some cases, the following rated secondary currents are used as well:

- 2A
- 10A

The IED fully supports all of these rated secondary values.

It is recommended to:

- use 1A rated CT input into the IED in order to connect CTs with 1A and 2A secondary rating
- use 5A rated CT input into the IED in order to connect CTs with 5A and 10A secondary rating
4.2.2.5  Example on how to connect a star connected three-phase CT set to the IED

Figure 13 gives an example about the wiring of a star connected two-phase CT set to the IED. It gives an overview of the actions which are needed to make this measurement available to the built-in protection and control functions within the IED as well.

For correct terminal designations, see the connection diagrams valid for the delivered IED.

Figure 13:  Star connected three-phase CT set with star point towards the protected object

Where:
1)  The drawing shows how to connect three individual phase currents from a star connected three-phase CT set to the three CT inputs of the IED.
2)  The current inputs are located in the TRM. It shall be noted that for all these current inputs the following setting values shall be entered for the example shown in Figure 13.

•  CTprim=600A
•  CTsec=5A
•  CTStarPoint=ToObject

Ratio of the first two parameters is only used inside the IED. The third parameter (CTStarPoint=ToObject) as set in this example causes no change on the measured currents. In other words, currents are already measured towards the protected object.

Table continues on next page
3) These three connections are the links between the three current inputs and the three input channels of the preprocessing function block 4). Depending on the type of functions, which need this current information, more than one preprocessing block might be connected in parallel to the same three physical CT inputs.

4) The preprocessing block that has the task to digitally filter the connected analog inputs and calculate:
   - fundamental frequency phasors for all three input channels
   - harmonic content for all three input channels
   - positive, negative and zero sequence quantities by using the fundamental frequency phasors for the first three input channels (channel one taken as reference for sequence quantities)

These calculated values are then available for all built-in protection and control functions within the IED, which are connected to this preprocessing function block. For this application most of the preprocessing settings can be left to the default values.

If frequency tracking and compensation is required (this feature is typically required only for IEDs installed in power plants), then the setting parameters DFTReference shall be set accordingly. Section SMAI in this manual provides information on adaptive frequency tracking for the signal matrix for analogue inputs (SMAI).

5) AI3P in the SMAI function block is a grouped signal which contains all the data about the phases L1, L2, L3 and neutral quantity; in particular the data about fundamental frequency phasors, harmonic content and positive sequence, negative and zero sequence quantities are available. A1, A2, A3, A4 are the output signals from the SMAI function block which contain the fundamental frequency phasors and the harmonic content of the corresponding input channels of the preprocessing function block.

AIN is the signal which contains the fundamental frequency phasors and the harmonic content of the neutral quantity. In this example, GRP2N is not connected so this data is calculated by the preprocessing function block on the basis of the inputs GRPL1, GRPL2 and GRPL3. If GRP2N is connected, the data reflects the measured value of GRP2N.

Another alternative is to have the star point of the three-phase CT set as shown in Figure 14:

Figure 14: Star connected three-phase CT set with its star point away from the protected object

In the example, everything is done in a similar way as in the above described example (Figure 13). The only difference is the setting of the parameter CTStarPoint of the used current inputs on the TRM (item 2 in Figure 14 and 13):
• \( CT_{prim}=600\text{A} \)
• \( CT_{sec}=5\text{A} \)
• \( CTStarPoint=\text{FromObject} \)

The ratio of the first two parameters is only used inside the IED. The third parameter as set in this example will negate the measured currents in order to ensure that the currents are measured towards the protected object within the IED.

A third alternative is to have the residual/neutral current from the three-phase CT set connected to the IED as shown in Figure 14.

![Diagram](EC08200844-4-en.xsd)

**Figure 15:** Star connected three-phase CT set with its star point away from the protected object and the residual/neutral current connected to the IED

Where:

1) Shows how to connect three individual phase currents from a star connected three-phase CT set to the three CT inputs of the IED.

2) Shows how to connect residual/neutral current from the three-phase CT set to the fourth input in the IED. It shall be noted that if this connection is not made, the IED will still calculate this current internally by vectorial summation of the three individual phase currents.

3) Is the TRM where these current inputs are located. It shall be noted that for all these current inputs the following setting values shall be entered.

• \( CT_{prim}=800\text{A} \)
• \( CT_{sec}=1\text{A} \)
• \( CTStarPoint=\text{FromObject} \)
• \( ConnectionType=\text{Ph-N} \)

The ratio of the first two parameters is only used inside the IED. The third parameter as set in this example will have no influence on measured currents (that is, currents are already measured towards the protected object).

Table continues on next page
4) Are three connections made in the Signal Matrix tool (SMT) and Application configuration tool (ACT), which connects these three current inputs to the first three input channels on the preprocessing function block 6). Depending on the type of functions, which need this current information, more than one preprocessing block might be connected in parallel to these three CT inputs.

5) Is a connection made in the Signal Matrix tool (SMT) and Application configuration tool (ACT), which connects the residual/neutral current input to the fourth input channel of the preprocessing function block 6). Note that this connection in SMT shall not be done if the residual/neutral current is not connected to the IED.

6) Is a Preprocessing block that has the task to digitally filter the connected analog inputs and calculate:
   • fundamental frequency phasors for all input channels
   • harmonic content for all input channels
   • positive, negative and zero sequence quantities by using the fundamental frequency phasors of the first three input channels (channel one taken as reference for sequence quantities)

These calculated values are then available for all built-in protection and control functions within the IED, which are connected to this preprocessing function block in the configuration tool. For this application, most of the preprocessing settings can be left to the default values. If frequency tracking and compensation is required (this feature is typically required only for IEDs installed in the generating stations), then the setting parameters DFTReference shall be set accordingly.

4.2.2.6 Example how to connect delta connected three-phase CT set to the IED

Figure 16 gives an example how to connect a delta connected three-phase CT set to the IED. It gives an overview of the required actions by the user in order to make this measurement available to the built-in protection and control functions in the IED as well.

For correct terminal designations, see the connection diagrams valid for the delivered IED.
**Figure 16: Delta DAB connected three-phase CT set**

Where:

1) shows how to connect three individual phase currents from a delta connected three-phase CT set to three CT inputs of the IED.

2) is the TRM where these current inputs are located. It shall be noted that for all these current inputs the following setting values shall be entered.

   - \( CT_{prim}=600A \)
   - \( CT_{sec}=5A \)
   - \( CTStarPoint=ToObject \)
   - \( ConnectionType=Ph-Ph \)

3) are three connections made in Signal Matrix Tool (SMT), Application configuration tool (ACT), which connect these three current inputs to first three input channels of the preprocessing function block 4). Depending on the type of functions which need this current information, more than one preprocessing block might be connected in parallel to these three CT inputs.

4) is a Preprocessing block that has the task to digitally filter the connected analog inputs and calculate:

   - fundamental frequency phasors for all three input channels
   - harmonic content for all three input channels
   - positive, negative and zero sequence quantities by using the fundamental frequency phasors for the first three input channels (channel one taken as reference for sequence quantities)

These calculated values are then available for all built-in protection and control functions within the IED, which are connected to this preprocessing function block. For this application most of the preprocessing settings can be left to the default values.

If frequency tracking and compensation is required (this feature is typically required only for IEDs installed in the generating stations) then the setting parameters \( DFTReference \) shall be set accordingly.
Another alternative is to have the delta connected CT set as shown in figure 17:

![Diagram of Delta DAC connected three-phase CT set](image)

**Figure 17: Delta DAC connected three-phase CT set**

In this case, everything is done in a similar way as in the above described example, except that for all used current inputs on the TRM the following setting parameters shall be entered:

- $CT_{prim} = 800\text{A}$
- $CT_{sec} = 1\text{A}$
- $CTStarPoint = ToObject$
- $ConnectionType = Ph-Ph$

It is important to notice the references in SMAI. As inputs at $Ph-Ph$ are expected to be L1L2, L2L3 respectively L3L1 we need to tilt 180º by setting $ToObject$.

### 4.2.2.7 Example how to connect single-phase CT to the IED

Figure 18 gives an example how to connect the single-phase CT to the IED. It gives an overview of the required actions by the user in order to make this measurement available to the built-in protection and control functions within the IED as well.

For correct terminal designations, see the connection diagrams valid for the delivered IED.
Figure 18: Connections for single-phase CT input

Where:
1) shows how to connect single-phase CT input in the IED.
2) is TRM where these current inputs are located. It shall be noted that for all these current inputs the following setting values shall be entered.
   For connection (a) shown in Figure 18:
   \[ \text{CT}_{\text{prim}} = 1000 \text{ A} \]
   \[ \text{CT}_{\text{sec}} = 1 \text{ A} \]
   \[ \text{CT}_{\text{StarPoint}} = \text{ToObject} \]

   For connection (b) shown in Figure 18:
   \[ \text{CT}_{\text{prim}} = 1000 \text{ A} \]
   \[ \text{CT}_{\text{sec}} = 1 \text{ A} \]
   \[ \text{CT}_{\text{StarPoint}} = \text{FromObject} \]

3) shows the connection made in SMT tool, which connect this CT input to the fourth input channel of the preprocessing function block 4).

4) is a Preprocessing block that has the task to digitally filter the connected analog inputs and calculate values. The calculated values are then available for all built-in protection and control functions within the IED, which are connected to this preprocessing function block.
   If frequency tracking and compensation is required (this feature is typically required only for IEDs installed in the power plants) then the setting parameters \[ \text{DFTReference} \] shall be set accordingly.

4.2.3 Relationships between setting parameter Base Current, CT rated primary current and minimum pickup of a protection IED

Note that for all line protection applications (e.g. distance protection or line differential protection) the parameter Base Current (i.e. \[ \text{IBase} \] setting in the IED) used by the relevant protection function, shall always be set equal to the largest rated CT primary current among all CTs involved in the protection scheme. The rated CT primary current value is set as parameter \[ \text{CT}_{\text{prim}} \] under the IED TRM settings.

For all other protection applications (e.g. generator, shunt reactor, shunt capacitor and transformer protection) it is typically desirable to set \[ \text{IBase} \] parameter equal to the rated current of the protected object. However this is only recommended to do if the rated current of the protected object is within the range of 40% to 120% of the selected CT rated primary current. If for any reason (e.g. high maximum short circuit current) the rated current of the
protected object is less than 40% of the rated CT primary current, it is strongly recommended to set the parameter \( I_{Base} \) in the IED to be equal to the largest rated CT primary current among all CTs involved in the protection scheme and installed on the same voltage level. This will effectively make the protection scheme less sensitive; however, such measures are necessary in order to avoid possible problems with loss of the measurement accuracy in the IED.

Regardless of the applied relationship between the \( I_{Base} \) parameter and the rated CT primary current, the corresponding minimum pickup of the function on the CT secondary side must always be verified. It is strongly recommended that the minimum pickup of any instantaneous protection function (e.g. differential, restricted earth fault, distance, instantaneous overcurrent, etc.) shall under no circumstances be less than 4% of the used IED CT input rating (i.e. 1A or 5A). This corresponds to 40mA secondary for IED 1A rated inputs and to 200mA secondary for IED 5A rated inputs used by the function. This shall be individually verified for all current inputs involved in the protection scheme.

Note that exceptions from the above 4% rule may be acceptable for very special applications (e.g. when Multipurpose filter SMAIHPAC is involved in the protection scheme).

### 4.2.4 Setting of voltage channels

As the IED uses primary system quantities, the main VT ratios must be known to the IED. This is done by setting the two parameters \( VT_{sec} \) and \( VT_{prim} \) for each voltage channel. The phase-to-phase value can be used even if each channel is connected to a phase-to-earth voltage from the VT.

#### 4.2.4.1 Example

Consider a VT with the following data:

\[
\frac{132\text{kV}}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{110\text{V}}{\sqrt{3}}
\]

(Equation 1)

The following setting should be used: \( VT_{prim}=132 \) (value in kV) \( VT_{sec}=110 \) (value in V)

#### 4.2.4.2 Examples how to connect, configure and set VT inputs for most commonly used VT connections

Figure 19 defines the marking of voltage transformer terminals commonly used around the world.

![Commonly used markings of VT terminals](en06000591.vsd)

**Figure 19:** Commonly used markings of VT terminals
Where:

a) is the symbol and terminal marking used in this document. Terminals marked with a square indicate the primary and secondary winding terminals with the same (positive) polarity

b) is the equivalent symbol and terminal marking used by IEC (ANSI) standard for phase-to-earth connected VTs

c) is the equivalent symbol and terminal marking used by IEC (ANSI) standard for open delta connected VTs

d) is the equivalent symbol and terminal marking used by IEC (ANSI) standard for phase-to-phase connected VTs

It shall be noted that depending on national standard and utility practices the rated secondary voltage of a VT has typically one of the following values:

- 100 V
- 110 V
- 115 V
- 120 V
- 230 V

The IED fully supports all of these values and most of them will be shown in the following examples.

4.2.4.3 Examples on how to connect a three phase-to-earth connected VT to the IED

Figure 20 gives an example on how to connect a three phase-to-earth connected VT to the IED. It gives an overview of required actions by the user in order to make this measurement available to the built-in protection and control functions within the IED.

For correct terminal designations, see the connection diagrams valid for the delivered IED.
Figure 20: A Three phase-to-earth connected VT

Figure 21: A two phase-to-earth connected VT
Where:

1) shows how to connect three secondary phase-to-earth voltages to three VT inputs on the IED

2) is the TRM where these three voltage inputs are located. For these three voltage inputs, the following setting values shall be entered:

\[ \frac{V_{T\text{prim}}}{V_{T\text{sec}}} = \frac{132}{110} \]

Inside the IED, only the ratio of these two parameters is used. It shall be noted that the ratio of the entered values exactly corresponds to ratio of one individual VT.

\[ \frac{66}{110} = \frac{66/\sqrt{3}}{110/\sqrt{3}} \]

(Equation 2)

3) are three connections made in Signal Matrix Tool (SMT), which connect these three voltage inputs to first three input channels of the preprocessing function block 5). Depending on the type of functions which need this voltage information, more than one preprocessing block might be connected in parallel to these three VT inputs.

4) shows that in this example the fourth (that is, residual) input channel of the preprocessing block is not connected in SMT tool. Thus the preprocessing block will automatically calculate \(3U_0\) inside by vectorial sum from the three phase to earth voltages connected to the first three input channels of the same preprocessing block. Alternatively, the fourth input channel can be connected to open delta VT input, as shown in Figure 23.

5) is a Preprocessing block that has the task to digitally filter the connected analog inputs and calculate:

- fundamental frequency phasors for all input channels
- harmonic content for all input channels
- positive, negative and zero sequence quantities by using the fundamental frequency phasors for the first three input channels (channel one taken as reference for sequence quantities)

These calculated values are then available for all built-in protection and control functions within the IED, which are connected to this preprocessing function block in the configuration tool. For this application most of the preprocessing settings can be left to the default values. However the following settings shall be set as shown here:

- \(U_{\text{Base}}=66 \text{kV}\) (that is, rated Ph-Ph voltage)
- If frequency tracking and compensation is required (this feature is typically required only for IEDs installed in the generating stations) then the setting parameters \(D_{\text{FTR}}\) shall be set accordingly.

### 4.2.4.4 Example on how to connect a phase-to-phase connected VT to the IED

Figure 22 gives an example how to connect a phase-to-phase connected VT to the IED. It gives an overview of the required actions by the user in order to make this measurement available to the built-in protection and control functions within the IED. It shall be noted that this VT connection is only used on lower voltage levels (that is, rated primary voltage below 40 kV).
Figure 22: A Two phase-to-phase connected VT

Where:

1) shows how to connect the secondary side of a phase-to-phase VT to the VT inputs on the IED
2) is the TRM where these three voltage inputs are located. It shall be noted that for these three voltage inputs the following setting values shall be entered:
\[ VT_{prim}=13.8 \text{ kV} \]
\[ VT_{sec}=120 \text{ V} \]
Please note that inside the IED only ratio of these two parameters is used.
3) are three connections made in the Signal Matrix tool (SMT), Application configuration tool (ACT), which connects these three voltage inputs to first three input channels of the preprocessing function block 5). Depending on the type of functions, which need this voltage information, more than one preprocessing block might be connected in parallel to these three VT inputs
4) shows that in this example the fourth (that is, residual) input channel of the preprocessing block is not connected in SMT. Note. If the parameters \( U_{L1} \), \( U_{L2} \), \( U_{L3} \), \( U_N \) should be used the open delta must be connected here.
5) Preprocessing block has a task to digitally filter the connected analog inputs and calculate:
   - fundamental frequency phasors for all four input channels
   - harmonic content for all four input channels
   - positive, negative and zero sequence quantities by using the fundamental frequency phasors for the first three input channels (channel one taken as reference for sequence quantities)

These calculated values are then available for all built-in protection and control functions within the IED, which are connected to this preprocessing function block in the configuration tool. For this application most of the preprocessing settings can be left to the default values. However the following settings shall be set as shown here:
\[ ConnectionType=Ph-Ph \]
\[ UBase=13.8 \text{ kV} \]
If frequency tracking and compensation is required (this feature is typically required only for IEDs installed in the generating stations) then the setting parameters \( DFTReference \) shall be set accordingly.
4.2.4.5 Example on how to connect an open delta VT to the IED for high impedance earthed or unearthed networks

Figure 23 gives an example about the wiring of an open delta VT to the IED for high impedance earthed or unearthed power systems. It shall be noted that this type of VT connection presents a secondary voltage proportional to 3U0 to the IED.

In case of a solid earth fault close to the VT location the primary value of 3Uo will be equal to:

$$3U_0 = \sqrt{3} \cdot U_{ph-N} = 3 \cdot U_{ph-N}$$

(Equation 3)

The primary rated voltage of an open Delta VT is always equal to $U_{ph-E}$. Three series connected VT secondary windings gives a secondary voltage equal to three times the individual VT secondary winding rating. Thus the secondary windings of open delta VTs quite often have a secondary rated voltage equal to one third of the rated phase-to-phase VT secondary voltage (110/3V in this particular example).

Figure 23 gives overview of required actions by the user in order to make this measurement available to the built-in protection and control functions within the IED as well.

Figure 23: Open delta connected VT in high impedance earthed power system
Where:

1) shows how to connect the secondary side of the open delta VT to one VT input on the IED.

+3U₀ shall be connected to the IED

2) is the TRM where this voltage input is located. It shall be noted that for this voltage input the following setting values shall be entered:

\[ VT_{prim} = \sqrt{3} \cdot 6.6 = 11.43 \text{kV} \]  
\[ \text{(Equation 4)} \]

\[ VT_{sec} = 3 \cdot \frac{110}{3} = 110 \text{V} \]  
\[ \text{(Equation 5)} \]

Inside the IED, only the ratio of these two parameters is used. It shall be noted that the ratio of the entered values exactly corresponds to ratio of one individual open delta VT.

\[ \frac{\sqrt{3} \cdot 6.6}{110} = \frac{6.6/\sqrt{3}}{110/3} \]  
\[ \text{(Equation 6)} \]

3) shows that in this example the first three input channel of the preprocessing block is not connected in SMT tool or ACT tool.

4) shows the connection made in Signal Matrix Tool (SMT), Application configuration tool (ACT), which connect this voltage input to the fourth input channel of the preprocessing function block 5).

5) is a Preprocessing block that has the task to digitally filter the connected analog input and calculate:

- fundamental frequency phasors for all four input channels
- harmonic content for all four input channels
- positive, negative and zero sequence quantities by using the fundamental frequency phasors for the first three input channels (channel one taken as reference for sequence quantities)

These calculated values are then available for all built-in protection and control functions within the IED, which are connected to this preprocessing function block in the configuration tool. For this application most of the preprocessing settings can be left to the default values. If frequency tracking and compensation is required (this feature is typically required only for IEDs installed in the generating stations ) then the setting parameters DFTReference shall be set accordingly.

### 4.2.4.6 Example how to connect the open delta VT to the IED for low impedance earthed or solidly earthed power systems

Figure 24 gives an example about the connection of an open delta VT to the IED for low impedance earthed or solidly earthed power systems. It shall be noted that this type of VT connection presents secondary voltage proportional to 3U₀ to the IED.

In case of a solid earth fault close to the VT location the primary value of 3U₀ will be equal to:
The primary rated voltage of such VT is always equal to U_{Ph-E}. Therefore, three series connected VT secondary windings will give the secondary voltage equal only to one individual VT secondary winding rating. Thus the secondary windings of such open delta VTs quite often have a secondary rated voltage close to rated phase-to-phase VT secondary voltage, that is, 115V or 115/\sqrt{3}V as in this particular example. Figure 24 gives an overview of the actions which are needed to make this measurement available to the built-in protection and control functions within the IED.

\[ 3U_o = \frac{U_{Ph-E}}{\sqrt{3}} = U_{Ph-E} \]  

(Equation 7)

Figure 24: Open delta connected VT in low impedance or solidly earthed power system
Where:

1) shows how to connect the secondary side of open delta VT to one VT input in the IED.

   +3U₀ shall be connected to the IED.

2) is TRM where this voltage input is located. It shall be noted that for this voltage input the following setting values shall be entered:

\[ VT_{prim} = \sqrt{3} \cdot \frac{138}{\sqrt{3}} = 138kV \]  
(Equation 8)

\[ VT_{sec} = \sqrt{3} \cdot \frac{115}{\sqrt{3}} = 115V \]  
(Equation 9)

Inside the IED, only the ratio of these two parameters is used. It shall be noted that the ratio of the entered values exactly corresponds to ratio of one individual open delta VT.

\[ \frac{138}{115} = \frac{138}{\sqrt{3}} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{115}{\sqrt{3}} \]  
(Equation 10)

3) shows that in this example the first three input channel of the preprocessing block is not connected in SMT tool.

4) shows the connection made in Signal Matrix Tool (SMT), which connect this voltage input to the fourth input channel of the preprocessing function block 4).

5) preprocessing block has a task to digitally filter the connected analog inputs and calculate:
   - fundamental frequency phasors for all four input channels
   - harmonic content for all four input channels
   - positive, negative and zero sequence quantities by using the fundamental frequency phasors for the first three input channels (channel one taken as reference for sequence quantities)

These calculated values are then available for all built-in protection and control functions within the IED, which are connected to this preprocessing function block in the configuration tool. For this application most of the preprocessing settings can be left to the default values.

If frequency tracking and compensation is required (this feature is typically required only for IEDs installed in the generating stations) then the setting parameters \textit{DFTReference} shall be set accordingly.

### 4.2.4.7 Example on how to connect a neutral point VT to the IED

Figure 25 gives an example on how to connect a neutral point VT to the IED. This type of VT connection presents secondary voltage proportional to \( U_0 \) to the IED.
In case of a solid earth fault in high impedance earthed or unearthed systems the primary value of Uo voltage will be equal to:

\[
U_0 = \frac{U_n - \delta}{\sqrt{3}} = U_n - \delta
\]

(Equation 11)

Figure 25 gives an overview of required actions by the user in order to make this measurement available to the built-in protection and control functions within the IED.

**Figure 25: Neutral point connected VT**

Where:

1) shows how to connect the secondary side of neutral point VT to one VT input in the IED.

- \( U_0 \) shall be connected to the IED.

2) is the TRM or AIM where this voltage input is located. For this voltage input the following setting values shall be entered:

\[
VT_{prim} = \frac{6.6}{\sqrt{3}} = 3.81kV
\]

(Equation 12)

\[
VT_{sec} = 100V
\]

(Equation 13)

Inside the IED, only the ratio of these two parameters is used. It shall be noted that the ratio of the entered values exactly corresponds to ratio of the neutral point VT.

Table continues on next page
3) shows that in this example the first three input channel of the preprocessing block is not connected in SMT tool or ACT tool.

4) shows the connection made in Signal Matrix Tool (SMT), Application configuration tool (ACT), which connects this voltage input to the fourth input channel of the preprocessing function block 5).

5) is a preprocessing block that has the task to digitally filter the connected analog inputs and calculate:
   - fundamental frequency phasors for all four input channels
   - harmonic content for all four input channels
   - positive, negative and zero sequence quantities by using the fundamental frequency phasors for the first three input channels (channel one taken as reference for sequence quantities)

These calculated values are then available for all built-in protection and control functions within the IED, which are connected to this preprocessing function block in the configuration tool. For this application, most of the preprocessing settings can be left to the default values. If frequency tracking and compensation is required (this feature is typically required only for IEDs installed in the generating stations) then the setting parameters DFTReference shall be set accordingly.
Figure 26: Local human-machine interface

The LHMI of the IED contains the following elements

- Keypad
- Display (LCD)
- LED indicators
- Communication port for PCM600

The LHMI is used for setting, monitoring and controlling.
5.1 Display

The LHMI includes a graphical monochrome liquid crystal display (LCD) with a resolution of 320 x 240 pixels. The character size can vary. The amount of characters and rows fitting the view depends on the character size and the view that is shown.

The display view is divided into four basic areas.

![Display layout](image)

Figure 27: Display layout

1. Path
2. Content
3. Status
4. Scroll bar (appears when needed)

The function key button panel shows on request what actions are possible with the function buttons. Each function button has a LED indication that can be used as a feedback signal for the function button control action. The LED is connected to the required signal with PCM600.
5.2 LEDs

The LHMI includes three status LEDs above the display: Ready, Start and Trip.

There are 15 programmable indication LEDs on the front of the LHMI. Each LED can indicate three states with the colors: green, yellow and red. The texts related to each three-color LED are divided into three panels.

There are 3 separate panels of LEDs available. The 15 physical three-color LEDs in one LED group can indicate 45 different signals. Altogether, 135 signals can be indicated since there are
three LED groups. The LEDs are lit according to priority, with red being the highest and green the lowest priority. For example, if on one panel there is an indication that requires the green LED to be lit, and on another panel there is an indication that requires the red LED to be lit, the red LED takes priority and is lit. The LEDs can be configured with PCM600 and the operation mode can be selected with the LHMI or PCM600.

Information panels for the indication LEDs are shown by pressing the Multipage button. Pressing that button cycles through the three pages. A lit or un-acknowledged LED is indicated with a highlight. Such lines can be selected by using the Up/Down arrow buttons. Pressing the Enter key shows details about the selected LED. Pressing the ESC button exits from information pop-ups as well as from the LED panel as such.

The Multipage button has a LED. This LED is lit whenever any LED on any panel is lit. If there are un-acknowledged indication LEDs, then the Multipage LED blinks. To acknowledge LEDs, press the Clear button to enter the Reset menu (refer to description of this menu for details).

There are two additional LEDs which are next to the control buttons  and . These LEDs can indicate the status of two arbitrary binary signals by configuring the OPENCLOSE_LED function block. For instance, OPENCLOSE_LED can be connected to a circuit breaker to indicate the breaker open/close status on the LEDs.

![Figure 30: OPENCLOSE_LED connected to SXCBR](image)

### 5.3 Keypad

The LHMI keypad contains push-buttons which are used to navigate in different views or menus. The push-buttons are also used to acknowledge alarms, reset indications, provide help and switch between local and remote control mode.

The keypad also contains programmable push-buttons that can be configured either as menu shortcut or control buttons.
Figure 31: LHMI keypad with object control, navigation and command push-buttons and RJ-45 communication port

1...5  Function button
6    Close
7    Open
8    Escape
9    Left
10   Down
11   Up
12   Right
13   Key
14   Enter
15   Remote/Local
16   Uplink LED
17   Not in use
18   Multipage
19   Menu
20   Clear
21   Help
5.4 Local HMI functionality

5.4.1 Protection and alarm indication

Protection indicators
The protection indicator LEDs are Ready, Start and Trip.

The yellow and red status LEDs are configured in the disturbance recorder function, DRPRDRE, by connecting a start or trip signal from the actual function to a BxRBDR binary input function block using the PCM600 and configure the setting to Off, Start or Trip for that particular signal.

Table 12: Ready LED (green)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LED state</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Auxiliary supply voltage is disconnected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>Normal operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flashing</td>
<td>Internal fault has occurred.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 13: Start LED (yellow)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LED state</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Normal operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>A protection function has started and an indication message is displayed. The start indication is latching and must be reset via communication, LHMI or binary input on the LEDGEN component. To open the reset menu on the LHMI, press .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flashing</td>
<td>The IED is in test mode and protection functions are blocked, or the IEC61850 protocol is blocking one or more functions. The indication disappears when the IED is no longer in test mode and blocking is removed. The blocking of functions through the IEC61850 protocol can be reset in Main menu/Test/Reset IEC61850 Mod. The yellow LED changes to either ON or OFF state depending on the state of operation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 14: Trip LED (red)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LED state</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Normal operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON</td>
<td>A protection function has tripped. An indication message is displayed if the auto-indication feature is enabled in the local HMI. The trip indication is latching and must be reset via communication, LHMI or binary input on the LEDGEN component. To open the reset menu on the LHMI, press .</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flashing</td>
<td>Configuration mode.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Alarm indicators**

The 15 programmable three-color LEDs are used for alarm indication. An individual alarm/status signal, connected to any of the LED function blocks, can be assigned to one of the three LED colors when configuring the IED.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LED state</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>Normal operation. All activation signals are OFF.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| ON        | • Follow-S sequence: The activation signal is ON.  
           • LatchedColl-S sequence: The activation signal is ON, or it is off but the indication has not been acknowledged.  
           • LatchedAck-F-S sequence: The indication has been acknowledged, but the activation signal is still ON.  
           • LatchedAck-S-F sequence: The activation signal is ON, or it is off but the indication has not been acknowledged.  
           • LatchedReset-S sequence: The activation signal is ON, or it is off but the indication has not been acknowledged. |
| Flashing  | • Follow-F sequence: The activation signal is ON.  
           • LatchedAck-F-S sequence: The activation signal is ON, or it is off but the indication has not been acknowledged.  
           • LatchedAck-S-F sequence: The indication has been acknowledged, but the activation signal is still ON. |

**5.4.2 Parameter management**

The LHMI is used to access the relay parameters. Three types of parameters can be read and written.

- Numerical values
- String values
- Enumerated values

Numerical values are presented either in integer or in decimal format with minimum and maximum values. Character strings can be edited character by character. Enumerated values have a predefined set of selectable values.

**5.4.3 Front communication**

The RJ-45 port in the LHMI enables front communication.

- The green uplink LED on the left is lit when the cable is successfully connected to the port.
- The yellow LED is not used; it is always off.
Figure 32: RJ-45 communication port and green indicator LED

1  RJ-45 connector
2  Green indicator LED

The default IP address for the IED front port is 10.1.150.3 and the corresponding subnetwork mask is 255.255.254.0. It can be set through the local HMI path **Main menu/Configuration/Communication/Ethernet configuration/Front port/AP_FRONT**.

Ensure not to change the default IP address of the IED.

Do not connect the IED front port to a LAN. Connect only a single local PC with PCM600 to the front port. It is only intended for temporary use, such as commissioning and testing.
Section 6  Wide area measurement system

6.1  C37.118 Phasor Measurement Data Streaming Protocol Configuration PMUCONF

6.1.1  Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Configuration parameters for IEEE 1344 and C37.118 protocol</td>
<td>PMUCONF</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.1.2  Application

The IED supports the following IEEE synchrophasor standards:

- IEEE 1344-1995 (Both measurements and data communication)
- IEEE Std C37.118-2005 (Both measurements and data communication)
- IEEE Std C37.118.1-2011 and C37.118.1a-2014 (Measurements)
- IEEE Std C37.118.2-2011 (Data communication)

PMUCONF contains the PMU configuration parameters for both IEEE C37.118 and IEEE 1344 protocols. This means all the required settings and parameters in order to establish and define a number of TCP and/or UDP connections with one or more PDC clients (synchrophasor client). This includes port numbers, TCP/UDP IP addresses, and specific settings for IEEE C37.118 as well as IEEE 1344 protocols.

6.1.3  Operation principle

The Figure 33 demonstrates the communication configuration diagram. As can be seen, the IED can support communication with maximum 8 TCP clients and 6 UDP client groups, simultaneously. Every client can communicate with only one instance of the two available PMUREPORT function block instances at a time. It means that one client cannot communicate with both PMUREPORT:1 and PMUREPORT:2 at the same time. However, multiple clients can communicate with the same instance of PMUREPORT function block at the same time. For TCP clients, each client can decide to communicate with an existing instance of PMUREPORT by knowing the corresponding PMU ID for that PMUREPORT instance. Whereas, for UDP clients, the PMUREPORT instance for each UDP channel is defined by the user in the PMU and the client has to know the PMU ID corresponding to that instance in order to be able to communicate. More information is available in the sections Short guidance for the use of TCP and Short guidance for the use of UDP.
6.1.3.1 Short guidance for use of TCP

Port 7001 is used by the SPA on TCP/IP (field service tool). If the port is used for any other protocol, for example C37.118, the SPA on TCP/IP stops working.

The IED supports 8 concurrent TCP connections using IEEE1344 and/or C37.118 protocol. The following parameters are used to define the TCP connection between the IED and the TCP clients:

1. **1344TCPport** – TCP port for control of IEEE 1344 data for TCP clients
2. **C37.118TCPport** – TCP port for control of IEEE C37.118 data for TCP clients

As can be seen, there are two separate parameters in the IED for selecting port numbers for TCP connections; one for IEEE1344 protocol (1344TCPport) and another one for C37.118 protocol (C37.118TCPport). Client can communicate with the IED over IEEE1344 protocol using the selected TCP port defined in 1344TCPport, and can communicate with the IED over IEEE C37.118 protocol using the selected TCP port number in C37.118TCPport.

All the frames (the header frame, configuration frame, command frame and data frame) are communicated over the same TCP port. The client can request (by sending a command frame) a configuration and/or header via the TCP channel and the requested configuration and/or header will be sent back to the client (as Configuration frame/Header frame) over the same TCP channel.

Once the TCP client connects to the IED, the client has to necessarily send a command frame to start a communication. As shown in Figure 33, the IED can support 2 PMUREPORT instances and the client has to specify the PMU ID Code in order to know which PMUREPORT data needs to be sent out to that client. In this figure, X and Y are referring to the user-defined PMU ID Codes for PMUREPORT instances 1 or 2, respectively. It is up to the TCP client to decide which PMUREPORT function block shall communicate with that client. Upon successful reception of
the first command by the IED, the PMU ID will be extracted out of the command; if there is a
PMUREPORT instance configured in the IED with matching PMU ID, then the client connection
over TCP with the IED will be established and further communication will take place.
Otherwise, the connection will be terminated and the TCPCtrlCfgErrCnt is incremented in the
PMU Diagnostics on the Local HMI under Main menu/Diagnostics/Communication/PMU
diagnostics/PMUSTATUS:1

It is possible to turn off/on the TCP data communication by sending a IEEE1344 or C37.118
command frame remotely from the client to the PMU containing RTDOFF/RTDON command.

At any given point of time maximum of 8 TCP clients can be connected to the IED for
IEEE1344/C37.118 protocol. If there is an attempt made by the 9th client, the connection to the
new client will be terminated without influencing the connection of the other clients already
connected. A list of active clients can be seen on the Local HMI in the diagnostics menu under
Main menu/Diagnostics/Communication/PMU diagnostics/PMUSTATUS:1

6.1.3.2 Short guidance for use of UDP

The IED supports maximum of 6 concurrent UDP streams. They can be individually configured
to send IEEE1344 or C37.118 data frames as unicast / multicast. Note that [x] at the end of
each parameter is referring to the UDP stream number (UDP client group) and is a number
between 1 and 6. Each of the 6 UDP groups in the IED has the following settings:

1. SendDataUDP[x] – Enable / disable UDP data stream
2. ProtocolOnUDP[x] – Send IEEE1344 or C37.118 on UDP
3. PMUReportUDP[x] – Instance number of PMUREPORT function block that must send data
   on this UDP stream (UDP client group[x])
4. UDPDestAddress[x] – UDP destination address for UDP client group[x] (unicast / multicast
   address range)
5. UDPDestPort[x] – UDP destination port number for UDP client group[x]
6. TCPportUDPdataCtrl[x] – TCP port to control of data sent over UDP client group[x], i.e. to
   receive commands and send configuration frames
7. SendCfgOnUDP[x] – Send configuration frame 2 (CFG-2) on UDP for client group[x]

It is possible to turn off/on the UDP data communication either by setting the parameter
SendDataUDP[x] to Off/On locally in the PMU or by sending a C37.118 or IEEE1344 command
frame (RTDOFF/RTDON) remotely from the client to the PMU as defined in IEEE 1344/C37.118
standard.

However, such a remote control to stop the streams from the client is only possible when the
parameter SendDataUDP[x] is set to SetByProtocol. The command RTDOFF/RTDON sent by
the client is stored in the IED, i.e. if the IED is rebooted for some reason, the state of the
stream will remain the same.

If the parameter SendDataUDP[x] is set to On the RTDOFF/RTDON commands received from
the clients are ignored in the IED.

It is recommended not to set the parameter SendDataUDP[x] to SetByProtocol in case of a
multicast. This is because if one of the clients sends the RTDOFF command, all the clients will
stop receiving the frames.

The UDP implementation in the IED is a UDP_TCP. This means that by default, only the data
frames are sent out on UDP stream and the header frame, configuration frame and command
frame are sent over TCP. This makes the communication more reliable especially since
commands are sent over TCP which performs request/acknowledgment exchange to ensure
that no data (command in this case) is lost.

However, by setting the parameter SendCfgOnUDP[x] to On, the configuration frame 2 (CFG-2)
of IEEE C37.118 data stream is cyclically sent on the corresponding UDP stream (UDP client
group[x]) once per minute. This is useful in case of multicast UDP data stream when a lot of
PMU clients are receiving the same UDP stream from the same UDP group (UDP client group\[x\]).

As shown in Figure 33, there are maximum 2 instances of PMUREPORT function blocks available in the IED. Each UDP client group\[x\] can only connect to one of the PMUREPORT instances at the same time. This is defined in the PMU by the parameter PMUReportUDP\[x\] which is used to define the instance number of PMUREPORT function block that must send data on this UDP stream (UDP client group\[x\]).

The data streams in the IED can be sent as unicast or as multicast. The user-defined IP address set in the parameter UDPDestAddress\[x\] for each UDP stream defines if it is a Unicast or Multicast. The address range 224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255 (Class D IP addresses) is treated as multicast. Any other IP address outside this range is treated as unicast and the UDP data will be only sent to that specific unicast IP address. In addition to UDPDestAddress\[x\] parameter, UDPDestPort\[x\] parameter is used to define the UDP destination port number for UDP client group\[x\].

In case of multicast IP, it will be the network switches and routers that take care of replicating the packet to reach multiple receivers. Multicast mechanism uses network infrastructure efficiently by requiring the IED to send a packet only once, even if it needs to be delivered to a large number of receivers.

If there are more than one UDP client group defined as multicast, the user shall set different multicast IP addresses for each UDP group.

The PMU clients receiving the UDP frames can also connect to the IED to request (command frame) config frame 1, config frame 2, config frame 3, or header frame, and to disable/enable real time data. This can be done by connecting to the TCP port selected in TCPportUDPdataCtrl\[x\] for each UDP group. This connection is done using TCP. The IED allows 4 concurrent client connections for every TCPportUDPdataCtrl\[x\] port (for each UDP client group\[x\]).

If the client tries to connect on TCPportUDPdataCtrl\[x\] port using a PMU-ID other than what is configured for that PMUREPORT instance (PMUReportUDP\[x\]), then that client is immediately disconnected and the UDPCtrlCfgErrCnt is incremented in PMU Diagnostics on LHMI at Main menu/Diagnostics/Communication/PMU diagnostics/PMUSTATUS:1

Even if the parameter SendDataUDP\[x\] is set to Off it is still possible for the clients to connect on the TCP port and request the configuration frames.

### 6.2 Protocol reporting via IEEE 1344 and C37.118 PMUREPORT

#### 6.2.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Protocol reporting via IEEE 1344 and C37.118</td>
<td>PMUREPORT</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 6.2.2 Application

The phasor measurement reporting block moves the phasor calculations into an IEEE C37.118 and/or IEEE 1344 synchrophasor frame format. The PMUREPORT block contains parameters for PMU performance class and reporting rate, the IDCODE and Global PMU ID, format of the
data streamed through the protocol, the type of reported synchrophasors, as well as settings for reporting analog and digital signals.

The message generated by the PMUREPORT function block is set in accordance with the IEEE C37.118 and/or IEEE 1344 standards.

There are settings for Phasor type (positive sequence, negative sequence or zero sequence in case of 3-phase phasor and L1, L2 or L3 in case of single phase phasor), PMU's Service class (Protection or Measurement), Phasor representation (polar or rectangular) and the data types for phasor data, analog data and frequency data.

Synchrophasor data can be reported to up to 8 clients over TCP and/or 6 UDP group clients for multicast or unicast transmission of phasor data from the IED. More information regarding synchrophasor communication structure and TCP/UDP configuration is available in section C37.118 Phasor Measurement Data Streaming Protocol Configuration.

Multiple PMU functionality can be configured in the IED, which can stream out same or different data at different reporting rates or different performance (service) classes. There are 2 instances of PMU functionality available in the IED. Each instance of PMU functionality includes a set of PMU reporting function blocks tagged by the same instance number (1 or 2). As shown in the following figures, each set of PMU reporting function blocks includes PMUREPORT, PHASORREPORT1-4, ANALOGREPORT1-3, and BINARYREPORT1-3 function blocks. In general, each instance of PMU functionality has 32 configurable phasor channels (PHASORREPORT1–4 blocks), 24 analog channels (ANALOGREPORT1–3 blocks), and 28 digital channels (24 digital-report channels in BINARYREPORT1–3 and 4 trigger-report channels in PMUREPORT function block). Special rules shall be taken into account in PCM600 for Application Configuration and Parameter Settings of multiple PMUREPORT blocks. These rules are explained in the Application Manual in section PMU Report Function Blocks Connection Rules.

Figure 34 shows both instances of the PMUREPORT function block. As seen, each PMUREPORT instance has 4 predefined binary input signals corresponding to the Bits 03-00: Trigger Reason defined in STAT field of the Data frame in IEEE C37.118.2 standard. These are predefined inputs for Frequency Trigger, Rate of Change of Frequency trigger, Magnitude High and Magnitude Low triggers.

Figure 34: Multiple instances of PMUREPORT function block

Figure 35 shows both instances of the PHASORREPORT function blocks. The instance number is visible in the bottom of each function block. For each instance, there are four separate PHASORREPORT blocks including 32 configurable phasor channels (8 phasor channels in each PHASORREPORT block). Each phasor channel can be configured as a 3-phase (symmetrical components positive/negative/zero) or single-phase phasor (L1/L2/L3).
Figure 35: Multiple instances of PHASORREPORT blocks

Figure 36 shows both instances of ANALOGREPORT function blocks. The instance number is visible in the bottom of each function block. For each instance, there are three separate ANALOGREPORT blocks capable of reporting up to 24 Analog signals (8 Analog signals in each ANALOGREPORT block). These can include for example transfer of active and reactive power or reporting the milliampere input signals to the PDC clients as defined in IEEE C37.118 data frame format.

Figure 36: Multiple instances of ANALOGREPORT blocks

Figure 37 shows both instances of BINARYREPORT function blocks. The instance number is visible in the bottom of each function block. For each instance, there are three separate BINARYREPORT blocks capable of reporting up to 24 Binary signals (8 Binary signals in each BINARYREPORT block). These binary signals can be for example dis-connector or breaker position indications or internal/external protection alarm signals.
6.2.3 Operation principle

The Phasor Measurement Unit (PMU) features three main functional principles:

- To measure the power system related AC quantities (voltage, current) and to calculate the phasor representation of these quantities.
- To synchronize the calculated phasors with the UTC by time-tagging, in order to make synchrophasors (time is reference).
- To publish all phasor-related data by means of TCP/IP or UDP/IP, following the standard IEEE C37.118 protocol.

The C37.118 standard imposes requirements on the devices and describes the communication message structure and data. The PMU complies with all the standard requirements with a specific attention to the Total Vector Error (TVE) requirement. The TVE is calculated using the following equation:

\[
TVE = \sqrt{\frac{(X_r(n) - X_r)^2 + (X_i(n) - X_i)^2}{X_r^2 + X_i^2}}
\]  

(Equation 14)

where,

- \(X_r(n)\) and \(X_i(n)\) are the measured values
- \(X_r\) and \(X_i\) are the theoretical values

In order to comply with TVE requirements, special calibration is done in the factory on the analog input channels of the PMU, resulting in increased accuracy of the measurements. The IEEE C37.118 standard also imposes a variety of steady state and dynamic requirements which are fulfilled in the IED with the help of high accuracy measurements and advanced filtering techniques.

Figure 38 shows an overview of the PMU functionality and operation. In this figure, only one instance of PMUREPORT (PMUREPORT1) is shown. Note that connection of different signals to the PMUREPORT, in this figure, is only an example and the actual connections and reported signals on the IEEEC37.118/1344 can be defined by the user.
The TRM modules are individually AC-calibrated in the factory. The calibration data is stored in the prepared area of the TRM EEPROM. The pre-processor block is extended with calibration compensation and a new angle reference method based on timestamps. The AI3P output of the preprocessor block is used to provide the required information for each respective PMUREPORT phasor channel. More information about preprocessor block is available in the section Signal matrix for analog inputs SMAI.

### 6.2.3.1 Frequency reporting

By using patented algorithm the IED can track the power system frequency in quite wide range from 9 Hz to 95 Hz. In order to do that, the three-phase voltage signal shall be connected to the IED. Then IED can adapt its filtering algorithm in order to properly measure phasors of all current and voltage signals connected to the IED. This feature is essential for proper operation of the PMUREPORT function or for protection during generator start-up and shut-down procedure.

This adaptive filtering is ensured by proper configuration and settings of all relevant pre-processing blocks, see Signal matrix for analog inputs in the Application manual. Note that in all preconfigured IEDs such configuration and settings are already made and the three-phase voltage are used as master for frequency tracking. With such settings the IED will be able to properly estimate the magnitude and the phase angle of measured current and voltage phasors in this wide frequency range.

One of the important functions of a PMU is reporting a very accurate system frequency to the PDC client. In the IED, each of the PMUREPORT instances is able to report an accurate frequency. Each voltage-connected preprocessor block (SMAI block) delivers the frequency data, derived from the analog input AC voltage values, to the respective voltage phasor...
channel. Every phasor channel has a user-settable parameter (PhasorXUseFreqSrc) to be used as a source of frequency data for reporting to the PDC client. It is very important to set this parameter to On for the voltage-connected phasor channels. There is an automatic frequency source selection logic to ensure an uninterrupted reporting of the system frequency to the PDC client. In this frequency source selection logic, the following general rules are applied:

- Only the voltage phasor channels are used
- The phasor channel with a lower channel number is prioritized to the one with a higher channel number

As a result, the first voltage phasor is always the one delivering the system frequency to the PDC client and if, by any reason, this voltage gets disconnected then the next available voltage phasor is automatically used as the frequency source and so on. If the first voltage phasor comes back, since it has a higher priority compare to the currently selected phasor channel, after 500 ms it will be automatically selected again as the frequency source. There is also an output available on the component which shows if the reference frequency is good, error or reference channel unavailable.

It is possible to monitor the status of the frequency reference channel (frequency source) for the respective PMUREPORT instance on Local HMI under Test/Function status/Communication/Station Communication/PMU Report/PMUREPORT:1/Outputs, where the FREQREFCHSEL output shows the selected channel as the reference for frequency and FREQREFCHERR output states if the reference frequency is good, or if there is an error or if the reference channel is unavailable. For more information refer to the table PMUREPORT monitored data.

Table 16: PMUREPORT Monitored data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Values (Range)</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TIMESTAT</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>1=Ready 0=Fail</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Time synchronization status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FREQ</td>
<td>REAL</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Hz</td>
<td>Frequency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FREQGRAD</td>
<td>REAL</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Rate of change of frequency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FREQREFCHSEL</td>
<td>INTEGER</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Frequency reference channel number selected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FREQREFCHERR</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0=Freq ref not available 1=Freq ref error 2=Freq ref available</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Frequency reference channel error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FREQTRIG</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Frequency trigger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DFDTTRIG</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Rate of change of frequency trigger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAGHIGHTRIG</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Magnitude high trigger</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAGLOWTRIG</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Magnitude low trigger</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.2.3.2 Reporting filters

The PMUREPORT function block implements the reporting filters designed to avoid aliasing as the reporting frequency is lower than the sample/calculation frequency. This means, the synchrophasor and frequency data which are included in the C37.118 synchrophasor streaming data are filtered in order to suppress aliasing effects, as the rate of the C37.118 data is slower than the data rate for internal processing. For this purpose, there is an anti-aliasing filter designed for each reporting rate. The correct anti-aliasing filter will be automatically selected based on the reporting rate and the performance class (P/M) settings. The filters are designed to attenuate all aliasing frequencies to at least -40 dB (a gain of 0.01) at M class.
The synchrophasor measurement is adaptive as it follows the fundamental frequency over a wide range despite the reporting rate.

For example, when the synchrophasor measurement follows the fundamental frequency beyond the fixed Nyquist limits in C37.118 standard, the anti-aliasing filter stopband moves with the measured fundamental frequency. This has to be considered in connection with C37.118, where the passband is defined relative to a fixed nominal frequency as shown in the equation 15.

\[ f_0 \pm \frac{F_s}{2} \]

where,

- \( f_0 \) is the nominal frequency
- \( F_s \) is the reporting rate

### 6.2.3.3 Scaling Factors for ANALOGREPORT channels

The internal calculation of analog values in the IED is based on 32 bit floating point. Therefore, if the user selects to report the analog data (AnalogDataType) as Integer, there will be a down-conversion of a 32 bit floating value to a new 16 bit integer value. In such a case, in order to optimize the resolution of the reported analog data, the user-defined analog scaling is implemented in the IED.

The analog scaling in the IED is automatically calculated by use of the user-defined parameters AnalogXRange for the respective analog channel X. The analog data value on the input X will have a range between -AnalogXRange and +AnalogXRange. The resulting scale factor will be applied to the reported analog data where applicable.

If the AnalogDataType is selected as Float, then these settings are ignored.

The analog scaling in the IED is calculated using the equation:

\[
\text{Scalefactor} = \frac{\text{AnalogXRange} \times 2}{65535.0}
\]

\[
\text{offset} = 0.0
\]

\[
65535.0 = 16 \text{ bit integer range}
\]

According to the IEEE C37.118.2 standard, the scale factors (conversion factor) for analog channels are defined in configuration frame 2 (CFG-2) and configuration frame 3 (CFG-3) frames as follows:

- **CFG-2 frame**: The field ANUNIT (4 bytes) specifies the conversion factor as a signed 24 bit word for user defined scaling. Since it is a 24 bit integer, in order to support the floating point scale factor, the scale factor itself is multiplied in 10, so that a minimum of 0.1 scale factor can be sent over the CFG-2 frame. The resulting scale factor is rounded to the nearest decimal value. The clients receiving the Analog scale factor over CFG-2 should divide the received scale factor by 10 and then apply it to the corresponding analog data value.

- **CFG-3 frame**: The field ANSCALE (8 bytes) specifies the conversion factor as \( X' = M \times X + B \) where; M is magnitude scaling in 32 bit floating point (first 4 bytes) and B is the offset in 32 bit floating point (last 4 bytes).
The server uses CFG-3 scale factor to scale the analog data values. As a result, the clients which use scale factors in CFG-3 in order to recalculate analog values, will get a better resolution than using the scale factors in CFG-2.

The following examples show how the scale factor is calculated.

Example 1:

\[ \text{AnalogXRange} = 3277.0 \]

The scale factor is calculated as follows:

\[ \text{scalefactor} = \frac{(3277.0 \times 2.0)}{65535.0} = 0.1 \text{ and offset} = 0.0 \]

The scale factor will be sent as 1 on configuration frame 2, and 0.1 on configuration frame 3. The range of analog values that can be transmitted in this case is -0.1 to -3276.8 and +0.1 to +3276.7.

Example 2:

\[ \text{AnalogXRange} = 4915.5 \]

The scale factor is calculated as follows:

\[ \text{scalefactor} = \frac{(4915.5 \times 2.0)}{65535.0} = 0.15 \text{ and offset} = 0.0 \]

The scale factor will be sent as 1 on configuration frame 2, and 0.15 on configuration frame 3. The range of analog values that can be transmitted in this case is -0.15 to -4915.5 and +0.15 to +4915.5.

Example 3:

\[ \text{AnalogXRange} = 1000000000 \]

The scale factor is calculated as follows:

\[ \text{scalefactor} = \frac{(1000000000 \times 2.0)}{65535.5} = 305180.43 \text{ and offset} = 0.0 \]

The scale factor will be sent as 3051804 on configuration frame 2, and 305180.43 on configuration frame 3. The range of analog values that can be transmitted in this case is -305181 to -10000000000 and +305181 to +10000000000.

6.2.3.4 PMU Report Function Blocks Connection Rules in PCM600 Application Configuration Tool (ACT)

There are 3 important general rules which have to be considered in PCM600 ACT for the connection of preprocessor blocks (SMAI) and 3PHSUM blocks to PHASORREPORT blocks:

Rule 1:
Only SMAI or 3PHSUM blocks shall be connected to PMU PHASORREPORT blocks and they shall have the same cycle time, 0.9 ms.

Figure 39 shows an example of correct connection of SMAI and PHASORREPORT blocks in ACT where both function blocks are working on 0.9 ms cycle time.

Violation of rule 1 results in PMU applications not running at all. The reason is the inconsistent cycle time. For example, in Figure 40, the SMAI block is updating its output every 3 ms while the PHASORREPORT block is expecting input every 0.9 ms. The PHASORREPORT filtering window is designed to receive updated input every 0.9 ms and therefore the application will fail.

Rule 2:

The same SMAI or 3PHSUM block can be connected to more than one PHASORREPORT block only if all the connected PHASORREPORT blocks have similar instance number or only if all the connected PHASORREPORT blocks have similar settings for SvcClass and ReportRate. Figure 41 shows the settings for PMUREPORT function block demonstrated by PCM600 Parameter Setting Tool (PST).
Figure 41:  **PMUREPORT settings in PCM600 PST**

Figure 42 shows an example of correct connection of SMAI and PHASORREPORT blocks in ACT where two different SMAI blocks are connected to different PHASORREPORT blocks with different instance numbers. In this example, as the PHASORREPORT blocks have different instance numbers and different settings for SvcClass and ReportRate, a separate SMAI block is used for each PHASORREPORT block.

![Diagram showing correct connection of SMAI and PHASORREPORT blocks](IEC140000126-2-en.vsd)

Figure 42: **An example of correct connection of SMAI and PHASORREPORT blocks in ACT**

Figure 43 shows an example of wrong connection of SMAI and PHASORREPORT blocks in ACT where the same SMAI block is connected to different PHASORREPORT blocks with different instance numbers. Such connection will be only correct if both connected PHASORREPORT blocks have similar settings for SvcClass and ReportRate. If settings for PMUREPORT instances differ for SvcClass or ReportRate, then PHASOR1 connection in PHASORREPORT1 instance 2 will not be compliant with IEEE C37.118 standard. The reason is that the filtering in SMAI/3PHSUM block is adapted according to the performance class (SvcClass) and reporting rate of the connected instance of PHASORREPORT function block. In this example, SMAI1 will adapt its filtering according to PHASORREPORT instance 1 (because of higher priority) and therefore PHASORREPORT instance 2 will receive data which does not match its performance class and report rate.

![Diagram showing wrong connection of SMAI and PHASORREPORT blocks](IEC140000127-2-en.vsd)
Figure 43: An example of wrong connection of SMAI and PHASORREPORT blocks in ACT

Rule 3:

This rule is only related to the connection of 3PHSUM block to the PHASORREPORT block. If 3PHSUM block is configured to use external DFT reference (from SMAI reference block), it shall only be connected to the same PHASORREPORT block instance as the one the SMAI reference block is connected to. In other words, both the SMAI reference block and 3PHSUM block (3PHSUM block with external DFT reference) shall be connected to the same instance of PHASORREPORT block (PHASOR1-32 of Instance number 1 or 2).

Figure 44 shows an example of correct connection of 3PHSUM and PHASORREPORT blocks in ACT where SMAI3 is configured as the reference block for DFT reference external out (DFTRefExtOut) and 3PHSUM uses external DFT reference (from SMAI3). Figures 45 and 46 show the corresponding setting parameters.

Figure 44: An example of correct connection of 3PHSUM and PHASORREPORT blocks in ACT
Figure 45: SMA11 setting parameters example-showing that SMAI3 is selected as the DFT reference (DFTRefGrp3)

Figure 46: 3PHSUM setting parameters example-showing that 3PHSUM is using the External DFT reference coming indirectly from SMAI3

Figure 47 shows an example of wrong connection of 3PHSUM and PHASORREPORT blocks in ACT where SMAI3 is configured as the reference block for DFT reference external out (DFTRefExtOut) and 3PHSUM uses external DFT reference (from SMAI3).
Figure 47: An example of wrong connection of 3PHSUM and PHASORREPORT blocks in ACT

If settings for PMUREPORT instances (PHASORREPORT1 instances 1 and 2 above) differ for SvcClass or ReportRate, then the synchrophasor reported by PHASOR2 connection from PHASORREPORT1 instance 2 will not be compliant with IEEE C37.118 standard. The reason is as in the rule 2, the filtering in SMAI/3PHSUM block is adapted according to the performance class (SvcClass) and reporting rate of the connected instance of PHASORREPORT function block. On the other hand, when 3PHSUM uses external DFT reference, it also adapts its filtering according to the SMAI reference block. Therefore, in order to avoid two different filtering applied to the 3PHSUM block, both SMAI reference block and 3PHSUM shall be connected to the same PHASORREPORT instance. In this example (Figure 47), SMAI3 adapts its filtering according to PHASORREPORT1 instance 2 (due to connection) and 3PHSUM is adapting its filtering according to PHASORREPORT1 instance 1. On the other hand, since 3PHSUM is set to receive external DFT reference from SMAI3, therefore If settings for PHASORREPORT1 instances 1 and 2 above differ for SvcClass or ReportRate, then 3PHSUM block will be affected by two different filtering at the same time which is not possible. For example in Figure 47, PHASOR2 from PHASORREPORT1 instance 1 may not be fully compliant with IEEE C37.118 standard.

**Note:** If the SMAI reference block is not connected to any PHASORREPORT block, then 3PHSUM block can be freely connected to any PHASORREPORT block regardless of its DFT reference setting.

**Note:** If more 3PHSUM blocks need to be used, all 3PHSUM blocks (using external DFT ref) have to be connected to the same instance of PHASORREPORT blocks (PHASOR1-32 of Instance number 1 or 2).

**Note:** If settings SvcClass and ReportRate are the same for different instances of PHASORREPORT blocks, then 3PHSUM block can be freely connected to any of them regardless of 3PHSUM block DFT reference setting or the reference SMAI block connection.

**Note:** Violation of rules 2 or 3 results in non-compliancy with IEEE C37.118 standard for some of the synchrophasors. In case of rule 2 violation, the non-compliancy only applies to synchrophasors from instance 2 and the synchrophasors from instance 1 will be still compliant. The non-compliancy with the standard may be quite obvious as in case of rule 2 violation with different SvcClass settings. This produces big angle error. On the other hand, it may be difficult to detect the non-compliancy with the standard if rule 2 is violated with different
ReportRates, or if rule 3 is violated. In such cases, the synchrophasors may only fail to comply (with small error) in some particular test case(s).

For more information regarding 3PHSUM block application, please refer to the Application Manual under section Basic IED functions.

### 6.2.4 Setting guidelines

Based on the functionality and appearance in PCM600, the PMU reporting functionality is categorized into 4 different categories (function block) as follows:

1. **PMUREPORT**
2. **PHASORREPORT**
3. **ANALOGREPORT**
4. **BINARYREPORT**

Each category has its corresponding parameter settings except for BINARYREPORT function block which does not have any specific parameters and settings.

1. **PMUREPORT** is the main function block which controls the operation of other PMU reporting function blocks. Each instance of PMUREPORT function block has the following parameters:
   - **Operation**: Enables/Disables the operation of the corresponding instance of PMU reporting functionality by choosing On/Off setting.
   - **SvcClass**: It refers to the 1-byte SVC_CLASS field of the configuration frame 3 (CFG-3) organization defined in IEEE C37.118.2 message format. Here the user can select the performance class (service class) used for synchrophasor data measurement according to IEEE C37.118.1 standard. The options are P_class or M_class.
   - **Global_PMU_ID**: It refers to the 16-byte G_PMU_ID field of the configuration frame 3 (CFG-3) organization defined in IEEE C37.118.2 message format. It is a 16-character (128 bits) user-assigned value which can be sent with the configuration 3 message. It allows uniquely identifying PMUs in a system that has more than 65535 PMUs. The coding for the 16 bytes is left to the user for assignment.
   - **PMUdataStreamIDCODE**: It refers to the 2-byte IDCODE field of the configuration frame and data frame organization defined in IEEE C37.118.2 message format. It is a user assigned ID number (1-65534) for each data stream sent out from the PMU. This is especially important when having multiple data streams (multiple PMU functionality).
   - **PhasorFormat**: It refers to the Bit 0 of the FORMAT field of the configuration frames 1, 2 and 3 organization defined in IEEE C37.118.2 message format. Here the user can select the format of the calculated synchrophasors. The options are Rectangular or Polar format. Rectangular format represents the synchrophasor as real and imaginary values, real value first \((a + bj)\) while the Polar format represents the synchrophasor as magnitude and angle, magnitude first \((A e^{j\alpha})\).
   - **PhasorDataType**: It refers to the Bit 1 of the FORMAT field of the configuration frames 1, 2 and 3 organization defined in IEEE C37.118.2 message format. Here the user can select the data type of the calculated synchrophasors. The options are...
**Integer or Float** data. The synchrophasor data are sent via the PHASORS field of data frame organization of IEEE C37.118.2 message format. Depends on the phasor data type, the size of PHASORS field can be 4 (Integer) or 8 (Float) bytes per IEEE C37.118.2 message.

**Integer** data type for the phasors corresponds to a 16-bit integer value. It represents a 16-bit signed integer, range –32 767 to +32 767, in rectangular format, and in polar format it represents a 16-bit unsigned integer range 0 to 65535 for the magnitude and a 16-bit signed integer, in radians × 10^4, range –31 416 to +31 416 for the angle. **Float** data type for the phasors corresponds to 32-bit values in IEEE floating-point format. In rectangular format, it represents real and imaginary, in engineering units (real value first) and in polar format it represents magnitude and angle, in engineering units (magnitude first) and angle in radians, range –π to + π.

**AnalogDataType**: It refers to the Bit 2 of the FORMAT field of the configuration frames 1, 2 and 3 organization defined in IEEE C37.118.2 message format. Here the user can select the type of the analog data which are reported along with the synchrophasor data over IEEE C37.118.2 message. The options are **Integer or Float** data corresponding to the 16-bit integer or 32-bit IEEE floating-point values, respectively. The analog data could be sampled data such as control signal or transducer values, or it can be active and reactive power measurement values from each feeder in the substation. Values and ranges are separately defined by user via the parameter settings related to the ANALOGREPORT function block. The analog data are sent via the ANALOG field of data frame organization of IEEE C37.118.2 message format. Depends on the analog data type, the size of ANALOG field can be 2 (Integer) or 4 (Float) bytes per IEEE C37.118.2 message. More information is available under the section Scaling Factors for ANALOGREPORT channels.

**FrequencyDataType**: It refers to the Bit 3 of the FORMAT field of the configuration frames 1, 2 and 3 organization defined in IEEE C37.118.2 message format. Here the user can select the type of the frequency-deviation and rate-of-change-of-frequency data (FREQ/DFREQ) which can be reported along with the synchrophasor data over IEEE C37.118.2 message. The options are **Integer or Float** data corresponding to the 16-bit integer or 32-bit IEEE floating-point value, respectively.

The frequency-deviation and rate-of-change-of-frequency data are sent via the FREQ and DFREQ fields of data frame organization of IEEE C37.118.2 message format. Depends on the selected data type, the size of each field can be 2 (Integer) or 4 (Float) bytes per IEEE C37.118.2 message.

The data sent via the FREQ field is frequency deviation from nominal frequency (50 Hz or 60 Hz), in mHz. It is ranged from –32.767 to +32.767 Hz. **Integer** data type for frequency-deviation data represents 16-bit signed integers, range –32 767 to +32 767, and **Float** data type represents actual frequency value in IEEE floating-point format.

The data sent via the DFREQ field is Rate Of Change Of Frequency (ROCOF), in Hertz per second times 100. It is ranged from –327.67 to +327.67 Hz per second. **Integer** data type for ROCOF data represents 16-bit signed integers, range –32 767 to +32 767, and **Float** data type represents actual value in IEEE floating-point format.

**SendFreqInfo**: Enables/Disables sending of the frequency-deviation and Rate Of Change Of Frequency (ROCOF) data by choosing On/Off setting.

**ReportRate**: It refers to the 2-byte DATA_RATE field of the configuration frames 1, 2 and 3 organization defined in IEEE C37.118.2 message format. The DATA_RATE field is identifying the Rate of phasor data transmissions by a 2-byte integer word (–32 767 to +32 767). Here the user can select the synchrophasor data reporting rate from the PMU based on the number of frames per second. In general, the IED has 5 different reporting rates (10, 25, 50, 100, 200 fr/s) on the 50 Hz system frequency, and has 8 different reporting rates (10, 12, 15, 20, 30, 60, 120, 240 fr/s) on the 60 Hz system frequency. The options are as follows:

- 10/10 fr/s (60/50Hz)
- 12/10 fr/s (60/50Hz)
- 15/10 fr/s (60/50Hz)
- 20/25 fr/s (60/50Hz)
- 30/25 fr/s (60/50Hz)
The first number is identifying the reporting rate in a 60Hz system, and the second number is the reporting rate in a 50Hz system. For example, if the selected setting is 15/10 fr/s (60/50Hz), this means that the synchrophasor data reporting rate would be 15 frames per second if the system frequency is 60Hz. Likewise, if the system frequency is 50Hz, the selected rate is equal to 10 frames per second.

- **RptTimetag**: It refers to the method of time-tagging used in the IED which is related to the phasor estimation and filtering technique. The options are FirstSample, MiddleSample and LastSample. The time-stamp of the PMU output represents the phasor equivalent, frequency, and ROCOF of the power system signal at the time it is applied to the PMU input. All of these estimates must be compensated for PMU processing delays including analog input filtering, sampling, and estimation group delay. If the sample time tags are compensated for all input delays, the time tag of the sample in the middle of the estimation window can be used for the phasor estimation (output) time tag as long as the filtering coefficients are symmetrical across the filtering window.

**Note**: It is recommended to set this parameter on MiddleSample.

2. **PHASORREPORT** is the function block responsible for reporting the synchrophasors. Each instance of PMUREPORT function block has 32 phasor channels with the following setting parameters; where X is a number from 1 to 32:

- **PhasorXReport**: Enables/Disables the phasor channel X (reporting of PhasorX) by choosing On/Off setting.
- **PhasorX**: The group selector for PhasorX. Here, the user can select the type of reported synchrophasor from the phasor channel X as either a 3-phase symmetrical component or a single-phase phasor. The options are as follows:
  - A
  - B
  - C
  - NEGSEQ
  - POSSEQ
  - ZEROSEQ
- **PhasorXUseFreqSrc**: Enables/Disables the contribution of Phasor channel X in automatic frequency source selection by choosing On/Off setting. Each voltage-connected preprocessor block delivers the frequency data, derived from the analog input AC voltage values, to the respective voltage phasor channel. Every phasor channel has a user-settable parameter (PhasorXUseFreqSrc) to be used as a source of frequency data for reporting to the PDC client. It is very important to set this parameter to On for the voltage-connected phasor channels. There is an automatic frequency source selection logic to ensure an uninterrupted reporting of the system frequency to the PDC client. More information is available under the section Frequency reporting.

3. **ANALOGREPORT** is the function block responsible for reporting the analog values. Each instance of ANALOGREPORT function block has 24 analog channels with the following setting parameters; where X is a number from 1 to 24:

- **AnalogXRange**: This parameter defines a range between -AnalogXRange and +AnalogXRange for AnalogX value. The range will be used by the IED to apply a proper scale factor to the AnalogX values when Integer format is used. It refers to the 4-byte ANUNIT field of the configuration frames 1, 2 organization and the 8-byte ANSCALE field of the configuration frame 3 organization defined in IEEE C37.118.2 message format. The AnalogXRange value can be a number between 3277.0 and 10000000000. This setting is only important if the AnalogDataType setting is selected as Integer. More information is available under the section Scaling Factors for ANALOGREPORT channels.
- **AnalogXUnitType**: Unit type for analog signal X. It refers to the 4-byte ANUNIT field of the configuration frames 1, 2 organization defined in IEEE C37.118.2 message format. The AnalogXUnitType value is a number between 3277.0 and 10000000000. More information is available under the section Scaling Factors for ANALOGREPORT channels.
format. The options are *Single point-on-wave*, *RMS of analog input* and *Peak of analog input*. 
Section 7  Differential protection

7.1  High impedance differential protection, single phase  HZPDIF

7.1.1  Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High impedance differential protection, single phase</td>
<td>HZPDIF</td>
<td></td>
<td>Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.1.2  Application

The 1Ph High impedance differential protection function HZPDIF can be used as:

- Generator differential protection
- Reactor differential protection
- Busbar differential protection
- Autotransformer differential protection (for common and serial windings only)
- T-feeder differential protection
- Capacitor differential protection
- Restricted earth fault protection for transformer, generator and shunt reactor windings
- Restricted earth fault protection

The application is dependent on the primary system arrangements and location of breakers, available CT cores and so on.
7.1.2.1 The basics of the high impedance principle

The high impedance differential protection principle has been used for many years and is well documented in literature publicly available. Its operating principle provides very good sensitivity and high speed operation. One main benefit offered by the principle is an absolute stability (that is, no operation) for external faults even in the presence of heavy CT saturation. The principle is based on the CT secondary current circulating between involved current transformers and not through the IED due to high impedance in the measuring branch. This stabilizing resistance is in the range of hundreds of ohms and sometimes above one kilo Ohm. When an internal fault occurs the current cannot circulate and is forced through the measuring branch causing relay operation.

It should be remembered that the whole scheme, its built-in components and wiring must be adequately maintained throughout the lifetime of the equipment in order to be able to withstand the high voltage peaks (that is, pulses) which may appear during an internal fault. Otherwise any flash-over in CT secondary circuits or any other part of the scheme may prevent correct operation of the high impedance differential relay for an actual internal fault.

![Diagram](IEC05000164-2-en.vsd)
calculations are made with the worst situations in mind and a minimum operating voltage $U_R$ is calculated according to equation 16:

$$ UR > IF_{max} \times (R_{ct} + R_l) $$

(Equation 16)

where:

- $IF_{max}$ is the maximum through fault current at the secondary side of the CT
- $R_{ct}$ is the current transformer secondary winding resistance and
- $R_l$ is the maximum loop resistance of the circuit at any CT.

The minimum operating voltage has to be calculated (all loops) and the IED function is set higher than the highest achieved value (setting $U>Trip$). As the loop resistance is the value to the connection point from each CT, it is advisable to do all the CT core summations in the switchgear to have shortest possible loops. This will give lower setting values and also a better balanced scheme. The connection in to the control room can then be from the most central bay.

For an internal fault, all involved CTs will try to feed current through the measuring branch. Depending on the size of current transformer, relatively high voltages will be developed across the series resistor. Note that very high peak voltages can appear. To prevent the risk of flashover in the circuit, a voltage limiter must be included. The voltage limiter is a voltage dependent resistor (Metrosil).

The external unit with stabilizing resistor has a value of either 6800 ohms or 1800 ohms (depending on ordered alternative) with a sliding link to allow adjustment to the required value. Select a suitable value of the resistor based on the UR voltage calculated. A higher resistance value will give a higher sensitivity and a lower value a lower sensitivity of the relay.

The function has a recommended operating current range 40 mA to 1.0A for 1 A inputs and 200 mA to 5A for 5A inputs. This, together with the selected and set value, is used to calculate the required value of current at the set $U>Trip$ and $SeriesResitor$ values.

The CT inputs used for 1Ph High impedance differential protection HZPDIF function, shall be set to have ratio 1:1. So the parameters $CT_{secx}$ and $CT_{primx}$ of the relevant channel $x$ of TRM and/or AIM shall be set equal to 1 A by PST in PCM600; The parameter $CTStarPointx$ may be set to $ToObject$.

The tables 17, 18 below show, the operating currents for different settings of operating voltages and selected resistances. Adjust as required based on tables 17, 18 or to values in between as required for the application.

Minimum ohms can be difficult to adjust due to the small value compared to the total value.

Normally the voltage can be increased to higher values than the calculated minimum $U>Trip$ with a minor change of total operating values as long as this is done by adjusting the resistor to a higher value. Check the sensitivity calculation below for reference.
Table 17: 1 A channels: input with minimum operating down to 40 mA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating voltage $U_{\text{Trip}}$</th>
<th>Stabilizing resistor R ohms</th>
<th>Operating current level 1 A</th>
<th>Stabilizing resistor R ohms</th>
<th>Operating current level 1 A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20 V</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>0.040 A</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 V</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0.040 A</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 V</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>0.040 A</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>0.100 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 V</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0.040 A</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>0.100 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 V</td>
<td>2500</td>
<td>0.040 A</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0.100 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150 V</td>
<td>3750</td>
<td>0.040 A</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>0.100 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 V</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>0.040 A</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0.100 A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 18: 5 A channels: input with minimum operating down to 100 mA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Operating voltage $U_{\text{Trip}}$</th>
<th>Stabilizing resistor R1 ohms</th>
<th>Operating current level 5 A</th>
<th>Stabilizing resistor R1 ohms</th>
<th>Operating current level 5 A</th>
<th>Stabilizing resistor R1 ohms</th>
<th>Operating current level 5 A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20 V</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.100 A</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.200 A</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 V</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>0.100 A</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.200 A</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0.400 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 V</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>0.100 A</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>0.200 A</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>0.400 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 V</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>0.100 A</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>0.200 A</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>0.400 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 V</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0.100 A</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>0.200 A</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>0.400 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150 V</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>0.100 A</td>
<td>750</td>
<td>0.200 A</td>
<td>375</td>
<td>0.400 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 V</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>0.100 A</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>0.200 A</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>0.400 A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The current transformer saturation voltage must be at least $2 \times U_{\text{Trip}}$ to have sufficient operating margin. This must be checked after calculation of $U_{\text{Trip}}$.

When the R value has been selected and the $U_{\text{Trip}}$ value has been set, the sensitivity of the scheme $IP$ can be calculated. The IED sensitivity is decided by the total current in the circuit according to equation 17.

$$IP = n \cdot (IR + I_{\text{res}} + \sum I_{\text{mag}})$$

(Equation 17)

where:
- $n$ is the CT ratio
- $IP$ is the primary current at IED pickup,
- $IR$ is the IED pickup current ($U_{\text{Trip}}$/SeriesResistor),
- $I_{\text{res}}$ is the current through the voltage limiter and
- $\sum I_{\text{mag}}$ is the sum of the magnetizing currents from all CTs in the circuit (for example, 4 for restricted earth fault protection, 2 for reactor differential protection, 3-5 for autotransformer differential protection).

It should be remembered that the vectorial sum of the currents must be used (IEDs, Metrosil and resistor currents are resistive). The current measurement is insensitive to DC component
in fault current to allow the use of only the AC components of the fault current in the above calculations.

The voltage dependent resistor (Metrosil) characteristic is shown in Figure 55.

**Series resistor thermal capacity**

The series resistor is dimensioned for 200 W. Preferable the $U_{\text{Trip}}$ /SeriesResistor should always be lower than 200 W to allow continuous activation during testing. If this value is exceeded, testing should be done with a transient faults.
a) Through load situation

b) Through fault situation

c) Internal faults

Figure 50: The high impedance principle for one phase with two current transformer inputs
7.1.3 Connection examples for high impedance differential protection

**WARNING! USE EXTREME CAUTION!** Dangerously high voltages might be present on this equipment, especially on the plate with resistors. De-energize the primary object protected with this equipment before connecting or disconnecting wiring or performing any maintenance. The plate with resistors should be provided with a protective cover, mounted in a separate box or in a locked cubicle. National law and standards shall be followed.

7.1.3.1 Connections for three-phase high impedance differential protection

Generator, reactor or busbar differential protection is a typical application for three-phase high impedance differential protection. Typical CT connections for three-phase high impedance differential protection scheme are shown in figure 51.

![Diagram](image)

**Figure 51: CT connections for high impedance differential protection**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pos</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Scheme earthing point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Three-phase plate with setting resistors and metrosils. Protective earth is a separate 4 mm screw terminal on the plate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Necessary connection for three-phasemetrosil set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Position of optional test switch for secondary injection into the high impedance differential IED.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Necessary connection for setting resistors.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is important to insure that only one earthing point exist in this scheme.
6 Factory-made star point on a three-phase setting resistor set.

The star point connector must be removed for installations with 670 series IEDs. This star point is required for RADHA schemes only.

7 Connections of three individual phase currents for high impedance scheme to three CT inputs in the IED.

7.1.3.2 Connections for 1Ph High impedance differential protection HZPDIF

Restricted earth fault protection is a typical application for 1Ph High impedance differential protection HZPDIF. Typical CT connections for the high impedance based protection scheme are shown in figure 52.

![Diagram of CT connections for restricted earth fault protection](image)

**Figure 52:** CT connections for restricted earth fault protection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pos</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Scheme earthing point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>One-phase plate with stabilizing resistor and metrosil. Protective earth is a separate 4 mm screw terminal on the plate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Necessary connection for the metrosil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Position of optional test switch for secondary injection into the high impedance differential IED.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Necessary connection for stabilizing resistor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>How to connect the high impedance restricted earth fault protection scheme to one CT input in IED.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ensure that only one earthing point exists in this scheme.
7.1.4 Setting guidelines

The setting calculations are individual for each application. Refer to the different application descriptions below.

7.1.4.1 Configuration

The configuration is done in the Application Configuration tool.

7.1.4.2 Settings of protection function

**Operation:** The operation of the high impedance differential function can be switched **On** or **Off**.

**U>Alarm:** Set the alarm level. The sensitivity can roughly be calculated as a certain percentage of the selected Trip level. A typical setting is 10% of **U>Trip**. This alarm stage can be used for scheme CT supervision.

**tAlarm:** Set the time delay for the alarm. A typical setting is 2-3 seconds.

**U>Trip:** Set the trip level according to the calculations (see examples below for a guidance). The level is selected with margin to the calculated required voltage to achieve stability. Values can be within 20V - 400V range dependent on the application.

**SeriesResistor:** Set the value of the used stabilizing series resistor. Calculate the value according to the examples for each application. Adjust the resistor as close as possible to the calculated value. Measure the value achieved and set this value for this parameter.

The value shall always be high impedance. This means for example, for 1A circuits say bigger than 400 ohms (400 VA) and for 5A circuits say bigger than 100 ohms (2500 VA). This ensures that the current will circulate and not go through the differential circuit at through faults.

That the settings of **U>Alarm**, **U>Trip** and **SeriesResistor** must be chosen such that both **U>Alarm/ SeriesResistor** and **U>Trip/ SeriesResistor** are >4% of IRated of the used current input. Normally the settings shall also be such that **U>Alarm/ SeriesResistor** and **U>Trip/ SeriesResistor** both gives a value <4*IRated of the used current input. If not, the limitation in how long time the actual current is allowed to persist not to overload the current input must be considered especially during the secondary testing.

7.1.4.3 T-feeder protection

In many busbar arrangements such as one-and a half breaker, ring breaker, mesh corner, there will be a T-feeder from the current transformer at the breakers up to the current transformers in the feeder circuit (for example, in the transformer bushings). It is often required to separate the protection zones that the feeder is protected with one scheme while the T-zone is protected with a separate differential protection scheme. The 1Ph high impedance differential HZPDIF function in the IED allows this to be done efficiently, see Figure 53.
Figure 53: The protection scheme utilizing the high impedance function for the T-feeder

Normally this scheme is set to achieve a sensitivity of around 20 percent of the used CT primary rating so that a low ohmic value can be used for the series resistor.
It is strongly recommended to use the highest tap of the CT whenever high impedance protection is used. This helps in utilizing maximum CT capability, minimize the secondary fault current, thereby reducing the stability voltage limit. Another factor is that during internal faults, the voltage developed across the selected tap is limited by the non-linear resistor but in the unused taps, owing to auto-transformer action, voltages induced may be much higher than design limits.

Setting example

**Basic data:**
- Current transformer ratio: 2000/1 A
- CT Class: 20 VA 5P20
- Secondary resistance: 6.2 ohms
- Cable loop resistance: <100 m 2.5 mm² (one way) gives 2 × 0.8 ohm at 75° C
- Max fault current: Equal to switchgear rated fault current 40 kA

**Calculation:**

\[ UR > \frac{40000}{2000} (6.2 + 1.6) = 156V \]

(Equation 18)

Select a setting of \( U_{>\text{Trip}} = 200 \) V.

The current transformer saturation voltage must be at least twice the set operating voltage \( U_{>\text{Trip}} \).

\[ E_{5P} > (20 + 6.2) \times 20 = 524V \]

(Equation 19)

that is, bigger than \( 2 \times U_{>\text{Trip}} \)

Check from the table of selected resistances the required series stabilizing resistor value to use. As this application requires to be so sensitive select \( \text{SeriesResistor} = 2000 \) ohm, which gives an IED operating current of 100 mA.

Calculate the primary sensitivity at operating voltage using the following equation.

\[ IP = \frac{2000}{1} \left( 100 \left[ 0^\circ + 20 \left[ 0^\circ + 3 \times 10 \left[ -60^\circ \right] \right] \right] \times 10^{-3} \leq \text{approx} 275A \]

(Equation 20)

where
- 100 mA is the current drawn by the IED circuit and
- 10 mA is the current drawn by each CT just at pickup
- 20 mA is current drawn by metrosil at pickup
The magnetizing current is taken from the magnetizing curve for the current transformer cores which should be available. The current value at $U_{>\text{Trip}}$ is taken. For the voltage dependent resistor current the peak value of voltage $200 \times \sqrt{2}$ is used. Then the RMS current is calculated by dividing obtained current value from the metrosil curve with $\sqrt{2}$. Use the value from the maximum metrosil curve given in Figure 55.

It can clearly be seen that the sensitivity is not so much influenced by the selected voltage level so a sufficient margin should be used. The selection of the stabilizing resistor and the level of the magnetizing current (mostly dependent of the number of turns) are the most important factors.

### 7.1.4.4 Tertiary reactor protection

Reactive power equipment (for example shunt reactors and/or shunt capacitors) can be connected to the tertiary winding of the power transformers. The 1Ph High impedance differential protection function HZPDIF can be used to protect the tertiary reactor for phase faults as well as earth faults if the power system of the tertiary winding is direct or low impedance earthed.

Figure 54: Application of the 1Ph High impedance differential protection HZPDIF function on a reactor
Setting example

It is strongly recommended to use the highest tap of the CT whenever high impedance protection is used. This helps in utilizing maximum CT capability, minimize the secondary fault, thereby reducing the stability voltage limit. Another factor is that during internal faults, the voltage developed across the selected tap is limited by the non-linear resistor but in the unused taps, owing to auto-transformer action, voltages much higher than design limits might be induced.

Basic data:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current transformer ratio</td>
<td>100/5 A (Note: Must be the same at all locations)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT Class</td>
<td>10 VA 5P20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary resistance</td>
<td>0.26 ohms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cable loop resistance</td>
<td>&lt;50 m 2.5 mm² (one way) gives 1·0.4 ohm at 75°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Note! Only one way as the tertiary power system earthing is limiting the earth-fault current. If high earth-fault current exists use two way cable length.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max fault current</td>
<td>The maximum through fault current is limited by the reactor reactance and the inrush will be the worst for a reactor for example, 800 A.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Calculation:

\[
UR > \frac{800}{100/5} \times (0.26 + 0.4) = 26.4
\]

(Equation 21)

Select a setting of \(U_{\text{Trip}}=30\) V.

The current transformer saturation voltage must be at least, twice the set operating voltage \(U_{\text{Trip}}\).

\[
U_{\text{sat}} = \left(\frac{10}{25} + 0.26\right) \times 20 \times 5 = 66V
\]

(Equation 22)

that is, greater than \(2 \times U_{\text{Trip}}\).

Check from the table of selected resistances the required series stabilizing resistor value to use. Since this application requires good sensitivity, select \(\text{SeriesResistor} = 300\) ohm, which gives an IED current of 100 mA.

To calculate the sensitivity at operating voltage, refer to equation 23, which gives an acceptable value. A little lower sensitivity could be selected by using a lower resistance value.

\[
IP = \frac{100}{5} \times \left(100[0^\circ + 5[0^\circ + 2 \times 100(–60^\circ)]\times 10^{-3} \leq \text{approx} 5A
\]

(Equation 23)

The magnetizing current is taken from the magnetizing curve of the current transformer cores, which should be available. The current value at \(U_{\text{Trip}}\) is taken. For the voltage dependent resistor current the peak value of voltage \(30 \times \sqrt{2}\) is used. Then the RMS current is calculated by...
dividing obtained current value from the metrosil curve with $\sqrt{2}$. Use the maximum value from the metrosil curve given in Figure 55.

### 7.1.4.5 Alarm level operation

The 1Ph High impedance differential protection HZPDIF function has a separate alarm level, which can be used to give alarm for problems with an involved current transformer circuit. The setting level is normally selected to be around 10% of the operating voltage $U_{\text{Trip}}$.

As seen in the setting examples above the sensitivity of HZPDIF function is normally high, which means that the function will in many cases operate also for short circuits or open current transformer secondary circuits. However the stabilizing resistor can be selected to achieve sensitivity higher than normal load current and/or separate criteria can be added to the operation, like a check zone. This can be either another IED, with the same HZPDIF function, or be a check about the fault condition, which is performed by an earth overcurrent function or neutral point voltage function.

For such cases where operation is not expected during normal service the alarm output should be used to activate an external shorting of the differential circuit avoiding continuous high voltage in the circuit. A time delay of a few seconds is used before the shorting and alarm are activated. Auxiliary relays with contacts that can withstand high voltage shall be used, like RXMVB types.

The metrosil operating characteristic is given in the following figure.

![Figure 55: Current voltage characteristics for the non-linear resistors, in the range 10-200 V, the average range of current is: 0.01–10 mA](xc05800749.jpg)
Section 8  Current protection

8.1  Instantaneous phase overcurrent protection PHPIOC

8.1.1  Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Instantaneous phase overcurrent protection</td>
<td>PHPIOC</td>
<td>3I&gt;&gt;</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.1.2  Application

Long transmission lines often transfer great quantities of electric power from generation to consumption areas. The unbalance of the produced and consumed electric power at each end of the transmission line is very large. This means that a fault on the line can easily endanger the stability of a complete system.

The transient stability of a power system depends mostly on three parameters (at constant amount of transmitted electric power):

- The type of the fault. Three-phase faults are the most dangerous, because no power can be transmitted through the fault point during fault conditions.
- The magnitude of the fault current. A high fault current indicates that the decrease of transmitted power is high.
- The total fault clearing time. The phase angles between the EMFs of the generators on both sides of the transmission line increase over the permitted stability limits if the total fault clearing time, which consists of the protection operating time and the breaker opening time, is too long.

The fault current on long transmission lines depends mostly on the fault position and decreases with the distance from the generation point. For this reason the protection must operate very quickly for faults very close to the generation (and relay) point, for which very high fault currents are characteristic.

The instantaneous phase overcurrent protection PHPIOC can operate in 10 ms for faults characterized by very high currents.

8.1.3  Setting guidelines

The parameters for instantaneous phase overcurrent protection PHPIOC are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

This protection function must operate only in a selective way. So check all system and transient conditions that could cause its unwanted operation.

Only detailed network studies can determine the operating conditions under which the highest possible fault current is expected on the line. In most cases, this current appears
during three-phase fault conditions. But also examine single-phase-to-earth and two-phase-
to-earth conditions.

Also study transients that could cause a high increase of the line current for short times. A
typical example is a transmission line with a power transformer at the remote end, which can
cause high inrush current when connected to the network and can thus also cause the
operation of the built-in, instantaneous, overcurrent protection.

Common base IED values for primary current (IBase), primary voltage (UBase) and primary
power (SBase) are set in the global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

GlobalBaseSel: This is used to select GBASVAL function for reference of base values.

Operation: Set the protection to On/Off.

OpMode: This parameter can be set to 2 out of 3 or 1 out of 3. The setting controls the
minimum number of phase currents that must be larger than the set operate current IP>> for
operation. Normally this parameter is set to 1 out of 3and will thus detect all fault types. If the
protection is to be used mainly for multi phase faults, 2 out of 3 should be chosen.

IP>>: Set operate current in % of IB.

IP>>Max and IP>>Min should only be changed if remote setting of operation current level, IP>>,
is used. The limits are used for decreasing the used range of the IP>> setting. If IP>> is set
outside IP>>Max and IP>>Min, the closest of the limits to IP>> is used by the function. If
IP>>Max is smaller than IP>>Min, the limits are swapped.

StValMult: The set operate current can be changed by activation of the binary input ENMULT to
the set factor StValMult.

8.1.3.1 Meshed network without parallel line

The following fault calculations have to be done for three-phase, single-phase-to-earth and
two-phase-to-earth faults. With reference to Figure 56, apply a fault in B and then calculate the
current through-fault phase current I_{fB}. The calculation should be done using the minimum
source impedance values for Z_A and the maximum source impedance values for Z_B in order to
get the maximum through fault current from A to B.

![Figure 56: Through fault current from A to B: I_{fB}](IEC000000022-1-en.vsd)

Then a fault in A has to be applied and the through fault current I_{fA} has to be calculated,
Figure 57. In order to get the maximum through fault current, the minimum value for Z_B and
the maximum value for Z_A have to be considered.
Figure 57: Through fault current from B to A: $I_{fa}$

The IED must not trip for any of the two through-fault currents. Hence the minimum theoretical current setting ($I_{min}$) will be:

$$I_{min} \geq \text{MAX}(I_{IA}, I_{IB})$$

(Equation 24)

A safety margin of 5% for the maximum protection static inaccuracy and a safety margin of 5% for the maximum possible transient overreach have to be introduced. An additional 20% is suggested due to the inaccuracy of the instrument transformers under transient conditions and inaccuracy in the system data.

The minimum primary setting ($I_s$) for the instantaneous phase overcurrent protection is then:

$$I_s \geq 1.3 \cdot I_{min}$$

(Equation 25)

The protection function can be used for the specific application only if this setting value is equal to or less than the maximum fault current that the IED has to clear, $I_F$ in Figure 58.

Figure 58: Fault current: $I_F$

$$IP \geq \frac{I_s}{I_{Base}} \cdot 100$$

(Equation 26)
8.1.3.2 Meshed network with parallel line

In case of parallel lines, the influence of the induced current from the parallel line to the protected line has to be considered. One example is given in Figure 59, where the two lines are connected to the same busbars. In this case the influence of the induced fault current from the faulty line (line 1) to the healthy line (line 2) is considered together with the two through fault currents \( I_{fA} \) and \( I_{fB} \) mentioned previously. The maximal influence from the parallel line for the IED in Figure 59 will be with a fault at the C point with the C breaker open.

A fault in C has to be applied, and then the maximum current seen from the IED (\( I_{M} \)) on the healthy line (this applies for single-phase-to-earth and two-phase-to-earth faults) is calculated.

![Diagram of two parallel lines](IEC09000025-1-en.vsd)

**Figure 59:** Two parallel lines. Influence from parallel line to the through fault current: \( I_{M} \)

The minimum theoretical current setting for the overcurrent protection function (I\(_\text{min}\)) will be:

\[
I_{\text{min}} \geq \text{MAX}(I_{fA}, I_{fB}, I_{M})
\]

(Equation 27)

Where \( I_{fA} \) and \( I_{fB} \) have been described in the previous paragraph. Considering the safety margins mentioned previously, the minimum setting (Is) for the instantaneous phase overcurrent protection 3-phase output is then:

\[
I_{s} \geq 1.3 \cdot I_{\text{min}}
\]

(Equation 28)

The protection function can be used for the specific application only if this setting value is equal or less than the maximum phase fault current that the IED has to clear.

The IED setting value \( IP >> \) is given in percentage of the primary base current value, \( I_{\text{Base}} \). The value for \( IP >> \) is given from this formula:

\[
IP >> = \frac{I_{s}}{I_{\text{Base}}} \cdot 100
\]

(Equation 29)
8.2 Directional phase overcurrent protection, four steps OC4PTOC

8.2.1 Identification

Function description | IEC 61850 identification | IEC 60617 identification | ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number
--- | --- | --- | ---
Directional phase overcurrent protection, four steps | OC4PTOC | | 51_67

8.2.2 Application

Directional phase overcurrent protection, four steps OC4PTOC is used in several applications in the power system. Some applications are:

- Short circuit protection of feeders in distribution and subtransmission systems. Normally these feeders have a radial structure.
- Back-up short circuit protection of transmission lines.
- Back-up short circuit protection of power transformers.
- Short circuit protection of different kinds of equipment connected to the power system such as; shunt capacitor banks, shunt reactors, motors and others.
- Back-up short circuit protection of power generators.

In many applications several steps with different current pickup levels and time delays are needed. OC4PTOC can have up to four different, individually settable steps. The following options are possible:

Non-directional / Directional function: In most applications the non-directional functionality is used. This is mostly the case when no fault current can be fed from the protected object itself. In order to achieve both selectivity and fast fault clearance, the directional function can be necessary.

If VT inputs are not available or not connected, the setting parameter DirModex \((x = \text{step } 1, 2, 3 \text{ or } 4)\) shall be left to the default value Non-directional.

Choice of time delay characteristics: There are several types of time delay characteristics available such as definite time delay and different types of inverse time delay characteristics. The selectivity between different overcurrent protections is normally enabled by co-ordination between the function time delays of the different protections. To enable optimal co-ordination between all overcurrent protections, they should have the same time delay characteristic. Therefore, a wide range of standardized inverse time characteristics are available for IEC and ANSI. It is also possible to tailor make the inverse time characteristic.

Normally, it is required that the phase overcurrent protection shall reset as fast as possible when the current level gets lower than the operation level. In some cases some sort of delayed reset is required. Therefore, different kinds of reset characteristics can be used.

For some protection applications, there can be a need to change the current pick-up level for some time. A typical case is when the protection will measure the current to a large motor. At
the start up sequence of a motor the start current can be significantly larger than the rated current of the motor. Therefore, there is a possibility to give a setting of a multiplication factor to the current pick-up level. This multiplication factor is activated from a binary input signal to the function.

Power transformers can have a large inrush current, when being energized. This phenomenon is due to saturation of the transformer magnetic core during parts of the period. There is a risk that inrush current will reach levels above the pick-up current of the phase overcurrent protection. The inrush current has a large 2\textsuperscript{nd} harmonic content. This can be used to avoid unwanted operation of the protection function. Therefore, OC4PTOC has a possibility of 2\textsuperscript{nd} harmonic restrain if the level of 2\textsuperscript{nd} harmonic current reaches a value above a set percent of the fundamental current.

The phase overcurrent protection is often used as a protection for two and three phase short circuits. In some cases, it is not wanted to detect single-phase earth faults by the phase overcurrent protection. This fault type is detected and cleared after operation of earth fault protection. Therefore, it is possible to make a choice how many phases, at minimum, that have to have current above the pick-up level, to enable operation. If set 1 of 3 it is sufficient to have high current in one phase only. If set 2 of 3 or 3 of 3 single-phase earth faults are not detected.

### 8.2.3 Setting guidelines

When inverse time overcurrent characteristic is selected, the operate time of the stage will be the sum of the inverse time delay and the set definite time delay. Thus, if only the inverse time delay is required, it is important to set the definite time delay for that stage to zero.

The parameters for the directional phase overcurrent protection, four steps OC4PTOC are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

The following settings can be done for OC4PTOC.

Common base IED values for the primary current (\(I_{Base}\)), primary voltage (\(U_{Base}\)) and primary power (\(S_{Base}\)) are set in global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

- \(GlobalBaseSel\): Selects the global base value group used by the function to define \(I_{Base}\), \(U_{Base}\) and \(S_{Base}\). Note that this function will only use \(I_{Base}\) value.

- \(MeasType\): Selection of discrete Fourier filtered (DFT) or true RMS filtered (RMS) signals. RMS is used when the harmonic contents are to be considered, for example in applications with shunt capacitors.

- \(Operation\): The protection can be set to On or Off.

- \(AngleRCA\): Protection characteristic angle set in degrees. If the angle of the fault loop current has the angle RCA, the direction to the fault is forward.

- \(AngleROA\): Angle value, given in degrees, to define the angle sector of the directional function, shown in Figure 60.

- \(StartPhSel\): Number of phases, with high current, required for operation. The setting possibilities are: 1 out of 3, 2 out of 3 and 3 out of 3. The default setting is 1 out of 3.

- \(IMinOpPhSel\): Minimum current setting level for releasing the directional start signals in % of \(I_B\). This setting should be less than the lowest step setting. The default setting is 7% of \(I_B\).

- \(2ndHarmStab\): Operate level of 2nd harmonic current restrain set in % of the fundamental current. The setting range is 5 - 100% in steps of 1%. The default setting is 20%.
Figure 60: Directional function characteristic

1. RCA = Relay characteristic angle
2. ROA = Relay operating angle
3. Reverse
4. Forward

8.2.3.1 Settings for each step

\(x\) means step 1, 2, 3 and 4.

**DirModex:** The directional mode of step \(x\). Possible settings are Off/ Non-directional/ Forward/ Reverse.

**Characteristx:** Selection of time characteristic for step \(x\). Definite time delay and different types of inverse time characteristics are available according to Table 19.

**Table 19: Inverse time characteristics**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Curve name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Normal Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Moderately Inverse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Curve name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/IEEE Definite time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Normal Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Short Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Long Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Definite Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Programmable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASEA RI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RXIDG or RD (logarithmic)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The different characteristics are described in *Technical manual*.

$Ix>$: Operate phase current level for step $x$ given in % of $IB$.

$Ix>Max$ and $Ix>Min$ should only be changed if remote setting of operation current level, $Ix>$, is used. The limits are used for decreasing the used range of the $Ix>$ setting. If $Ix>$ is set outside $Ix>Max$ and $Ix>Min$, the closest of the limits to $Ix>$ is used by the function. If $Ix>Max$ is smaller than $Ix>Min$, the limits are swapped.

$tx$: Definite time delay for step $x$. The definite time $tx$ is added to the inverse time when inverse time characteristic is selected. Note that the value set is the time between activation of the start and the trip outputs.

$kx$: Time multiplier for inverse time delay for step $x$.

$IMinx$: Minimum operate current in % of $IB$ for all inverse time characteristics, below which no operation takes place.

$IMinx$: Minimum operate current for step $x$ in % of $IB$. Set $IMinx$ below $Ix>$ for every step to achieve ANSI reset characteristic according to standard. If $IMinx$ is set above $Ix>$ for any step the ANSI reset works as if current is zero when current drops below $IMinx$.

$txMin$: Minimum operate time for all inverse time characteristics. At high currents the inverse time characteristic might give a very short operation time. By setting this parameter the operation time of the step can never be shorter than the setting. Setting range: 0.000 - 60.000s in steps of 0.001s.

$IxMult$: Multiplier for scaling of the current setting value. If a binary input signal ENMULT$x$ (enableMultiplier) is activated the current operation level is increased by this setting constant. Setting range: 1.0-10.0
In order to fully comply with the definition of the curve, the setting parameter $txMin$ shall be set to a value equal to the operating time of the selected inverse curve for twenty times the set current pickup value. Note that the operate time is dependent on the selected time multiplier setting $kx$.

**Reset Type Crv**: The reset of the delay timer can be made as shown in Table 20.

**Table 20**: Reset possibilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Curve name</th>
<th>Curve index no.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Instantaneous</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Reset (constant time)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Reset (inverse time)</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The delay characteristics are described in *Technical manual*. There are some restrictions regarding the choice of the reset delay.

For the definite time delay characteristics, the possible delay time setting instantaneous (1) and IEC (2 = set constant time reset).

For ANSI inverse time characteristics, all three types of reset time characteristics are available: instantaneous (1), IEC (2 = set constant time reset) and ANSI (3 = current dependent reset time).

For IEC inverse time characteristics, the possible delay time settings are instantaneous (1) and IEC (2 = set constant time reset).

For the customer tailor-made inverse time delay characteristics (type 17), all three types of reset time characteristics are available: instantaneous (1), IEC (2 = set constant time reset) and ANSI (3 = current dependent reset time). If the current-dependent type is used, settings $pr$, $tr$ and $cr$ must be given.

$tResetx$: Constant reset time delay in seconds for step $x$.

tPCrv, tACrv, tBCrv, tCCrv: These parameters are used by the customer to create the inverse time characteristic curve. See equation 30 for the time characteristic equation. For more information, refer to *Technical manual*. 

Figure 61: Minimum operate current and operate time for inverse time characteristics

The delay characteristics are described in *Technical manual*. There are some restrictions regarding the choice of the reset delay.

For the definite time delay characteristics, the possible delay time setting instantaneous (1) and IEC (2 = set constant time reset).

For ANSI inverse time characteristics, all three types of reset time characteristics are available: instantaneous (1), IEC (2 = set constant time reset) and ANSI (3 = current dependent reset time).

For IEC inverse time characteristics, the possible delay time settings are instantaneous (1) and IEC (2 = set constant time reset).

For the customer tailor-made inverse time delay characteristics (type 17), all three types of reset time characteristics are available: instantaneous (1), IEC (2 = set constant time reset) and ANSI (3 = current dependent reset time). If the current-dependent type is used, settings $pr$, $tr$ and $cr$ must be given.

$tResetx$: Constant reset time delay in seconds for step $x$.

tPCrv, tACrv, tBCrv, tCCrv: These parameters are used by the customer to create the inverse time characteristic curve. See equation 30 for the time characteristic equation. For more information, refer to *Technical manual*. 

Figure 61: Minimum operate current and operate time for inverse time characteristics
\[ t[s] = \left( \frac{A}{\left( \frac{i}{in} \right)^n - C} + B \right) \cdot \text{IxMult} \]

(Equation 30)

\( tPRCrvx, tTRCrvx, tCRCrvx \): These parameters are used by the customer to create the inverse reset time characteristic curve. For more information, refer to Technical manual.

\( \text{HarmRestrainx} \): Enables the block of step \( x \) from the harmonic restrain function (2nd harmonic). This function should be used when there is a risk of an unwanted trip caused by power transformer inrush currents. It can be set to Off/On.

### 8.2.3.2 Setting example

Directional phase overcurrent protection, four steps can be used in different ways, depending on the application where the protection is used. A general description is given below.

The operating current setting of the inverse time protection, or the lowest current step of the definite time protection, must be defined so that the highest possible load current does not cause protection operation. The protection reset current must also be considered so that a short peak of overcurrent does not cause the operation of a protection even when the overcurrent has ceased. This phenomenon is described in Figure 62.

![Figure 62: Operate and reset current for an overcurrent protection](IEC05000203-en-2.vsd)

The lowest setting value can be written according to Equation 31.
where:

1.2  is a safety factor

\( k \)  is the reset ratio of the protection

\( I_{\text{max}} \)  is the maximum load current

The load current up to the present situation can be found from operation statistics. The current setting must remain valid for several years. In most cases, the setting values are updated once every five years or less often. Investigate the maximum load current that the equipment on the line can withstand. Study components, such as line conductors, current transformers, circuit breakers, and disconnectors. The manufacturer of the equipment normally gives the maximum thermal load current of the equipment.

The maximum load current on the line has to be estimated. There is also a demand that all faults within the zone that the protection shall cover must be detected by the phase overcurrent protection. The minimum fault current \( I_{\text{scmin}} \) to be detected by the protection must be calculated. Taking this value as a base, the highest pickup current setting can be written according to Equation 32.

\[
I_{\text{pu}} \leq 0.7 \cdot I_{\text{scmin}}
\]

(Equation 32)

where:

0.7  is a safety factor

\( I_{\text{scmin}} \)  is the smallest fault current to be detected by the overcurrent protection.

As a summary, the operating current shall be chosen within the interval stated in Equation 33.

\[
1.2 \cdot \frac{I_{\text{max}}}{k} \leq I_{\text{pu}} \leq 0.7 \cdot I_{\text{scmin}}
\]

(Equation 33)

The high current function of the overcurrent protection, which only has a short-delay trip time, must be given a current setting so that the protection is selective to other protection functions in the power system. It is desirable to have rapid tripping of faults within a large part of the power system to be protected by the protection (primary protected zone). A fault current calculation gives the largest current of faults, \( I_{\text{scmax}} \), at the most remote part of the primary protected zone. The risk of transient overreach must be considered, due to a possible DC component of the short circuit current. The lowest current setting of the fastest stage can be written according to
\[ I_{\text{high}} \geq 1.2 \cdot k_t \cdot I_{\text{sc,max}} \]  

(Equation 34)

where:

- \( 1.2 \) is a safety factor
- \( k_t \) is a factor that takes care of the transient overreach due to the DC component of the fault current and can be considered to be less than 1.05
- \( I_{\text{sc,max}} \) is the largest fault current at a fault at the most remote point of the primary protection zone.

The operate time of the phase overcurrent protection has to be chosen so that the fault time is short enough that the protected equipment will not be destroyed due to thermal overload while, at the same time, selectivity is assured. For overcurrent protection in a radial fed network, the time setting can be chosen in a graphical way. This is mostly used in the case of inverse time overcurrent protection. Figure 63 shows how the time-versus-current curves are plotted in a diagram. The time setting is chosen to get the shortest fault time with maintained selectivity. Selectivity is assured if the time difference between the curves is larger than a critical time difference.

**Figure 63: Fault time with maintained selectivity**

The operation time can be set individually for each overcurrent protection.

To assure selectivity between different protection functions in the radial network, there has to be a minimum time difference \( \Delta t \) between the time delays of two protections. To determine the shortest possible time difference, the operation time of the protection, the breaker opening time and the protection resetting time must be known. These time delays can vary...
significantly between different protective equipment. The following time delays can be estimated:

- Protection operation time: 15-60 ms
- Protection resetting time: 15-60 ms
- Breaker opening time: 20-120 ms

**Example for time coordination**

Assume two substations A and B directly connected to each other via one line, as shown in the Figure 64. Consider a fault located at another line from the station B. The fault current to the overcurrent protection of IED B1 has a magnitude so that the overcurrent protection will start and subsequently trip, and the overcurrent protection of IED A1 must have a delayed operation in order to avoid maloperation. The sequence of events during the fault can be described using a time axis shown in Figure 64.

![Time axis diagram showing events during fault](https://example.com/image.png)

**Figure 64: Sequence of events during fault**

where:
- \( t=0 \) is when the fault occurs
- \( t=t_1 \) is when protection IED B1 and protection IED A1 start
- \( t=t_2 \) is when the trip signal from the overcurrent protection at IED B1 is sent to the circuit breaker.
- \( t=t_3 \) is when the circuit breaker at IED B1 opens. The circuit breaker opening time is \( t_3 - t_2 \)
- \( t=t_4 \) is when the overcurrent protection at IED A1 resets. The protection resetting time is \( t_4 - t_3 \).

To ensure that the overcurrent protection at IED A1 is selective to the overcurrent protection at IED B1, the minimum time difference must be larger than the time \( t_3 \). There are uncertainties in the values of protection operation time, breaker opening time and protection resetting time. Therefore a safety margin has to be included. With normal values the needed time difference can be calculated according to Equation 35.
\[ \Delta t \geq 40 \text{ms} + 100 \text{ms} + 40 \text{ms} + 40 \text{ms} = 220 \text{ms} \]  
(Equation 35)

where it is considered that:
- the operate time of overcurrent protection B1 is 40 ms
- the breaker open time is 100 ms
- the resetting time of protection A1 is 40 ms and
- the additional margin is 40 ms

### 8.3 Instantaneous residual overcurrent protection EFPIOC

#### 8.3.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Instantaneous residual overcurrent protection</td>
<td>EFPIOC</td>
<td>( I_{IN} )</td>
<td>50N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 8.3.2 Application

In many applications, when fault current is limited to a defined value by the object impedance, an instantaneous earth-fault protection can provide fast and selective tripping.

The Instantaneous residual overcurrent EFPIOC, which can operate in 15 ms (50 Hz nominal system frequency) for faults characterized by very high currents, is included in the IED.

#### 8.3.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for the Instantaneous residual overcurrent protection EFPIOC are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

Some guidelines for the choice of setting parameter for EFPIOC is given.

Common base IED values for primary current \((I_{Base})\), primary voltage \((U_{Base})\) and primary power \((S_{Base})\) are set in the global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

\(GlobalBaseSel\): This is used to select GBASVAL function for reference of base values.

The basic requirement is to assure selectivity, that is EFPIOC shall not be allowed to operate for faults at other objects than the protected object (line).

For a normal line in a meshed system single phase-to-earth faults and phase-to-phase-to-earth faults shall be calculated as shown in Figure 65 and Figure 66. The residual currents \((3I_0)\) to the protection are calculated. For a fault at the remote line end this fault current is \(I_{FB}\). In this calculation the operational state with high source impedance \(Z_A\) and low source impedance \(Z_B\) should be used. For the fault at the home busbar this fault current is \(I_{FA}\). In this calculation the
operational state with low source impedance $Z_A$ and high source impedance $Z_B$ should be used.

![Diagram](image1)

**Figure 65: Through fault current from A to B: $I_{fB}$**

![Diagram](image2)

**Figure 66: Through fault current from B to A: $I_{fA}$**

The function shall not operate for any of the calculated currents to the protection. The minimum theoretical current setting ($I_{min}$) will be:

$$I_{min} \geq \text{MAX}(I_{fA}, I_{fB})$$  \hspace{1cm} \text{(Equation 36)}$$

A safety margin of 5% for the maximum static inaccuracy and a safety margin of 5% for maximum possible transient overreach have to be introduced. An additional 20% is suggested due to inaccuracy of instrument transformers under transient conditions and inaccuracy in the system data.

The minimum primary current setting ($I_s$) is:

$$I_s = 1.3 \times I_{min}$$  \hspace{1cm} \text{(Equation 37)}$$

In case of parallel lines with zero sequence mutual coupling a fault on the parallel line, as shown in Figure 67, should be calculated.
Figure 67: Two parallel lines. Influence from parallel line to the through fault current: $I_M$

The minimum theoretical current setting ($I_{min}$) will in this case be:

$$I_{min} \geq \text{MAX}(I_{fa}, I_{fb}, I_M)$$

(Equation 38)

Where:

$I_{fa}$ and $I_{fb}$ have been described for the single line case.

Considering the safety margins mentioned previously, the minimum setting ($I_s$) is:

$$I_s = 1.3 \times I_{min}$$

(Equation 39)

The IED setting value $IN>>$ is given in percent of the primary base current value, $IBase$. The value for $IN>>$ is given by the formula:

$$IN >> = (I_s / IBase) \times 100$$

(Equation 40)

Transformer inrush current shall be considered.

The setting of the protection is set as a percentage of the base current ($IBase$).

Operation: set the protection to On or Off.

$IN>>$: Set operate current in % of $IB$.

$IN>>Max$ and $IN>>Min$ should only be changed if remote setting of operation current level, $IN>>$, is used. The limits are used for decreasing the used range of the $IN>>$ setting. If $IN>>$ is set outside $IN>>Max$ and $IN>>Min$, the closest of the limits to $IN>>$ is used by the function. If $IN>>Max$ is smaller than $IN>>Min$, the limits are swapped.

$StValMult$: The set operate current can be changed by activation of the binary input ENMULT to the set factor $StValMult$. 
8.4 Directional residual overcurrent protection, four steps EF4PTOC

8.4.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Directional residual overcurrent protection, four steps</td>
<td>EF4PTOC</td>
<td></td>
<td>51N_67N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.4.2 Application

The directional residual overcurrent protection, four steps EF4PTOC is used in several applications in the power system. Some applications are:

- Earth-fault protection of feeders in effectively earthed distribution and subtransmission systems. Normally these feeders have radial structure.
- Back-up earth-fault protection of transmission lines.
- Sensitive earth-fault protection of transmission lines. EF4PTOC can have better sensitivity to detect resistive phase-to-earth-faults compared to distance protection.
- Back-up earth-fault protection of power transformers.
- Earth-fault protection of different kinds of equipment connected to the power system such as shunt capacitor banks, shunt reactors and others.

In many applications, several steps with different current operating levels and time delays are needed. EF4PTOC can have up to four, individual settable steps. The flexibility of each step of EF4PTOC is great. The following options are possible:

Non-directional/Directional function: In some applications the non-directional functionality is used. This is mostly the case when no fault current can be fed from the protected object itself. In order to achieve both selectivity and fast fault clearance, the directional function can be necessary. This can be the case for earth-fault protection in meshed and effectively earthed transmission systems. The directional residual overcurrent protection is also well suited to operate in teleprotection communication schemes, which enables fast clearance of earth faults on transmission lines. The directional function uses the polarizing quantity as decided by setting. Voltage polarizing is the most commonly used, but alternatively current polarizing where currents in transformer neutrals providing the neutral source (ZN) is used to polarize (IN · ZN) the function. Dual polarizing, where the sum of both voltage and current components is allowed to polarize can also be selected.

Choice of time characteristics: There are several types of time characteristics available such as definite time delay and different types of inverse time characteristics. The selectivity between different overcurrent protections is normally enabled by co-ordination between the operate time of the different protections. To enable optimal co-ordination all overcurrent protections, to be co-ordinated against each other, should have the same time characteristic. Therefore a wide range of standardized inverse time characteristics are available for IEC and ANSI.
Table 21: Time characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Curve name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Normal Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Moderately Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/IEEE Definite time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Normal Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Short Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Long Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Definite Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Programmable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASEA RI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RXIDG or RD (logarithmic)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is also possible to tailor make the inverse time characteristic.

Normally it is required that EF4PTOC shall reset as fast as possible when the current level gets lower than the operation level. In some cases some sort of delayed reset is required. Therefore different kinds of reset characteristics can be used.

For some protection applications, there can be a need to change the current operating level for some time. Therefore, there is a possibility to give a setting of a multiplication factor \(IN \times \text{Mult}\) to the residual current pick-up level. This multiplication factor is activated from a binary input signal ENMULTx to the function.

Power transformers can have a large inrush current, when being energized. This inrush current can produce residual current component. The phenomenon is due to saturation of the transformer magnetic core during parts of the cycle. There is a risk that inrush current will give a residual current that reaches level above the operating current of the residual overcurrent protection. The inrush current has a large second harmonic content. This can be used to avoid unwanted operation of the protection. Therefore, EF4PTOC has a possibility of second harmonic restrain if the level of 2\(^{nd}\) harmonic current reaches a value above a set percent of the fundamental current.

### 8.4.3 Setting guidelines

When inverse time overcurrent characteristic is selected, the operate time of the stage will be the sum of the inverse time delay and the set definite time delay. Thus, if only the inverse time delay is required, it is important to set the definite time delay for that stage to zero.
The parameters for the four step residual overcurrent protection are set via the local HMI or PCM600. The following settings can be done for the function.

Common base IED values for the primary current ($I_{\text{Base}}$), primary voltage ($U_{\text{Base}}$) and primary power ($S_{\text{Base}}$) are set in global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

$GlobalBaseSel$: Selects the global base value group used by the function to define $I_{\text{Base}}$, $U_{\text{Base}}$ and $S_{\text{Base}}$. Note that this function will only use $I_{\text{Base}}$ value.

$SeqTypeUPol$: This is used to select the type of voltage polarising quantity i.e. Zero seq or Neg seq for direction detection.

$SeqTypelPol$: This is used to select the type of current polarising quantity i.e. Zero seq or Neg seq for direction detection.

$SeqTypelDir$: This is used to select the type of operating current quantity i.e. Zero seq or Neg seq for direction detection.

**8.4.3.1 Common settings for all steps**

$AngleRCA$: Relay characteristic angle given in degree. This angle is defined as shown in Figure 68. The angle is defined positive when the residual current lags the reference voltage ($Upol = 3U_0$ or $U_2$)

![Figure 68: Relay characteristic angle given in degree](IEC05000135-5-en.vsdx)

In a normal transmission network a normal value of RCA is about 65°. The setting range is -180° to +180°.

$polMethod$: Defines if the directional polarization is from
- $Voltage$ ($3U_0$ or $U_2$)
- $Current$ ($3I_0 \cdot ZNpol$ or $3I_2 \cdot ZNpol$ where $ZNpol = RNpol + jXNpol$), or
- both currents and voltage, $Dual$ (dual polarizing, $(3U_0 + 3I_0 \cdot ZNpol)$ or $(U_2 + I_2 \cdot ZNpol)$).

Normally voltage polarizing from the internally calculated residual sum or an external open delta is used.
Current polarizing is useful when the local source is strong and a high sensitivity is required. In such cases the polarizing voltage \( 3U_0 \) can be below 1% and it is then necessary to use current polarizing or dual polarizing. Multiply the required set current (primary) with the minimum impedance \( Z_{N Pol} \) and check that the percentage of the phase-to-earth voltage is definitely higher than 1% (minimum \( 3U_0 > UPolMin \) setting) as a verification.

\[ RN_{Pol}, XN_{Pol} \] The zero-sequence source is set in primary ohms as base for the current polarizing. The polarizing voltage is then achieved as \( 3I_0 \cdot Z_{N Pol} \). The \( Z_{N Pol} \) can be defined as \( (Z_{S1}-Z_{S0})/3 \), that is the earth return impedance of the source behind the protection. The maximum earth-fault current at the local source can be used to calculate the value of \( Z_{N} \) as \( U/(\sqrt{3} \cdot 3I_0) \) Typically, the minimum \( Z_{N Pol} \) (3 - zero sequence source) is set. The setting is in primary ohms.

When the dual polarizing method is used, it is important that the setting \( IN> \) or the product \( 3I_0 \cdot Z_{N Pol} \) is not greater than \( 3U_0 \). If so, there is a risk for incorrect operation for faults in the reverse direction.

\[ IPolMin \] is the minimum earth-fault current accepted for directional evaluation. For smaller currents than this value, the operation will be blocked. A typical setting is 5-10% of \( IB \).

\[ UPolMin \] Minimum polarization (reference) polarizing voltage for the directional function, given in % of \( U_{Base}/\sqrt{3} \).

\[ IN^>_{Dir} \] Operate residual current release level in % of \( IB \) for directional comparison scheme. The setting is given in % of \( IB \) and must be set below the lowest \( IN> \) setting, set for the directional measurement. The output signals, STFW and STRV can be used in a teleprotection scheme. The appropriate signal should be configured to the communication scheme block.

### 8.4.3.2 2nd harmonic restrain

If a power transformer is energized there is a risk that the current transformer core will saturate during part of the period, resulting in a transformer inrush current. This will give a declining residual current in the network, as the inrush current is deviating between the phases. There is a risk that the residual overcurrent function will give an unwanted trip. The inrush current has a relatively large ratio of 2nd harmonic component. This component can be used to create a restrain signal to prevent this unwanted function.

At current transformer saturation a false residual current can be measured by the protection. Here the 2nd harmonic restrain can prevent unwanted operation as well.

\[ 2ndHarmStab \] The rate of 2nd harmonic current content for activation of the 2nd harmonic restrain signal. The setting is given in % of the fundamental frequency residual current.

### 8.4.3.3 Parallel transformer inrush current logic

In case of parallel transformers there is a risk of sympathetic inrush current. If one of the transformers is in operation, and the parallel transformer is switched in, the asymmetric inrush current of the switched-in transformer will cause partial saturation of the transformer already in service. This is called transferred saturation. The 2nd harmonic of the inrush currents of the two transformers will be in phase opposition. The summation of the two currents will thus give a small 2nd harmonic current. The residual fundamental current will however be significant. The inrush current of the transformer in service before the parallel transformer energizing, will be a little delayed compared to the first transformer. Therefore, we will have high 2nd harmonic current initially. After a short period this current will however be small and the normal 2nd harmonic blocking will reset.
Figure 69: Application for parallel transformer inrush current logic

If the BlkParTransf function is activated, the 2nd harmonic restrain signal will latch as long as the residual current measured by the relay is larger than a selected step current level. Assume that step 4 is chosen to be the most sensitive step of the four step residual overcurrent protection function EF4PTOC. The harmonic restrain blocking is enabled for this step. Also the same current setting as this step is chosen for the blocking at parallel transformer energizing.

The settings for the parallel transformer logic are described below.

BlkParTransf: This is used to On blocking at energising of parallel transformers.

UseStartValue: Gives which current level should be used for the activation of the blocking signal. This is given as one of the settings of the steps: Step 1/2/3/4. Normally, the step having the lowest operation current level should be set.

8.4.3.4 Switch onto fault logic

In case of energizing a faulty object there is a risk of having a long fault clearance time, if the fault current is too small to give fast operation of the protection. The switch on to fault function can be activated from auxiliary signals from the circuit breaker, either the close command or the open/close position (change of position).

This logic can be used to issue a fast trip if one breaker pole does not close properly at a manual or automatic closing.

SOTF and under time are similar functions to achieve fast clearance at asymmetrical closing based on requirements from different utilities.

The function is divided into two parts. The SOTF function will give operation from step 2 or 3 during a set time after change in the position of the circuit breaker. The SOTF function has a set time delay. The under time function, which has 2nd harmonic restrain blocking, will give operation from step 4. The 2nd harmonic restrain will prevent unwanted function in case of transformer inrush current. The under time function has a set time delay.

Below the settings for switch on to fault logics are described.

SOTF: This parameter can be set: Off/SOTF/Under Time/SOTF+Under Time.

ActivationSOTF: This setting will select the signal to activate SOTF function; CB position open/CB position closed/CB close command.

StepForSOTF: If this parameter is set on step 3, the step 3 start signal will be used as current set level. If set on step 2, the step 2 start signal will be used as current set level.

HarmBlkSOTF: This is used to On/Off harmonic restrain during SOTF conditions.
**tSOTF**: Time delay for operation of the SOTF function. The setting range is 0.000 - 60.000 s in step of 0.001 s. The default setting is 0.100 s.

**t4U**: Time interval when the SOTF function is active after breaker closing. The setting range is 0.000 - 60.000 s in step of 0.001 s. The default setting is 1.000 s.

**ActUnderTime**: Describes the mode to activate the sensitive undertime function. The function can be activated by Circuit breaker position (change) or Circuit breaker command.

**tUnderTime**: Time delay for operation of the sensitive undertime function. The setting range is 0.000 - 60.000 s in step of 0.001 s. The default setting is 0.300 s.

### 8.4.3.5 Settings for each step (x = 1, 2, 3 and 4)

**Operation**: Sets the protection to On or Off.

**DirModex**: The directional mode of step x. Possible settings are Off/Non-directional/Forward/Reverse.

**Characteristics**: Selection of time characteristic for step x. Definite time delay and different types of inverse time characteristics are available.

Inverse time characteristic enables fast fault clearance of high current faults at the same time as selectivity to other inverse time phase overcurrent protections can be assured. This is mainly used in radial fed networks but can also be used in meshed networks. In meshed networks, the settings must be based on network fault calculations.

To assure selectivity between different protections, in the radial network, there has to be a minimum time difference $\Delta t$ between the time delays of two protections. To determine the shortest possible time difference, the operation time of protections, breaker opening time and protection resetting time must be known. These time delays can vary significantly between different protective equipment. The following time delays can be estimated:

- Protection operate time: 15-60 ms
- Protection resetting time: 15-60 ms
- Breaker opening time: 20-120 ms

The different characteristics are described in the technical reference manual.

**tx**: Definite time delay for step x. The definite time $tx$ is added to the inverse time when inverse time characteristic is selected. Note that the value set is the time between activation of the start and the trip outputs.

**INx>**: Operate residual current level for step x given in % of $IB$.

**INx>Max** and **INx>Min** should only be changed if remote setting of operation current level, $INx>$, is used. The limits are used for decreasing the used range of the $INx>$ setting. If $INx>$ is set outside $INx>Max$ and $INx>Min$, the closest of the limits to $INx>$ is used by the function. If $INx>Max$ is smaller than $INx>Min$, the limits are swapped.

**kx**: Time multiplier for the dependent (inverse) characteristic for step x.

**IMinx**: Minimum operate current for step x in % of $IB$. Set $IMinx$ below $INx>$ for every step to achieve ANSI reset characteristic according to standard. If $IMinx$ is set above $INx>$ for any step, signal will reset at current equals to zero.
txMin: Minimum operating time for inverse time characteristics. At high currents, the inverse time characteristic might give a very short operation time. By setting this parameter, the operation time of the step can never be shorter than the setting.

Figure 70: Minimum operate current and operate time for inverse time characteristics

In order to fully comply with the curves definition, the setting parameter txMin shall be set to the value which is equal to the operate time of the selected IEC inverse curve for measured current of twenty times the set current pickup value. Note that the operate time value is dependent on the selected setting value for time multiplier kx.

INxMult: Multiplier for scaling of the current setting value. If a binary input signal (ENMULTx) is activated, the current operation level is increased by this setting constant.

ResetTypeCrvx: The reset of the delay timer can be made in different ways. The possibilities are described in the technical reference manual.

tResetx: Constant reset time delay in s for step x.

HarmBlockx: This is used to enable block of step x from 2nd harmonic restrain function.

tPCrvx, tACrvx, tBCrvx, tCCrvx: Parameters for user programmable of inverse time characteristic curve. The time characteristic equation is according to equation 41:

\[
    t(s) = \left(\frac{A}{\left(\frac{i}{in}\right)^p} + B\right) \cdot k
\]  

(Equation 41)

Further description can be found in the technical reference manual.

8.4.3.6 Line application example
Four step residual overcurrent protection can be used in different ways. Below is described one application possibility to be used in meshed and effectively earthed systems.

The protection measures the residual current out on the protected line. The protection function has a directional function where the polarizing voltage (zero-sequence voltage) is the polarizing quantity.

The polarizing voltage and current can be internally generated when a three-phase set of voltage transformers and current transformers are used.

![Diagram of polarizing voltage connection from an open delta](IEC05000149-2-en.vsdx)

**Figure 71:** Connection of polarizing voltage from an open delta

The different steps can be described as follows.

**Step 1**
This step has directional instantaneous function. The requirement is that overreaching of the protected line is not allowed.
One- or two-phase earth-fault or unsymmetric short circuit without earth connection

Figure 72: Step 1, first calculation

The residual current out on the line is calculated at a fault on the remote busbar (one- or two-phase-to-earth fault). To assure selectivity it is required that step 1 shall not give a trip at this fault. The requirement can be formulated according to Equation 42.

\[ I_{step1} \geq 1.2 \cdot 3I_0 \text{ (remote busbar)} \]

(Equation 42)

As a consequence of the distribution of zero sequence current in the power system, the current to the protection might be larger if one line out from the remote busbar is taken out of service, see Figure 73.

Figure 73: Step 1, second calculation. Remote busbar with, one line taken out of service

The requirement is now according to Equation 43.

\[ I_{step1} \geq 1.2 \cdot 3I_0 \text{ (remote busbar with one line out)} \]

(Equation 43)

A higher value of step 1 might be necessary if a big power transformer (Y0/D) at remote busbar is disconnected.
A special case occurs at double circuit lines, with mutual zero-sequence impedance between the parallel lines, see Figure 74.

Figure 74: Step 1, third calculation
In this case the residual current out on the line can be larger than in the case of earth fault on the remote busbar.

\[ I_{\text{step 1}} \geq 1.2 \cdot 3I_e \]  
*(Equation 44)*

The current setting for step 1 is chosen as the largest of the above calculated residual currents, measured by the protection.

**Step 2**
This step has directional function and a short time delay, often about 0.4 s. Step 2 shall securely detect all earth faults on the line, not detected by step 1.

Figure 75: Step 2, check of reach calculation
The residual current, out on the line, is calculated at an operational case with minimal earth-fault current. The requirement that the whole line shall be covered by step 2 can be formulated according to equation 45.
\[ I_{\text{step}2} \geq 0.7 \cdot 3I_0 \text{ (at remote busbar)} \]

(Equation 45)

To assure selectivity the current setting must be chosen so that step 2 does not operate at step 2 for faults on the next line from the remote substation. Consider a fault as shown in Figure 76.

![Figure 76: Step 2, selectivity calculation](IEC05000155-en-2.vsd)

A second criterion for step 2 is according to equation 46.

\[ I_{\text{step}2} \geq 1.2 \cdot \frac{3I_0}{3I_{01}} \cdot I_{\text{step}1} \]

(Equation 46)

where:

- \( I_{\text{step}1} \) is the current setting for step 1 on the faulted line.

### Step 3

This step has directional function and a time delay slightly larger than step 2, often 0.8 s. Step 3 shall enable selective trip of earth faults having higher fault resistance to earth, compared to step 2. The requirement on step 3 is selectivity to other earth-fault protections in the network. One criterion for setting is shown in Figure 77.

![Figure 77: Step 3, Selectivity calculation](IEC05000156-3-en.vsd)
\[ I_{\text{step3}} \geq 1.2 \frac{3I_0}{3I_{\text{step2}}} \cdot I_{\text{step2}} \]

(Equation 47)

where:

\( I_{\text{step2}} \) is the chosen current setting for step 2 on the faulted line.

**Step 4**

This step normally has non-directional function and a relatively long time delay. The task for step 4 is to detect and initiate trip for earth faults with large fault resistance, for example tree faults. Step 4 shall also detect series faults where one or two poles, of a breaker or other switching device, are open while the other poles are closed.

Both high resistance earth faults and series faults give zero-sequence current flow in the network. Such currents give disturbances on telecommunication systems and current to earth. It is important to clear such faults both concerning personal security as well as risk of fire.

The current setting for step 4 is often set down to about 100 A (primary 3I_0). In many applications definite time delay in the range 1.2 - 2.0 s is used. In other applications a current dependent inverse time characteristic is used. This enables a higher degree of selectivity also for sensitive earth-fault current protection.

### 8.5 Four step directional negative phase sequence overcurrent protection NS4PTOC

#### 8.5.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Four step negative sequence overcurrent protection</td>
<td>NS4PTOC</td>
<td></td>
<td>46I2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 8.5.2 Application

Four step negative sequence overcurrent protection NS4PTOC is used in several applications in the power system. Some applications are:

- Earth-fault and phase-phase short circuit protection of feeders in effectively earthed distribution and subtransmission systems. Normally these feeders have radial structure.
- Back-up earth-fault and phase-phase short circuit protection of transmission lines.
- Sensitive earth-fault protection of transmission lines. NS4PTOC can have better sensitivity to detect resistive phase-to-earth-faults compared to distance protection.
- Back-up earth-fault and phase-phase short circuit protection of power transformers.
- Earth-fault and phase-phase short circuit protection of different kinds of equipment connected to the power system such as shunt capacitor banks, shunt reactors and others.
In many applications several steps with different current operating levels and time delays are needed. NS4PTOC can have up to four, individual settable steps. The flexibility of each step of NS4PTOC function is great. The following options are possible:

Non-directional/Directional function: In some applications the non-directional functionality is used. This is mostly the case when no fault current can be fed from the protected object itself. In order to achieve both selectivity and fast fault clearance, the directional function can be necessary. This can be the case for unsymmetrical fault protection in meshed and effectively earthed transmission systems. The directional negative sequence overcurrent protection is also well suited to operate in teleprotection communication schemes, which enables fast clearance of unsymmetrical faults on transmission lines. The directional function uses the voltage polarizing quantity.

Choice of time characteristics: There are several types of time characteristics available such as definite time delay and different types of inverse time characteristics. The selectivity between different overcurrent protections is normally enabled by co-ordination between the operating time of the different protections. To enable optimal co-ordination all overcurrent relays, to be co-ordinated against each other, should have the same time characteristic. Therefore a wide range of standardized inverse time characteristics are available: IEC and ANSI.

Table 22: Inverse time characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Curve name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Normal Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Moderately Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/IEEE Definite time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Normal Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Short Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Long Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Definite Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Programmable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASEA RI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RXIDG (logarithmic)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There is also a user programmable inverse time characteristic.

Normally it is required that the negative sequence overcurrent function shall reset as fast as possible when the current level gets lower than the operation level. In some cases some sort of delayed reset is required. Therefore different kinds of reset characteristics can be used.

For some protection applications there can be a need to change the current operating level for some time. Therefore there is a possibility to give a setting of a multiplication factor \( IxMult \) to the negative sequence current pick-up level. This multiplication factor is activated from a binary input signal ENMULTx to the function.
8.5.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for Four step negative sequence overcurrent protection NS4PTOC are set via the local HMI or Protection and Control Manager (PCM600).

The following settings can be done for the four step negative sequence overcurrent protection:

**Operation**: Sets the protection to *On* or *Off*.

Common base IED values for the primary current (*IBase*), primary voltage (*UBase*) and primary power (*SBase*) are set in global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

**GlobalBaseSel**: Selects the global base value group used by the function to define *IBase*, *UBase* and *SBase*. Note that this function will only use *IBase* value.

When inverse time overcurrent characteristic is selected, the operate time of the stage will be the sum of the inverse time delay and the set definite time delay. Thus, if only the inverse time delay is required, it is important to set the definite time delay for that stage to zero.

8.5.3.1 Settings for each step

*x* means step 1, 2, 3 and 4.

**DirModeSel**:*x*: The directional mode of step *x*. Possible settings are off/nondirectional/forward/reverse.

**Characteristix**: Selection of time characteristic for step *x*. Definite time delay and different types of inverse time characteristics are available.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Curve name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Normal Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Moderately Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/IEEE Definite time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Normal Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Short Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Long Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Definite Time</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
### Curve name

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User Programmable</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASEA RI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RXIDG (logarithmic)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The different characteristics are described in the Technical Reference Manual (TRM).

\( Ix > \): Operation negative sequence current level for step \( x \) given in % of \( I_{Base} \).

\( tx \): Definite time delay for step \( x \). The definite time \( tx \) is added to the inverse time when inverse time characteristic is selected. Note that the value set is the time between activation of the start and the trip outputs.

\( kx \): Time multiplier for the dependent (inverse) characteristic.

\( IMinx \): Minimum operate current for step \( x \) in % of \( I_{Base} \). Set \( IMinx \) below \( Ix > \) for every step to achieve ANSI reset characteristic according to standard. If \( IMinx \) is set above \( Ix > \) for any step the ANSI reset works as if current is zero when current drops below \( IMinx \).

\( IxMult \): Multiplier for scaling of the current setting value. If a binary input signal (ENMULT\( x \)) is activated the current operation level is multiplied by this setting constant.

\( txMin \): Minimum operation time for inverse time characteristics. At high currents the inverse time characteristic might give a very short operation time. By setting this parameter the operation time of the step can never be shorter than the setting.

![Diagram showing operate time, current, \( Ix \), \( IMinx \), \( tx \), and \( txMin \)](image)

**Figure 78**: Minimum operate current and operation time for inverse time characteristics

**ResetTypeCrv\( x \)**: The reset of the delay timer can be made in different ways. By choosing setting there are the following possibilities:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Instantaneous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Reset (constant time)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Reset (inverse time)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The different reset characteristics are described in the Technical Reference Manual (TRM). There are some restrictions regarding the choice of reset delay.

For the independent time delay characteristics the possible delay time settings are instantaneous (1) and IEC (2 = set constant time reset).

For ANSI inverse time delay characteristics all three types of reset time characteristics are available; instantaneous (1), IEC (2 = set constant time reset) and ANSI (3 = current dependent reset time).

For IEC inverse time delay characteristics the possible delay time settings are instantaneous (1) and IEC (2 = set constant time reset).

For the programmable inverse time delay characteristics all three types of reset time characteristics are available; instantaneous (1), IEC (2 = set constant time reset) and ANSI (3 = current dependent reset time). If the current dependent type is used settings pr, tr and cr must be given.

\[ t_{PCrvx}, t_{ACrvx}, t_{BCrvx}, t_{CCrvx}: \text{Parameters for programmable inverse time characteristic curve. The time characteristic equation is according to equation 48:} \]

\[ t[x] = \left( \frac{A}{\left( \frac{i}{in} \right)^p} + B \right) \cdot k \]

(Equation 48)

Further description can be found in the Technical reference manual (TRM).

\( t_{PRCrvx}, t_{TRCrvx}, t_{CRCrvx} \): Parameters for customer creation of inverse reset time characteristic curve. Further description can be found in the Technical Reference Manual.

### 8.5.3.2 Common settings for all steps

| x | x means step 1, 2, 3 and 4. |

**AngleRCA**: Relay characteristic angle given in degrees. This angle is defined as shown in figure 79. The angle is defined positive when the residual current lags the reference voltage (Upol = -U2)
In a transmission network a normal value of RCA is about 80°.

*UPolMin*: Minimum polarization (reference) voltage % of *UBase*.

*I>Dir*: Operate residual current level for directional comparison scheme. The setting is given in % of *IBase*. The start forward or start reverse signals can be used in a communication scheme. The appropriate signal must be configured to the communication scheme block.

### 8.6 Sensitive directional residual overcurrent and power protection SDEPSDE

#### 8.6.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sensitive directional residual overcurrent and power protection</td>
<td>SDEPSDE</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>67N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.6.2 Application

In networks with high impedance earthing, the phase-to-earth fault current is significantly smaller than the short circuit currents. Another difficulty for earth fault protection is that the magnitude of the phase-to-earth fault current is almost independent of the fault location in the network.

Directional residual current can be used to detect and give selective trip of phase-to-earth faults in high impedance earthed networks. The protection uses the residual current component $3I_0 \cdot \cos \phi$, where $\phi$ is the angle between the residual current and the residual voltage ($-3U_0$), compensated with a characteristic angle. Alternatively, the function can be set to strict $3I_0$ level with a check of angle $\phi$.

Directional residual power can also be used to detect and give selective trip of phase-to-earth faults in high impedance earthed networks. The protection uses the residual power component $3I_0 \cdot 3U_0 \cdot \cos \phi$, where $\phi$ is the angle between the residual current and the reference residual voltage, compensated with a characteristic angle.

A normal non-directional residual current function can also be used with definite or inverse time delay.

A backup neutral point voltage function is also available for non-directional residual overvoltage protection.

In an isolated network, that is, the network is only coupled to earth via the capacitances between the phase conductors and earth, the residual current always has -90º phase shift compared to the residual voltage ($3U_0$). The characteristic angle is chosen to -90º in such a network.

In resistance earthed networks or in Petersen coil earthed, with a parallel resistor, the active residual current component (in phase with the residual voltage) should be used for the earth fault detection. In such networks, the characteristic angle is chosen to 0º.

As the amplitude of the residual current is independent of the fault location, the selectivity of the earth fault protection is achieved by time selectivity.

When should the sensitive directional residual overcurrent protection be used and when should the sensitive directional residual power protection be used? Consider the following:

- Sensitive directional residual overcurrent protection gives possibility for better sensitivity. The setting possibilities of this function are down to 0.25 % of $I_{Base}$, 1 A or 5 A. This sensitivity is in most cases sufficient in high impedance network applications, if the measuring CT ratio is not too high.

- Sensitive directional residual power protection gives possibility to use inverse time characteristics. This is applicable in large high impedance earthed networks, with large capacitive earth fault currents. In such networks, the active fault current would be small and by using sensitive directional residual power protection, the operating quantity is elevated. Therefore, better possibility to detect earth faults. In addition, in low impedance earthed networks, the inverse time characteristic gives better time-selectivity in case of high zero-resistive fault currents.
Overcurrent functionality uses true 3I0, i.e. sum of GRPxL1, GRPxL2 and GRPxL3. For 3I0 to be calculated, connection is needed to all three phase inputs.

Directional and power functionality uses IN and UN. If a connection is made to GRPxN this signal is used, else if connection is made to all inputs GRPxL1, GRPxL2 and GRPxL3 the internally calculated sum of these inputs (3I0 and 3U0) will be used.

### 8.6.3 Setting guidelines

The sensitive earth fault protection is intended to be used in high impedance earthed systems, or in systems with resistive earthing where the neutral point resistor gives an earth fault current larger than what normal high impedance gives but smaller than the phase-to-phase short circuit current.

In a high impedance system the fault current is assumed to be limited by the system zero sequence shunt impedance to earth and the fault resistance only. All the series impedances in the system are assumed to be zero.

In the setting of earth fault protection, in a high impedance earthed system, the neutral point voltage (zero sequence voltage) and the earth fault current will be calculated at the desired sensitivity (fault resistance). The complex neutral point voltage (zero sequence) can be calculated as:

\[
U_0 = \frac{U_{\text{phase}}}{1 + \frac{3 \cdot R_f}{Z_0}}
\]

(Equation 49)

Where

- \(U_{\text{phase}}\) is the phase voltage in the fault point before the fault,
- \(R_f\) is the resistance to earth in the fault point and
- \(Z_0\) is the system zero sequence impedance to earth
The fault current, in the fault point, can be calculated as:

\[ I_j = 3I_0 = \frac{3 \cdot U_{\text{phase}}}{Z_0 + 3 \cdot R_s} \]  
(Equation 50)

The impedance \( Z_0 \) is dependent on the system earthing. In an isolated system (without neutral point apparatus) the impedance is equal to the capacitive coupling between the phase conductors and earth:

\[ Z_s = -jX_c = -\frac{3 \cdot U_{\text{phase}}}{I_j} \]  
(Equation 51)

Where

- \( I_j \) is the capacitive earth fault current at a non-resistive phase-to-earth fault
- \( X_c \) is the capacitive reactance to earth

In a system with a neutral point resistor (resistance earthed system) the impedance \( Z_0 \) can be calculated as:

\[ Z_s = \frac{-jX_c \cdot 3R_n}{-jX_c + 3R_s} \]  
(Equation 52)

Where

- \( R_n \) is the resistance of the neutral point resistor

In many systems there is also a neutral point reactor (Petersen coil) connected to one or more transformer neutral points. In such a system the impedance \( Z_0 \) can be calculated as:

\[ Z_s = -jX_c \parallel 3R_n \parallel j3X_a = \frac{9R_n X_c X_a}{3X_c X_a + j3R_s \cdot (3X_a - X_c)} \]  
(Equation 53)

Where

- \( X_n \) is the reactance of the Petersen coil. If the Petersen coil is well tuned we have \( 3X_n = X_c \) In this case the impedance \( Z_0 \) will be: \( Z_0 = 3R_n \)

Now consider a system with an earthing via a resistor giving higher earth fault current than the high impedance earthing. The series impedances in the system can no longer be neglected. The system with a single phase to earth fault can be described as in Figure 81.
The residual fault current can be written:

\[ 3I_0 = \frac{3U_{\text{phase}}}{2 \cdot Z_1 + Z_0 + 3 \cdot R_f} \]  

(Equation 54)

Where
- \( U_{\text{phase}} \) is the phase voltage in the fault point before the fault
- \( Z_1 \) is the total positive sequence impedance to the fault point. \( Z_1 = Z_{sc} + Z_{T,1} + Z_{\text{lineAB},1} + Z_{\text{lineBC},1} \)
- \( Z_0 \) is the total zero sequence impedance to the fault point. \( Z_0 = Z_{T,0} + 3R_N + Z_{\text{lineAB},0} + Z_{\text{lineBC},0} \)
- \( R_f \) is the fault resistance.

The residual voltages in stations A and B can be written:

\[ U_{0A} = 3I_0 \cdot \left( Z_{T,0} + 3R_N \right) \]  

(Equation 55)

\[ U_{0B} = 3I_0 \cdot \left( Z_{T,0} + 3R_N + Z_{\text{lineAB},0} \right) \]  

(Equation 56)

The residual power, measured by the sensitive earth fault protections in A and B will be:
The residual power is a complex quantity. The protection will have a maximum sensitivity in the characteristic angle RCA. The apparent residual power component in the characteristic angle, measured by the protection, can be written:

\[ S_{\phi_A,\text{prot}} = 3U_{\phi_A} \cdot 3I_{\phi} \cos \phi_A \]

(Equation 59)

\[ S_{\phi_B,\text{prot}} = 3U_{\phi_B} \cdot 3I_{\phi} \cos \phi_B \]

(Equation 60)

The angles \( \phi_A \) and \( \phi_B \) are the phase angles between the residual current and the residual voltage in the station compensated with the characteristic angle RCA.

The protection will use the power components in the characteristic angle direction for measurement, and as base for the inverse time delay.

The inverse time delay is defined as:

\[ t_{\text{inv}} = \frac{kSN \cdot (3I_0 \cdot 3U_0 \cdot \cos \phi(\text{reference}))}{3I_0 \cdot 3U_0 \cdot \cos \phi(\text{measured})} \]

(Equation 61)

The function can be set On/Off with the setting of Operation.

Common base IED values for primary current (IBase), primary voltage (UBase) and primary power (SBase) are set in a Global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

GlobalBaseSel: It is used to select a GBASVAL function for reference of base values.

RotResU: It is a setting for rotating the polarizing quantity (3U0) by 0 or 180 degrees. This parameter is set to 180 degrees by default in order to inverse the residual voltage (3U0) to calculate the reference voltage (3U0 e^{jRCAdir}). Since the reference voltage is used as the polarizing quantity for directionality, it is important to set this parameter correctly.

With the setting OpMode the principle of directional function is chosen.

With OpMode set to 3I0cosf\( \phi \) the current component in the direction equal to the characteristic angle RCAdir has the maximum sensitivity. The characteristic for RCAdir is equal to 0° is shown in Figure 82.
Figure 82: Characteristic for $\text{RCADir}$ equal to $0^\circ$

The characteristic is for $\text{RCADir}$ equal to $-90^\circ$ is shown in Figure 83.

Figure 83: Characteristic for $\text{RCADir}$ equal to $-90^\circ$

When $\text{OpMode}$ is set to $3U03I0\cos\phi$ the apparent residual power component in the direction is measured.

When $\text{OpMode}$ is set to $3I0$ and $\phi$ the function will operate if the residual current is larger than the setting $\text{INDir}>$ and the residual current angle is within the sector $\text{RCADir} \pm \text{ROADir}$.

The characteristic for this $\text{OpMode}$ when $\text{RCADir} = 0^\circ$ and $\text{ROADir} = 80^\circ$ is shown in figure 84.
Figure 84: Characteristic for RCADir = 0° and ROAdir = 80°

DirMode is set Forward or Reverse to set the direction of the operation for the directional function selected by the OpMode.

All the directional protection modes have a residual current release level setting INRel> which is set in % of IBase. This setting should be chosen smaller than or equal to the lowest fault current to be detected.

All the directional protection modes have a residual voltage release level setting UNRel> which is set in % of UBase. This setting should be chosen smaller than or equal to the lowest fault residual voltage to be detected.

tDef is the definite time delay, given in s, for the directional residual current protection.

tReset is the time delay before the definite timer gets reset, given in s. With a tReset time of few cycles, there is an increased possibility to clear intermittent earth faults correctly. The setting shall be much shorter than the set trip delay. In case of intermittent earth faults, the fault current is intermittently dropping below the set value during consecutive cycles. Therefore the definite timer should continue for a certain time equal to tReset even though the fault current has dropped below the set value.

The characteristic angle of the directional functions RCADir is set in degrees. RCADir is normally set equal to 0° in a high impedance earthed network with a neutral point resistor as the active current component is appearing out on the faulted feeder only. RCADir is set equal to -90° in an isolated network as all currents are mainly capacitive.

ROAdir is Relay Operating Angle. ROAdir is identifying a window around the reference direction in order to detect directionality. ROAdir is set in degrees. For angles differing more than ROAdir from RCADir the function is blocked. The setting can be used to prevent unwanted operation for non-faulted feeders, with large capacitive earth fault current contributions, due to CT phase angle error.

INCosPhi> is the operate current level for the directional function when OpMode is set 3I0Cosphi. The setting is given in % of IBase. The setting should be based on calculation of the active or capacitive earth fault current at required sensitivity of the protection.
\( SN > \) is the operate power level for the directional function when \( OpMode = 3i03U0Cosfi \). The setting is given in \% of \( SBase \). The setting should be based on calculation of the active or capacitive earth fault residual power at required sensitivity of the protection.

The input transformer for the Sensitive directional residual over current and power protection function has the same short circuit capacity as the phase current transformers. Hence, there is no specific requirement for the external CT core, i.e. any CT core can be used.

If the time delay for residual power is chosen the delay time is dependent on two setting parameters. \( SRef \) is the reference residual power, given in \% of \( SBase \). \( kSN \) is the time multiplier. The time delay will follow the following expression:

\[
T_{SW} = \frac{kSN \cdot Sref}{3I_0 \cdot 3U_0 \cdot \cos \phi (measured)}
\]

(Equation 62)

\( INDir \) is the operate current level for the directional function when \( OpMode = 3i0 and fi \). The setting is given in \% of \( IBase \). The setting should be based on calculation of the earth fault current at required sensitivity of the protection.

\( OpINNonDir \) is set On to activate the non-directional residual current protection.

\( INNonDir \) is the operate current level for the non-directional function. The setting is given in \% of \( IBase \). This function can be used for detection and clearance of cross-country faults in a shorter time than for the directional function. The current setting should be larger than the maximum single-phase residual current on the protected line.

\( TimeChar \) is the selection of time delay characteristic for the non-directional residual current protection. Definite time delay and different types of inverse time characteristics are available:

Table 24: Inverse time characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Curve name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Normal Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Moderately Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI/IEEE Definite time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI Long Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Normal Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Very Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Extremely Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Short Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Long Time Inverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC Definite Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User Programmable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASEA RI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RXIDG (logarithmic)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
See chapter “Inverse time characteristics” in Technical Manual for the description of different characteristics

\[ t[x] = \left( \frac{A}{\left( i \right)^n} + B \right) \cdot \text{InMult} \]

(Equation 63)

tINNonDir is the definite time delay for the non directional earth fault current protection, given in s.

OpUN> is set On to activate the trip function of the residual over voltage protection.

tUN is the definite time delay for the trip function of the residual voltage protection, given in s.

8.7 Thermal overload protection, one time constant, Celsius/Fahrenheit LCPTTR/LFPTTR

8.7.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thermal overload protection, one time constant, Celsius</td>
<td>LCPTTR</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal overload protection, one time constant, Fahrenheit</td>
<td>LFPTTR</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.7.2 Application

Lines and cables in the power system are designed for a certain maximum load current level. If the current exceeds this level the losses will be higher than expected. As a consequence the temperature of the conductors will increase. If the temperature of the lines and cables reaches too high values the equipment might be damaged:

- The sag of overhead lines can reach unacceptable value.
- If the temperature of conductors, for example aluminium conductors, gets too high the material will be destroyed.
- In cables the insulation can be damaged as a consequence of the overtemperature. As a consequence of this phase to phase or phase to earth faults can occur.
In stressed situations in the power system it can be required to overload lines and cables for a limited time. This should be done while managing the risks safely.

The thermal overload protection provides information that makes a temporary overloading of cables and lines possible. The thermal overload protection estimates the conductor temperature continuously, in Celsius or Fahrenheit depending on whether LCPTTR or LFPTTR is chosen. This estimation is made by using a thermal model of the line/cable based on the current measurement.

If the temperature of the protected object reaches a set warning level $\text{AlarmTemp}$, a signal ALARM can be given to the operator. This enables actions in the power system to be taken before dangerous temperatures are reached. If the temperature continues to increase to the trip value $\text{TripTemp}$, the protection initiates trip of the protected line.

### 8.7.3 Setting guideline

The parameters for the Thermal overload protection, one time constant, Celsius/Fahrenheit LCPTTR/LFPTTR are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

The following settings can be done for the thermal overload protection.

**Operation:** Off/On

$\text{GlobalBaseSel}$ is used to select a GBASVAL function for reference of base values, primary current ($I_{\text{Base}}$), primary voltage ($U_{\text{Base}}$) and primary power ($S_{\text{Base}}$).

$\text{Imult}$: Enter the number of lines in case the protection function is applied on multiple parallel lines sharing one CT.

$\text{IRef}$: Reference, steady state current, given in % of $I_{\text{Base}}$ that will give a steady state (end) temperature rise $T_{\text{Ref}}$. It is suggested to set this current to the maximum steady state current allowed for the line/cable under emergency operation (a few hours per year).

$\text{TRef}$: Reference temperature rise (end temperature) corresponding to the steady state current $I_{\text{Ref}}$. From cable manuals current values with corresponding conductor temperature are often given. These values are given for conditions such as earth temperature, ambient air temperature, way of laying of cable and earth thermal resistivity. From manuals for overhead conductor temperatures and corresponding current is given.

$\text{Tau}$: The thermal time constant of the protected circuit given in minutes. Please refer to manufacturers manuals for details.

$\text{TripTemp}$: Temperature value for trip of the protected circuit. For cables, a maximum allowed conductor temperature is often stated to be 90°C (194°F). For overhead lines, the critical temperature for aluminium conductor is about 90 - 100°C (194-212°F). For a copper conductor a normal figure is 70°C (158°F).

$\text{AlarmTemp}$: Temperature level for alarm of the protected circuit. ALARM signal can be used as a warning before the circuit is tripped. Therefore the setting shall be lower than the trip level. It shall at the same time be higher than the maximum conductor temperature at normal operation. For cables this level is often given to 65°C (149°F). Similar values are stated for overhead lines. A suitable setting can be about 15°C (59°F) below the trip value.

$\text{ReclTemp}$: Temperature where lockout signal LOCKOUT from the protection is released. When the thermal overload protection trips, a lock-out signal is activated. This signal is intended to block switch in of the protected circuit as long as the conductor temperature is high. The signal is released when the estimated temperature is below the set value. This temperature value should be chosen below the alarm temperature.
8.8 Thermal overload protection, two time constants TRPTTR

8.8.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Thermal overload protection, two</td>
<td>TRPTTR</td>
<td></td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time constants</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.8.2 Application

Transformers in the power system are designed for a certain maximum load current (power) level. If the current exceeds this level the losses will be higher than expected. As a consequence the temperature of the transformer will increase. If the temperature of the transformer reaches too high a value, the equipment might be damaged;

- The insulation within the transformer experiences forced ageing. As a consequence of this, the risk of internal phase-to-phase or phase-to-earth faults increases.
- There might be hot spots within the transformer, which degrades the paper insulation. It might also cause bubbling in the transformer oil.

In stressed situations in the power system it can be required to overload transformers for a limited time. This should be done without the above mentioned risks. The thermal overload protection provides information and makes temporary overloading of transformers possible.

The permissible load level of a power transformer is highly dependent on the cooling system of the transformer. There are two main principles:

- OA: The air is naturally circulated to the coolers without fans and the oil is naturally circulated without pumps.
- FOA: The coolers have fans to force air for cooling and pumps to force the circulation of the transformer oil.

The protection can have two sets of parameters, one for non-forced cooling and one for forced cooling. Both the permissive steady state loading level as well as the thermal time constant is influenced by the cooling system of the transformer. The two parameters sets can be activated by the binary input signal COOLING. This can be used for transformers where forced cooling can be taken out of operation, for example at fan or pump faults.

The thermal overload protection estimates the internal heat content of the transformer (temperature) continuously. This estimation is made by using a thermal model of the transformer which is based on current measurement.

If the heat content of the protected transformer reaches a set alarm level a signal can be given to the operator. Two alarm levels are available. This enables preventive actions in the power system to be taken before dangerous temperatures are reached. If the temperature continues to increase to the trip value, the protection initiates a trip of the protected transformer.
After tripping by the thermal overload protection, the transformer will cool down over time. There will be a time gap before the heat content (temperature) reaches such a level so that the transformer can be taken into service again. Therefore, the function will continue to estimate the heat content using a set cooling time constant. Energizing of the transformer can be blocked until the heat content has reached a set level.

8.8.3 Setting guideline

The parameters for the thermal overload protection, two time constants (TRPTTR) are set via the local HMI or Protection and Control IED Manager (PCM600).

The following settings can be done for the thermal overload protection:

- **Operation**: Off/On

  *Operation*: Sets the mode of operation. *Off* switches off the complete function.

- **GlobalBaseSel**: Selects the global base value group used by the function to define *I*Base, *U*Base and *S*Base. Note that this function will only use *I*Base value.

- **IRef**: Reference level of the current given in %. When the current is equal to *I*Ref the final (steady state) heat content is equal to 1. It is suggested to give a setting corresponding to the rated current of the transformer winding.

- **IRefMult**: If a binary input ENMULT is activated the reference current value can be multiplied by the factor *I*RefMult. The activation could be used in case of deviating ambient temperature from the reference value. In the standard for loading of a transformer an ambient temperature of 20°C is used. For lower ambient temperatures the load ability is increased and vice versa. *I*RefMult can be set within a range: 0.01 - 10.00.

- **IBase1**: Base current for setting given as percentage of *I*Base. This setting shall be related to the status with no COOLING input. It is suggested to give a setting corresponding to the rated current of the transformer with natural cooling (OA).

- **IBase2**: Base current for setting given as percentage of *I*Base. This setting shall be related to the status with activated COOLING input. It is suggested to give a setting corresponding to the rated current of the transformer with forced cooling (FOA). If the transformer has no forced cooling *I*Base2 can be set equal to *I*Base1.

- **Tau1**: The thermal time constant of the protected transformer, related to *I*Base1 (no cooling) given in minutes.

- **Tau2**: The thermal time constant of the protected transformer, related to *I*Base2 (with cooling) given in minutes.

The thermal time constant should be obtained from the transformer manufacturers manuals. The thermal time constant is dependent on the cooling and the amount of oil. Normal time constants for medium and large transformers (according to IEC 60076-7) are about 2.5 hours for naturally cooled transformers and 1.5 hours for forced cooled transformers.

The time constant can be estimated from measurements of the oil temperature during a cooling sequence (described in IEC 60076-7). It is assumed that the transformer is operated at a certain load level with a constant oil temperature (steady state operation). The oil temperature above the ambient temperature is $\Delta \theta_{00}$. Then the transformer is disconnected from the grid (no load). After a time *t* of at least 30 minutes the temperature of the oil is measured again. Now the oil temperature above the ambient temperature is $\Delta \theta_{ot}$. The thermal time constant can now be estimated as:
\[
\tau = \frac{1}{\ln \Delta \theta_{o,t} - \ln \Delta \theta_{o,0}}
\]

(Equation 64)

If the transformer has forced cooling (FOA) the measurement should be made both with and without the forced cooling in operation, giving \( \text{Tau2} \) and \( \text{Tau1} \).

The time constants can be changed if the current is higher than a set value or lower than a set value. If the current is high it is assumed that the forced cooling is activated while it is deactivated at low current. The setting of the parameters below enables automatic adjustment of the time constant.

\text{Tau1High}: Multiplication factor to adjust the time constant \( \text{Tau1} \) if the current is higher than the set value \( I_{\text{High Tau1}} \). \( I_{\text{High Tau1}} \) is set in \( \% \) of \( I_{\text{Base}1} \).

\text{Tau1Low}: Multiplication factor to adjust the time constant \( \text{Tau1} \) if the current is lower than the set value \( I_{\text{Low Tau1}} \). \( I_{\text{Low Tau1}} \) is set in \( \% \) of \( I_{\text{Base}1} \).

\text{Tau2High}: Multiplication factor to adjust the time constant \( \text{Tau2} \) if the current is higher than the set value \( I_{\text{High Tau2}} \). \( I_{\text{High Tau2}} \) is set in \( \% \) of \( I_{\text{Base}2} \).

\text{Tau2Low}: Multiplication factor to adjust the time constant \( \text{Tau2} \) if the current is lower than the set value \( I_{\text{Low Tau2}} \). \( I_{\text{Low Tau2}} \) is set in \( \% \) of \( I_{\text{Base}2} \).

The possibility to change time constant with the current value as the base can be useful in different applications. Below some examples are given:

- In case a total interruption (low current) of the protected transformer all cooling possibilities will be inactive. This can result in a changed value of the time constant.
- If other components (motors) are included in the thermal protection, there is a risk of overheating of that equipment in case of very high current. The thermal time constant is often smaller for a motor than for the transformer.

\( I_{\text{Trip}} \): The steady state current that the transformer can withstand. The setting is given in \( \% \) of \( I_{\text{Base}1} \) or \( I_{\text{Base}2} \).

\( \text{Alarm1} \): Heat content level for activation of the signal ALARM1. ALARM1 is set in \( \% \) of the trip heat content level.

\( \text{Alarm2} \): Heat content level for activation of the output signal ALARM2. ALARM2 is set in \( \% \) of the trip heat content level.

\( \text{ResLo} \): Lockout release level of heat content to release the lockout signal. When the thermal overload protection trips a lock-out signal is activated. This signal is intended to block switching on of the protected circuit transformer as long as the transformer temperature is high. The signal is released when the estimated heat content is below the set value. This temperature value should be chosen below the alarm temperature. \( \text{ResLo} \) is set in \( \% \) of the trip heat content level.

\( \text{ThetaInit} \): Heat content before activation of the function. This setting can be set a little below the alarm level. If the transformer is loaded before the activation of the protection function, its temperature can be higher than the ambient temperature. The start point given in the setting will prevent risk of no trip at overtemperature during the first moments after activation. \( \text{ThetaInit} \) is set in \( \% \) of the trip heat content level.

\( \text{Warning} \): If the calculated time to trip factor is below the setting \( \text{Warning} \) a warning signal is activated. The setting is given in minutes.
8.8.3.1 Setting example

Calculation of the operate time with the available current is performed only if the calculated final temperature is greater than the operate level temperature.

\[ t_{\text{operate}} = -\tau \cdot \ln \left( \frac{\theta_{\text{final}} - \theta_{\text{operate}}}{\theta_{\text{final}} - \theta_{n}} \right) \]

(Equation 65)

where:
- \( t_{\text{operate}} \) is the time to operate
- \( \tau \) is the time constant
- \( \theta_{\text{final}} = \left( \frac{I}{I_{\text{ref}}} \right)^2 \) is the steady state heat content
- \( I \) is the largest phase load current
- \( I_{\text{ref}} \) is the given reference load current
- \( \theta_{\text{operate}} = (I_{Bx} \times I_{\text{trip}})^2 \) is the operate level heat content
- \( I_{Bx} \) is the selected base current based cooling system ON/OFF
- \( I_{\text{trip}} \) is the operate level load current
- \( \theta_{n} \) is the current heat content

Consider that the given system has /Base of 1000 A and the cooling system is ON. The following settings are used to calculate the operate time:

- \( I_{\text{Ref}} \) 110%
- \( I_{\text{Base1}} \) 110% of IB
- \( I_{\text{Base2}} \) 120% of IB
- \( \tau_{1} \) 150 min
- \( \tau_{2} \) 90 min
- \( I_{\text{HighTau1}} \) 110% of IB1
- \( \tau_{\text{1High}} \) 125% of tC1
- \( I_{\text{LowTau1}} \) 90% of IB1
- \( \tau_{\text{1Low}} \) 75% of tC1
- \( I_{\text{HighTau2}} \) 110% of IB2
- \( \tau_{\text{2High}} \) 115% of tC2
- \( I_{\text{LowTau2}} \) 90% of IB2
- \( \tau_{\text{2Low}} \) 85% of tC2
- \( I_{\text{Trip}} \) 120% of IBx
- \( \theta_{\text{Init}} \) 50%
- \( \text{ResLo} \) 60% of Itr
As the cooling system is ON, \( iBase2 \) is selected as the base current and \( Tau2 \) setting is selected as the time constant.

For example, the largest phase load current is taken as 1800 A, then:

\[
\theta_{\text{final}} = \left( \frac{1800}{1.1} \right)^2 = 2677685.95
\]

\[
\theta_{\text{operate}} = (1.2 \times 1000 \times 1.1 \times 1.2)^2 = 2509056
\]

Here \( \Theta_{\text{final}} > \Theta_n \)

At \( t=0 \)

\[
\theta_n = \theta_{\text{init}} = \text{ThetaInit} \times \theta_{\text{operate}} = 0.5 \times 2509056 = 1254528
\]

At next execution, \( \theta_{n-1} = 1254528 \) and \( \theta_n = 1254555.04 \).

Therefore, \( t_{\text{operate}} = -90 \times \ln((2677685.95 - 2509056) / (2677685.95 - 1254555.04)) = 192 \text{ min} \)

After the trip, a lockout is released to inhibit reconnecting the tripped circuit. The output lockout signal LOCKOUT is activated when the temperature of the object is greater than the set lockout release temperature setting \( \text{ResLo} \).

\[
t_{\text{lockout _ release}} = -\tau \cdot \ln \left( \frac{\theta_{\text{final}} - \theta_{\text{lockout _ release}}}{\theta_{\text{final}} - \theta_n} \right)
\]

(Equation 66)

where:

- \( t_{\text{lockout _ release}} \) is the time to lockout release
- \( \theta_{\text{lockout _ release}} \) is the lockout release level heat content = \( \text{ResLo} \times \theta_{\text{operate}} \)

Consider that the current heat content \( \theta_n \) is 2700000 and the cooling system is still ON, then:

\[
\theta_{\text{lockout _ release}} = 0.6 \times 2509056 = 1505433.6
\]

\[
t_{\text{lockout _ release}} = -90 \times \ln((2677685.95 - 1505433.6) / (2677685.95 - 2700000)) = 244 \text{ min} \)

8.9 Breaker failure protection CCRBRF
8.9.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Breaker failure protection, 3-phase activation and output</td>
<td>CCRBF</td>
<td>3I&gt;BF</td>
<td>50BF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.9.2 Application

In the design of the fault clearance system the N-1 criterion is often used. This means that a fault needs to be cleared even if any component in the fault clearance system is faulty. One necessary component in the fault clearance system is the circuit breaker.

It is from practical and economical reason not feasible to duplicate the circuit breaker for the protected object. Instead a breaker failure protection is used.

Breaker failure protection CCRBRF will issue a backup trip command to adjacent circuit breakers in case of failure to trip of the “normal” circuit breaker for the protected object. The detection of failure to break the current through the breaker is made either by means of current measurement or as detection of closed status using auxiliary contact.

CCRBRF can also give a retrip command. This means that a second trip signal is sent to the protected object circuit breaker. The retrip function can be used to increase the probability of operation of the breaker, or it can be used to avoid backup trip of many breakers in case of mistakes during relay maintenance and testing.

8.9.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for Breaker failure protection CCRBRF are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

The following settings can be done for the breaker failure protection.

- **GlobalBaseSel**: Selects the global base value group used by the function to define IBase, UBase and SBase. Note that this function will only use IBase value.

- **Operation**: Off/On to enable/disable the complete function.

- **FunctionMode**: It defines the way the detection of failure of the breaker is performed. In the Current mode, the current measurement is used for the detection. In the CB Pos mode, the CB auxiliary contact status is used as an indicator of the failure of the breaker. The mode Current or CB Pos means that both ways of detections can be activated. The CB Pos mode is used in applications where the fault current through the circuit breaker is small. This can be the case for some generator protection application (for example, reverse power protection) or in the case of line ends with weak end infeed.

- **StartMode**: By this setting it is possible to select how t1 and t2 timers are run and consequently how output commands are given from the function:
  - **Option 1 - LatchedStart**: "By external start signals which is internally latched". When function is once started by external START signal, the timers t1 and t2 will always elapse and then measurement criterion defined by parameter FunctionMode will be always checked in order to verify if the appropriate command shall be given out from the function. Timers cannot be stopped by removing the external START signal. Function can be started again only when all of the following three timers t1, t2 and fixed timer of 150ms
in function internal design has expired and the measurement criterion defined by parameter FunctionMode has deactivated, see Figure 85. Note that this option corresponds to the function behavior in previous versions of the 670 Series from version 1.0 up to and including version 2.1.

- **Option 2 - FollowStart**: “Follow the external start signal only”.
The timers t1 and t2 will run while external START signal is present. If they elapse then measurement criterion defined by parameter FunctionMode will be checked in order to verify if the appropriate command shall be given out from the function. Timers can be always stopped by resetting the external START signal, see Figure 86.

- **Option 3- FollowStart&Mode**: “Follow external start signal and selected FunctionMode”.
The timers t1 and t2 will run while external START signal is present and in the same time the measurement criterion defined by parameter FunctionMode is active. If they elapse then the appropriate command will be given out from the function. Timers can be stopped by resetting the external START signal or if the measurement criterion de-activates, see Figure 87.

When one of the two “follow modes” is used, there is a settable timer tStartTimeout which will block the external START input signal when it times-out. This will automatically also reset the t1 and t2 timers and consequently prevent any backup trip command. At the same time the STALARM output from the function will have logical value one. To reset this signal external START signal shall be removed. This is done in order to prevent unwanted operation of the breaker failure function for cases where a permanent START signal is given by mistake (e.g. due to a fault in the station battery system). Note that any backup trip command will inhibit running of tStartTimeout timer.

![Simplified overall logic for LatchedStart](image-url)

**Figure 85**: Simplified overall logic for LatchedStart
RetripMode: This setting defines how the retrip function shall operate. Refer to Table 25 for more details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RetripMode</th>
<th>FunctionMode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Off</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>The retrip function is disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UseFunctionMode</td>
<td>Current</td>
<td>A phase current should be larger than the set operate level to allow retrip once the t1 timer elapses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CB Pos</td>
<td>retrip is done when the breaker position indicates that breaker is still closed after retrip time has elapsed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Current or CB Pos</td>
<td>Both the methods are used</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Always</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>retrip is always given when t1 elapses without any further checks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BuTripMode: Defines how many current criterias to be fulfilled in order to detect failure of the breaker. For Current operation 2 out of 4 means that at least two currents, of the three-phase currents and the residual current, shall be high to indicate breaker failure. 1 out of 3 means that at least one current of the three-phase currents shall be high to indicate breaker failure. 1 out of 4 means that at least one current of the three phase currents or the residual current shall be high to indicate breaker failure. In most applications 1 out of 3 is sufficient. For CB Pos operation 1 out of 3 is always used.
**IP:** Current level for detection of breaker failure, set in % of \( I_{\text{Base}} \). This parameter should be set so that faults with small fault current can be detected. The setting can be chosen in accordance with the most sensitive protection function to start the breaker failure protection. Default setting is 10% of \( I_{\text{Base}} \). Note that this setting shall not be set lower than 4% of \( I_r \), where \( I_r \) is rated current of the IED CT input where the function is connected. In principle \( I_r \) is either 1A or 5A depending on the ordered IED.

**I>BlkCBPos:** If the \( \text{FunctionMode} \) is set to \( \text{Current} \) or \( \text{CB pos} \) breaker failure for high current faults are safely detected by the current measurement function. To increase security for low currents the contact based function will be enabled only if the current at the moment of starting is below this set level. The setting can be given within the range 5 – 200% of \( I_{\text{Base}} \). It is strongly recommended to set this level above \( I_{\text{Ph}>} \) set level.

**IN:** Residual current level for detection of breaker failure set in % of \( I_{\text{Base}} \). In high impedance earthed systems the residual current at phase-to-earth faults are normally much smaller than the short circuit currents. In order to detect breaker failure at single phase-to-earth faults in such systems it is necessary to measure the residual current separately. The \( \text{BuTripMode} \) shall be set \( \text{1 out of 4} \) in such systems. The current setting should be chosen in accordance to the setting of the sensitive earth-fault protection. The setting can be given within the range 2 – 200 % of \( I_{\text{Base}} \).

\[ t_1: \text{Time delay of the retrip. The setting can be given within the range 0 – 60s in steps of 0.001 s. Typical setting is within range 0 – 50ms.} \]

\[ t_2: \text{Time delay of the backup trip. The choice of this setting is made as short as possible at the same time as unwanted operation must be avoided. Typical setting is within range 90 – 200ms (also dependent of retrip timer).} \]

Timer \( t_2 \) is used when function is started in one phase only (i.e. for single-phase to ground fault on an OHL (Over Head Lines) when single-pole auto-reclosing is used).

The minimum time delay for the backup trip can be estimated as:

\[ t_2 \geq t_1 + t_{\text{CB open}} + t_{\text{BFP reset}} + t_{\text{margin}} \]

(Equation 67)

where:

- \( t_{\text{CB open}} \) is the maximum opening time for the circuit breaker
- \( t_{\text{BFP reset}} \) is the maximum time for breaker failure protection to detect correct breaker function (the current criteria reset)
- \( t_{\text{margin}} \) is a safety margin

It is often required that the total fault clearance time shall be less than a given critical time. This time is often dependent of the ability of the power system to maintain transient stability in case of a fault close to a power plant.
The fault occurs

Protection operate time

The fault occurs

Time

Normal $t_{\text{closing}}$

Retrip delay $t_1$

$t_{\text{closing, after re-trip}}$

Margin

Minimum back-up trip delay $t_2$

Critical fault clearance time for stability

Trip and Start CCRBRF

Figure 88: Time sequence

t2MPH: Time delay of the backup trip at multi-phase start. The critical fault clearance time is often shorter in case of multi-phase faults, compared to single phase-to-earth faults. Therefore there is a possibility to reduce the backup trip delay for multi-phase faults. Typical setting is 90 – 150 ms.

Note that for a protected object which are always tripped three-phase (e.g. transformers, generators, reactors, cables, etc.) this timer shall always be set to the same value as $t_2$ timer.

t3: Additional time delay to $t_2$ for a second backup trip TRBU2. In some applications there might be a requirement to have separated backup trip functions, tripping different backup circuit breakers.

tCBAlarm: Time delay for alarm in case of indication of faulty circuit breaker. There is a binary input CBFLT from the circuit breaker. This signal is activated when internal supervision in the circuit breaker detect that the circuit breaker is unable to clear fault. This could be the case when gas pressure is low in a SF6 circuit breaker, of others. After the set time an alarm is given, so that actions can be done to repair the circuit breaker. Note that the time delay for backup trip $t_2$ is bypassed when the CBFLT is active. Typical setting is 2.0 seconds.

tPulse: Trip pulse duration. This setting must be larger than the opening time of circuit breakers to be tripped from the breaker failure protection. Typical setting is 200 ms.

tStartTimeout: When one of the two “Follow Modes” is used, there is a settable timer $t_\text{StartTimeout}$ which will block the external START input signal when it times-out. This will automatically also reset the $t_1$ and $t_2$ timers and consequently prevent any backup trip command. At the same time the STALARM output from the function will have logical value one. To reset that condition external START signal shall be removed. This is done in order to prevent unwanted operation of the breaker failure function for cases where a permanent START signal is given by mistake (e.g. due to a fault in the station battery system). Note that any backup trip command will inhibit running of $t_\text{StartTimeout}$ timer.
## Table 26: Setting summary for FunctionMode, StartMode, RetripMode and BuTripMode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>StartMode</th>
<th>RetripMode</th>
<th>t1 and t2 initiated with</th>
<th>When t1 has elapsed, TRRET will be given if</th>
<th>When t2 or t2MPh has elapsed, TRBU will be given if</th>
<th>t1 and t2 and t2MPh will be stopped (reset) if</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FunctionMode = Current**

1. LatchedStart | Off | external START | never be given | current is above set level *) | t1 and (t2 or t2MPh) and 150ms expires and current is below set level *) |

2. LatchedStart | UseFunction Mode | external START | be given if current is above set level of IPh> | current is above set level *) | t1 and (t2 or t2MPh) and 150ms expires and current is below set level *) |

3. LatchedStart | Always | external START | always be given | current is above set level *) | t1 and (t2 or t2MPh) and 150ms expires and current is below set level *) |

4. FollowStart | Off | external START | never be given | current is above set level *) | external START disappears |

5. FollowStart | UseFunction Mode | external START | be given if current is above set level of IPh> | current is above set level *) | external START disappears |

6. FollowStart | Always | external START | be given if external START is present | current is above set level *) | external START disappears |

7. FollowStart & Mode | Off | external START and current above set level | never be given | current is above set level *) and external START present | current is below set level *) or external START disappears |

8. FollowStart & Mode | UseFunction Mode | external START and current above set level | be given if current is above set level of IPh> and external START is present | current is above set level *) and external START present | current is below set level *) or external START disappears |

9. FollowStart & Mode | Always | external START and current above set level | be given if external START is present | current is above set level *) and external START present | current is below set level *) or external START disappears |

*) Set level depends on selected BuTripMode, that is, set level can be either IPh> or IN> or both.

**FunctionMode = CB Pos**

10. LatchedStart | Off | external START | never be given | CBCLDLx input has logical value one | t1 and (t2 or t2MPh) and 150ms expires and CBCLDLx input has logical value zero |

11. LatchedStart | UseFunction Mode | external START | be given if CBCLDLx input has logical value one | CBCLDLx input has logical value one | t1 and (t2 or t2MPh) and 150ms expires and CBCLDLx input has logical value zero |

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>StartMode</th>
<th>RetripMode</th>
<th>t1 and t2 initiated with</th>
<th>When t1 has elapsed, TRRET will be given if</th>
<th>When t2 or t2MPh has elapsed, TRBU will be given if</th>
<th>t1 and t2 and t2MPh will be stopped (reset) if</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>LatchedStart</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>external START</td>
<td>always be given</td>
<td>CBCLDLx input has logical value one</td>
<td>t1 and (t2 or t2MPh) and 150ms expires and CBCLDLx input has logical value zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>FollowStart</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>external START</td>
<td>never be given</td>
<td>CBCLDLx input has logical value one</td>
<td>external START disappears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>FollowStart</td>
<td>UseFunction Mode</td>
<td>external START</td>
<td>be given if CBCLDLx input has logical value one</td>
<td>CBCLDLx input has logical value one</td>
<td>external START disappears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>FollowStart</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>external START</td>
<td>if external START is present</td>
<td>CBCLDLx input has logical value one</td>
<td>external START disappears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>FollowStart&amp; Mode</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>external START and CBCLDLx input has logical value one</td>
<td>never be given</td>
<td>be given if CBCLDLx input has logical value one and external START is present</td>
<td>CBCLDLx input has logical value zero or external START disappears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>FollowStart&amp; Mode</td>
<td>UseFunction Mode</td>
<td>external START and CBCLDLx input has logical value one</td>
<td>be given if CBCLDLx input has logical value one and external START is present</td>
<td>be given if CBCLDLx input has logical value one and external START is present</td>
<td>CBCLDLx input has logical value zero or external START disappears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>FollowStart&amp; Mode</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>external START and CBCLDLx input has logical value one</td>
<td>be given if external START is present</td>
<td>be given if CBCLDLx input has logical value one and external START is present</td>
<td>CBCLDLx input has logical value zero or external START disappears</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FunctionMode = Current or CB Pos</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>StartMode</th>
<th>RetripMode</th>
<th>t1 and t2 initiated with</th>
<th>When t1 has elapsed, TRRET will</th>
<th>When t2 or t2MPh has elapsed, TRBU will be given if</th>
<th>t1 and t2 and t2MPh will be stopped (reset) if</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>LatchedStart</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>external START</td>
<td>always be given</td>
<td>current is above set level *) and higher than (I_{BkCBP} ) or CBCLDLx input has logical value one when current is smaller than (I_{BkCBP} )</td>
<td>t1 and (t2 or t2MPh) and 150ms expires and current is below set level *) or CBCLDLx input has logical value zero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>FollowStart</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>external START</td>
<td>never be given</td>
<td>current is above set level *) and higher than (I_{BkCBP} ) or CBCLDLx input has logical value one when current is smaller than (I_{BkCBP} )</td>
<td>external START disappears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>FollowStart</td>
<td>UseFunction Mode</td>
<td>external START</td>
<td>be given if current is above set level of (I_{Ph} ) and higher than (I_{BkCBP} ) or CBCLDLx input has logical value one when current is smaller than (I_{BkCBP} )</td>
<td>current is above set level *) and higher than (I_{BkCBP} ) or CBCLDLx input has logical value one when current is smaller than (I_{BkCBP} )</td>
<td>external START disappears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>FollowStart</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>external START</td>
<td>be given if external START is present</td>
<td>current is above set level *) and higher than (I_{BkCBP} ) or CBCLDLx input has logical value one when current is smaller than (I_{BkCBP} )</td>
<td>external START disappears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>FollowStart&amp;Mode</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>external START and current above set level</td>
<td>never be given</td>
<td>current is above set level *) and higher than (I_{BkCBP} ) or CBCLDLx input has logical value one when current is smaller than (I_{BkCBP} )</td>
<td>current is below set level *) or external START disappears</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>StartMode</th>
<th>RetripMode</th>
<th>t₁ and t₂ initiated with</th>
<th>When t₁ has elapsed, TRRET will</th>
<th>When t₂ or t₂MPH has elapsed, TRBU will be given if</th>
<th>t₁ and t₂ and t₂MPH will be stopped (reset) if</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>FollowStart&amp; Mode</td>
<td>UseFunction Mode</td>
<td>external START and current above set level</td>
<td>be given if current is above set level of Iₚₜ &gt; and higher than Iₚₜ &gt; Bₖ Bₙ Pₒ s or CBCLDLₓ input has logical value one when current is smaller than Iₚₜ &gt; Bₖ Bₙ Pₒ s</td>
<td>current is above set level *) and higher than Iₚₜ &gt; Bₖ Bₙ Pₒ s or CBCLDLₓ input has logical value one when current is smaller than Iₚₜ &gt; Bₖ Bₙ Pₒ s</td>
<td>current is below set level *) or external START disappears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>FollowStart&amp; Mode</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>external START and current above set level</td>
<td>be given if external START is present</td>
<td>current is above set level *) and higher than Iₚₜ &gt; Bₖ Bₙ Pₒ s or CBCLDLₓ input has logical value one when current is smaller than Iₚₜ &gt; Bₖ Bₙ Pₒ s</td>
<td>current is below set level *) or external START disappears</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*) Set level depends on selected BuTripMode, that is, set level can be either Iₚₜ > or IN > or both.

8.10 Stub protection STBPTOC

8.10.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stub protection</td>
<td>STBPTOC</td>
<td>3Iₚₜ &gt; STUB</td>
<td>50STB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.10.2 Application

In a 1½-breaker switchyard the line protection and the busbar protection normally have overlap when a connected object is in service. When an object is taken out of service it is normally required to keep the diagonal of the 1½-breaker switchyard in operation. This is done by opening the disconnector to the protected object. This will, however, disable the normal object protection (for example the distance protection) of the energized part between the circuit breakers and the open disconnector.

Stub protection STBPTOC is a simple phase overcurrent protection, fed from the two current transformer groups feeding the object taken out of service. The stub protection is only activated when the disconnector of the object is open. STBPTOC enables fast fault clearance of faults at the section between the CTs and the open disconnector.
8.10.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for Stub protection STBPTOC are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

The following settings can be done for the stub protection.

- **GlobalBaseSel**: Selects the global base value group used by the function to define $I_{Base}$, $U_{Base}$ and $S_{Base}$. Note that this function will only use $I_{Base}$ value.

- **Operation**: Off/On

- **ReleaseMode**: This parameter can be set Release or Continuous. With the Release setting the function is only active when a binary release signal RELEASE into the function is activated. This signal is normally taken from an auxiliary contact (normally closed) of the line disconnector and connected to a binary input RELEASE of the IED. With the setting Continuous the function is activated independent of presence of any external release signal.

- **$I_\gamma$**: Current level for the Stub protection, set in % of $I_{Base}$. This parameter should be set so that all faults on the stub can be detected. The setting should thus be based on fault calculations.

- **$t$**: Time delay of the operation. Normally the function shall be instantaneous.

8.11 Pole discordance protection CCPDSC
8.11.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pole discordance protection</td>
<td>CCPDSC</td>
<td></td>
<td>PD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.11.2 Application

There is a risk that a circuit breaker will get discordance between the poles at circuit breaker operation: closing or opening. One pole can be open and the other two closed, or two poles can be open and one closed. Pole discordance of a circuit breaker will cause unsymmetrical currents in the power system. The consequence of this can be:

- Negative sequence currents that will give stress on rotating machines
- Zero sequence currents that might give unwanted operation of sensitive earth-fault protections in the power system.

It is therefore important to detect situations with pole discordance of circuit breakers. When this is detected the breaker should be tripped directly.

Pole discordance protection CCPDSC will detect situation with deviating positions of the poles of the protected circuit breaker. The protection has two different options to make this detection:

- By connecting the auxiliary contacts in the circuit breaker so that logic is created, a signal can be sent to the protection, indicating pole discordance. This logic can also be realized within the protection itself, by using opened and close signals for each circuit breaker pole, connected to the protection.
- Each phase current through the circuit breaker is measured. If the difference between the phase currents is larger than a CurrUnsymLevel this is an indication of pole discordance, and the protection will operate.

8.11.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for the Pole discordance protection CCPDSC are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

The following settings can be done for the pole discordance protection.

\emph{GlobalBaseSel}: Selects the global base value group used by the function to define IBase, UBase and SBase. Note that this function will only use IBase value.

\emph{Operation}: Off or On

\emph{tTrip}: Time delay of the operation.

\emph{ContSel}: Operation of the contact based pole discordance protection. Can be set: Off, PD signal from CB. If PD signal from CB is chosen the logic to detect pole discordance is made in the vicinity to the breaker auxiliary contacts and only one signal is connected to the pole discordance function. If the Pole pos aux cont. alternative is chosen each open close signal is connected to the IED and the logic to detect pole discordance is realized within the function itself.
Operation of the current based pole discordance protection. Can be set: Off/ CB oper monitor/ Continuous monitor. In the alternative CB oper monitor the function is activated only directly in connection to breaker open or close command (during 200 ms). In the alternative Continuous monitor function is continuously activated.

Unsymmetrical magnitude of lowest phase current compared to the highest, set in % of the highest phase current. Natural difference between phase currents in 1 1/2 breaker installations must be considered. For circuit breakers in 1 1/2 breaker configured switch yards there might be natural unbalance currents through the breaker. This is due to the existence of low impedance current paths in the switch yard. This phenomenon must be considered in the setting of the parameter.

Current magnitude for release of the function in % of IBase.

8.12 Directional underpower protection GUPPDUP

8.12.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Directional underpower protection</td>
<td>GUPPDUP</td>
<td></td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.12.2 Application

The task of a generator in a power plant is to convert mechanical energy available as a torque on a rotating shaft to electric energy.

Sometimes, the mechanical power from a prime mover may decrease so much that it does not cover bearing losses and ventilation losses. Then, the synchronous generator becomes a synchronous motor and starts to take electric power from the rest of the power system. This operating state, where individual synchronous machines operate as motors, implies no risk for the machine itself. If the generator under consideration is very large and if it consumes lots of electric power, it may be desirable to disconnect it to ease the task for the rest of the power system.

Often, the motoring condition may imply that the turbine is in a very dangerous state. The task of the reverse power protection is to protect the turbine and not to protect the generator itself.

Steam turbines easily become overheated if the steam flow becomes too low or if the steam ceases to flow through the turbine. Therefore, turbo-generators should have reverse power protection. There are several contingencies that may cause reverse power: break of a main steam pipe, damage to one or more blades in the steam turbine or inadvertent closing of the main stop valves. In the last case, it is highly desirable to have a reliable reverse power protection. It may prevent damage to an otherwise undamaged plant.

During the routine shutdown of many thermal power units, the reverse power protection gives the tripping impulse to the generator breaker (the unit breaker). By doing so, one prevents the disconnection of the unit before the mechanical power has become zero. Earlier disconnection would cause an acceleration of the turbine generator at all routine shutdowns. This should have caused overspeed and high centrifugal stresses.
When the steam ceases to flow through a turbine, the cooling of the turbine blades will disappear. Now, it is not possible to remove all heat generated by the windage losses. Instead, the heat will increase the temperature in the steam turbine and especially of the blades. When a steam turbine rotates without steam supply, the electric power consumption will be about 2% of rated power. Even if the turbine rotates in vacuum, it will soon become overheated and damaged. The turbine overheats within minutes if the turbine loses the vacuum.

The critical time to overheating a steam turbine varies from about 0.5 to 30 minutes depending on the type of turbine. A high-pressure turbine with small and thin blades will become overheated more easily than a low-pressure turbine with long and heavy blades. The conditions vary from turbine to turbine and it is necessary to ask the turbine manufacturer in each case.

Power to the power plant auxiliaries may come from a station service transformer connected to the secondary side of the step-up transformer. Power may also come from a start-up service transformer connected to the external network. One has to design the reverse power protection so that it can detect reverse power independent of the flow of power to the power plant auxiliaries.

Hydro turbines tolerate reverse power much better than steam turbines do. Only Kaplan turbine and bulb turbines may suffer from reverse power. There is a risk that the turbine runner moves axially and touches stationary parts. They are not always strong enough to withstand the associated stresses.

Ice and snow may block the intake when the outdoor temperature falls far below zero. Branches and leaves may also block the trash gates. A complete blockage of the intake may cause cavitations. The risk for damages to hydro turbines can justify reverse power protection in unattended plants.

A hydro turbine that rotates in water with closed wicket gates will draw electric power from the rest of the power system. This power will be about 10% of the rated power. If there is only air in the hydro turbine, the power demand will fall to about 3%.

Diesel engines should have reverse power protection. The generator will take about 15% of its rated power or more from the system. A stiff engine may require perhaps 25% of the rated power to motor it. An engine that is good run in might need no more than 5%. It is necessary to obtain information from the engine manufacturer and to measure the reverse power during commissioning.

Gas turbines usually do not require reverse power protection.

Figure 90 illustrates the reverse power protection with underpower protection and with overpower protection. The underpower protection gives a higher margin and should provide better dependability. On the other hand, the risk for unwanted operation immediately after synchronization may be higher. One should set the underpower protection (reference angle set to 0) to trip if the active power from the generator is less than about 2%. One should set the overpower protection (reference angle set to 180) to trip if the power flow from the network to the generator is higher than 1%.
Figure 90: Reverse power protection with underpower or overpower protection

8.12.3 Setting guidelines

*GlobalBaseSel:* Selects the global base value group used by the function to define *IBase, UBase* and *SBase.* Note that this function will only use *IBase* value.

*Operation:* With the parameter *Operation* the function can be set *On/Off.*

*Mode:* The voltage and current used for the power measurement. The setting possibilities are shown in table 27.

### Table 27: Complex power calculation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Set value Mode</th>
<th>Formula used for complex power calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| L1, L2, L3     | $\bar{S} = \bar{U}_{L1} \cdot \bar{T}_{L1}^* + \bar{U}_{L2} \cdot \bar{T}_{L2}^* + \bar{U}_{L3} \cdot \bar{T}_{L3}^*$  
(Equation 69) |
| Arone          | $\bar{S} = \bar{U}_{L1L2} \cdot \bar{T}_{L1}^* - \bar{U}_{L2L3} \cdot \bar{T}_{L3}^*$  
(Equation 70) |
| PosSeq         | $\bar{S} = 3 \cdot \bar{G}_{PosSeq} \cdot \bar{T}_{PosSeq}^*$  
(Equation 71) |
| L1L2           | $\bar{S} = \bar{U}_{L1L2} \cdot (\bar{T}_{L1}^* - \bar{T}_{L2}^*)$  
(Equation 72) |
| L2L3           | $\bar{S} = \bar{U}_{L2L3} \cdot (\bar{T}_{L2}^* - \bar{T}_{L3}^*)$  
(Equation 73) |
| L3L1           | $\bar{S} = \bar{U}_{L3L1} \cdot (\bar{T}_{L3}^* - \bar{T}_{L1}^*)$  
(Equation 74) |
| L1             | $\bar{S} = 3 \cdot \bar{U}_{L1} \cdot \bar{T}_{L1}^*$  
(Equation 75) |
| L2             | $\bar{S} = 3 \cdot \bar{U}_{L2} \cdot \bar{T}_{L2}^*$  
(Equation 76) |
| L3             | $\bar{S} = 3 \cdot \bar{U}_{L3} \cdot \bar{T}_{L3}^*$  
(Equation 77) |
The function has two stages that can be set independently.

With the parameter OpMode1(2) the function can be set On/Off.

The function gives trip if the power component in the direction defined by the setting Angle1(2) is smaller than the set pick up power value Power1(2).

Figure 91: Underpower mode

The setting Power1(2) gives the power component pick up value in the Angle1(2) direction. The setting is given in p.u. of the generator rated power, see equation \[78\].

Minimum recommended setting is 0.2% of \(S_N\) when metering class CT inputs into the IED are used.

\[ S_N = \sqrt{3} \cdot U_{\text{Base}} \cdot I_{\text{Base}} \]  

(Equation 78)

The setting Angle1(2) gives the characteristic angle giving maximum sensitivity of the power protection function. The setting is given in degrees. For active power the set angle should be 0° or 180°. 0° should be used for generator low forward active power protection.
For low forward power the set angle should be 0° in the underpower function. TripDelay1(2) is set in seconds to give the time delay for trip of the stage after pick up. Hysteresis1(2) is given in p.u. of generator rated power according to equation 79.

\[ S_N = \sqrt{3} \cdot U_{\text{Base}} \cdot I_{\text{Base}} \]  
(Equation 79)

The drop out power will be \( \text{Power1}(2) + \text{Hysteresis1}(2) \). The possibility to have low pass filtering of the measured power can be made as shown in the formula:

\[ S = k \cdot S_{\text{Old}} + (1 - k) \cdot S_{\text{Calculated}} \]  
(Equation 80)

Where:
- \( S \) is a new measured value to be used for the protection function
- \( S_{\text{Old}} \) is the measured value given from the function in previous execution cycle
- \( S_{\text{Calculated}} \) is the new calculated value in the present execution cycle
- \( k \) is settable parameter

The value of \( k = 0.92 \) is recommended in generator applications as the trip delay is normally quite long.

The calibration factors for current and voltage measurement errors are set % of rated current/voltage:

\( IAmpComp5, IAmpComp30, IAmpComp100 \)
The angle compensation is given as difference between current and voltage angle errors. The values are given for operating points 5, 30 and 100% of rated current/voltage. The values should be available from instrument transformer test protocols.

### 8.13 Directional over-power protection GOPPDOP

#### 8.13.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Directional over-power protection</td>
<td>GOPPDOP</td>
<td></td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 8.13.2 Application

The task of a generator in a power plant is to convert mechanical energy available as a torque on a rotating shaft to electric energy.

Sometimes, the mechanical power from a prime mover may decrease so much that it does not cover bearing losses and ventilation losses. Then, the synchronous generator becomes a synchronous motor and starts to take electric power from the rest of the power system. This operating state, where individual synchronous machines operate as motors, implies no risk for the machine itself. If the generator under consideration is very large and if it consumes lots of electric power, it may be desirable to disconnect it to ease the task for the rest of the power system.

Often, the motoring condition may imply that the turbine is in a very dangerous state. The task of the reverse power protection is to protect the turbine and not to protect the generator itself.

Steam turbines easily become overheated if the steam flow becomes too low or if the steam ceases to flow through the turbine. Therefore, turbo-generators should have reverse power protection. There are several contingencies that may cause reverse power: break of a main steam pipe, damage to one or more blades in the steam turbine or inadvertent closing of the main stop valves. In the last case, it is highly desirable to have a reliable reverse power protection. It may prevent damage to an otherwise undamaged plant.

During the routine shutdown of many thermal power units, the reverse power protection gives the tripping impulse to the generator breaker (the unit breaker). By doing so, one prevents the disconnection of the unit before the mechanical power has become zero. Earlier disconnection would cause an acceleration of the turbine generator at all routine shutdowns. This should have caused overspeed and high centrifugal stresses.

When the steam ceases to flow through a turbine, the cooling of the turbine blades will disappear. Now, it is not possible to remove all heat generated by the windage losses. Instead, the heat will increase the temperature in the steam turbine and especially of the blades. When a steam turbine rotates without steam supply, the electric power consumption will be about
2% of rated power. Even if the turbine rotates in vacuum, it will soon become overheated and damaged. The turbine overheats within minutes if the turbine loses the vacuum.

The critical time to overheating of a steam turbine varies from about 0.5 to 30 minutes depending on the type of turbine. A high-pressure turbine with small and thin blades will become overheated more easily than a low-pressure turbine with long and heavy blades. The conditions vary from turbine to turbine and it is necessary to ask the turbine manufacturer in each case.

Power to the power plant auxiliaries may come from a station service transformer connected to the primary side of the step-up transformer. Power may also come from a start-up service transformer connected to the external network. One has to design the reverse power protection so that it can detect reverse power independent of the flow of power to the power plant auxiliaries.

Hydro turbines tolerate reverse power much better than steam turbines do. Only Kaplan turbine and bulb turbines may suffer from reverse power. There is a risk that the turbine runner moves axially and touches stationary parts. They are not always strong enough to withstand the associated stresses.

Ice and snow may block the intake when the outdoor temperature falls far below zero. Branches and leaves may also block the trash gates. A complete blockage of the intake may cause cavitations. The risk for damages to hydro turbines can justify reverse power protection in unattended plants.

A hydro turbine that rotates in water with closed wicket gates will draw electric power from the rest of the power system. This power will be about 10% of the rated power. If there is only air in the hydro turbine, the power demand will fall to about 3%.

Diesel engines should have reverse power protection. The generator will take about 15% of its rated power or more from the system. A stiff engine may require perhaps 25% of the rated power to motor it. An engine that is well run in might need no more than 5%. It is necessary to obtain information from the engine manufacturer and to measure the reverse power during commissioning.

Gas turbines usually do not require reverse power protection.

Figure 93 illustrates the reverse power protection with underpower IED and with overpower IED. The underpower IED gives a higher margin and should provide better dependability. On the other hand, the risk for unwanted operation immediately after synchronization may be higher. One should set the underpower IED to trip if the active power from the generator is less than about 2%. One should set the overpower IED to trip if the power flow from the network to the generator is higher than 1%.

Figure 93: Reverse power protection with underpower IED and overpower IED
8.13.3 Setting guidelines

*GlobalBaseSel:* Selects the global base value group used by the function to define IBase, UBase and SBase. Note that this function will only use IBase value.

*Operation:* With the parameter *Operation* the function can be set On/Off.

*Mode:* The voltage and current used for the power measurement. The setting possibilities are shown in table 28.

Table 28: Complex power calculation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Set value Mode</th>
<th>Formula used for complex power calculation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L1, L2, L3</td>
<td>$\bar{S} = \bar{U}<em>{L1} \cdot \bar{I}</em>{L1} + \bar{U}<em>{L2} \cdot \bar{I}</em>{L2} + \bar{U}<em>{L3} \cdot \bar{I}</em>{L3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arone</td>
<td>$\bar{S} = \bar{U}<em>{L1L2} \cdot \bar{I}</em>{L1} - \bar{U}<em>{L2L3} \cdot \bar{I}</em>{L3}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PosSeq</td>
<td>$\bar{S} = 3 \cdot \bar{U}<em>{PosSeq} \cdot \bar{I}</em>{PosSeq}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L1L2</td>
<td>$\bar{S} = \bar{U}<em>{L1L2} \cdot (\bar{I}</em>{L1} - \bar{I}_{L2})$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L2L3</td>
<td>$\bar{S} = \bar{U}<em>{L2L3} \cdot (\bar{I}</em>{L2} - \bar{I}_{L3})$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L3L1</td>
<td>$\bar{S} = \bar{U}<em>{L3L1} \cdot (\bar{I}</em>{L3} - \bar{I}_{L1})$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L1</td>
<td>$\bar{S} = 3 \cdot \bar{U}<em>{L1} \cdot \bar{I}</em>{L1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L2</td>
<td>$\bar{S} = 3 \cdot \bar{U}<em>{L2} \cdot \bar{I}</em>{L2}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L3</td>
<td>$\bar{S} = 3 \cdot \bar{U}<em>{L3} \cdot \bar{I}</em>{L3}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The function has two stages that can be set independently.

With the parameter *OpMode1(2)* the function can be set On/Off.

The function gives trip if the power component in the direction defined by the setting *Angle1(2)* is larger than the set pick up power value *Power1(2)*.
Figure 94: Overpower mode

The setting $Power1(2)$ gives the power component pick up value in the $Angle1(2)$ direction. The setting is given in p.u. of the generator rated power, see equation 91.

Minimum recommended setting is $0.2\%$ of $S_N$ when metering class CT inputs into the IED are used.

$$S_N = \sqrt{3} \cdot U_{\text{Base}} \cdot I_{\text{Base}}$$

(Equation 91)

The setting $Angle1(2)$ gives the characteristic angle giving maximum sensitivity of the power protection function. The setting is given in degrees. For active power the set angle should be $0^\circ$ or $180^\circ$. $180^\circ$ should be used for generator reverse power protection.
Figure 95: For reverse power the set angle should be 180° in the overpower function.

*TripDelay1(2)* is set in seconds to give the time delay for trip of the stage after pick up.

*Hysteresis1(2)* is given in p.u. of generator rated power according to equation 92.

\[ S_N = \sqrt{3} \cdot U_{Base} \cdot I_{Base} \]  

(Equation 92)

The drop out power will be *Power1(2) - Hysteresis1(2)*.

The possibility to have low pass filtering of the measured power can be made as shown in the formula:

\[ S = k \cdot S_{Old} + (1 - k) \cdot S_{Calculated} \]  

(Equation 93)

Where

- **S** is a new measured value to be used for the protection function
- **S_{Old}** is the measured value given from the function in previous execution cycle
- **S_{Calculated}** is the new calculated value in the present execution cycle
- **k** is a settable parameter

The value of *k=0.92* is recommended in generator applications as the trip delay is normally quite long.

The calibration factors for current and voltage measurement errors are set % of rated current/voltage:
The angle compensation is given as difference between current and voltage angle errors. The values are given for operating points 5, 30 and 100% of rated current/voltage. The values should be available from instrument transformer test protocols.

8.14 Broken conductor check BRCPTOC

8.14.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Broken conductor check</td>
<td>BRCPTOC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.14.2 Application

Conventional protection functions cannot detect the broken conductor condition. Broken conductor check (BRCPTOC) function, consisting of continuous current unsymmetrical check on the line where the IED connected will give alarm or trip at detecting broken conductors.

8.14.3 Setting guidelines

Broken conductor check BRCPTOC must be set to detect open phase/s (series faults) with different loads on the line. BRCPTOC must at the same time be set to not operate for maximum asymmetry which can exist due to, for example, not transposed power lines.

All settings are in primary values or percentage.

Set $I_{base}$ (given in GlobalBaseSel) to power line rated current or CT rated current.

Set minimum operating level per phase $I_{P>}$ to typically 10-20% of rated current.

Set the unsymmetrical current, which is relation between the difference of the minimum and maximum phase currents to the maximum phase current to typical $I_{ub>} = 50\%$.

Note that it must be set to avoid problem with asymmetry under minimum operating conditions.

Set the time delay $t_{Oper} = 5 - 60$ seconds and reset time $t_{Reset} = 0.010 - 60.000$ seconds.

8.15 Capacitor bank protection CBPGAPC
8.15.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capacitor bank protection</td>
<td>CBPGAPC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.15.2 Application

Shunt capacitor banks (SCBs) are somewhat specific and different from other power system elements. These specific features of SCB are briefly summarized in this section.

A capacitor unit is the building block used for SCB construction. The capacitor unit is made up of individual capacitor elements, arranged in parallel or series connections. Capacitor elements normally consist of aluminum foil, paper, or film-insulated cells immersed in a biodegradable insulating fluid and are sealed in a metallic container. The internal discharge resistor is also integrated within the capacitor unit in order to reduce trapped residual voltage after disconnection of the SCB from the power system. Units are available in a variety of voltage ratings (240V to 25kV) and sizes (2.5kVAR to about 1000kVAR). Capacitor unit can be designed with one or two bushings.

The high-voltage SCB is normally constructed using individual capacitor units connected in series and/or parallel to obtain the required voltage and MVAR rating. Typically the neighboring capacitor units are mounted in racks. Each rack must be insulated from the other by insulators because the can casing within each rack are at a certain potential. Refer figure 96 for an example:
There are four types of the capacitor unit fusing designs which are used for construction of SCBs:

- Externally fused: where an individual fuse, externally mounted, protects each capacitor unit.
- Internally fused: where each capacitor element is fused inside the capacitor unit.
- Fuseless: where SCB is built from series connections of the individual capacitor units (that is, strings) and without any fuses.
- Unfused: where, in contrary to the fuseless configuration, a series or parallel connection of the capacitor units is used to form SCB, still without any fuses.

Which type of fusing is used may depend on can manufacturer or utility preference and previous experience.

Because the SCBs are built from the individual capacitor units the overall connections may vary. Typically used SCB configurations are:

1. Delta-connected banks (generally used only at distribution voltages)
2. Single wye-connected banks
3. Double wye-connected banks
4. H-configuration, where each phase is connected in a bridge.
Additionally, the SCB star point, when available, can be either directly earthed, earthed via impedance or isolated from earth. Which type of SCB earthing is used depends on voltage level, used circuit breaker, utility preference and previous experience. Many utilities have standard system earthing principle to earth neutrals of SCB above 100 kV.

Switching of SCB will produce transients in power system. The transient inrush current during SCB energizing typically has high frequency components and can reach peak current values, which are multiples of SCB rating. Opening of capacitor bank circuit breaker may produce step recovery voltages across open CB contact, which can consequently cause restrikes upon the first interruption of capacitive current. In modern power system the synchronized CB closing/opening may be utilized in such a manner that transients caused by SCB switching are avoided.

8.15.2.1 SCB protection

IED protection of shunt capacitor banks requires an understanding of the capabilities and limitations of the individual capacitor units and associated electrical equipment. Different types of shunt capacitor bank fusing, configuration or earthing may affect the IED selection for the protection scheme. Availability and placement of CTs and VTs can be additional limiting factor during protection scheme design.

SCB protection schemes are provided in order to detect and clear faults within the capacitor bank itself or in the connected leads to the substation busbar. Bank protection may include items such as a means to disconnect a faulted capacitor unit or capacitor element(s), a means to initiate a shutdown of the bank in case of faults that may lead to a catastrophic failure and alarms to indicate unbalance within the bank.

Capacitor bank outages and failures are often caused by accidental contact by animals. Vermin, monkeys, birds, may use the SCB as a resting place or a landing site. When the animal touches the HV live parts this can result in a flash-over, can rapture or a cascading failures that might cause extensive damages, fire or even total destruction of the whole SCB, unless the bank is sufficiently fitted with protection IEDs.

In addition, to fault conditions SCB can be exposed to different types of abnormal operating conditions. In accordance with IEC and ANSI standards capacitors shall be capable of continuous operation under contingency system and bank conditions, provided the following limitations are not exceeded:

1. Capacitor units should be capable of continuous operation including harmonics, but excluding transients, to 110% of rated IED root-mean-square (RMS) voltage and a crest voltage not exceeding of rated RMS voltage. The capacitor should also be able to carry 135% of nominal current. The voltage capability of any series element of a capacitor unit shall be considered to be its share of the total capacitor unit voltage capability.
2. Capacitor units should not give less than 100% nor more than 110% of rated reactive power at rated sinusoidal voltage and frequency, measured at a uniform case and internal temperature of 25°C.
3. Capacitor units mounted in multiple rows and tiers should be designed for continuous operation for a 24h average temperature of 40 °C during the hottest day, or −40 °C during the coldest day expected at the location.
4. Capacitor units should be suitable for continuous operation at up to 135% of rated reactive power caused by the combined effects of:
   • Voltage in excess of the nameplate rating at fundamental frequency, but not over 110% of rated RMS voltage
   • Harmonic voltages superimposed on the fundamental frequency
   • Reactive power manufacturing tolerance of up to 115% of rated reactive power
5. Capacitor units rated above 600 V shall have an internal discharge device to reduce the residual voltage to 50 V or less in 5 or 10 minutes (depending on national standard).

Note that capacitor units designed for special applications can exceed these ratings.
Thus, as a general rule, the minimum number of capacitor units connected in parallel within a SCB is such that isolation of one capacitor unit in a group should not cause a voltage unbalance sufficient to place more than 110% of rated voltage on the remaining capacitors of that parallel group. Equally, the minimum number of series connected groups within a SCB is such that complete bypass of one group should not cause voltage higher than 110% of the rated voltage on the remaining capacitors of that serial group. The value of 110% is the maximum continuous overvoltage capability of capacitor units as per IEEE Std 18-1992.

The SCB typically requires the following types of IED protection:

1. Short circuit protection for SCB and connecting leads (can be provided by using PHPIOC, OC4PTOC, CVGAPC, T2WPDIFF/T3WPDIFF or HZPDIF functions)
2. Earth-fault protection for SCB and connecting leads (can be provided by using EFPIOC, EF4PTOC, CVGAPC, T2WPDIFF/T3WPDIFF or HZPDIF functions)
3. Current or Voltage based unbalance protection for SCB (can be provided by using EF4PTOC, OC4PTOC, CVGAPC or VDCPTOV functions)
4. Overload protection for SCB
5. Undercurrent protection for SCB
6. Reconnection inhibit protection for SCB
7. Restrike condition detection

CBPGAPC function can be used to provide the last four types of protection mentioned in the above list.

8.15.3 Setting guidelines

This setting example will be done for application as shown in figure 97:

![Single line diagram for the application example](IEC09000754-1-en.vsd)

From figure 97 it is possible to calculate the following rated fundamental frequency current for this SCB:
\[ I_r = \frac{1000 \cdot 200[MVAr]}{\sqrt{3} \cdot 400[kV]} = 289A \]  
(Equation 94)

or on the secondary CT side:

\[ I_{r,sw} = \frac{289A}{500/1} = 0.578A \]  
(Equation 95)

Note that the SCB rated current on the secondary CT side is important for secondary injection of the function.

The parameters for the Capacitor bank protection function CBPGAPC are set via the local HMI or PCM600. The following settings are done for this function:

**General Settings:**

*Operation* = On; to enable the function

*IBase* = 289A; Fundamental frequency SCB rated current in primary amperes. This value is used as a base value for pickup settings of all other features integrated in this function.

**Reconnection inhibit feature:**

*OperationRecln* = On; to enable this feature

\[ iReclnInhibit\leq10\% \text{ (of } I_{Base}\text{)}; \text{ Current level under which function will detect that SCB is disconnected from the power system} \]

\[ tReclnInhibit = 300s; \text{ Time period under which SCB shall discharge remaining residual voltage to less than 5%}. \]

**Overcurrent feature:**

*OperationOC* = On; to enable this feature

\[ IOC\geq135\% \text{ (of } I_{Base}\text{)}; \text{ Current level for overcurrent pickup. Selected value gives pickup recommended by international standards}. \]

\[ tOC = 30s; \text{ Time delay for overcurrent trip} \]

**Undercurrent feature:**

*OperationUC* = On; to enable this feature

\[ IUC\leq70\% \text{ (of } I_{Base}\text{)}; \text{ Current level for undercurrent pickup} \]

\[ tUC = 5s; \text{ Time delay for undercurrent trip} \]

Undercurrent feature is blocked by operation of Reconnection inhibit feature.

**Reactive power overload feature:**

*OperationQOL* = On; to enable this feature
QOL > =130% (of SCB MVar rating); Reactive power level required for pickup. Selected value gives pickup recommended by international standards.

tQOL =60s; Time delay for reactive power overload trip

**Harmonic voltage overload feature:**

*Operation HOL = On;* to enable this feature

Settings for definite time delay step

HOLDTU > =200% (of SCB voltage rating); Voltage level required for pickup

tHOLDT =10s; Definite time delay for harmonic overload trip

Settings for IDMT delay step

HOLIDMTU > =110% (of SCB voltage rating); Voltage level required for pickup of IDMT stage. Selected value gives pickup recommended by international standards.

kHOLIDMT =1.0; Time multiplier for IDMT stage. Selected value gives operate time in accordance with international standards

tMaxHOLIDMT =2000s; Maximum time delay for IDMT stage for very low level of harmonic overload

tMinHOLIDMT =0.1s; Minimum time delay for IDMT stage. Selected value gives operate time in accordance with international standards

### 8.15.3.1 Restrike detection

Opening of SCBs can be quite problematic for certain types of circuit breakers (CBs). Typically such problems are manifested as CB restrikes.

In simple words this means that the CB is not breaking the current at the first zero crossing after separation of the CB contacts. Instead current is re-ignited and only braked at consecutive current zero crossings. This condition is manifested as high current pulses at the moment of current re-ignition.

To detect this CB condition, the built in overcurrent feature can be used. Simply, any start of the overcurrent feature during breaker normal opening means a restrike. Therefore simple logic can be created in the Application Configuration tool to detect such CB behavior. Such CB condition can be just alarmed, and if required, the built in disturbance recorder can also be triggered.

To create this logic, a binary signal that the CB is going to be opened (but not trip command) shall be made available to the IED.

### 8.16 Voltage-restrained time overcurrent protection VRPVOC

#### 8.16.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voltage-restrained time overcurrent protection</td>
<td>VRPVOC</td>
<td>I&gt;/U&lt;</td>
<td>S1V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.16.2 **Application**

A breakdown of the insulation between phase conductors or a phase conductor and earth results in a short-circuit or an earth fault. Such faults can result in large fault currents and may cause severe damage to the power system primary equipment.

A typical application of the voltage-restrained time overcurrent protection is in the generator protection system, where it is used as backup protection. If a phase-to-phase fault affects a generator, the fault current amplitude is a function of time, and it depends on generator characteristic (reactances and time constants), its load conditions (immediately before the fault) and excitation system performance and characteristic. So the fault current amplitude may decay with time. A voltage-restrained overcurrent relay can be set in order to remain in the picked-up state, in spite of the current decay, and perform a backup trip in case of failure of the main protection.

The IED can be provided with a voltage-restrained time overcurrent protection (VRPVOC). The VRPVOC function is always connected to three-phase current and three-phase voltage input in the configuration tool, but it will always measure the maximum phase current and the minimum phase-to-phase voltage.

VRPVOC function module has two independent protection each consisting of:

- One overcurrent step with the following built-in features:
  - Selectable definite time delay or Inverse Time IDMT characteristic
  - Voltage restrained/controlled feature is available in order to modify the start level of the overcurrent stage in proportion to the magnitude of the measured voltage

- One undervoltage step with the following built-in feature:
  - Definite time delay

The undervoltage function can be enabled or disabled. Sometimes in order to obtain the desired application functionality it is necessary to provide interaction between the two protection elements within the VRPVOC function by appropriate IED configuration (for example, overcurrent protection with under-voltage seal-in). Sometimes in order to obtain the desired application functionality it is necessary to provide interaction between the two protection elements within the D2PTOC function by appropriate IED configuration (for example, overcurrent protection with under-voltage seal-in).

8.16.2.1 **Base quantities**

*GlobalBaseSel* defines the particular Global Base Values Group where the base quantities of the function are set. In that Global Base Values Group:

*IBase* shall be entered as rated phase current of the protected object in primary amperes.

*UBase* shall be entered as rated phase-to-phase voltage of the protected object in primary kV.

8.16.2.2 **Application possibilities**

VRPVOC function can be used in one of the following applications:

- voltage controlled over-current
- voltage restrained over-current

In both applications a seal-in of the overcurrent function at under-voltage can be included by configuration.
8.16.2.3 Undervoltage seal-in

In the case of a generator with a static excitation system, which receives its power from the generator terminals, the magnitude of a sustained phase short-circuit current depends on the generator terminal voltage. In case of a nearby multi-phase fault, the generator terminal voltage may drop to quite low level, for example, less than 25%, and the generator fault current may consequently fall below the pickup level of the overcurrent protection. The short-circuit current may drop below the generator rated current after 0.5...1 s. Also, for generators with an excitation system not fed from the generator terminals, a fault can occur when the automatic voltage regulator is out of service. In such cases, to ensure tripping under such conditions, overcurrent protection with undervoltage seal-in can be used.

To apply the VRPVOC function, the configuration is done according to figure 98. As seen in the figure, the pickup of the overcurrent stage will enable the undervoltage stage. Once enabled, the undervoltage stage will start a timer, which causes function tripping, if the voltage does not recover above the set value. To ensure a proper reset, the function is blocked two seconds after the trip signal is issued.

![Diagram of Undervoltage seal-in of current start](IEC12000183-1-en.vsd)

Figure 98: Undervoltage seal-in of current start

8.16.3 Setting guidelines

Common base IED values for the primary current (IBase), primary voltage (UBase) and primary power (SBase) are set in global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

GlobalBaseSel: Selects the global base value group used by the function to define IBase, UBase and SBase. Note that this function will only use IBase value.

8.16.3.1 Explanation of the setting parameters

Operation: Set to On in order to activate the function; set to Off to switch off the complete function.

StartCurr: Operation phase current level given in % of IBase.

Characterist: Selection of time characteristic: Definite time delay and different types of inverse time characteristics are available; see Technical Manual for details.

tDef_OC: Definite time delay. It is used if definite time characteristic is chosen; it shall be set to 0 s if the inverse time characteristic is chosen and no additional delay shall be added. Note that the value set is the time between activation of the start and the trip outputs.
**8.16.3.2 Voltage-restrained overcurrent protection for generator and step-up transformer**

An example of how to use VRPVOC function to provide voltage restrained overcurrent protection for a generator is given below. Let us assume that the time coordination study gives the following required settings:

- Inverse Time Over Current IDMT curve: IEC very inverse, with multiplier k=1
- Start current of 185% of generator rated current at rated generator voltage
- Start current 25% of the original start current value for generator voltages below 25% of rated voltage

To ensure proper operation of the function:

1. Set **Operation** to **On**
2. Set **GlobalBaseSel** to the right value in order to select the Global Base Values Group with **UBase** and **IBase** equal to the rated phase-to-phase voltage and the rated phase current of the generator.
3. Connect three-phase generator currents and voltages to VRPVOC in the application configuration.
4. Select **Characterist** to match the type of overcurrent curves used in the network **IEC Very inv**.
5. Set the multiplier \( k = 1 \) (default value).
6. Set tDef_OC = 0.00 s, in order to add no additional delay to the trip time defined by the inverse time characteristic.

7. If required, set the minimum operating time for this curve by using the parameter tMin (default value 0.05 s).

8. Set StartCurr to the value 185%.

9. Set VDepMode to Slope (default value).

10. Set VDepFact to the value 25% (default value).

11. Set UHighLimit to the value 100% (default value).

All other settings can be left at the default values.

8.16.3.3 Overcurrent protection with undervoltage seal-in

To obtain this functionality, the IED application configuration shall include a logic in accordance to figure 98 and, of course, the relevant three-phase generator currents and voltages shall be connected to VRPVOC. Let us assume that, taking into account the characteristic of the generator, the excitation system and the short circuit study, the following settings are required:

- Start current of the overcurrent stage: 150% of generator rated current at rated generator voltage;
- Start voltage of the undervoltage stage: 70% of generator rated voltage;
- Trip time: 3.0 s.

The overcurrent stage and the undervoltage stage shall be set in the following way:

1. Set Operation to On.

2. Set GlobalBaseSel to the right value in order to select the Global Base Values Group with UBase and IBase equal to the rated phase-to-phase voltage and the rated phase current of the generator.

3. Set StartCurr to the value 150%.

4. Set Characteristic to IEC Def. Time.

5. Set tDef_OC to 6000.00 s, if no trip of the overcurrent stage is required.

6. Set VDepFact to the value 100% in order to ensure that the start value of the overcurrent stage is constant, irrespective of the magnitude of the generator voltage.

7. Set Operation_UV to On to activate the undervoltage stage.

8. Set StartVolt to the values 70%.

9. Set tDef_UV to 3.0 s.

10. Set EnBlkLowV to Off (default value) to disable the cut-off level for low-voltage of the undervoltage stage.

The other parameters may be left at their default value.
Section 9  Voltage protection

9.1  Two step undervoltage protection UV2PTUV

9.1.1  Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Two step undervoltage protection</td>
<td>UV2PTUV</td>
<td></td>
<td>3U&lt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.1.2  Application

Two-step undervoltage protection function (UV2PTUV) is applied to power system elements, such as generators, transformers, motors and power lines in order to detect low voltage conditions. It is used as a supervision and fault detection function for other protection functions as well, to increase the security of a complete protection system. Low voltage conditions are caused by abnormal operation or faults in the power system, such as:

- Malfunctioning of a voltage regulator or wrong settings under manual control (symmetrical voltage decrease)
- Overload (symmetrical voltage decrease)
- Short circuits, often as phase-to-earth faults (unsymmetrical voltage decrease)

UV2PTUV is used in combination with overcurrent protections, either as restraint or in logic “and gates” of the trip signals issued by the two functions. It can also be used to:

- Detect no voltage conditions, for example, before the energization of a HV line or for automatic breaker trip in case of a blackout
- Initiate voltage correction measures, like insertion of shunt capacitor banks to compensate for reactive load and thereby increasing the voltage
- Disconnect apparatuses, like electric motors, which will be damaged when subject to service under low voltage conditions.

The function has a high measuring accuracy and a settable hysteresis to allow applications to control reactive load.

In many cases, UV2PTUV is a useful function in circuits for local or remote automation processes in the power system.

9.1.3  Setting guidelines

All the voltage conditions in the system where UV2PTUV performs its functions should be considered. The same also applies to the associated equipment, its voltage and time characteristic.
There is a very wide application area where general undervoltage functions are used. All voltage-related settings are made as a percentage of the global base value $U_{Base}$, which normally is set to the primary rated voltage level (phase-to-phase) of the power system or the high voltage equipment under consideration.

The trip time setting for UV2PTUV is normally not critical, since there must be enough time available for the main protection to clear short circuits and earth faults.

Some applications and related setting guidelines for the voltage level are described in the following sections.

### 9.1.3.1 Equipment protection, such as for motors and generators

The setting must be below the lowest occurring “normal” voltage and above the lowest acceptable voltage for the equipment.

### 9.1.3.2 Disconnected equipment detection

The setting must be below the lowest occurring “normal” voltage and above the highest occurring voltage, caused by inductive or capacitive coupling, when the equipment is disconnected.

### 9.1.3.3 Power supply quality

The setting must be below the lowest occurring “normal” voltage and above the lowest acceptable voltage, due to regulation, good practice or other agreements.

### 9.1.3.4 Voltage instability mitigation

This setting is very much dependent on the power system characteristics, and thorough studies have to be made to find the suitable levels.

### 9.1.3.5 Backup protection for power system faults

The setting must be below the lowest occurring “normal” voltage and above the highest occurring voltage during the fault conditions under consideration.

### 9.1.3.6 Settings for two step undervoltage protection

The following settings can be done for Two step undervoltage protection UV2PTUV:

- **ConnType**: Sets whether the measurement shall be phase-to-earth fundamental value, phase-to-phase fundamental value, phase-to-earth RMS value or phase-to-phase RMS value.
- **Operation**: Off or On.
- **$U_{Base}$** (given in $GlobalBaseSel$): Base voltage phase-to-phase in primary kV. This voltage is used as reference for voltage setting. UV2PTUV will operate if the voltage becomes lower than the set percentage of $U_{Base}$. This setting is used when $ConnType$ is set to $PhPhDFT$ or $PhPhRMS$. Therefore, always set $U_{Base}$ as rated primary phase-to-phase voltage of the protected object. For more information, refer to the *Technical manual*.

The setting parameters described below are identical for the two steps ($n = 1$ or $2$). Therefore, the setting parameters are described only once.
**Characteristic**: This parameter gives the type of time delay to be used. The setting can be *Definite time, Inverse Curve A, Inverse Curve B, Prog. inv. curve*. The selection is dependent on the protection application.

**OpModen**: This parameter describes how many of the three measured voltages should be below the set level to give operation for step n. The setting can be *1 out of 3, 2 out of 3 or 3 out of 3*. In most applications, it is sufficient that one phase voltage is low to give operation. If UV2PTUV shall be insensitive for single phase-to-earth faults, *2 out of 3* can be chosen. In subtransmission and transmission networks the undervoltage function is mainly a system supervision function and *3 out of 3* is selected.

**Un<**: Set operate undervoltage operation value for step n, given as % of the parameter *UBase*. The setting is highly dependent on the protection application. It is essential to consider the minimum voltage at non-faulted situations. Normally, this non-faulted voltage is larger than 90% of the nominal voltage.

**tn**: time delay of step n, given in s. This setting is dependent on the protection application. In many applications the protection function shall not directly trip when there is a short circuit or earth faults in the system. The time delay must be coordinated to the other short circuit protections.

**tResetn**: Reset time for step n if definite time delay is used, given in s. The default value is 25 ms.

**tnMin**: Minimum operation time for inverse time characteristic for step n, given in s. When using inverse time characteristic for the undervoltage function during very low voltages can give a short operation time. This might lead to unselective tripping. By setting *tMin* longer than the operation time for other protections, such unselective tripping can be avoided.

**ResetTypeCrvn**: This parameter for inverse time characteristic can be set to *Instantaneous, Frozen time, Linearly decreased*. The default setting is *Instantaneous*.

**tIResetn**: Reset time for step n if inverse time delay is used, given in s. The default value is 25 ms.

**kn**: Time multiplier for inverse time characteristic. This parameter is used for coordination between different inverse time delayed undervoltage protections.

**ACrvn, BCrvn, CCrvn, DCrvn, PCrvn**: Parameters to create a programmable under voltage inverse time characteristic. Description of this can be found in the *Technical manual*.

**CrvSatn**: Tuning parameter that is used to compensate for the undesired discontinuity created when the denominator in the equation for the customer programmable curve is equal to zero. For more information, see the *Technical manual*.

**IntBlkSel**: This parameter can be set to Off, Block of trip, Block all. In case of a low voltage the undervoltage function can be blocked. This function can be used to prevent function when the protected object is switched off. If the parameter is set Block of trip or Block all unwanted trip is prevented.

**IntBlkStValn**: Voltage level under which the blocking is activated set in % of *UBase*. This setting must be lower than the setting *Un<*. As switch of shall be detected the setting can be very low, that is, about 10%.

**tBlkUVn**: Time delay to block the undervoltage step n when the voltage level is below *IntBlkStValn*, given in s. It is important that this delay is shorter than the operate time delay of the undervoltage protection step.

### 9.2 Two step overvoltage protection OV2PTOV
9.2.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Two step overvoltage protection</td>
<td>OV2PTOV</td>
<td></td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3U&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.2.2 Application

Two step overvoltage protection OV2PTOV is applicable in all situations, where reliable detection of high voltage is necessary. OV2PTOV is used for supervision and detection of abnormal conditions, which, in combination with other protection functions, increase the security of a complete protection system.

High overvoltage conditions are caused by abnormal situations in the power system. OV2PTOV is applied to power system elements, such as generators, transformers, motors and power lines in order to detect high voltage conditions. OV2PTOV is used in combination with low current signals, to identify a transmission line, open in the remote end. In addition to that, OV2PTOV is also used to initiate voltage correction measures, like insertion of shunt reactors, to compensate for low load, and thereby decreasing the voltage. The function has a high measuring accuracy and hysteresis setting to allow applications to control reactive load.

OV2PTOV is used to disconnect apparatuses, like electric motors, which will be damaged when subject to service under high voltage conditions. It deals with high voltage conditions at power system frequency, which can be caused by:

1. Different kinds of faults, where a too high voltage appears in a certain power system, like metallic connection to a higher voltage level (broken conductor falling down to a crossing overhead line, transformer flash over fault from the high voltage winding to the low voltage winding and so on).
2. Malfunctioning of a voltage regulator or wrong settings under manual control (symmetrical voltage decrease).
3. Low load compared to the reactive power generation (symmetrical voltage decrease).
4. Earth-faults in high impedance earthed systems causes, beside the high voltage in the neutral, high voltages in the two non-faulted phases, (unsymmetrical voltage increase).

OV2PTOV prevents sensitive equipment from running under conditions that could cause their overheating or stress of insulation material, and, thus, shorten their life time expectancy. In many cases, it is a useful function in circuits for local or remote automation processes in the power system.

9.2.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for Two step overvoltage protection (OV2PTOV) are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

All the voltage conditions in the system where OV2PTOV performs its functions should be considered. The same also applies to the associated equipment, its voltage and time characteristic.

There are wide applications where general overvoltage functions are used. All voltage related settings are made as a percentage of a settable base primary voltage, which is normally set to...
the nominal voltage level (phase-to-phase) of the power system or the high voltage equipment under consideration.

The time delay for the OV2PTOV can sometimes be critical and related to the size of the overvoltage - a power system or a high voltage component can withstand smaller overvoltages for some time, but in case of large overvoltages the related equipment should be disconnected more rapidly.

Some applications and related setting guidelines for the voltage level are given below:

The hysteresis is for overvoltage functions very important to prevent that a transient voltage over set level is not "sealed-in" due to a high hysteresis. Typical values should be ≤ 0.5%.

9.2.3.1 Equipment protection, such as for motors, generators, reactors and transformers

High voltage will cause overexcitation of the core and deteriorate the winding insulation. The setting has to be well above the highest occurring "normal" voltage and well below the highest acceptable voltage for the equipment.

9.2.3.2 Equipment protection, capacitors

High voltage will deteriorate the dielectricum and the insulation. The setting has to be well above the highest occurring "normal" voltage and well below the highest acceptable voltage for the capacitor.

9.2.3.3 Power supply quality

The setting has to be well above the highest occurring "normal" voltage and below the highest acceptable voltage, due to regulation, good practice or other agreements.

9.2.3.4 High impedance earthed systems

In high impedance earthed systems, earth-faults cause a voltage increase in the non-faulty phases. Two step overvoltage protection (OV2PTOV) is used to detect such faults. The setting must be above the highest occurring "normal" voltage and below the lowest occurring voltage during faults. A metallic single-phase earth-fault causes the non-faulted phase voltages to increase a factor of √3.

9.2.3.5 The following settings can be done for the two step overvoltage protection

**ConnType:** Sets whether the measurement shall be phase-to-earth fundamental value, phase-to-phase fundamental value, phase-to-earth RMS value or phase-to-phase RMS value.

**Operation:** Off/On.

**UBase (given in GlobalBaseSel):** Base voltage phase to phase in primary kV. This voltage is used as reference for voltage setting. OV2PTOV measures selectively phase-to-earth voltages, or phase-to-phase voltage chosen by the setting **ConnType.** The function will operate if the voltage gets lower than the set percentage of **UBase.** When **ConnType** is set to **PhN DFT** or **PhN RMS** then the IED automatically divides set value for **UBase** by √3. When **ConnType** is set to **PhPh DFT** or **PhPh RMS** then set value for **UBase** is used. Therefore, always set **UBase** as rated primary phase-to-phase voltage of the protected object. If phase to neutral (PhN) measurement is selected as setting, the operation of phase-to-earth over voltage is automatically divided by sqrt3. This means operation for phase-to-earth voltage over:
\[ U > \left( % \right) \cdot U_{\text{Base}(kV)} / \sqrt{3} \]

and operation for phase-to-phase voltage over:

\[ U > \left( % \right) \cdot U_{\text{Base}(kV)} \]

(Equation 97)

The below described setting parameters are identical for the two steps \((n = 1 \text{ or } 2)\). Therefore the setting parameters are described only once.

**Characteristic**: This parameter gives the type of time delay to be used. The setting can be **Definite time, Inverse Curve A, Inverse Curve B, Inverse Curve C or I/Prog. inv. curve**. The choice is highly dependent of the protection application.

**OpMode**: This parameter describes how many of the three measured voltages that should be above the set level to give operation. The setting can be **1 out of 3, 2 out of 3, 3 out of 3**. In most applications it is sufficient that one phase voltage is high to give operation. If the function shall be insensitive for single phase-to-earth faults **1 out of 3** can be chosen, because the voltage will normally rise in the non-faulted phases at single phase-to-earth faults. In subtransmission and transmission networks the UV function is mainly a system supervision function and **3 out of 3** is selected.

**Un>**: Set operate overvoltage operation value for step \(n\), given as % of \(U_{\text{Base}}\). The setting is highly dependent of the protection application. Here it is essential to consider the maximum voltage at non-faulted situations. Normally this voltage is less than 110% of nominal voltage.

**tn**: time delay of step \(n\), given in s. The setting is highly dependent of the protection application. In many applications the protection function is used to prevent damages to the protected object. The speed might be important for example in case of protection of transformer that might be overexcited. The time delay must be co-ordinated with other automated actions in the system.

**tResetn**: Reset time for step \(n\) if definite time delay is used, given in s. The default value is 25 ms.

**tnMin**: Minimum operation time for inverse time characteristic for step \(n\), given in s. For very high voltages the overvoltage function, using inverse time characteristic, can give very short operation time. This might lead to unselective trip. By setting **\(t_{\text{Min}}\) longer** than the operation time for other protections such unselective tripping can be avoided.

**ResetTypeCrvn**: This parameter for inverse time characteristic can be set: **Instantaneous, Frozen time, Linearly decreased**. The default setting is **Instantaneous**.

**tIRestetn**: Reset time for step \(n\) if inverse time delay is used, given in s. The default value is 25 ms.

**kn**: Time multiplier for inverse time characteristic. This parameter is used for co-ordination between different inverse time delayed undervoltage protections.

**ACrvn, BCrvn, CCrvn, DCrvn, PCrvn**: Parameters to set to create programmable under voltage inverse time characteristic. Description of this can be found in the technical reference manual.

**CrvSatn**: When the denominator in the expression of the programmable curve is equal to zero the time delay will be infinity. There will be an undesired discontinuity. Therefore a tuning parameter \(C_{\text{rvSatn}}\) is set to compensate for this phenomenon. In the voltage interval \(U_{\text{n>}}\) up to \(U_{\text{n>}} \cdot (1.0 + C_{\text{rvSatn}}/100)\) the used voltage will be: \(U_{\text{n>}} \cdot (1.0 + C_{\text{rvSatn}}/100)\). If the programmable curve is used, this parameter must be calculated so that:
\[ B \cdot \frac{\text{CrvSatn}}{100} - C > 0 \]  

(Equation 98)

HystAbsn: Absolute hysteresis set in % of UBase. The setting of this parameter is highly dependent of the application. If the function is used as control for automatic switching of reactive compensation devices the hysteresis must be set smaller than the voltage change after switching of the compensation device.

9.3 Two step residual overvoltage protection ROV2PTOV

9.3.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Two step residual overvoltage protection</td>
<td>ROV2PTOV</td>
<td></td>
<td>59N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.3.2 Application

Two step residual overvoltage protection ROV2PTOV is primarily used in high impedance earthed distribution networks, mainly as a backup for the primary earth-fault protection of the feeders and the transformer. To increase the security for different earth-fault related functions, the residual overvoltage signal can be used as a release signal. The residual voltage can be measured either at the transformer neutral or from a voltage transformer open delta connection. The residual voltage can also be calculated internally, based on the measurement of the three phase-to-earth voltages.

In high impedance earthed systems the residual voltage will increase in case of any fault connected to earth. Depending on the type of fault and fault resistance the residual voltage will reach different values. The highest residual voltage, equal to three times the phase-to-earth voltage, is achieved for a single phase-to-earth fault. The residual voltage increases approximately to the same level in the whole system and does not provide any guidance in finding the faulted component. Therefore, ROV2PTOV is often used as a backup protection or as a release signal for the feeder earth-fault protection.

9.3.3 Setting guidelines

All the voltage conditions in the system where ROV2PTOV performs its functions should be considered. The same also applies to the associated equipment, its voltage withstand capability and time characteristic.

All voltage-related settings are made as a percentage of a settable base voltage, which shall be set to the primary nominal voltage (phase-phase) level of the power system or the high-voltage equipment under consideration.

The time delay for ROV2PTOV is seldom critical, since residual voltage is related to earth faults in a high-impedance earthed system, and enough time must normally be given for the primary protection to clear the fault. In some more specific situations, where the residual overvoltage protection is used to protect some specific equipment, the time delay is shorter.
Some applications and related setting guidelines for the residual voltage level are given below.

9.3.3.1 Equipment protection, such as for motors, generators, reactors and transformers

Equipment protection for transformers

High residual voltage indicates earth-fault in the system, perhaps in the component to which two step residual overvoltage protection (ROV2PTOV) is connected. For selectivity reasons to the primary protection for the faulted device, ROV2PTOV must trip the component with some time delay. The setting must be above the highest occurring "normal" residual voltage and below the highest acceptable residual voltage for the equipment.

9.3.3.2 Equipment protection, capacitors

High voltage will deteriorate the dielectric and the insulation. Two step residual overvoltage protection (ROV2PTOV) has to be connected to a neutral or open delta winding. The setting must be above the highest occurring “normal” residual voltage and below the highest acceptable residual voltage for the capacitor.

9.3.3.3 Power supply quality

The setting must be above the highest occurring “normal” residual voltage and below the highest acceptable residual voltage, due to regulation, good practice or other agreements.

9.3.3.4 High impedance earthed systems

In high impedance earthed systems, earth faults cause a neutral voltage in the feeding transformer neutral. Two step residual overvoltage protection ROV2PTOV is used to trip the transformer, as a backup protection for the feeder earth-fault protection, and as a backup for the transformer primary earth-fault protection. The setting must be above the highest occurring “normal” residual voltage, and below the lowest occurring residual voltage during the faults under consideration. A metallic single-phase earth fault causes a transformer neutral to reach a voltage equal to the nominal phase-to-earth voltage.

The voltage transformers measuring the phase-to-earth voltages measure zero voltage in the faulty phase. The two healthy phases will measure full phase-to-phase voltage, as the faulty phase will be connected to earth. The residual overvoltage will be three times the phase-to-earth voltage. See figure 99.
9.3.3.5 Direct earthed system

In direct earthed systems, an earth fault on one phase is indicated by voltage collapse in that phase. The other healthy phase will still have normal phase-to-earth voltage. The residual sum will have the same value as the remaining phase-to-earth voltage, which is shown in Figure 100.

9.3.3.6 Settings for two step residual overvoltage protection

Operation: Off or On
**UBase** (given in *GlobalBaseSel*) is used as voltage reference for the set pickup values. The voltage can be fed to the IED in different ways:

1. The IED is fed from a normal voltage transformer group where the residual voltage is calculated internally from the phase-to-earth voltages within the protection. The setting of the analog input is given as \( U_{\text{Base}} = U_{\text{ph-ph}} \).
2. The IED is fed from a broken delta connection normal voltage transformer group. In an open delta connection the protection is fed by the voltage \( 3U_0 \) (single input). Section *Analog inputs* in the Application manual explains how the analog input needs to be set.
3. The IED is fed from a single voltage transformer connected to the neutral point of a power transformer in the power system. In this connection the protection is fed by the voltage \( U_N = U_0 \) (single input). Section *Analog inputs* in the Application manual explains how the analog input needs to be set.

ROV2PTOV will measure the residual voltage corresponding to the nominal phase-to-earth voltage for a high-impedance earthed system. The measurement will be based on the neutral voltage displacement.

The setting parameters described below are identical for the two steps \( (n = \text{step 1 and 2}) \). Therefore the setting parameters are described only once.

**OperationStepn**: This is to enable/disable operation of step \( n \).

**Characteristicn**: Selected inverse time characteristic for step \( n \). This parameter gives the type of time delay to be used. The setting can be, *Definite time* or *Inverse curve A* or *Inverse curve B* or *Inverse curve C* or *Prog. inv. curve*. The choice is highly dependent of the protection application.

\( Un_> \): Set operate overvoltage operation value for step \( n \), given as % of residual voltage corresponding to **UBase**:

\[
U > \left( \% \right) \cdot U_{\text{Base}} (kV) / \sqrt{3}
\]

(Equation 99)

The setting depends on the required sensitivity of the protection and the type of system earthing. In non-effectively earthed systems, the residual voltage cannot be higher than three times the rated phase-to-earth voltage, which should correspond to 100%.

In effectively earthed systems, this value depends on the ratio \( Z_0 / Z_1 \). The required setting to detect high resistive earth faults must be based on network calculations.

\( tn \): time delay of step \( n \), given in s. The setting is highly dependent on the protection application. In many applications, the protection function has the task to prevent damage to the protected object. The speed might be important, for example, in the case of the protection of a transformer that might be overexcited. The time delay must be co-ordinated with other automated actions in the system.

\( t\text{Resetn} \): Reset time for step \( n \) if definite time delay is used, given in s. The default value is 25 ms.

\( tn\text{Min} \): Minimum operation time for inverse time characteristic for step \( n \), given in s. For very high voltages the overvoltage function, using inverse time characteristic, can give very short operation time. This might lead to unselective trip. By setting \( t\text{IMin} \) longer than the operation time for other protections such unselective tripping can be avoided.

**ResetTypeCrvn**: Set reset type curve for step \( n \). This parameter can be set: *Instantaneous*, *Frozen time*, *Linearly decreased*. The default setting is *Instantaneous*.

\( t\text{IResetn} \): Reset time for step \( n \) if inverse time delay is used, given in s. The default value is 25 ms.
kn: Time multiplier for inverse time characteristic. This parameter is used for co-ordination between different inverse time delayed undervoltage protections.

ACrvn, BCrvn, CCrvn, DCrvn, PCrvn: Parameters for step n, to set to create programmable undervoltage inverse time characteristic. Description of this can be found in the technical reference manual.

CrvSatn: Set tuning parameter for step n. When the denominator in the expression of the programmable curve is equal to zero, the time delay will be infinite. There will be an undesired discontinuity. Therefore, a tuning parameter CrvSatn is set to compensate for this phenomenon. In the voltage interval $U_{>}$ up to $U_{>} \cdot (1.0 + \frac{CrvSatn}{100})$ the used voltage will be: $U_{>} \cdot (1.0 + \frac{CrvSatn}{100})$. If the programmable curve is used this parameter must be calculated so that:

$$B \cdot \frac{CrvSatn}{100} - C > 0$$

(Equation 100)

HystAbsn: Absolute hysteresis for step n, set in % of $U_{Base}$. The setting of this parameter is highly dependent of the application. The hysteresis is used to avoid oscillations of the START output signal. This signal resets when the measured voltage drops below the setting level and leaves the hysteresis area. Make sure that the set value for parameter HystABSn is somewhat smaller than the set pickup value. Otherwise there is a risk that step n will not reset properly.

9.4 Voltage differential protection VDCPTOV

9.4.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voltage differential protection</td>
<td>VDCPTOV</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.4.2 Application

The Voltage differential protection VDCPTOV functions can be used in some different applications.

- Voltage unbalance protection for capacitor banks. The voltage on the bus is supervised with the voltage in the capacitor bank, phase-by-phase. Difference indicates a fault, either short-circuited or open element in the capacitor bank. It is mainly used on elements with external fuses but can also be used on elements with internal fuses instead of a current unbalance protection measuring the current between the neutrals of two half’s of the capacitor bank. The function requires voltage transformers in all phases of the capacitor bank. Figure 101 shows some different alternative connections of this function.
Figure 101: Connection of voltage differential protection VDCPTOV function to detect unbalance in capacitor banks (one phase only is shown)

VDCPTOV function has a block input (BLOCK) where a fuse failure supervision (or MCB tripped) can be connected to prevent problems if one fuse in the capacitor bank voltage transformer set has opened and not the other (capacitor voltage is connected to input U2). It will also ensure that a fuse failure alarm is given instead of a Undervoltage or Differential voltage alarm and/or tripping.

Fuse failure supervision (SDDRFUF) function for voltage transformers. In many application the voltages of two fuse groups of the same voltage transformer or fuse groups of two separate voltage transformers measuring the same voltage can be supervised with this function. It will be an alternative for example, generator units where often two voltage transformers are supplied for measurement and excitation equipment.

The application to supervise the voltage on two voltage transformers in the generator circuit is shown in figure 102.
9.4.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for the voltage differential function are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

The following settings are done for the voltage differential function.

*Operation: Off/On*

*GlobalBaseSel:* Selects the global base value group used by the function to define *IBase, UBase* and *SBase*. Note that this function will only use *IBase* value.

*BlkDiffAtULow:* The setting is to block the function when the voltages in the phases are low.

*RFLx:* Is the setting of the voltage ratio compensation factor where possible differences between the voltages is compensated for. The differences can be due to different voltage transformer ratios, different voltage levels e.g. the voltage measurement inside the capacitor bank can have a different voltage level but the difference can also e.g. be used by voltage drop in the secondary circuits. The setting is normally done at site by evaluating the differential voltage achieved as a service value for each phase. The factor is defined as \( U_2 \cdot RFLx \) and shall be equal to the \( U_1 \) voltage. Each phase has its own ratio factor.

*UDTrip:* The voltage differential level required for tripping is set with this parameter. For application on capacitor banks the setting will depend of the capacitor bank voltage and the number of elements per phase in series and parallel. Capacitor banks must be tripped before excessive voltage occurs on the healthy capacitor elements. The setting values required are normally given by the capacitor bank supplier. For other applications it has to be decided case by case. For fuse supervision normally only the alarm level is used.

*tTrip:* The time delay for tripping is set by this parameter. Normally, the delay does not need to be so short in capacitor bank applications as there is no fault requiring urgent tripping.
**tReset:** The time delay for reset of tripping level element is set by this parameter. Normally, it can be set to a short delay as faults are permanent when they occur.

For the advanced users following parameters are also available for setting. Default values are here expected to be acceptable.

**U1Low:** The setting of the undervoltage level for the first voltage input is decided by this parameter. The proposed default setting is 70%.

**U2Low:** The setting of the undervoltage level for the second voltage input is decided by this parameter. The proposed default setting is 70%.

**tBlock:** The time delay for blocking of the function at detected undervoltages is set by this parameter.

**UDAlarm:** The voltage differential level required for alarm is set with this parameter. For application on capacitor banks the setting will depend of the capacitor bank voltage and the number of elements per phase in series and parallel. Normally values required are given by capacitor bank supplier.

For fuse supervision normally only this alarm level is used and a suitable voltage level is 3-5% if the ratio correction factor has been properly evaluated during commissioning.

For other applications it has to be decided case by case.

**tAlarm:** The time delay for alarm is set by this parameter. Normally, few seconds delay can be used on capacitor banks alarm. For fuse failure supervision (SDDRFUF) the alarm delay can be set to zero.

## 9.5 Loss of voltage check LOVPTUV

### 9.5.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loss of voltage check</td>
<td>LOVPTUV</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 9.5.2 Application

The trip of the circuit breaker at a prolonged loss of voltage at all the three phases is normally used in automatic restoration systems to facilitate the system restoration after a major blackout. Loss of voltage check (LOVPTUV) generates a TRIP signal only if the voltage in all the three phases is low for more than the set time. If the trip to the circuit breaker is not required, LOVPTUV is used for signallization only through an output contact or through the event recording function.

### 9.5.3 Setting guidelines

Loss of voltage check (LOVPTUV) is in principle independent of the protection functions. It requires to be set to open the circuit breaker in order to allow a simple system restoration following a main voltage loss of a big part of the network and only when the voltage is lost with breakers still closed.

All settings are in primary values or per unit. Set operate level per phase to typically 70% of the global parameter $U_{Base}$ level. Set the time delay $t_{Trip}$=5-20 seconds.
9.5.3.1 Advanced users settings

For advanced users the following parameters need also to be set. Set the length of the trip pulse to typical $t_{\text{Pulse}}=0.15$ sec. Set the blocking time $t_{\text{Block}}$ to block Loss of voltage check (LOVPTUV), if some but not all voltage are low, to typical 5.0 seconds and set the time delay for enabling the function after restoration $t_{\text{Restore}}$ to 3 - 40 seconds.
Section 10   Frequency protection

10.1   Underfrequency protection SAPTUF

10.1.1   Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Underfrequency protection</td>
<td>SAPTUF</td>
<td></td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.1.2   Application

Underfrequency protection SAPTUF is applicable in all situations, where reliable detection of low fundamental power system frequency is needed. The power system frequency, and the rate of change of frequency, is a measure of the unbalance between the actual generation and the load demand. Low fundamental frequency in a power system indicates that the available generation is too low to fully supply the power demanded by the load connected to the power grid. SAPTUF detects such situations and provides an output signal, suitable for load shedding, generator boosting, HVDC-set-point change, gas turbine start up and so on. Sometimes shunt reactors are automatically switched in due to low frequency, in order to reduce the power system voltage and hence also reduce the voltage dependent part of the load.

SAPTUF is very sensitive and accurate and is used to alert operators that frequency has slightly deviated from the set-point, and that manual actions might be enough. The underfrequency signal is also used for overexcitation detection. This is especially important for generator step-up transformers, which might be connected to the generator but disconnected from the grid, during a roll-out sequence. If the generator is still energized, the system will experience overexcitation, due to the low frequency.

10.1.3   Setting guidelines

All the frequency and voltage magnitude conditions in the system where SAPTUF performs its functions should be considered. The same also applies to the associated equipment, its frequency and time characteristic.

There are two specific application areas for SAPTUF:

1. to protect equipment against damage due to low frequency, such as generators, transformers, and motors. Overexcitation is also related to low frequency
2. to protect a power system, or a part of a power system, against breakdown, by shedding load, in generation deficit situations.

The under frequency start value is set in Hz. All voltage magnitude related settings are made as a percentage of a global base voltage parameter. The UBase value should be set as a primary phase-to-phase value.
Some applications and related setting guidelines for the frequency level are given below:

**Equipment protection, such as for motors and generators**

The setting has to be well below the lowest occurring "normal" frequency and well above the lowest acceptable frequency for the equipment.

**Power system protection, by load shedding**

The setting has to be below the lowest occurring "normal" frequency and well above the lowest acceptable frequency for power stations, or sensitive loads. The setting level, the number of levels and the distance between two levels (in time and/or in frequency) depends very much on the characteristics of the power system under consideration. The size of the "largest loss of production" compared to "the size of the power system" is a critical parameter. In large systems, the load shedding can be set at a fairly high frequency level, and the time delay is normally not critical. In smaller systems the frequency start level has to be set at a lower value, and the time delay must be rather short.

The voltage related time delay is used for load shedding. The settings of SAPTUUF could be the same all over the power system. The load shedding is then performed firstly in areas with low voltage magnitude, which normally are the most problematic areas, where the load shedding also is most efficient.

### 10.2 Overfrequency protection SAPTOF

#### 10.2.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overfrequency protection</td>
<td>SAPTOF</td>
<td></td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 10.2.2 Application

Overfrequency protection function SAPTOF is applicable in all situations, where reliable detection of high fundamental power system frequency is needed. The power system frequency, and rate of change of frequency, is a measure of the unbalance between the actual generation and the load demand. High fundamental frequency in a power system indicates that the available generation is too large compared to the power demanded by the load connected to the power grid. SAPTOF detects such situations and provides an output signal, suitable for generator shedding, HVDC-set-point change and so on. SAPTOF is very sensitive and accurate and can also be used to alert operators that frequency has slightly deviated from the set-point, and that manual actions might be enough.

#### 10.2.3 Setting guidelines

All the frequency and voltage magnitude conditions in the system where SAPTOF performs its functions must be considered. The same also applies to the associated equipment, its frequency and time characteristic.

There are two application areas for SAPTOF:
1. to protect equipment against damage due to high frequency, such as generators, and motors
2. to protect a power system, or a part of a power system, against breakdown, by shedding generation, in over production situations.

The overfrequency start value is set in Hz. All voltage magnitude related settings are made as a percentage of a settable global base voltage parameter $U_{Base}$. The $U_{Base}$ value should be set as a primary phase-to-phase value.

Some applications and related setting guidelines for the frequency level are given below:

**Equipment protection, such as for motors and generators**
The setting has to be well above the highest occurring "normal" frequency and well below the highest acceptable frequency for the equipment.

**Power system protection, by generator shedding**
The setting must be above the highest occurring "normal" frequency and below the highest acceptable frequency for power stations, or sensitive loads. The setting level, the number of levels and the distance between two levels (in time and/or in frequency) depend very much on the characteristics of the power system under consideration. The size of the "largest loss of load" compared to "the size of the power system" is a critical parameter. In large systems, the generator shedding can be set at a fairly low frequency level, and the time delay is normally not critical. In smaller systems the frequency START level has to be set at a higher value, and the time delay must be rather short.

### 10.3 Rate-of-change of frequency protection SAPFRC

#### 10.3.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rate-of-change of frequency protection</td>
<td>SAPFRC</td>
<td>$\frac{df}{dt}$</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 10.3.2 Application

Rate-of-change of frequency protection (SAPFRC) is applicable in all situations, where reliable detection of change of the fundamental power system voltage frequency is needed. SAPFRC can be used both for increasing frequency and for decreasing frequency. SAPFRC provides an output signal, suitable for load shedding or generator shedding, generator boosting, HVDC-set-point change, gas turbine start up and so on. Very often SAPFRC is used in combination with a low frequency signal, especially in smaller power systems, where loss of a fairly large generator will require quick remedial actions to secure the power system integrity. In such situations load shedding actions are required at a rather high frequency level, but in combination with a large negative rate-of-change of frequency the underfrequency protection can be used at a rather high setting.
10.3.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for Rate-of-change frequency protection SAPFRC are set via the local HMI or through the Protection and Control Manager (PCM600).

All the frequency and voltage magnitude conditions in the system where SAPFRC performs its functions should be considered. The same also applies to the associated equipment, its frequency and time characteristic.

There are two application areas for SAPFRC:

1. to protect equipment against damage due to high or too low frequency, such as generators, transformers, and motors
2. to protect a power system, or a part of a power system, against breakdown by shedding load or generation, in situations where load and generation are not in balance.

SAPFRC is normally used together with an overfrequency or underfrequency function, in small power systems, where a single event can cause a large imbalance between load and generation. In such situations load or generation shedding has to take place very quickly, and there might not be enough time to wait until the frequency signal has reached an abnormal value. Actions are therefore taken at a frequency level closer to the primary nominal level, if the rate-of-change frequency is large (with respect to sign).

The start value for SAPFRC is set in Hz/s. All voltage magnitude related settings are made as a percentage of a settable base voltage, which normally is set to the primary nominal voltage level (phase-phase) of the power system or the high voltage equipment under consideration.

SAPFRC is not instantaneous, since the function needs some time to supply a stable value. It is recommended to have a time delay long enough to take care of signal noise. However, the time, rate-of-change frequency and frequency steps between different actions might be critical, and sometimes a rather short operation time is required, for example, down to 70 ms.

Smaller industrial systems might experience rate-of-change frequency as large as 5 Hz/s, due to a single event. Even large power systems may form small islands with a large imbalance between load and generation, when severe faults (or combinations of faults) are cleared - up to 3 Hz/s has been experienced when a small island was isolated from a large system. For more "normal" severe disturbances in large power systems, rate-of-change of frequency is much less, most often just a fraction of 1.0 Hz/s.

10.4 Frequency time accumulation protection function FTAQFVR

10.4.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE identification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frequency time accumulation protection</td>
<td>FTAQFVR</td>
<td>f&lt;&gt;</td>
<td>8IA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.4.2 Application

Generator prime movers are affected by abnormal frequency disturbances. Significant frequency deviations from rated frequency occur in case of major disturbances in the system.
A rise of frequency occurs in case of generation surplus, while a lack of generation results in a drop of frequency.

The turbine blade is designed with its natural frequency adequately far from the rated speed or multiples of the rated speed of the turbine. This design avoids the mechanical resonant condition, which can lead to an increased mechanical stress on turbine blade. If the ratio between the turbine resonant frequencies to the system operating frequency is nearly equal to 1, mechanical stress on the blades is approximately 300 times the nonresonant operating condition stress values. The stress magnification factor is shown in the typical resonance curve in Figure 103.

![Typical stress magnification factor curve](IEC12000611-2-en.vsd)

Figure 103: Typical stress magnification factor curve according ANSI/IEEE C37.106-2003 Standard

Each turbine manufactured for different design of blades has various time restriction limits for various frequency bands. The time limits depend on the natural frequencies of the blades inside the turbine, corrosion and erosion of the blade edges and additional loss of blade lifetime during the abnormal operating conditions.

The frequency limitations and their time restrictions for different types of turbines are similar in many aspects with steam turbine limitations. Certain differences in design and applications may result in different protective requirements. Therefore, for different type of turbine systems, different recommendations on the time restriction limits are specified by the manufacturer.

However, the IEEE/ANSI C37.106-2003 standard “Guide for Abnormal Frequency Protection for Power Generating Plants” provides some examples where the time accumulated within each frequency range is as shown in Figure 104.
Another application for the FTAQFVR protection function is to supervise variations from rated voltage-frequency. Generators are designed to accommodate the IEC 60034-3:1996 requirement of continuous operation within the confines of their capability curves over the ranges of +/-5% in voltage and +/-2% in frequency. Operation of the machine at rated power outside these voltage-frequency limits lead to increased temperatures and reduction of insulation life.

10.4.3 Setting guidelines

Among the generator protection functions, the frequency time accumulation protection FTAQFVR may be used to protect the generator as well as the turbine. Abnormal frequencies during normal operation cause material fatigue on turbine blades, trip points and time delays should be established based on the turbine manufacture’s requirements and recommendations.

Continuous operation of the machine at rated power outside voltage-frequency limits lead to increased rotor temperatures and reduction of insulation life. Setting of extent, duration and frequency of occurrence should be set according to manufacture’s requirements and recommendations.

Setting procedure on the IED

The parameters for the frequency time accumulation protection FTAQFVR are set using the local HMI or through the dedicated software tool in Protection and Control Manager (PCM600).

Common base IED values for primary current $I_{Base}$ and primary voltage $U_{Base}$ are set in the global base values for settings function GBASVAL. The $\text{GlobalBaseSel}$ is used to select GBASVAL for the reference of base values.
FTAQFVR used to protect a turbine:

Frequency during start-up and shutdown is normally not calculated, consequently the protection function is blocked by CB position, parameter CBCheck enabled. If the generator supply any load when CB is in open position e.g. excitation equipment and auxiliary services this may be considered as normal condition and CBCheck is ignored when the load current is higher then the set value of CurrStartLevel. Set the current level just above minimum load.

EnaVoltCheck set to Disable.

tCont: to be coordinated to the grid requirements.

tAccLimit, FreqHighLimit and FreqLowLimit setting is derived from the turbine manufacturer's operating requirements, note that FreqLowLimit setting must always be lower than the set value of FreqHighLimit.

FTAQFVR used to protect a generator:

Frequency during start-up and shutdown is normally not calculated, consequently the protection function is blocked by CB position, parameter CBCheck enabled.

CurrStartLevel set to Disable.

EnaVoltCheck set to Enable, voltage and frequency limits set according to the generators manufacturer's operating requirements. Voltage and frequency settings should also be coordinated with the starting values for over and underexcitation protection.

tCont: to be coordinated to the grid requirements.

tAccLimit, FreqHighLimit and FreqLowLimit setting is derived from the generator manufacturer's operating requirements.
Section 11  Multipurpose protection

11.1  General current and voltage protection CVGAPC

11.1.1  Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General current and voltage protection</td>
<td>CVGAPC</td>
<td>2(I&gt;/U&lt;)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

11.1.2  Application

A breakdown of the insulation between phase conductors or a phase conductor and earth results in a short circuit or an earth fault respectively. Such faults can result in large fault currents and may cause severe damage to the power system primary equipment. Depending on the magnitude and type of the fault different overcurrent protections, based on measurement of phase, earth or sequence current components can be used to detect these faults. Additionally it is sometimes required that these overcurrent protections shall be directional and/or voltage controlled/restrained.

The over/under voltage protection is applied on power system elements, such as generators, transformers, motors and power lines in order to detect abnormal voltage conditions. Depending on the type of voltage deviation and type of power system abnormal condition different over/under voltage protections based on measurement of phase-to-earth, phase-to-phase, residual- or sequence- voltage components can be used to detect and operate for such incident.

The IED can be provided with multiple General current and voltage protection (CVGAPC) protection modules. The function is always connected to three-phase current and three-phase voltage input in the configuration tool, but it will always measure only one current and one voltage quantity selected by the end user in the setting tool.

Each CVGAPC function module has got four independent protection elements built into it.

1. Two overcurrent steps with the following built-in features:
   - Definite time delay or Inverse Time Overcurrent (TOC/IDMT) delay for both steps
   - Second harmonic supervision is available in order to only allow operation of the overcurrent stage(s) if the content of the second harmonic in the measured current is lower than pre-set level
   - Directional supervision is available in order to only allow operation of the overcurrent stage(s) if the fault location is in the pre-set direction (Forward or Reverse). Its behavior during low-level polarizing voltage is settable (Non-Directional, Block, Memory)
   - Voltage restrained/controlled feature is available in order to modify the pick-up level of the overcurrent stage(s) in proportion to the magnitude of the measured voltage
   - Current restrained feature is available in order to only allow operation of the overcurrent stage(s) if the measured current quantity is bigger than the set percentage of the current restrain quantity.

2. Two undercurrent steps with the following built-in features:
Definite time delay for both steps

3. Two overvoltage steps with the following built-in features
   - Definite time delay or Inverse Time Overcurrent TOC/IDMT delay for both steps

4. Two undervoltage steps with the following built-in features
   - Definite time delay or Inverse Time Overcurrent TOC/IDMT delay for both steps

All these four protection elements within one general protection function works independently from each other and they can be individually enabled or disabled. However, note that all these four protection elements measure one selected current quantity and one selected voltage quantity (see table 29 and table 30). It is possible to simultaneously use all four protection elements and their individual stages. Sometimes, it is necessary to provide interaction between two or more protection elements/stages within one CVGAPC function by appropriate IED configuration to obtain desired application functionality.

11.1.2.1 Current and voltage selection for CVGAPC function

CVGAPC function is always connected to three-phase current and three-phase voltage input in the configuration tool, but it will always measure only the single current and the single voltage quantity selected by the end user in the setting tool.

The user can select a current input, by a setting parameter CurrentInput, to measure one of the current quantities shown in table 29.

Table 29: Available selection for current quantity within CVGAPC function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Set value for parameter “CurrentInput”</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 phase1</td>
<td>CVGAPC function will measure the phase L1 current phasor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 phase2</td>
<td>CVGAPC function will measure the phase L2 current phasor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 phase3</td>
<td>CVGAPC function will measure the phase L3 current phasor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 PosSeq</td>
<td>CVGAPC function will measure internally calculated positive sequence current phasor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 NegSeq</td>
<td>CVGAPC function will measure internally calculated negative sequence current phasor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 3 · ZeroSeq</td>
<td>CVGAPC function will measure internally calculated zero sequence current phasor multiplied by factor 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 MaxPh</td>
<td>CVGAPC function will measure current phasor of the phase with maximum magnitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 MinPh</td>
<td>CVGAPC function will measure current phasor of the phase with minimum magnitude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 UnbalancePh</td>
<td>CVGAPC function will measure magnitude of unbalance current, which is internally calculated as the algebraic magnitude difference between the current phasor of the phase with maximum magnitude and current phasor of the phase with minimum magnitude. Phase angle will be set to 0° all the time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 phase1-phase2</td>
<td>CVGAPC function will measure the current phasor internally calculated as the vector difference between the phase L1 current phasor and phase L2 current phasor (IL1-IL2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 phase2-phase3</td>
<td>CVGAPC function will measure the current phasor internally calculated as the vector difference between the phase L2 current phasor and phase L3 current phasor (IL2-IL3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 phase3-phase1</td>
<td>CVGAPC function will measure the current phasor internally calculated as the vector difference between the phase L3 current phasor and phase L1 current phasor (IL3-IL1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
Set value for parameter "CurrentInput" | Comment
---|---
13 MaxPh-Ph | CVGAPC function will measure ph-ph current phasor with the maximum magnitude
14 MinPh-Ph | CVGAPC function will measure ph-ph current phasor with the minimum magnitude
15 UnbalancePh-Ph | CVGAPC function will measure magnitude of unbalance current, which is internally calculated as the algebraic magnitude difference between the ph-ph current phasor with maximum magnitude and ph-ph current phasor with minimum magnitude. Phase angle will be set to 0° all the time

The user can select a voltage input, by a setting parameter VoltageInput, to measure one of the voltage quantities shown in table 30.

Table 30: Available selection for voltage quantity within CVGAPC function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Set value for parameter &quot;VoltageInput&quot;</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1 phase1 | CVGAPC function will measure the phase L1 voltage phasor |
2 phase2 | CVGAPC function will measure the phase L2 voltage phasor |
3 phase3 | CVGAPC function will measure the phase L3 voltage phasor |
4 PosSeq | CVGAPC function will measure internally calculated positive sequence voltage phasor |
5 -NegSeq | CVGAPC function will measure internally calculated negative sequence voltage phasor. This voltage phasor will be intentionally rotated for 180° in order to enable easier settings for the directional feature when used. |
6 -3*ZeroSeq | CVGAPC function will measure internally calculated zero sequence voltage phasor multiplied by factor 3. This voltage phasor will be intentionally rotated for 180° in order to enable easier settings for the directional feature when used. |
7 MaxPh | CVGAPC function will measure voltage phasor of the phase with maximum magnitude |
8 MinPh | CVGAPC function will measure voltage phasor of the phase with minimum magnitude |
9 UnbalancePh | CVGAPC function will measure magnitude of unbalance voltage, which is internally calculated as the algebraic magnitude difference between the voltage phasor of the phase with maximum magnitude and voltage phasor of the phase with minimum magnitude. Phase angle will be set to 0° all the time |
10 phase1-phase2 | CVGAPC function will measure the voltage phasor internally calculated as the vector difference between the phase L1 voltage phasor and phase L2 voltage phasor (UL1-UL2) |
11 phase2-phase3 | CVGAPC function will measure the voltage phasor internally calculated as the vector difference between the phase L2 voltage phasor and phase L3 voltage phasor (UL2-UL3) |
12 phase3-phase1 | CVGAPC function will measure the voltage phasor internally calculated as the vector difference between the phase L3 voltage phasor and phase L1 voltage phasor (UL3-UL1) |
13 MaxPh-Ph | CVGAPC function will measure ph-ph voltage phasor with the maximum magnitude |
14 MinPh-Ph | CVGAPC function will measure ph-ph voltage phasor with the minimum magnitude |
15 UnbalancePh-Ph | CVGAPC function will measure magnitude of unbalance voltage, which is internally calculated as the algebraic magnitude difference between the ph-ph voltage phasor with maximum magnitude and ph-ph voltage phasor with minimum magnitude. Phase angle will be set to 0° all the time |
Note that the voltage selection from table 30 is always applicable regardless the actual external VT connections. The three-phase VT inputs can be connected to IED as either three phase-to-earth voltages, $U_{L1}$, $U_{L2}$ and $U_{L3}$ or three phase-to-phase voltages $U_{L1L2}$, $U_{L2L3}$ and $U_{L3L1}$. This information about actual VT connection is entered as a setting parameter for the pre-processing block, which will then be taken care automatically.

### 11.1.2.2 Base quantities for CVGAPC function

The parameter settings for the base quantities, which represent the base (100%) for pickup levels of all measuring stages shall be entered as setting parameters for every CVGAPC function.

**Base current shall be entered as:**

1. rated phase current of the protected object in primary amperes, when the measured Current Quantity is selected from 1 to 9, as shown in table 29.
2. rated phase current of the protected object in primary amperes multiplied by $\sqrt{3}$ (1.732 x $I_{phase}$), when the measured Current Quantity is selected from 10 to 15, as shown in table 29.

**Base voltage shall be entered as:**

1. rated phase-to-earth voltage of the protected object in primary kV, when the measured Voltage Quantity is selected from 1 to 9, as shown in table 30.
2. rated phase-to-phase voltage of the protected object in primary kV, when the measured Voltage Quantity is selected from 10 to 15, as shown in table 30.

### 11.1.2.3 Application possibilities

Due to its flexibility the general current and voltage protection (CVGAPC) function can be used, with appropriate settings and configuration in many different applications. Some of possible examples are given below:

1. Transformer and line applications:
   - Underimpedance protection (circular, non-directional characteristic)
   - Underimpedance protection (circular mho characteristic)
   - Voltage Controlled/Restrained Overcurrent protection
   - Phase or Negative/Positive/Zero Sequence (Non-Directional or Directional) Overcurrent protection
   - Phase or phase-to-phase or Negative/Positive/Zero Sequence over/under voltage protection
   - Thermal overload protection
   - Open Phase protection
   - Unbalance protection

2. Generator protection
   - 80-95% Stator earth fault protection (measured or calculated 3Uo)
   - Rotor earth fault protection (with external COMBIFLEX RXTTE4 injection unit)
   - Underimpedance protection
   - Voltage Controlled/Restrained Overcurrent protection
   - Turn-to-Turn & Differential Backup protection (directional Negative Sequence. Overcurrent protection connected to generator HV terminal CTs looking into generator)
   - Stator Overload protection
   - Rotor Overload protection
   - Loss of Excitation protection (directional positive sequence OC protection)
   - Reverse power/Low forward power protection (directional positive sequence OC protection, 2% sensitivity)
11.1.2.4 Inadvertent generator energization

When the generator is taken out of service, and non-rotating, there is a risk that the generator circuit breaker is closed by mistake.

Three-phase energizing of a generator, which is at standstill or on turning gear, causes it to behave and accelerate similarly to an induction motor. The machine, at this point, essentially represents the subtransient reactance to the system and it can be expected to draw from one to four per unit current, depending on the equivalent system impedance. Machine terminal voltage can range from 20% to 70% of rated voltage, again, depending on the system equivalent impedance (including the block transformer). Higher quantities of machine current and voltage (3 to 4 per unit current and 50% to 70% rated voltage) can be expected if the generator is connected to a strong system. Lower current and voltage values (1 to 2 per unit current and 20% to 40% rated voltage) are representative of weaker systems.

Since a generator behaves similarly to an induction motor, high currents will develop in the rotor during the period it is accelerating. Although the rotor may be thermally damaged from excessive high currents, the time to damage will be on the order of a few seconds. Of more critical concern, however, is the bearing, which can be damaged in a fraction of a second due to low oil pressure. Therefore, it is essential that high speed tripping is provided. This tripping should be almost instantaneous (< 100 ms).

There is a risk that the current into the generator at inadvertent energization will be limited so that the “normal” overcurrent or underimpedance protection will not detect the dangerous situation. The delay of these protection functions might be too long. The reverse power protection might detect the situation but the operation time of this protection is normally too long.

For big and important machines, fast protection against inadvertent energizing should, therefore, be included in the protective scheme.

The protection against inadvertent energization can be made by a combination of undervoltage, overvoltage and overcurrent protection functions. The undervoltage function will, with a delay for example 10 s, detect the situation when the generator is not connected to the grid (standstill) and activate the overcurrent function. The overvoltage function will detect the situation when the generator is taken into operation and will disable the overcurrent function. The overcurrent function will have a pick-up value about 50% of the rated current of the generator. The trip delay will be about 50 ms.

11.3 Setting guidelines

When inverse time overcurrent characteristic is selected, the operate time of the stage will be the sum of the inverse time delay and the set definite time delay. Thus, if only the inverse time delay is required, it is important to set the definite time delay for that stage to zero.
The parameters for the general current and voltage protection function (CVGAPC) are set via the local HMI or Protection and Control Manager (PCM600).

Common base IED values for the primary current ($I_{Base}$), primary voltage ($U_{Base}$) and primary power ($S_{Base}$) are set in global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

$GlobalBaseSel$: Selects the global base value group used by the function to define $I_{Base}$, $U_{Base}$ and $S_{Base}$. Note that this function will only use $I_{Base}$ value.

The overcurrent steps has a $I_{MinX}$ ($x=1$ or 2 depending on step) setting to set the minimum operate current. Set $I_{MinX}$ below $StartCurr\_OCx$ for every step to achieve ANSI reset characteristic according to standard. If $I_{MinX}$ is set above $StartCurr\_OCx$ for any step the ANSI reset works as if current is zero when current drops below $I_{MinX}$.

The function has default setting of operate values and timers according to the typical application as a power system back up protection. These settings should be modified according to the system back up protection strategy of individual utility. The recommended minimum time delay setting of function should be greater than 0.05s when used in process bus 9-2 application.

11.1.3.1 Directional negative sequence overcurrent protection

Directional negative sequence overcurrent protection is typically used as sensitive earth-fault protection of power lines where incorrect zero sequence polarization may result from mutual induction between two or more parallel lines. Additionally, it can be used in applications on underground cables where zero-sequence impedance depends on the fault current return paths, but the cable negative-sequence impedance is practically constant. It shall be noted that directional negative sequence OC element offers protection against all unbalance faults (phase-to-phase faults as well). Care shall be taken that the minimum pickup of such protection function shall be set above natural system unbalance level.

An example will be given, how sensitive-earth-fault protection for power lines can be achieved by using negative-sequence directional overcurrent protection elements within a CVGAPC function.

This functionality can be achieved by using one CVGAPC function. The following shall be done to ensure proper operation of the function:

1. Connect three-phase power line currents and three-phase power line voltages to one CVGAPC instance (for example, GF04)
2. Set $CurrentInput$ to $NegSeq$ (please note that CVGAPC function measures $I2$ current and NOT $3I2$ current; this is essential for proper OC pickup level setting)
3. Set $VoltageInput$ to $-NegSeq$ (please note that the negative sequence voltage phasor is intentionally inverted in order to simplify directionality
4. Set base current $I_{Base}$ value equal to the rated primary current of power line CTs
5. Set base voltage $U_{Base}$ value equal to the rated power line phase-to-phase voltage in kV
6. Set $RCADir$ to value +65 degrees ($NegSeq$ current typically lags the inverted $NegSeq$ voltage for this angle during the fault)
7. Set $ROADir$ to value 90 degree
8. Set $LowVolt\_VM$ to value 2% ($NegSeq$ voltage level above which the directional element will be enabled)
9. Enable one overcurrent stage (for example, OC1)
10. By parameter $CurveType\_OC1$ select appropriate TOC/IDMT or definite time delayed curve in accordance with your network protection philosophy
11. Set $StartCurr\_OC1$ to value between 3-10% (typical values)
12. Set \textit{tDef}_\textit{OC1} or parameter “k” when TOC/IDMT curves are used to insure proper time coordination with other earth-fault protections installed in the vicinity of this power line.

13. Set \textit{DirMode}_\textit{OC1} to \textit{Forward}.

14. Set \textit{DirPrinc}_\textit{OC1} to \textit{IcosPhi}&\textit{U}.

15. Set \textit{ActLowVolt}_\textit{VM} to \textit{Block}.

- In order to insure proper restraining of this element for CT saturations during three-phase faults it is possible to use current restraint feature and enable this element to operate only when \textit{NegSeq} current is bigger than a certain percentage (10% is typical value) of measured \textit{PosSeq} current in the power line. To do this the following settings within the same function shall be done:


17. Set \textit{RestrCurrInput} to \textit{PosSeq}.

18. Set \textit{RestrCurrCoeff} to value 0.10.

If required, this CVGAPC function can be used in directional comparison protection scheme for the power line protection if communication channels to the remote end of this power line are available. In that case typically two \textit{NegSeq} overcurrent steps are required. One for forward and one for reverse direction. As explained before the \textit{OC1} stage can be used to detect faults in forward direction. The built-in \textit{OC2} stage can be used to detect faults in reverse direction.

However the following shall be noted for such application:

- the set values for \textit{RCADir} and \textit{ROADir} settings will be as well applicable for \textit{OC2} stage
- setting \textit{DirMode}_\textit{OC2} shall be set to \textit{Reverse}
- setting parameter \textit{StartCurr}_\textit{OC2} shall be made more sensitive than pickup value of forward \textit{OC1} element (that is, typically 60% of \textit{OC1} set pickup level) in order to insure proper operation of the directional comparison scheme during current reversal situations
- start signals from \textit{OC1} and \textit{OC2} elements shall be used to send forward and reverse signals to the remote end of the power line
- the available scheme communications function block within IED shall be used between multipurpose protection function and the communication equipment in order to insure proper conditioning of the above two start signals

Furthermore the other built-in \textit{UC}, \textit{OV} and \textit{UV} protection elements can be used for other protection and alarming purposes.

\textbf{11.1.3.2 Negative sequence overcurrent protection}

Example will be given how to use one CVGAPC function to provide negative sequence inverse time overcurrent protection for a generator with capability constant of 20s, and maximum continuous negative sequence rating of 7% of the generator rated current.

The capability curve for a generator negative sequence overcurrent protection, often used world-wide, is defined by the ANSI standard in accordance with the following formula:
\[ t_{op} = \frac{k}{\left( \frac{I_{NS}}{I_r} \right)^2} \]  

(Equation 101)

where:
- \( t_{op} \) is the operating time in seconds of the negative sequence overcurrent IED
- \( k \) is the generator capability constant in seconds
- \( I_{NS} \) is the measured negative sequence current
- \( I_r \) is the generator rated current

By defining parameter \( x \) equal to maximum continuous negative sequence rating of the generator in accordance with the following formula

\[ x = 7\% = 0.07 \text{ pu} \]  

(Equation 102)

Equation 101 can be re-written in the following way without changing the value for the operate time of the negative sequence inverse overcurrent IED:

\[ t_{op} = \frac{k \cdot \frac{1}{x^2}}{\left( \frac{I_{NS}}{x \cdot I_r} \right)^2} \]  

(Equation 103)

In order to achieve such protection functionality with one CVGAPC functions the following must be done:
1. Connect three-phase generator currents to one CVGAPC instance (for example, GF01)
2. Set parameter \textit{CurrentInput} to value \textit{NegSeq}
3. Set base current value to the rated generator current in primary amperes
4. Enable one overcurrent step (for example, OC1)
5. Select parameter \textit{CurveType OC1} to value \textit{Programmable}

\[ t_{op} = k \cdot \left( \frac{A}{M^n - C} + B \right) \]  

(Equation 104)

where:
- \( t_{op} \) is the operating time in seconds of the Inverse Time Overcurrent TOC/IDMT algorithm
- \( k \) is time multiplier (parameter setting)
- \( M \) is ratio between measured current magnitude and set pickup current level
- \( A, B, C \) and \( P \) are user settable coefficients which determine the curve used for Inverse Time Overcurrent TOC/IDMT calculation
When the equation 101 is compared with the equation 103 for the inverse time characteristic of the OC1 it is obvious that if the following rules are followed:

1. set k equal to the generator negative sequence capability value
2. set \( A_{OC1} \) equal to the value \( 1/x^2 \)
3. set \( B_{OC1} = 0.0, C_{OC1} = 0.0 \) and \( P_{OC1} = 2.0 \)
4. set \( StartCurr_{OC1} \) equal to the value \( x \)

then the OC1 step of the CVGAPC function can be used for generator negative sequence inverse overcurrent protection.

For this particular example the following settings shall be entered to insure proper function operation:

1. select negative sequence current as measuring quantity for this CVGAPC function
2. make sure that the base current value for the CVGAPC function is equal to the generator rated current
3. set \( k_{OC1} = 20 \)
4. set \( A_{OC1} = 1/0.07^2 = 204.0816 \)
5. set \( B_{OC1} = 0.0, C_{OC1} = 0.0 \) and \( P_{OC1} = 2.0 \)
6. set \( StartCurr_{OC1} = 7\% \)

Proper timing of the CVGAPC function made in this way can easily be verified by secondary injection. All other settings can be left at the default values. If required delayed time reset for OC1 step can be set in order to ensure proper function operation in case of repetitive unbalance conditions.

Furthermore the other built-in protection elements can be used for other protection and alarming purposes (for example, use OC2 for negative sequence overcurrent alarm and OV1 for negative sequence overvoltage alarm).

11.1.3.3 Generator stator overload protection in accordance with IEC or ANSI standards

Example will be given how to use one CVGAPC function to provide generator stator overload protection in accordance with IEC or ANSI standard if minimum-operating current shall be set to 116% of generator rating.

The generator stator overload protection is defined by IEC or ANSI standard for turbo generators in accordance with the following formula:

\[
\begin{align*}
t_{op} &= \frac{k}{\left(\frac{I_m}{I_r}\right)^2 - 1}
\end{align*}
\]

(Equation 105)

where:

- \( t_{op} \) is the operating time of the generator stator overload IED
- \( k \) is the generator capability constant in accordance with the relevant standard (\( k = 37.5 \) for the IEC standard or \( k = 41.4 \) for the ANSI standard)
- \( I_m \) is the magnitude of the measured current
- \( I_r \) is the generator rated current
This formula is applicable only when measured current (for example, positive sequence current) exceeds a pre-set value (typically in the range from 105 to 125% of the generator rated current).

By defining parameter \( x \) equal to the per unit value for the desired pickup for the overload IED in accordance with the following formula:

\[
x = 116\% = 1.16 \text{ pu}
\]  
(Equation 106)

formula 3.5 can be re-written in the following way without changing the value for the operate time of the generator stator overload IED:

\[
t_{op} = \frac{k \cdot \frac{1}{x^2}}{\left( \frac{I_m}{x \cdot I_f} \right)^2 - \frac{1}{x^2}}
\]  
(Equation 107)

In order to achieve such protection functionality with one CVGAPC function, the following must be done:

1. Connect three-phase generator currents to one CVGAPC instance (for example, GF01)
2. Set parameter \( \text{CurrentInput} \) to value \( \text{PosSeq} \)
3. Set base current value to the rated generator current in primary amperes
4. Enable one overcurrent step (for example OC1)
5. Select parameter \( \text{CurveType}_{OC1} \) to value \( \text{Programmable} \)

\[
t_{op} = k \left( \frac{A}{M^2 - C} + B \right)
\]  
(Equation 108)

where:
- \( t_{op} \) is the operating time in seconds of the Inverse Time Overcurrent TOC/IDMT algorithm
- \( k \) is time multiplier (parameter setting)
- \( M \) is ratio between measured current magnitude and set pickup current level
- \( A, B, C \) and \( P \) are user settable coefficients which determine the curve used for Inverse Time Overcurrent TOC/IDMT calculation

When the equation 107 is compared with the equation 108 for the inverse time characteristic of the OC1 step, it is obvious that if the following rules are followed:

1. set \( k \) equal to the IEC or ANSI standard generator capability value
2. set parameter \( A_{OC1} \) equal to the value \( 1/x^2 \)
3. set parameter \( C_{OC1} \) equal to the value \( 1/x^2 \)
4. set parameters \( B_{OC1} = 0.0 \) and \( P_{OC1} = 2.0 \)
5. set \( \text{StartCurr}_{OC1} \) equal to the value \( x \)

then the OC1 step of the CVGAPC function can be used for generator negative sequence inverse overcurrent protection.
1. select positive sequence current as measuring quantity for this CVGAPC function
2. make sure that the base current value for CVGAPC function is equal to the generator rated current
3. set \( k = 37.5 \) for the IEC standard or \( k = 41.4 \) for the ANSI standard
4. set \( A_{OC1} = \frac{1}{1.162} = 0.7432 \)
5. set \( C_{OC1} = \frac{1}{1.162} = 0.7432 \)
6. set \( B_{OC1} = 0.0 \) and \( P_{OC1} = 2.0 \)
7. set \( StartCurr_{OC1} = 116\% \)

Proper timing of CVGAPC function made in this way can easily be verified by secondary injection. All other settings can be left at the default values. If required delayed time reset for OC1 step can be set in order to insure proper function operation in case of repetitive overload conditions.

Furthermore the other built-in protection elements can be used for other protection and alarming purposes.

In the similar way rotor overload protection in accordance with ANSI standard can be achieved.

11.1.3.4 Open phase protection for transformer, lines or generators and circuit breaker head flashover protection for generators

Example will be given how to use one CVGAPC function to provide open phase protection. This can be achieved by using one CVGAPC function by comparing the unbalance current with a preset level. In order to make such a function more secure it is possible to restrain it by requiring that at the same time the measured unbalance current must be bigger than 97% of the maximum phase current. By doing this it will be insured that function can only pickup if one of the phases is open circuited. Such an arrangement is easy to obtain in CVGAPC function by enabling the current restraint feature. The following shall be done in order to insure proper operation of the function:

1. Connect three-phase currents from the protected object to one CVGAPC instance (for example, GF03)
2. Set \( CurrentInput \) to value \( UnbalancePh \)
3. Set \( EnRestrainCurr \) to \( On \)
4. Set \( RestrCurrInput \) to \( MaxPh \)
5. Set \( RestrCurrCoeff \) to value 0.97
6. Set base current value to the rated current of the protected object in primary amperes
7. Enable one overcurrent step (for example, OC1)
8. Select parameter \( CurveType_{OC1} \) to value \( IEC \ Def. \ Time \)
9. Set parameter \( StartCurr_{OC1} \) to value 5%
10. Set parameter \( tDef_{OC1} \) to desired time delay (for example, 2.0s)

Proper operation of CVGAPC function made in this way can easily be verified by secondary injection. All other settings can be left at the default values. However it shall be noted that set values for restrain current and its coefficient will as well be applicable for OC2 step as soon as it is enabled.

Furthermore the other built-in protection elements can be used for other protection and alarming purposes. For example, in case of generator application by enabling OC2 step with set pickup to 200% and time delay to 0.1s simple but effective protection against circuit breaker head flashover protection is achieved.
11.1.3.5 Voltage restrained overcurrent protection for generator and step-up transformer

Example will be given how to use one CVGAPC function to provide voltage restrained overcurrent protection for a generator. Let us assume that the time coordination study gives the following required settings:

- Inverse Time Over Current TOC/IDMT curve: ANSI very inverse
- Pickup current of 185% of generator rated current at rated generator voltage
- Pickup current 25% of the original pickup current value for generator voltages below 25% of rated voltage

This functionality can be achieved by using one CVGAPC function. The following shall be done in order to ensure proper operation of the function:

1. Connect three-phase generator currents and voltages to one CVGAPC instance (for example, GF05)
2. Set CurrentInput to value MaxPh
3. Set VoltageInput to value MinPh-Ph (it is assumed that minimum phase-to-phase voltage shall be used for restraining. Alternatively, positive sequence voltage can be used for restraining by selecting PosSeq for this setting parameter)
4. Set base current value to the rated generator current primary amperes
5. Set base voltage value to the rated generator phase-to-phase voltage in kV
6. Enable one overcurrent step (for example, OC1)
7. Select CurveType_OC1 to value ANSI Very inv
8. If required set minimum operating time for this curve by using parameter tMin_OC1 (default value 0.05s)
9. Set StartCurr_OC1 to value 185%
10. Set VCntrlMode_OC1 to On
11. Set VDepMode_OC1 to Slope
12. Set VDepFact_OC1 to value 0.25
13. Set UHighLimit_OC1 to value 100%
14. Set ULowLimit_OC1 to value 25%

Proper operation of the CVGAPC function made in this way can easily be verified by secondary injection. All other settings can be left at the default values. Furthermore the other built-in protection elements can be used for other protection and alarming purposes.

11.1.3.6 Loss of excitation protection for a generator

Example will be given how by using positive sequence directional overcurrent protection element within a CVGAPC function, loss of excitation protection for a generator can be achieved. Let us assume that from rated generator data the following values are calculated:

- Maximum generator capability to contentiously absorb reactive power at zero active loading 38% of the generator MVA rating
- Generator pull-out angle 84 degrees

This functionality can be achieved by using one CVGAPC function. The following shall be done in order to insure proper operation of the function:

1. Connect three-phase generator currents and three-phase generator voltages to one CVGAPC instance (for example, GF02)
2. Set parameter CurrentInput to PosSeq
3. Set parameter VoltageInput to PosSeq
4. Set base current value to the rated generator current primary amperes
5. Set base voltage value to the rated generator phase-to-phase voltage in kV
6. Set parameter RCADir to value -84 degree (that is, current lead voltage for this angle)
7. Set parameter \textit{ROADir} to value 90 degree
8. Set parameter \textit{LowVolt\_VM} to value 5%
9. Enable one overcurrent step (for example, OC1)
10. Select parameter \textit{CurveType\_OC1} to value \textit{IEC Def. Time}
11. Set parameter \textit{StartCurr\_OC1} to value 38%
12. Set parameter \textit{tDef\_OC1} to value 2.0 s (typical setting)
13. Set parameter \textit{DirMode\_OC1} to \textit{Forward}
14. Set parameter \textit{DirPrinc\_OC1} to \textit{IcosPhi\&U}
15. Set parameter \textit{ActLowVolt1\_VM} to \textit{Block}

Proper operation of the CVGAPC function made in this way can easily be verified by secondary injection. All other settings can be left at the default values. However it shall be noted that set values for RCA & ROA angles will be applicable for OC2 step if directional feature is enabled for this step as well. Figure 105 shows overall protection characteristic.

Furthermore the other built-in protection elements can be used for other protection and alarming purposes.

\begin{figure}[h]
\centering
\includegraphics[width=\textwidth]{en5000535.png}
\caption{Loss of excitation}
\end{figure}

\subsection{11.1.3.7 Undercurrent protection for capacitor bank}

Following example explains how an undercurrent protection within CVGAPC function can be used for the disconnection of shunt capacitor bank (SCB) in case of very low voltages at the busbar.

This functionality can be achieved by using one CVGAPC function and following shall be done to ensure proper operation of the function:

1. Connect three-phase terminal currents to CVGAPC function and no need of voltage input, that is, connect GRP\_OFF from FXDSIGN to U3P of CVGAPC.
2. Set \textit{Operation} = \textit{On}, select \textit{CurrentInput} = \textit{MaxPh} and set \textit{VoltageInput} to default value
3. Set \textit{Operation\_UC1} = \textit{On}
4. Set \textit{EnBlkLowl\_UC1} = \textit{On}
5. Set \textit{BlkLowCurr\_UC1} = 10.0 \%IB
6. Set \textit{StartCurr\_UC1} = 70.0 \%IB
7. Set \textit{tDef\_UC1} = 5.00 s
8. Set \textit{tResetDef\_UC1} = 0.0 s
9. Set \textit{HarmRestr\_UC1} = \textit{Off}
Section 12 System protection and control

12.1 Multipurpose filter SMAIHPAC

12.1.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multipurpose filter</td>
<td>SMAIHPAC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12.1.2 Application

The multi-purpose filter, function block with name SMAI HPAC, is arranged as a three-phase filter. It has very much the same user interface (e.g. function block outputs) as the standard pre-processing function block SMAI. However the main difference is that it can be used to extract any frequency component from the input signal. For all four analogue input signals into this filter (i.e. three phases and the residual quantity) the input samples from the TRM module, which are coming at rate of 20 samples per fundamental system cycle, are first stored. When enough samples are available in the internal memory, the phasor values at set frequency defined by the setting parameter SetFrequency are calculated. The following values are internally available for each of the calculated phasors:

- Magnitude
- Phase angle
- Exact frequency of the extracted signal

The SMAI HPAC filter is always used in conjunction with some other protection function (e.g. multi-purpose protection function or overcurrent function or over-voltage function or over-power function). In this way many different protection applications can be arranged. For example the following protection, monitoring or measurement features can be realized:

- Sub-synchronous resonance protection for turbo generators
- Sub-synchronous protection for wind turbines/wind farms
- Detection of sub-synchronous oscillation between HVDC links and synchronous generators
- Super-synchronous protection
- Detection of presence of the geo-magnetic induced currents
- Overcurrent or overvoltage protection at specific frequency harmonic, sub-harmonic, inter-harmonic etc.
- Presence of special railway frequencies (e.g. 16.7Hz or 25Hz) in the three-phase power system
- Sensitive reverse power protection
- Stator or rotor earth fault protection for special injection frequencies (e.g. 25Hz)
- etc.

The filter output can also be connected to the measurement function blocks such as CVMMXN (Measurements), CMMXU (Phase current measurement), VMMXU (Phase-phase voltage measurement), etc. in order to report the extracted phasor values to the supervisory system (e.g. MicroSCADA).
It is recommended that the trip time delay of under voltage or under current functions is set longer than the SMAIHPAC FilterLength to allow time for the SAMIHPAC outputs to stabilize at startup.

The following figure shows typical configuration connections required to utilize this filter in conjunction with multi-purpose function as non-directional overcurrent protection.

![Figure 106: Required ACT configuration](image)

Such overcurrent arrangement can be for example used to achieve the subsynchronous resonance protection for turbo generators.

### 12.1.3 Setting guidelines

#### 12.1.3.1 Setting example

A relay type used for generator subsynchronous resonance overcurrent protection shall be replaced. The relay had inverse time operating characteristic as given with the following formula:

\[
    t_{op} = T_{01} + \frac{K}{I_S}
\]

(Equation 109)

Where:

- \( t_{op} \) is the operating time of the relay
- \( T_{01} \) is fixed time delay (setting)
- \( K \) is a constant (setting)
- \( I_S \) is measured subsynchronous current in primary amperes

The existing relay was applied on a large 50Hz turbo generator which had shaft mechanical resonance frequency at 18.5Hz. The relay settings were \( T_{01} = 0.64 \) seconds, \( K = 35566 \) Amperes and minimal subsynchronous current trip level was set at \( I_{S0} = 300 \) Amperes primary.

Solution:

First the IED configuration shall be arranged as shown in Figure 106. Then the settings for SMAI HPAC filter and multipurpose function shall be derived from existing relay settings in the following way:

The subsynchronous current frequency is calculated as follows:
\[ f_s = 50 \text{Hz} - 18.5 \text{Hz} = 31.5 \text{Hz} \]

(Equation 110)

In order to properly extract the weak subsynchronous signal in presence of the dominating 50Hz signal the SMAI HPAC filter shall be set as given in the following table:

**Table 31: Proposed settings for SMAI HPAC**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I_HPAC_31_5Hz: SMAIHPAC:1</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ConnectionType</td>
<td>Ph — N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SetFrequency</td>
<td>31.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FreqBandWidth</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FilterLength</td>
<td>1.0 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OverLap</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now the settings for the multi-purpose overcurrent stage one shall be derived in order to emulate the existing relay operating characteristic. To achieve exactly the same inverse time characteristic the programmable IDMT characteristic is used which for multi-purpose overcurrent stage one, which has the following equation (for more information see Section “Inverse time characteristics” in the TRM).

\[
I[s] = \left( \frac{A}{i^{\alpha}} + B \right) \cdot k
\]

(Equation 111)

In order to adapt to the previous relay characteristic the above equation can be re-written in the following way:

\[
I[s] = \left( \frac{K}{I_{so}} + T_{01} \right) \cdot 1
\]

(Equation 112)

Thus if the following rules are followed when multi-purpose overcurrent stage one is set:

- \( i_{in} > I_{so} = 300 \text{A} \)
- \( A = \frac{K}{I_{so}} = \frac{35566}{300} = 118.55 \)
- \( B = T_{01} = 0.64 \)
- \( C = 0.0 \)
- \( p = 1.0 \)
- \( k = 1.0 \)
then exact replica of the existing relay will be achieved. The following table summarizes all required settings for the multi-purpose function:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Group 1</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CurrentInput</td>
<td>MaxPh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iBase</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VoltageInput</td>
<td>MaxPh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UBase</td>
<td>20.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPerHarmRestr</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I_2ndl_fund</td>
<td>20.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BlkLevel2nd</td>
<td>5000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EnRestrainCurr</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RestrCurrInput</td>
<td>PosSeq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RestrCurrCoeff</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCADir</td>
<td>-75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROADir</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LowVolt_VM</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>OC1</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operation_OC1</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StartCurr_OC1</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CurrMult_OC1</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CurveType_OC1</td>
<td>Programmable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tDef_OC1</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k_OC1</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tMin1</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tMin_OC1</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ResCrvType_OC1</td>
<td>Instantaneous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tResetDef_OC1</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P_OC1</td>
<td>1.000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A_OC1</td>
<td>118.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B_OC1</td>
<td>0.640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C_OC1</td>
<td>0.000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Section 13  Secondary system supervision

13.1  Current circuit supervision CCSSPVC

13.1.1  Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current circuit supervision</td>
<td>CCSSPVC</td>
<td></td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.1.2  Application

Open or short circuited current transformer cores can cause unwanted operation of many protection functions such as differential, earth-fault current and negative-sequence current functions. When currents from two independent three-phase sets of CTs, or CT cores, measuring the same primary currents are available, reliable current circuit supervision can be arranged by comparing the currents from the two sets. If an error in any CT circuit is detected, the protection functions concerned can be blocked and an alarm given.

In case of large currents, unequal transient saturation of CT cores with different remanence or different saturation factor may result in differences in the secondary currents from the two CT sets. Unwanted blocking of protection functions during the transient stage must then be avoided.

Current circuit supervision CCSSPVC must be sensitive and have short operate time in order to prevent unwanted tripping from fast-acting, sensitive numerical protections in case of faulty CT secondary circuits.

Open CT circuits creates extremely high voltages in the circuits which is extremely dangerous for the personnel. It can also damage the insulation and cause new problems. The application shall, thus, be done with this in consideration, especially if the protection functions are blocked.

13.1.3  Setting guidelines

GlobalBaseSel: Selects the global base value group used by the function to define IBase, UBase and SBase. Note that this function will only use IBase value.

Current circuit supervision CCSSPVC compares the residual current from a three-phase set of current transformer cores with the neutral point current on a separate input taken from another set of cores on the same current transformer.

IMinOp: It must be set as a minimum to twice the residual current in the supervised CT circuits under normal service conditions and rated primary current.

Ip>Block: It is normally set at 150% to block the function during transient conditions.

The FAIL output is connected to the blocking input of the protection function to be blocked at faulty CT secondary circuits.
13.2 **Fuse failure supervision FUFSPVC**

### 13.2.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fuse failure supervision</td>
<td>FUFSPVC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 13.2.2 Application

Different protection functions within the protection IED, operates on the basis of the measured voltage in the relay point. Examples are:

- impedance protection functions
- undervoltage function
- energizing check function and voltage check for the weak infeed logic

These functions can operate unintentionally if a fault occurs in the secondary circuits between the voltage instrument transformers and the IED.

It is possible to use different measures to prevent such unwanted operations. Miniature circuit breakers in the voltage measuring circuits should be located as close as possible to the voltage instrument transformers, and shall be equipped with auxiliary contacts that are wired to the IEDs. Separate fuse-failure monitoring IEDs or elements within the protection and monitoring devices are another possibilities. These solutions are combined to get the best possible effect in the fuse failure supervision function (FUFSVPVC).

FUFSVPVC function built into the IED products can operate on the basis of external binary signals from the miniature circuit breaker or from the line disconnector. The first case influences the operation of all voltage-dependent functions while the second one does not affect the impedance measuring functions.

The negative sequence detection algorithm, based on the negative-sequence measuring quantities is recommended for use in isolated or high-impedance earthed networks: a high value of voltage $3U_2$ without the presence of the negative-sequence current $3I_2$ is a condition that is related to a fuse failure event.

The zero sequence detection algorithm, based on the zero sequence measuring quantities is recommended for use in directly or low impedance earthed networks: a high value of voltage $3U_0$ without the presence of the residual current $3I_0$ is a condition that is related to a fuse failure event. In cases where the line can have a weak-infeed of zero sequence current this function shall be avoided.

A criterion based on delta current and delta voltage measurements can be added to the fuse failure supervision function in order to detect a three phase fuse failure. This is beneficial for example during three phase transformer switching.
13.2.3 Setting guidelines

13.2.3.1 General

The negative and zero sequence voltages and currents always exist due to different non-symmetries in the primary system and differences in the current and voltage instrument transformers. The minimum value for the operation of the current and voltage measuring elements must always be set with a safety margin of 10 to 20%, depending on the system operating conditions.

Pay special attention to the dissymmetry of the measuring quantities when the function is used on long untransposed lines, on multicircuit lines and so on.

The settings of negative sequence, zero sequence and delta algorithm are in percent of the base voltage and base current for the function. Common base IED values for primary current (IBase), primary voltage (UBase) and primary power (SBase) are set in Global Base Values GBASVAL. The setting GlobalBaseSel is used to select a particular GBASVAL and used its base values.

13.2.3.2 Setting of common parameters

Set the operation mode selector Operation to On to release the fuse failure function.

The voltage threshold USealIn< is used to identify low voltage condition in the system. Set USealIn< below the minimum operating voltage that might occur during emergency conditions. We propose a setting of approximately 70% of UBase.

The drop off time of 200 ms for dead phase detection makes it recommended to always set SealIn to On since this will secure a fuse failure indication at persistent fuse fail when closing the local breaker when the line is already energized from the other end. When the remote breaker closes the voltage will return except in the phase that has a persistent fuse fail. Since the local breaker is open there is no current and the dead phase indication will persist in the phase with the blown fuse. When the local breaker closes the current will start to flow and the function detects the fuse failure situation. But due to the 200 ms drop off timer the output BLKZ will not be activated until after 200 ms. This means that distance functions are not blocked and due to the “no voltage but current” situation might issue a trip.

The operation mode selector OpMode has been introduced for better adaptation to system requirements. The mode selector enables selecting interactions between the negative sequence and zero sequence algorithm. In normal applications, the OpMode is set to either UNsINs for selecting negative sequence algorithm or UZsIZs for zero sequence based algorithm. If system studies or field experiences shows that there is a risk that the fuse failure function will not be activated due to the system conditions, the dependability of the fuse failure function can be increased if the OpMode is set to UZsIZs OR UNsINs or OptimZsNs. In mode UZsIZs OR UNsINs both negative and zero sequence based algorithms are activated and working in an OR-condition. Also in mode OptimZsNs both negative and zero sequence algorithms are activated and the one that has the highest magnitude of measured negative or zero sequence current will operate. If there is a requirement to increase the security of the fuse failure function OpMode can be selected to UZsIZs AND UNsINs which gives that both negative and zero sequence algorithms are activated and working in an AND-condition, that is, both algorithms must give condition for block in order to activate the output signals BLKU or BLKZ.

13.2.3.3 Negative sequence based

The relay setting value 3U2> is given in percentage of the base voltage UBase and should not be set lower than the value that is calculated according to equation \[113\].
$3U_2 := \frac{U_2}{U_{Base} / \sqrt{3}} \cdot 100$

(Equation 113)

where:

- $U_2$ is the maximal negative sequence voltage during normal operation conditions, plus a margin of 10...20%
- $U_{Base}$ is the base voltage for the function according to the setting $GlobalBaseSel$

The setting of the current limit $3I_2<$ is in percentage of parameter $I_{Base}$. The setting of $3I_2<$ must be higher than the normal unbalance current that might exist in the system and can be calculated according to equation 114.

$3I_2 <= \frac{I_2}{I_{Base}} \cdot 100$

(Equation 114)

where:

- $I_2$ is the maximal negative sequence current during normal operating conditions, plus a margin of 10...20%
- $I_{Base}$ is the base current for the function according to the setting $GlobalBaseSel$

### 13.2.3.4 Zero sequence based

The IED setting value $3U_0>$ is given in percentage of the base voltage $U_{Base}$. The setting of $3U_0>$ should not be set lower than the value that is calculated according to equation 115.

$3U_0 >= \frac{3U_0}{U_{Base} / \sqrt{3}} \cdot 100$

(Equation 115)

where:

- $3U_0$ is the maximal zero sequence voltage during normal operation conditions, plus a margin of 10...20%
- $U_{Base}$ is the base voltage for the function according to the setting $GlobalBaseSel$

The setting of the current limit $3I_0<$ is done in percentage of $I_{Base}$. The setting of $3I_0<$ must be higher than the normal unbalance current that might exist in the system. The setting can be calculated according to equation 116.

$3I_0 < \frac{3I_0}{I_{Base}} \cdot 100$

(Equation 116)

where:

- $3I_0<$ is the maximal zero sequence current during normal operating conditions, plus a margin of 10...20%
- $I_{Base}$ is the base current for the function according to the setting $GlobalBaseSel$
**13.2.3.5 Delta U and delta I**

Set the operation mode selector OpDUDI to On if the delta function shall be in operation.

The setting of $DU> >$ should be set high (approximately 60% of $U_{Base}$) and the current threshold $DI< <$ low (approximately 10% of $I_{Base}$) to avoid unwanted operation due to normal switching conditions in the network. The delta current and delta voltage function shall always be used together with either the negative or zero sequence algorithm. If $U_{Set}_{prim}$ is the primary voltage for operation of $dU/dt$ and $I_{Set}_{prim}$ the primary current for operation of $dI/dt$, the setting of $DU> >$ and $DI< <$ will be given according to equation 117 and equation 118.

$$DU> > = \frac{U_{Set}_{prim}}{U_{Base}} \cdot 100$$

(Equation 117)

$$DI< < = \frac{I_{Set}_{prim}}{I_{Base}} \cdot 100$$

(Equation 118)

The voltage thresholds $U_{Ph}> >$ is used to identify low voltage condition in the system. Set $U_{Ph}> >$ below the minimum operating voltage that might occur during emergency conditions. A setting of approximately 70% of $U_{Base}$ is recommended.

The current threshold $I_{Ph}> >$ shall be set lower than the $IMinOp$ for the distance protection function. A 5...10% lower value is recommended.

**13.2.3.6 Dead line detection**

The condition for operation of the dead line detection is set by the parameters $IDLD< <$ for the current threshold and $UDLD< <$ for the voltage threshold.

Set the $IDLD< <$ with a sufficient margin below the minimum expected load current. A safety margin of at least 15-20% is recommended. The operate value must however exceed the maximum charging current of an overhead line, when only one phase is disconnected (mutual coupling to the other phases).

Set the $UDLD< <$ with a sufficient margin below the minimum expected operating voltage. A safety margin of at least 15% is recommended.

**13.3 Fuse failure supervision VDSPVC**

**13.3.1 Identification**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fuse failure supervision</td>
<td>VDSPVC</td>
<td>VT5</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**13.3.2 Application**

Some protection functions operate on the basis of measured voltage at the relay point. Examples of such protection functions are distance protection function, undervoltage function
and energisation-check function. These functions might mal-operate if there is an incorrect measured voltage due to fuse failure or other kind of faults in voltage measurement circuit.

VDSPVC is designed to detect fuse failures or faults in voltage measurement circuit based on comparison of the voltages of the main and pilot fused circuits phase wise. VDSPVC output can be configured to block voltage dependent protection functions such as high-speed distance protection, undervoltage relays, underimpedance relays and so on.

Figure 107: Application of VDSPVC

### 13.3.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for Fuse failure supervision VDSPVC are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

The voltage input type (phase-to-phase or phase-to-neutral) is selected using `ConTypeMain` and `ConTypePilot` parameters, for main and pilot fuse groups respectively.

- The connection type for the main and the pilot fuse groups must be consistent.

The settings `Ud>MainBlock`, `Ud>PilotAlarm` and `USealIn` are in percentage of the base voltage, `UBase`. Set `UBase` to the primary rated phase-to-phase voltage of the potential voltage.
transformer. \( U_{\text{Base}} \) is available in the Global Base Value groups; the particular Global Base Value group, that is used by VDSPVC, is set by the setting parameter \( \text{GlobalBaseSel} \).

The settings \( U_{d>\text{MainBlock}} \) and \( U_{d>\text{PilotAlarm}} \) should be set low (approximately 30% of \( U_{\text{Base}} \)) so that they are sensitive to the fault on the voltage measurement circuit, since the voltage on both sides are equal in the healthy condition. If \( U_{\text{SetPrim}} \) is the desired pick up primary phase-to-phase voltage of measured fuse group, the setting of \( U_{d>\text{MainBlock}} \) and \( U_{d>\text{PilotAlarm}} \) will be given according to equation 119.

\[
U_{d>\text{MainBlock}} \text{ or } U_{d>\text{PilotAlarm}} = \frac{U_{\text{SetPrim}}}{U_{\text{Base}}} \times 0.100
\]

(Equation 119)

\( U_{\text{SetPrim}} \) is defined as phase to neutral or phase to phase voltage dependent of the selected \( \text{ConTypeMain} \) and \( \text{ConTypePilot} \). If \( \text{ConTypeMain} \) and \( \text{ConTypePilot} \) are set to Ph-N than the function performs internally the rescaling of \( U_{\text{SetPrim}} \).

When \( \text{SealIn} \) is set to \( \text{On} \) and the fuse failure has last for more than 5 seconds, the blocked protection functions will remain blocked until normal voltage conditions are restored above the \( U_{\text{SealIn}} \) setting. The fuse failure outputs are deactivated when the normal voltage conditions are restored.

### 13.4 Voltage based delta supervision DELVSPVC

#### 13.4.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voltage based delta supervision</td>
<td>DELVSPVC</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>7V_78V</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 13.4.2 Application

In a weak grid networks, fault detection and operation of other protection functions is reliably done by delta supervision functionality. In this type of network, a delta based release criteria is used to release the trip signal. The measurement of delta differs from country to country between magnitude, vector or sample based detection.

In this function, a voltage based delta supervision is implemented in a phase segregated design. The delta function has the following features:

- Instantaneous sample based delta detection
- True RMS value based delta detection
- DFT magnitude based delta detection
- Vector shift protection

The Delta detection mode is selected on the basis of application requirements. For example, instantaneous sample based delta supervision is very fast; the delta is detected in less than a cycle typically. Hence, instantaneous sample based delta supervision can be used for functions that are used as protection enablers or fault detectors.

All the other supervision modes like RMS/DFT Mag or Angle requires minimum one cycle for delta detection and can be used for time delay functions.
Angle shift mode

Use of distributed generation (DG) units is increasing due to liberalized markets (deregulation) and the global trend to use more renewable sources of energy. They generate power in the range of 10 kW to 10 MW and most of them are interconnected to the distribution network. They can supply power into the network as well as to the local loads. It is not common to connect generators directly to the distribution networks and thus the distributed generation can cause some challenges for the protection of distribution networks. From the protection point of view, one of the most challenging issue is islanding.

Islanding is defined as a condition in which a distributed generation unit continues to supply power to a certain part of the distribution network when power from the larger utility main grid is no longer available after opening of a circuit-breaker.

Islanding is also referred as Loss of Mains (LOM) or Loss of Grid (LOG). When LOM occurs, neither the voltage nor the frequency is controlled by the utility supply. Also, these distributed generators are not equipped with voltage and frequency control; therefore, the voltage magnitude of an islanded network may not be kept within the desired limits resulting into undefined voltage magnitudes during islanding situations and frequency instability. Further, uncontrolled frequency represents a high risk for drives and other machines.

Islanding can occur as a consequence of:
- a fault in the network
- circuit-breaker maloperation
- circuit-breaker opening during maintenance

If the distributed generator continues its operation after the utility supply is disconnected, faults do not clear under certain conditions as the arc is charged by the distributed generators. Moreover, the distributed generators are incompatible with the current reclosing practices. During the reclosing sequence dead time, the generators in the network usually tend to drift out of synchronism with the grid and, reconnecting them without synchronizing may damage the generators introducing high currents and voltages in the neighbouring network.

Due to the technical difficulties mentioned above, protection should be provided, which disconnects the distributed generation once it is electrically isolated from the main grid supply. Various techniques are used for detecting Loss of Mains. However, the present feature of voltage supervision focuses on voltage vector shift.

For islanding based on vector shift protection, the logic shown in Figure 108 should be used to trip the breaker. With this logic, reliable tripping can be ensured as angle shift has been detected in all the three phase voltages.

![Figure 108: DELVSPVC connection diagram](IEC1B000903-1-en.vsdx)
The vector shift detection guarantees fast and reliable detection of mains failure in almost all operational conditions when a distributed generation unit is running in parallel with the mains supply, but in certain cases this may fail.

If the active and reactive power generated by the distributed generation units is nearly balanced (for example, if the power mismatch or unbalance is less than 5...10%) with the active and reactive power consumed by loads, a large enough voltage phase shift may not occur which can be detected by the vector shift algorithm. This means that the vector shift algorithm has a small non-detection zone (NDZ) which is also dependent on the type of generators, loads, network and start or operate value of the vector shift algorithm.

Other network events like capacitor switching, switching of very large loads in weak network or connection of parallel transformer at HV/MV substation, in which the voltage magnitude is not changed considerably (unlike in faults) can potentially cause maloperation of vector shift algorithm, if very sensitive settings are used.

The vector shift detection also protects synchronous generators from damaging due to islanding or loss-of-mains.

### 13.4.3 Setting guidelines

**Operation**: This setting is used to enable/disable the delta supervision function.

**Umin**: The minimum start level setting should be set as % of $U_{\text{Base}}$. This setting enables the function to start detecting delta. Typical setting is 10% of $U_{\text{Base}}$. If the MeasMode setting is set as phase to ground, this setting is taken as 50% of the set value.

**MeasMode**: This setting is used to detect the mode of measurement; phase to phase or phase to ground.

**OpMode**: This setting is used to select the mode of operation. For protection applications, this should be set to **Instantaneous 1 cycle old**. Load supervision can be done using vector shift mode or DFT mag mode.

**DelU**: This setting is used to detect the start value for instantaneous sample, RMS, DFT mag based delta detection. Set a typical value of 50% of $U_{\text{Base}}$ to use this function as fault detection.

**DelUang**: This setting is used for angle based delta detection. This setting could be used to detect islanding condition. A typical setting of 8-10 deg. is good to detect a major islanding condition.

**DeltaT**: This setting defines the number of old cycles data to be used for delta calculation in RMS/DFT Mag and angle mode. Typical value is 2 cycles. This value is not used if OpMode is chosen as instantaneous 1 cycle or instantaneous 2 cycle.

**tHold**: This setting defines the pulse length for supervision start signal. Typical value is 100 ms.

### 13.5 Current based delta supervision DELISPVC

#### 13.5.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current based delta supervision</td>
<td>DELISPVC</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>7I &lt; &gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13.5.2 Application

In power system networks, fault detection and operation of other protection functions is reliably done by delta supervision functionality. Single phase networks are an important application of delta supervision. In this type of network, a delta based release criteria is used to release the protection function. The measurement of delta differs from country to country between magnitude, vector or sample based detection.

In this function, a current based delta supervision is implemented in a phase segregated design. The delta function has the following features:

- Instantaneous sample based delta detection (vectorial delta)
- True RMS value based delta detection
- DFT magnitude based delta detection
- 2$^{nd}$ harmonic blocking of delta function
- 3$^{rd}$ harmonic based adaption of starting value

Instantaneous sample based delta supervision is very fast; the delta is detected in less than a cycle typically. This mode can be used for high impedance earth fault detection. All the other supervision modes like RMS/DFT Mag requires minimum one cycle for delta detection.

Therefore, the choice of delta detection mode should be based on the application requirement. Instantaneous sample based delta supervision can be used for functions that are used as protection enabler or fault detector. For time delayed functions, other modes can be used. Current based function can be used for load supervision also in DFT Mag based delta mode.

13.5.3 Setting guidelines

**Operation:** This setting is used to enable/disable the delta supervision function.

**Imin:** The minimum start level setting should be set as $\%$ of $IBase$. This setting enables the function to start detecting delta. Typical setting is 10$\%$ of $IBase$.

**MeasMode:** This setting is used to detect the mode of measurement; *phase to phase* or *phase to ground*.

**OpMode:** This setting is used to select the mode of operation. For protection applications, this should be set to *Instantaneous 1 cycle old*. Load supervision can be done using DFT mag mode.

**DelI>:** This setting is used to detect the start value for instantaneous sample, RMS, DFT mag based delta detection. Set a typical value of 200$\%$ of $IBase$ to use this function as fault detection.

**DeltaT:** This setting defines the number of old cycles data to be used for delta calculation in RMS/DFT Mag mode. Typical value is 2 cycles.

**tHold:** This setting defines the pulse length for supervision start signal. Typical value is 100 ms.

**EnaHarm2Blk:** This setting should be set to ON, to enable blocking for heavy inrush currents or other sources of 2$^{nd}$ harmonic injections.

**Harm2BlkLev:** This is the blocking level of 2$^{nd}$ harmonic with respect to the fundamental signal. Typical setting is 15$\%$ of fundamental signal.

**EnStValAdap:** This setting should be set to ENABLE in special networks where settings in the network are adapted with respect to 3$^{rd}$ harmonic level.
Harm3Level: This is the set level of 3rd harmonic with respect to fundamental signal at which the DelI> should be modified. Typical setting is 15% of fundamental signal.

StValGrad: This setting is used to modify the DelI> based on 3rd harmonic level. Typical setting is 10% to modify the DelI>.

13.6 Delta supervision of real input DELSPVC

13.6.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delta supervision of real input</td>
<td>DELSPVC</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13.6.2 Application

Delta supervision of real input DELSPVC is a general processed input delta supervision. It is used to configure any processed inputs such as:

- Power (S)
- Active power (P)
- Reactive power (P)
- Thermal heat content (\(\Phi\))
- Energy

The change over time of these quantities with respect to the old value can be supervised with this function.

13.6.3 Setting guidelines

Operation: This setting is used to enable/disable the delta supervision function.

MinStVal: The minimum start level of the function. If the input is below this level, the function will be blocked. It should be set depending on the input connected.

DelSt>: This setting is used to set the start value for delta detection.

DeltaT: This setting defines the number of execution cycles of old data to be used for delta calculation. That is, if DeltaT setting is set as 6 for a 3 ms function, an 18 ms old value will be used to compare the change against.

tHold: This setting defines the pulse length for the start signal. A typical value of this setting is 100 ms.
Section 14   Control

14.1 Synchrocheck, energizing check, and synchronizing SESRSYN

14.1.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Synchrocheck, energizing check, and synchronizing</td>
<td>SESRSYN</td>
<td>sc/vc</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.1.2 Application

14.1.2.1 Synchronizing

To allow closing of breakers between asynchronous networks, a synchronizing feature is provided. The breaker close command is issued at the optimum time when conditions across the breaker are satisfied in order to avoid stress on the network and its components.

The systems are defined as asynchronous when the frequency difference between bus and line is larger than an adjustable parameter. If the frequency difference is less than this threshold value the system is defined to have a parallel circuit and the synchrocheck function is used.

The synchronizing function measures the difference between the U-Line and the U-Bus. It operates and enables a closing command to the circuit breaker when the calculated closing angle is equal to the measured phase angle and the following conditions are simultaneously fulfilled:

- The voltages U-Line and U-Bus are higher than the set values for $U_{HighBusSynch}$ and $U_{HighLineSynch}$ of the respective base voltages $GblBaseSelBus$ and $GblBaseSelLine$.
- The difference in the voltage is smaller than the set value of $U_{DiffSynch}$.
- The difference in frequency is less than the set value of $FreqDiffMax$ and larger than the set value of $FreqDiffMin$. If the frequency is less than $FreqDiffMin$ the synchrocheck is used and the value of $FreqDiffMin$ must thus be identical to the value $FreqDiffM$ resp $FreqDiffA$ for synchrocheck function. The bus and line frequencies must also be within a range of ±5 Hz from the rated frequency. When the synchronizing option is included also for autoreclose there is no reason to have different frequency setting for the manual and automatic reclosing and the frequency difference values for synchronism check should be kept low.
- The frequency rate of change is less than set value for both U-Bus and U-Line.
- The difference in the phase angle is smaller than the set value of $CloseAngleMax$.
- The closing angle is decided by the calculation of slip frequency and required pre-closing time.

The synchronizing function compensates for the measured slip frequency as well as the circuit breaker closing delay. The phase angle advance is calculated continuously. The calculation of
the operation pulse sent in advance is using the measured SlipFrequency and the set tBreaker time. To prevent incorrect closing pulses, a maximum closing angle between bus and line is set with CloseAngleMax. Table 32 below shows the maximum settable value for tBreaker when CloseAngleMax is set to 15 or 30 degrees, at different allowed slip frequencies for synchronizing. To minimize the moment stress when synchronizing near a power station, a narrower limit for the CloseAngleMax needs to be used.

**Table 32: Dependencies between tBreaker and SlipFrequency with different CloseAngleMax values**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SlipFrequency (BusFrequency - LineFrequency)</th>
<th>tBreaker [s] (max settable value) with CloseAngleMax = 15 degrees [default value]</th>
<th>tBreaker [s] (max settable value) with CloseAngleMax = 30 degrees [max value]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.040</td>
<td>0.080</td>
<td>1.000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.050</td>
<td>0.100</td>
<td>0.800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.080</td>
<td>0.160</td>
<td>0.500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.200</td>
<td>0.400</td>
<td>0.200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.400</td>
<td>0.810</td>
<td>0.100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.000</td>
<td>0.080</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.800</td>
<td>0.050</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.000</td>
<td>0.040</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The reference voltage can be phase-neutral L1, L2, L3 or phase-phase L1-L2, L2-L3, L3-L1 or positive sequence (Require a three phase voltage, that is UL1, UL2 and UL3). By setting the phases used for SESRSYN, with the settings SelPhaseBus1, SelPhaseBus2, SelPhaseLine2 and SelPhaseLine2, a compensation is made automatically for the voltage amplitude difference and the phase angle difference caused if different setting values are selected for the two sides of the breaker. If needed an additional phase angle adjustment can be done for selected line voltage with the PhaseShift setting.

### 14.1.2.2 Synchrocheck

The main purpose of the synchrocheck function is to provide control over the closing of circuit breakers in power networks in order to prevent closing if conditions for synchronism are not detected. It is also used to prevent the re-connection of two systems, which are divided after islanding and after a three pole reclosing.

Single pole auto-reclosing does not require any synchrocheck since the system is tied together by two phases.

SESRSYN function block includes both the synchrocheck function and the energizing function to allow closing when one side of the breaker is dead. SESRSYN function also includes a built-in voltage selection scheme which allows adoption to various busbar arrangements.

![Figure 109: Two interconnected power systems](en04000179.vsd)
Figure 109 shows two interconnected power systems. The cloud means that the interconnection can be further away, that is, a weak connection through other stations. The need for a check of synchronization increases if the meshed system decreases since the risk of the two networks being out of synchronization at manual or automatic closing is greater.

The synchrocheck function measures the conditions across the circuit breaker and compares them to set limits. Output is generated only when all measured conditions are within their set limits simultaneously. The check consists of:

- Live line and live bus.
- Voltage level difference.
- Frequency difference (slip). The bus and line frequency must also be within a range of ±5 Hz from rated frequency.
- Phase angle difference.

A time delay is available to ensure that the conditions are fulfilled for a minimum period of time.

In very stable power systems the frequency difference is insignificant or zero for manually initiated closing or closing by automatic restoration. In steady conditions a bigger phase angle difference can be allowed as this is sometimes the case in a long and loaded parallel power line. For this application we accept a synchrocheck with a long operation time and high sensitivity regarding the frequency difference. The phase angle difference setting can be set for steady state conditions.

Another example is the operation of a power network that is disturbed by a fault event: after the fault clearance a highspeed auto-reclosing takes place. This can cause a power swing in the net and the phase angle difference may begin to oscillate. Generally, the frequency difference is the time derivative of the phase angle difference and will, typically oscillate between positive and negative values. When the circuit breaker needs to be closed by auto-reclosing after fault-clearance some frequency difference should be tolerated, to a greater extent than in the steady condition mentioned in the case above. But if a big phase angle difference is allowed at the same time, there is some risk that auto-reclosing will take place when the phase angle difference is big and increasing. In this case it should be safer to close when the phase angle difference is smaller.

To fulfill the above requirements the synchrocheck function is provided with duplicate settings, one for steady (Manual) conditions and one for operation under disturbed conditions (Auto).
14.1.2.3 Energizing check

The main purpose of the energizing check function is to facilitate the controlled re-connection of disconnected lines and buses to energized buses and lines.

The energizing check function measures the bus and line voltages and compares them to both high and low threshold values. The output is given only when the actual measured conditions match the set conditions. Figure 111 shows two substations, where one (1) is energized and the other (2) is not energized. The line between CB A and CB B is energized (DLLB) from substation 1 via the circuit breaker A and energization of station 2 is done by CB B energization check device for that breaker DBLL. (or Both).

The energizing operation can operate in the dead line live bus (DLLB) direction, dead bus live line (DBLL) direction, or in both directions over the circuit breaker. Energizing from different directions can be different for automatic reclosing and manual closing of the circuit breaker.
For manual closing it is also possible to allow closing when both sides of the breaker are dead, Dead Bus Dead Line (DBDL).

The equipment is considered energized (Live) if the voltage is above the set value for $U_{HighBusEnerg}$ or $U_{HighLineEnerg}$ of the base voltages $GblBaseSelBus$ and $GblBaseSelLine$, which are defined in the Global Base Value groups; in a similar way, the equipment is considered non-energized (Dead) if the voltage is below the set value for $U_{LowBusEnerg}$ or $U_{LowLineEnerg}$ of the respective Global Base Value groups. A disconnected line can have a considerable potential due to factors such as induction from a line running in parallel, or feeding via extinguishing capacitors in the circuit breakers. This voltage can be as high as 50% or more of the base voltage of the line. Normally, for breakers with single breaking elements (<330 kV) the level is well below 30%.

When the energizing direction corresponds to the settings, the situation has to remain constant for a certain period of time before the close signal is permitted. The purpose of the delayed operate time is to ensure that the dead side remains de-energized and that the condition is not due to temporary interference.

### 14.1.2.4 Voltage selection

The voltage selection function is used for the connection of appropriate voltages to the synchrocheck, synchronizing and energizing check functions. For example, when the IED is used in a double bus arrangement, the voltage that should be selected depends on the status of the breakers and/or disconnectors. By checking the status of the disconnectors auxiliary contacts, the right voltages for the synchronizing, synchrocheck and energizing check functions can be selected.

Available voltage selection types are for single circuit breaker with double busbars and the 1½ circuit breaker arrangement. A double circuit breaker arrangement and single circuit breaker with a single busbar do not need any voltage selection function. Neither does a single circuit breaker with double busbars using external voltage selection need any internal voltage selection.

Manual energization of a completely open diameter in 1½ circuit breaker switchgear is allowed by internal logic.

The voltages from busbars and lines must be physically connected to the voltage inputs in the IED and connected, using the PCM software, to each of the SESRSYN functions available in the IED.

### 14.1.2.5 External fuse failure

Either external fuse-failure signals or signals from a tripped fuse (or miniature circuit breaker) are connected to HW binary inputs of the IED; these signals are connected to inputs of SESRSYN function in the application configuration tool of PCM600. The internal fuse failure supervision function can also be used if a three phase voltage is present. The signal $BLKU$, from the internal fuse failure supervision function, is then used and connected to the fuse supervision inputs of the SESRSYN function block. In case of a fuse failure, the SESRSYN energizing function is blocked.

The $UB1OK/UB2OK$ and $UB1FF/UB2FF$ inputs are related to the busbar voltage and the $ULN1OK/ULN2OK$ and $ULN1FF/ULN2FF$ inputs are related to the line voltage.

**External selection of energizing direction**

The energizing can be selected by use of the available logic function blocks. Below is an example where the choice of mode is done from a symbol, created in the Graphical Design Editor (GDE) tool on the local HMI, through selector switch function block, but alternatively there can for example, be a physical selector switch on the front of the panel which is connected to a binary to integer function block (B16I).
If the PSTO input is used, connected to the Local-Remote switch on the local HMI, the choice can also be from the station HMI system, typically ABB Microscada through IEC 61850–8–1 communication.

The connection example for selection of the manual energizing mode is shown in figure 112. Selected names are just examples but note that the symbol on the local HMI can only show the active position of the virtual selector.

![Diagram](image)

*Figure 112: Selection of the energizing direction from a local HMI symbol through a selector switch function block.*

### 14.1.3 Application examples

The synchronizing function block can also be used in some switchyard arrangements, but with different parameter settings. Below are some examples of how different arrangements are connected to the IED analogue inputs and to the function block SESRSYN. One function block is used per circuit breaker.

- The input used below in example are typical and can be changed by use of configuration and signal matrix tools.

- The SESRSYN and connected SMAI function block instances must have the same cycle time in the application configuration.
14.1.3.1 Single circuit breaker with single busbar

**Figure 113: Connection of SESRSYN function block in a single busbar arrangement**

Figure 113 illustrates connection principles for a single busbar. For the SESRSYN function there is one voltage transformer on each side of the circuit breaker. The voltage transformer circuit connections are straightforward; no special voltage selection is necessary.

The voltage from busbar VT is connected to U3PBB1 and the voltage from the line VT is connected to U3PLN1. The conditions of the VT fuses shall also be connected as shown above. The voltage selection parameter _CBConfig_ is set to _No voltage sel._

14.1.3.2 Single circuit breaker with double busbar, external voltage selection

**Figure 114: Connection of SESRSYN function block in a single breaker, double busbar arrangement with external voltage selection**

In this type of arrangement no internal voltage selection is required. The voltage selection is made by external relays typically connected according to figure 114. Suitable voltage and VT fuse failure supervision from the two busbars are selected based on the position of the busbar disconnectors. This means that the connections to the function block will be the same as for the single busbar arrangement. The voltage selection parameter _CBConfig_ is set to _No voltage sel._
14.1.3.3 Single circuit breaker with double busbar, internal voltage selection

When internal voltage selection is needed, the voltage transformer circuit connections are made according to figure 115. The voltage from the busbar 1 VT is connected to U3PBB1 and the voltage from busbar 2 is connected to U3PBB2. The voltage from the line VT is connected to U3PLN1. The positions of the disconnectors and VT fuses shall be connected as shown in figure 115. The voltage selection parameter CBConfig is set to Double bus.

14.1.3.4 Double circuit breaker

A double breaker arrangement requires two function blocks, one for breaker WA1_QA1 and one for breaker WA2_QA1. No voltage selection is necessary, because the voltage from busbar 1 VT is connected to U3PBB1 on SESRSYN for WA1_QA1 and the voltage from busbar 2 VT is...
connected to U3PBB1 on SESRSYN for WA2_QA1. The voltage from the line VT is connected to U3PLN1 on both function blocks. The condition of VT fuses shall also be connected as shown in figure 115. The voltage selection parameter \textit{CBConfig} is set to \textit{No voltage sel.} for both function blocks.

### 14.1.3.5 1 1/2 circuit breaker

Figure 117 describes a 1 ½ breaker arrangement with three SESRSYN functions in the same IED, each of them handling voltage selection for WA1_QA1, TIE_QA1 and WA2_QA1 breakers respectively. The voltage from busbar 1 VT is connected to U3PBB1 on all three function blocks and the voltage from busbar 2 VT is connected to U3PBB2 on all three function blocks. The voltage from line1 VT is connected to U3PLN1 on all three function blocks and the voltage from line2 VT is connected to U3PLN2 on all three function blocks. The positions of the disconnectors and VT fuses shall be connected as shown in Figure 117.
The connections are similar in all SESRSYN functions, apart from the breaker position indications. The physical analog connections of voltages and the connection to the IED and SESRSYN function blocks must be carefully checked in PCM600. In all SESRSYN functions the connections and configurations must abide by the following rules: Normally apparatus position is connected with contacts showing both open (b-type) and closed positions (a-type).
WA1_QA1:

- B1QOPEN/CLD = Position of TIE_QA1 breaker and belonging disconnectors
- B2QOPEN/CLD = Position of WA2_QA1 breaker and belonging disconnectors
- LN1QOPEN/CLD = Position of LINE1_QB9 disconnector
- LN2QOPEN/CLD = Position of LINE2_QB9 disconnector
- UB1OK/FF = Supervision of WA1_MCB fuse
- UB2OK/FF = Supervision of WA2_MCB fuse
- ULN1OK/FF = Supervision of LINE1_MCB fuse
- ULN2OK/FF = Supervision of LINE2_MCB fuse
- Setting CBConfig = 1 1/2 bus CB

TIE_QA1:

- B1QOPEN/CLD = Position of WA1_QA1 breaker and belonging disconnectors
- B2QOPEN/CLD = Position of WA2_QA1 breaker and belonging disconnectors
- LN1QOPEN/CLD = Position of LINE1_QB9 disconnector
- LN2QOPEN/CLD = Position of LINE2_QB9 disconnector
- UB1OK/FF = Supervision of WA1_MCB fuse
- UB2OK/FF = Supervision of WA2_MCB fuse
- ULN1OK/FF = Supervision of LINE1_MCB fuse
- ULN2OK/FF = Supervision of LINE2_MCB fuse
- Setting CBConfig = Tie CB

WA2_QA1:

- B1QOPEN/CLD = Position of WA1_QA1 breaker and belonging disconnectors
- B2QOPEN/CLD = Position of TIE_QA1 breaker and belonging disconnectors
- LN1QOPEN/CLD = Position of LINE1_QB9 disconnector
- LN2QOPEN/CLD = Position of LINE2_QB9 disconnector
- UB1OK/FF = Supervision of WA1_MCB fuse
- UB2OK/FF = Supervision of WA2_MCB fuse
- ULN1OK/FF = Supervision of LINE1_MCB fuse
- ULN2OK/FF = Supervision of LINE2_MCB fuse
- Setting CBConfig = 1 1/2 bus alt. CB

If only two SESRSYN functions are provided in the same IED, the connections and settings are according to the SESRSYN functions for WA1_QA1 and TIE_QA1.

### 14.1.4 Setting guidelines

The setting parameters for the Synchronizing, synchrocheck and energizing check function SESRSYN are set via the local HMI (LHMI) or PCM600.

This setting guidelines describes the settings of the SESRSYN function via the LHMI.

Common base IED value for primary voltage (UBase) is set in a Global base value function, GBASVAL, found under **Main menu/Configuration/Power system/GlobalBaseValue/GBASVAL_X/UBase**. The SESRSYN function has one setting for the bus reference voltage (GblBaseSelBus) and one setting for the line reference voltage (GblBaseSelLine) which independently of each other can be set to select one of the twelve GBASVAL functions used for reference of base values. This means that the reference voltage of bus and line can be set to different values. The settings for the SESRSYN function are found under **Main menu/Settings/IED Settings/Control/Synchronizing(25,SC/VC)/SESRSYN(25,SC/VC):X** has been divided into four different setting groups: General, Synchronizing, Synchrocheck and Energizingcheck.
General settings

Operation: The operation mode can be set On or Off. The setting Off disables the whole function.

GblBaseSelBus and GblBaseSelLine

These configuration settings are used for selecting one of twelve GBASVAL functions, which then is used as base value reference voltage, for bus and line respectively.

SelPhaseBus1 and SelPhaseBus2

Configuration parameters for selecting the measuring phase of the voltage for busbar 1 and 2 respectively, which can be a single-phase (phase-neutral), two-phase (phase-phase) or a positive sequence voltage.

SelPhaseLine1 and SelPhaseLine2

Configuration parameters for selecting the measuring phase of the voltage for line 1 and 2 respectively, which can be a single-phase (phase-neutral), two-phase (phase-phase) or a positive sequence voltage.

CBConfig

This configuration setting is used to define type of voltage selection. Type of voltage selection can be selected as:

- no voltage selection, No voltage sel.
- single circuit breaker with double bus, Double bus
- 1 1/2 circuit breaker arrangement with the breaker connected to busbar 1, 1 1/2 bus CB
- 1 1/2 circuit breaker arrangement with the breaker connected to busbar 2, 1 1/2 bus alt. CB
- 1 1/2 circuit breaker arrangement with the breaker connected to line 1 and 2, Tie CB

PhaseShift

This setting is used to compensate the phase shift between the measured bus voltage and line voltage when:

- different phase-neutral voltages are selected (for example UL1 for bus and UL2 for line);
- one available voltage is phase-phase and the other one is phase-neutral (for example UL1L2 for bus and UL1 for line).

The set value is added to the measured line phase angle. The bus voltage is reference voltage.

Synchronizing settings

OperationSynch

The setting Off disables the Synchronizing function. With the setting On, the function is in the service mode and the output signal depends on the input conditions.

UHighBusSynch and UHighLineSynch

The voltage level settings shall be chosen in relation to the bus/line network voltage. The threshold voltages UHighBusSynch and UHighLineSynch have to be set lower than the value where the network is expected to be synchronized. A typical value is 80% of the rated voltage.

UDiffSynch
Setting of the voltage difference between the line voltage and the bus voltage. The difference is set depending on the network configuration and expected voltages in the two networks running asynchronously. A normal setting is 0.10-0.15 p.u.

**FreqDiffMin**

The setting *FreqDiffMin* is the minimum frequency difference where the systems are defined to be asynchronous. For frequency differences lower than this value, the systems are considered to be in parallel. A typical value for *FreqDiffMin* is 10 mHz. Generally, the value should be low if both synchronizing and synchrocheck functions are provided, and it is better to let the synchronizing function close, as it will close at exactly the right instance if the networks run with a frequency difference.

To avoid overlapping of the synchronizing function and the synchrocheck function the setting *FreqDiffMin* must be set to a higher value than used setting *FreqDiffM*, respective *FreqDiffA* used for synchrocheck.

**FreqDiffMax**

The setting *FreqDiffMax* is the maximum slip frequency at which synchronizing is accepted. $1/FreqDiffMax$ shows the time for the vector to move 360 degrees, one turn on the synchronoscope, and is called Beat time. A typical value for *FreqDiffMax* is 200-250 mHz, which gives beat times on 4-5 seconds. Higher values should be avoided as the two networks normally are regulated to nominal frequency independent of each other, so the frequency difference shall be small.

**FreqRateChange**

The maximum allowed rate of change for the frequency.

**CloseAngleMax**

The setting *CloseAngleMax* is the maximum closing angle between bus and line at which synchronizing is accepted. To minimize the moment stress when synchronizing near a power station, a narrower limit should be used. A typical value is 15 degrees.

**tBreaker**

The *tBreaker* shall be set to match the closing time for the circuit breaker and should also include the possible auxiliary relays in the closing circuit. It is important to check that no slow logic components are used in the configuration of the IED as there then can be big variations in closing time due to those components. Typical setting is 80-150 ms depending on the breaker closing time.

**tClosePulse**

The setting for the duration of the breaker close pulse.

**tMaxSynch**

The setting *tMaxSynch* is set to reset the operation of the synchronizing function if the operation does not take place within this time. The setting must allow for the setting of *FreqDiffMin*, which will decide how long it will take maximum to reach phase equality. At the setting of 10 mHz, the beat time is 100 seconds and the setting would thus need to be at least *tMinSynch* plus 100 seconds. If the network frequencies are expected to be outside the limits from the start, a margin needs to be added. A typical setting is 600 seconds.

**tMinSynch**
The setting \( t_{\text{MinSynch}} \) is set to limit the minimum time at which the synchronizing closing attempt is given. The synchronizing function will not give a closing command within this time, from when the synchronizing is started, even if a synchronizing condition is fulfilled. A typical setting is 200 ms.

**Synchrocheck settings**

*OperationSC*

The *OperationSC* setting *Off* disables the synchrocheck function and sets the outputs AUTOSYOK, MANSYOK, TSTAUTSY and TSTMANSY to low. With the setting *On*, the function is in the service mode and the output signal depends on the input conditions.

*UHighBusSC* and *UHighLineSC*

The voltage level settings must be chosen in relation to the bus or line network voltage. The threshold voltages *UHighBusSC* and *UHighLineSC* have to be set lower than the value at which the breaker is expected to close with the synchronism check. A typical value can be 80% of the base voltages.

*UDiffSC*

The setting for voltage difference between line and bus in p.u. This setting in p.u. is defined as \((U_{\text{Bus}}/GblBaseSelBus) - (U_{\text{Line}}/GblBaseSelLine)\). A normal setting is 0,10-0,15 p.u.

*FreqDiffM* and *FreqDiffA*

The frequency difference level settings, *FreqDiffM* and *FreqDiffA*, shall be chosen depending on the condition in the network. At steady conditions a low frequency difference setting is needed, where the *FreqDiffM* setting is used. For autoreclosing a bigger frequency difference setting is preferable, where the *FreqDiffA* setting is used. A typical value for *FreqDiffM* can be 10 mHz, and a typical value for *FreqDiffA* can be 100-200 mHz.

*PhaseDiffM* and *PhaseDiffA*

The phase angle difference level settings, *PhaseDiffM* and *PhaseDiffA*, shall also be chosen depending on conditions in the network. The phase angle setting must be chosen to allow closing under maximum load condition. A typical maximum value in heavy-loaded networks can be 45 degrees, whereas in most networks the maximum occurring angle is below 25 degrees. The *PhaseDiffM* setting is a limitation to *PhaseDiffA* setting. Fluctuations occurring at high speed autoreclosing limit *PhaseDiffA* setting.

*tSCM* and *tSCA*

The purpose of the timer delay settings, *tSCM* and *tSCA*, is to ensure that the synchrocheck conditions remains constant and that the situation is not due to a temporary interference. Should the conditions not persist for the specified time, the delay timer is reset and the procedure is restarted when the conditions are fulfilled again. Circuit breaker closing is thus not permitted until the synchrocheck situation has remained constant throughout the set delay setting time. Manual closing is normally under more stable conditions and a longer operation time delay setting is needed, where the *tSCM* setting is used. During auto-reclosing, a shorter operation time delay setting is preferable, where the *tSCA* setting is used. A typical value for *tSCM* can be 1 second and a typical value for *tSCA* can be 0.1 seconds.

**Energizingcheck settings**

*AutoEnerg* and *ManEnerg*

Two different settings can be used for automatic and manual closing of the circuit breaker. The settings for each of them are:
• Off, the energizing function is disabled.
• DLLB, Dead Line Live Bus, the line voltage is below set value of $U_{\text{LowLineEnerg}}$ and the bus voltage is above set value of $U_{\text{HighBusEnerg}}$.
• DBLL, Dead Bus Live Line, the bus voltage is below set value of $U_{\text{LowBusEnerg}}$ and the line voltage is above set value of $U_{\text{HighLineEnerg}}$.
• Both, energizing can be done in both directions, DLLB or DBLL.

$\text{ManEnergDBDL}$

If the parameter is set to On, manual closing is also enabled when both line voltage and bus voltage are below $U_{\text{LowLineEnerg}}$ and $U_{\text{LowBusEnerg}}$ respectively, and $\text{ManEnerg}$ is set to DLLB, DBLL or Both.

$U_{\text{HighBusEnerg}}$ and $U_{\text{HighLineEnerg}}$

The voltage level settings must be chosen in relation to the bus or line network voltage. The threshold voltages $U_{\text{HighBusEnerg}}$ and $U_{\text{HighLineEnerg}}$ have to be set lower than the value at which the network is considered to be energized. A typical value can be 80% of the base voltages.

$U_{\text{LowBusEnerg}}$ and $U_{\text{LowLineEnerg}}$

The threshold voltages $U_{\text{LowBusEnerg}}$ and $U_{\text{LowLineEnerg}}$, have to be set to a value greater than the value where the network is considered not to be energized. A typical value can be 40% of the base voltages.

A disconnected line can have a considerable potential due to, for instance, induction from a line running in parallel, or by being fed via the extinguishing capacitors in the circuit breakers. This voltage can be as high as 30% or more of the base line voltage.

Because the setting ranges of the threshold voltages $U_{\text{HighBusEnerg}}/U_{\text{HighLineEnerg}}$ and $U_{\text{LowBusEnerg}}/U_{\text{LowLineEnerg}}$ partly overlap each other, the setting conditions may be such that the setting of the non-energized threshold value is higher than that of the energized threshold value. The parameters must therefore be set carefully to avoid overlapping.

$U_{\text{MaxEnerg}}$

This setting is used to block the closing when the voltage on the live side is above the set value of $U_{\text{MaxEnerg}}$.

$t_{\text{AutoEnerg}}$ and $t_{\text{ManEnerg}}$

The purpose of the timer delay settings, $t_{\text{AutoEnerg}}$ and $t_{\text{ManEnerg}}$, is to ensure that the dead side remains de-energized and that the condition is not due to a temporary interference. Should the conditions not persist for the specified time, the delay timer is reset and the procedure is restarted when the conditions are fulfilled again. Circuit breaker closing is thus not permitted until the energizing condition has remained constant throughout the set delay setting time.

14.2 Autorecloser for 1 phase, 2 phase and/or 3 phase operation SMBRREC
14.2.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function Description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Autorecloser for 1 phase, 2 phase and/or 3 phase</td>
<td>SMBRREC</td>
<td></td>
<td>5(0 --&gt;1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.2.2 Application

Automatic reclosing is a well-established method for the restoration of service in a power system after a transient line fault. The majority of line faults are flashovers, which are transient by nature. When the power line is switched off by the operation of line protection and line breakers, the arc de-ionizes and recovers its ability to withstand voltage at a somewhat variable rate. Thus, a certain dead time with a de-energized line is necessary. Line service can then be resumed by automatic reclosing of the line breakers. The dead time selected should be long enough to ensure a high probability of arc de-ionization and successful reclosing.

For individual line breakers, auto reclosing equipment, the required circuit breaker dead time is used to determine the “dead time” setting value. When simultaneous tripping and reclosing at the two line ends occurs, line dead time is approximately equal to the auto recloser “dead time”. If the auto reclosing dead time and line “dead time” differ then, the line will be energized until the breakers at both ends have opened.

![Diagram of line protection and circuit breaker](IEC04000146-3-en.vsd)

**Figure 118: Single-shot automatic reclosing at a permanent fault**

Single-phase tripping and single-phase automatic reclosing is a way of limiting the effect of a single-phase line fault on power system operation. Especially at higher voltage levels, the
majority of faults are of single-phase type (around 90%). To maintain system stability in power systems with limited meshing or parallel routing single-phase auto reclosing is of particular value. During the single-phase dead time the system is still capable of transmitting load on the two healthy phases and the system is still synchronized. It requires that each circuit breaker pole can be operated individually, which is usually the case for higher transmission voltages.

A somewhat longer dead time may be required for single-phase reclosing compared to high-speed three-phase reclosing. This is due to the influence on the fault arc from the voltage and the current in the non-faulted phases.

To maximize the availability of the power system it is possible to choose single-phase tripping and automatic reclosing during single-phase faults and three-phase tripping and automatic reclosing during multi-phase faults. Three-phase automatic reclosing can be performed with or without the use of synchrocheck.

During the single-phase dead time there is an equivalent "series"-fault in the system resulting in a flow of zero sequence current. It is therefore necessary to coordinate the residual current protections (earth fault protection) with the single-phase tripping and the auto reclosing function. Attention shall also be paid to "pole discordance" that arises when circuit breakers are provided with single-phase operating devices. These breakers need pole discordance protection. They must also be coordinated with the single-phase auto recloser and blocked during the dead time when a normal discordance occurs. Alternatively, they should use a trip time longer than the set single-phase dead time.

For the individual line breakers and auto reclosing equipment, the auto reclosing dead time expression is used. This is the dead time setting for the auto recloser. During simultaneous tripping and reclosing at the two line ends, auto reclosing dead time is approximately equal to the line dead time. Otherwise these two times may differ as one line end might have a slower trip than the other end which means that the line will not be dead until both ends have opened.

If the fault is permanent, the line protection will trip again when reclosing is attempted in order to clear the fault.

It is common to use one automatic reclosing function per line circuit breaker (CB). When one CB per line end is used, then there is one auto- recloser per line end. If auto reclosers are included in duplicated line protection, which means two auto reclosers per CB, one should take measures to avoid uncoordinated reclosing commands. In 1 1/2 breaker, double-breaker and ring bus arrangements, two CBs per line end are operated. One auto recloser per CB is recommended. Arranged in such a way, that sequential reclosing of the two CBs can be arranged with a priority circuit available in the auto recloser. In case of a permanent fault and unsuccessful reclosing of the first CB, reclosing of the second CB is cancelled and thus the stress on the power system is limited.

The auto recloser can be selected to perform single-phase and/or three-phase automatic reclosing from several single-shot to multiple-shot reclosing programs. The three-phase auto reclosing dead time can be set to give either High-Speed Automatic Reclosing (HSAR) or Delayed Automatic Reclosing (DAR). These expressions, HSAR and DAR, are mostly used for three-phase auto reclosing as single-phase auto reclosing is always high speed to avoid maintaining the unsymmetrical condition. HSAR usually means a dead time of less than 1 second.

In power transmission systems it is common practice to apply single- and/or three-phase, single-shot auto reclosing. In sub-transmission and distribution systems tripping and auto reclosing are usually three-phase. The mode of automatic reclosing varies however. Single-shot and multi-shot are in use. The first shot can have a short delay, HSAR, or a longer delay, DAR. The second and following reclosing shots have a rather long delay. When multiple shots are used the dead time must harmonize with the breaker duty-cycle capacity.

Automatic reclosing is usually started by the line protection and in particular by instantaneous tripping of such protection. The auto recloser can be inhibited (blocked) when certain protection functions detecting permanent faults, such as shunt reactor, cable or busbar
protection are in operation. Back-up protection zones indicating faults outside the own line are typically connected to inhibit the auto recloser.

Automatic reclosing should not be attempted when closing a CB and energizing a line onto a fault (SOTF), except when multiple-shots are used where shots 2 etc. will be started at SOTF. Likewise a CB in a multi-breaker busbar arrangement which was not closed when a fault occurred should not be closed by operation of the auto recloser. Auto reclosing is often combined with a release condition from synchrocheck and dead line or dead busbar check. In order to limit the stress on turbo generator sets from auto reclosing onto a permanent fault, one can arrange to combine auto reclosing with a synchrocheck on line terminals close to such power stations and attempt energizing from the side furthest away from the power station and perform the synchrocheck at the local end if the energizing was successful.

Transmission protection systems are usually sub-divided and provided with two redundant protection IEDs. In such systems it is common to provide auto reclosing in only one of the sub-systems as the requirement is for fault clearance and a failure to reclose because of the auto recloser being out of service is not considered a major disturbance. If two auto reclosers are provided on the same breaker, the application must be carefully checked and normally one must be the master and be connected to inhibit the other auto recloser if it has started. This inhibit can, for example, be done from an auto recloser for 3-phase operation in progress signal.

When Single and/or three phase auto reclosing is considered, there are a number of cases where the tripping shall be three phase anyway. For example:

- Evolving fault where the fault during the dead-time spreads to another phase. The other two phases must then be tripped and a three phase dead-time and auto reclose initiated
- Permanent fault
- Fault during three-phase dead time
- Auto recloser out of service or circuit breaker not ready for an auto reclosing cycle

“Prepare three-phase tripping” is then used to switch the tripping to three-phase. This signal is generated by the auto recloser and connected to the trip function block and also connected outside the IED through IO when a common auto recloser is provided for two sub-systems. An alternative signal “Prepare 1-phase tripping” is also provided and can be used as an alternative when the autorecloser is shared with another subsystem. This provides a fail safe connection so that even a failure in the IED with the auto recloser will mean that the other sub-system will start a three-phase trip.

A permanent fault will cause the line protection to trip again when it recloses in an attempt to energize the line.

The auto reclosing function allows a number of parameters to be adjusted.

Examples:

- number of auto reclosing shots
- auto reclosing program
- auto reclosing dead times for each shot

### 14.2.2.1 Auto reclosing operation Off and On

Operation of the automatic recloser can be set to Off and On by a setting parameter or by external control. The setting parameter Operation = Off, or On sets the function to Off or On. With the settings Operation = On and ExternalCtrl = On, the control is made by input signal pulses to the inputs On and Off, for example, from a control system or by a control switch.

When the auto recloser is set On, the SETON output is set, and the auto recloser becomes operative if other conditions such as circuit breaker is closed and circuit breaker is ready are
also fulfilled, the READY output is activated (high). Then the auto recloser is ready to accept a start.

14.2.2.2 Start auto reclosing and conditions for start of a reclosing cycle

The usual way to start an auto reclosing cycle, or sequence, is to start it at selective tripping by line protection by applying a signal to the START input. Starting signals can be either, general trip signals or, only the conditions for differential, distance protection zone 1 and distance protection aided trip. In some cases also directional earth fault protection aided trip can be connected to start an auto reclose attempt. If general trip is used to start the auto recloser it is important to block it from other functions that should not start an auto reclosing sequence.

In cases where one wants to differentiate three-phase auto reclosing dead time, for different power system configuration or at tripping by different protection stages, one can also use the STARTHS input (start high-speed reclosing). When initiating STARTHS, the auto reclosing dead time for three-phase shot 1, $t_{1\,3PhHS}$ is used and the closing is done without checking the synchrocheck condition.

A number of conditions need to be fulfilled for the start to be accepted and a new auto reclosing cycle to be started. They are linked to dedicated inputs. The inputs are:

- CBREADY, circuit breaker ready for a reclosing cycle, for example, charged operating gear.
- CBCLOSED to ensure that the circuit breaker was closed when the line fault occurred and start was applied.
- No signal at INHIBIT input that is, no blocking or inhibit signal present. After the start has been accepted, it is latched in and an internal signal “start” is set. It can be interrupted by certain events, like an “inhibit” signal.

14.2.2.3 Start auto reclosing from circuit breaker open information

If a user wants to initiate auto reclosing from the circuit breaker open position instead of from protection trip signals, the function offers such a possibility. This starting mode is selected with the setting parameter StartByCBOpen=On. Typically a circuit breaker auxiliary contact of type NO (normally open) is connected to CBCLOSED and START. When the signal changes from circuit breaker closed to circuit breaker open an auto reclosing start pulse is generated and latched in the function, subject to the usual checks. The auto reclosing sequence continues then as usual. Signals from manual tripping and other functions, which shall prevent auto reclosing, need to be connected to the INHIBIT input.

14.2.2.4 Blocking of the auto recloser

Auto reclose attempts are expected to take place only for faults on the own line. The auto recloser must be blocked by activating the INHIBIT input for the following conditions:

- Tripping from delayed distance protection zones
- Tripping from back-up protection functions
- Tripping from breaker failure function
- Intertrip received from remote end circuit breaker failure function
- Busbar protection tripping

Depending of the starting principle (general trip or only instantaneous trip) adopted above the delayed and back-up zones might not be required. Breaker failure trip local and remote must however always be connected.
14.2.2.5 Control of the auto reclosing dead time for shot 1

Up to four different time settings can be used for the first shot, and one extension time. There are separate settings for single-, two- and three-phase auto reclosing dead time, $t_{1\,1\text{Ph}}$, $t_{1\,2\text{Ph}}$, $t_{1\,3\text{Ph}}$. If no particular input signal is applied, and an auto reclosing program with single-phase auto reclosing is selected, the auto reclosing dead time $t_{1\,1\text{Ph}}$ will be used. If one of the $TR2\text{P}$ or $TR3\text{P}$ inputs is activated in connection with the start, the auto reclosing dead time for two-phase or three-phase auto reclosing is used. There is also a separate time setting facility for three-phase high-speed auto reclosing without synchrocheck, $t_{1\,3\text{PhHS}}$, available for use when required. It is activated by the $\text{STARTHS}$ input.

A time extension delay, $t_{\text{Extended} \, t_1}$, can be added to the dead time delay for the first shot. It is intended to come into use if the communication channel for permissive line protection is lost. In a case like this there can be a significant time difference in fault clearance at the two line ends, where a longer auto reclosing dead time can be useful. This time extension is controlled by the setting $\text{Extended} \, t_1 = \text{On}$ and the $\text{PLCLOST}$ input. If this functionality is used the auto recloser start must also be allowed from distance protection zone 2 time delayed trip. Time extension delay is not possible to add to the three-phase high-speed auto reclosing dead time, $t_{1\,3\text{PhHS}}$.

14.2.2.6 Long trip signal

In normal circumstances the auto recloser is started with a protection trip command which resets quickly due to fault clearing. The user can set a maximum start pulse duration $t_{\text{LongStartInh}}$. This start pulse duration time is controlled by setting $\text{LongStartInhib}$.

When start pulse duration signal is longer than set maximum start pulse duration, the auto reclosing sequence interrupts in the same way as for a signal to the $\text{INHIBIT}$ input.

14.2.2.7 Maximum number of reclosing shots

The maximum number of auto reclosing shots in an auto reclosing cycle is selected by the setting $\text{NoOfShots}$. A maximum of five shots can be done. The type of auto reclosing used at the first auto reclosing shot is set by the setting $\text{ARMode}$. The first alternative is three-phase auto reclosing. The other alternatives include some single-phase or two-phase auto reclosing. Usually there is no two-phase tripping arranged, and then there will be no two-phase auto reclosing.

The decision for single- and three-phase trip is also made in the tripping logic (SMPTTRC) function block where the setting $3\text{ phase, 1ph/3Ph}$ (or $1\text{ph/2ph/3Ph}$) is selected.

14.2.2.8 $\text{ARMode} = 3\text{ph}$, (normal setting for a three-phase shot)

Three-phase auto reclosing, one to five shots according to the $\text{NoOfShots}$ setting. The prepare three-phase trip $\text{PREP3P}$ output is always set (high). A trip operation is made as a three-phase trip for all type of faults. The auto reclosing is as a three-phase auto reclosing as in mode $1/2/3\text{ph}$ described below. All signals, blockings, inhibits, timers, requirements and so on, are the same as in the example described below.

14.2.2.9 $\text{ARMode} = 1/2/3\text{ph}$

Single-phase, two-phase or three-phase auto reclosing first shot, followed by 3-phase auto reclosing shots, if selected. Here, the auto recloser is assumed to be "On" and "Ready". The circuit breaker is closed and the operation gear ready (operating energy stored). $\text{START}$ input (or $\text{STARTHS}$) is received and sealed-in. The $\text{READY}$ output is reset (set to false). $\text{ACTIVE}$ output is set.
• If $TR2P$ and $TR3P$ inputs are low (i.e. single-phase trip): The timer for single-phase auto reclosing dead time is started and the $1PT1$ output (single-phase reclosing in progress) is activated. It can be used to suppress pole disagreement and earth-fault protection trip during the single-phase dead time interval.

• If $TR2P$ input is high and $TR3P$ input is low (i.e. two-phase trip): The timer for two-phase auto reclosing dead time is started and the $2PT1$ output (two-phase reclosing in progress) is activated.

• If $TR3P$ input is high (i.e. three-phase trip): The timer for three-phase auto reclosing dead time, $t1\ 3Ph$ or $t1\ 3PhHS$, is started depending on if $START$ or $STARTHS$ input has been activated and $3PT1$ output (three-phase reclosing shot 1 in progress) is set.

While any of the auto reclosing dead time timers are running, the $INPROGR$ output is activated. When the dead time runs out, the respective internal signal is transmitted to the output module for further checks and to issue a breaker closing command.

When a circuit breaker closing command is issued, the prepare three-phase output trip is set. When issuing a circuit breaker closing command the $tReclaim$ timer is started. If no tripping takes place during that time, the auto recloser resets to the "Ready" state and the $ACTIVE$ output resets. If the first reclosing shot fails, a three-phase trip will be initiated and three-phase reclosing can follow, if selected.

14.2.2.10 $ARMode = 1/2ph$, 1-phase or 2-phase reclosing in the first shot

At single-phase or two-phase tripping, the operation is as in the example described above, program mode $1/2/3ph$. If the first reclosing shot fails, a three-phase trip will be issued and three-phase auto reclosing can follow, if selected. In the event of a three-phase trip, $TR3P$ input high, the auto recloser will be inhibited and no auto reclosing takes place.

14.2.2.11 $ARMode = 1ph+1*2ph$, 1-phase or 2-phase reclosing in the first shot

At single-phase tripping, the operation is as in the above described example, program mode $1/2/3ph$. The single-phase auto reclosing attempt can be followed by three-phase reclosing, if selected. At two-phase trip, a failure of a two-phase auto reclosing attempt will inhibit the auto recloser. No more shots are attempted. If the first trip is a three-phase trip, the auto-reclosing will be inhibited. No more shots are attempted. The expression “$1*2ph$” should be understood as “Only one shot at two-phase auto reclosing”.

14.2.2.12 $ARMode = 1/2ph + 1*3ph$, 1-phase, 2-phase or 3-phase reclosing in the first shot

At single-phase or two-phase tripping, the operation is as in the example described above, program mode $1/2/3ph$. If the first reclosing shot fails, a three-phase trip will be issued and three-phase reclosing will follow, if selected. At three-phase trip, a failure of a three-phase auto reclosing attempt will inhibit the auto recloser. No more shots are attempted. The expression “$1*3ph$” should be understood as “Only one shot at three-phase auto reclosing”.

14.2.2.13 $ARMode = 1ph + 1*2/3ph$, 1-phase, 2-phase or 3-phase reclosing in the first shot

At single-phase or two-phase tripping, the operation is as in the above described example, program mode $1/2/3ph$. If the first reclosing shot fails, a three-phase trip will be issued and three-phase reclosing will follow, if selected. At two-phase or three-phase trip a failure of a two-phase or three-phase auto reclosing attempt will inhibit the auto recloser. No more shots are attempted. The expression “$1*2/3ph$” should be understood as “Only one shot at two-phase or three-phase auto reclosing”.

© Copyright 2017 ABB. All rights reserved
Table 33: Type of reclosing shots at different settings of ARMode or integer inputs to MODEINT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MODEINT (integer)</th>
<th>ARMode</th>
<th>Type of fault</th>
<th>1st shot</th>
<th>2nd-5th shot</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>3ph</td>
<td>1ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1/2/3ph</td>
<td>1ph</td>
<td>1ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2ph</td>
<td>2ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1/2ph</td>
<td>1ph</td>
<td>1ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2ph</td>
<td>2ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3ph</td>
<td>....</td>
<td>....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1ph + 1*2ph</td>
<td>1ph</td>
<td>1ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2ph</td>
<td>2ph</td>
<td>....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3ph</td>
<td>....</td>
<td>....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1/2ph + 1*3ph</td>
<td>1ph</td>
<td>1ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2ph</td>
<td>2ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3ph</td>
<td>....</td>
<td>....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>1ph + 1*2/3ph</td>
<td>1ph</td>
<td>1ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2ph</td>
<td>2ph</td>
<td>....</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3ph</td>
<td>3ph</td>
<td>....</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A start of a new auto reclosing cycle during the set “reclaim time” is blocked when the set number of reclosing shots have been reached.

14.2.2.14 External selection of auto reclosing mode

The auto reclosing mode can be selected by use of available logic function blocks. Below is an example where the choice of mode, ARMode=3ph or ARMode=1/2/3ph, is done from a hardware function key at the front of the IED, but alternatively there can for example, be a physical selector switch on the front of the panel which is connected to a binary to integer function block (BTIGAPC).

The connection example for selection of the auto reclosing mode is shown in Figure 119.

Figure 119: Selection of the auto-reclose mode from a hardware functional key in front of the IED
14.2.2.15 Auto reclosing reclaim timer

The $t_{Reclaim}$ timer defines the time it takes from issue of the breaker closing command, until the auto recloser resets. Should a new trip occur during this time, it is treated as a continuation of the first fault. The reclaim timer is started when the circuit breaker closing command is given.

14.2.2.16 Pulsing of the circuit breaker closing command and counter

The circuit breaker closing command, $CLOSECB$ is given as a pulse with a duration set by the $t_{Pulse}$ setting. For circuit breakers without an anti-pumping function, close pulse cutting can be used. It is selected by the $CutPulse$ setting. In case of a new start pulse (trip), the breaker closing command pulse is then cut (interrupted). The minimum breaker closing command pulse length is always 50ms. At the issue of the breaker closing command, the appropriate auto recloser operation counter is incremented. There is a counter for each type of auto reclosing command and one for the total number of auto reclosing commands.

14.2.2.17 Transient fault

After the breaker closing command the reclaim timer keeps running for the set $t_{Reclaim}$ time. If no start (trip) occurs within this time, the auto recloser will reset. The circuit breaker remains closed and the operating gear recharges. The $CBCLOSED$ and $CBREADY$ input signals will be set.

14.2.2.18 Permanent fault and reclosing unsuccessful signal

If a new start occurs, and the number of auto reclosing shots is set to 1, and a new $START$ or $TRSOTF$ input signal appears, after the circuit breaker closing command, the $UNSUCC\_L$ output (unsuccessful reclosing) is set high. The timer for the first shot can no longer be started. Depending on the set number of auto reclosing shots further shots may be made or the auto reclosing sequence is ended. After reclaim timer time-out the auto recloser resets, but the circuit breaker remains open. The circuit breaker closed information through the $CBCLOSED$ input is missing. Thus, the auto recloser is not ready for a new auto reclosing cycle. Normally, the $UNSUCC\_L$ output appears when a new start is received after the last auto reclosing shot has been made and the auto recloser is inhibited. The output signal resets after reclaim time. The “unsuccessful” signal can also be made to depend on the circuit breaker position input. The $Unsucc\_ByCBChk$ setting should then be set to $CBCheck$, and the $tUnsucc\_L$ timer should be set too. If the circuit breaker does not respond to the breaker closing command and does not close, but remains open, the $UNSUCC\_L$ output is set high after the set $tUnsucc\_L$ time. The $UNSUCC\_L$ output can for example, be used in multi-breaker arrangement to cancel the auto reclosing for the second circuit breaker, if the first circuit breaker closed onto a persistent fault. It can also be used to generate a lock-out of manual circuit breaker closing until the operator has reset the lock-out, see separate section.

14.2.2.19 Lock-out initiation

In many cases there is a requirement that a lock-out is generated when the auto reclosing attempt fails. This is done with logic connected to the in- and outputs of the auto recloser and connected to binary I/O as required. Many alternative ways of performing the logic exist depending on whether manual circuit breaker closing is interlocked in the IED, whether an external physical lock-out relay exists and whether the reset is hardwired, or carried out by means of communication. There are also different alternatives regarding what shall generate lock-out. Examples of questions are:
• shall back-up time delayed trip give lock-out (normally yes)
• shall lock-out be generated when closing onto a fault (mostly)
• shall lock-out be generated when the auto recloser is Off at the fault or for example, in single-phase auto recloser mode and the fault was multi-phase (normally not as no closing attempt has been given)
• shall lock-out be generated if the circuit breaker did not have sufficient operating power for an auto reclosing sequence (normally not as no auto closing attempt has been given)

In Figures 120 and 121 the logic shows how a closing lock-out logic can be designed with the lock-out relay as an external relay alternatively with the lock-out created internally with the manual closing going through the synchrocheck function. An example of lock-out logic.

**Figure 120: Lock-out arranged with an external lock-out relay**

**Figure 121: Lock-out arranged with internal logic with manual closing going through in IED**

### 14.2.2.20 Evolving fault

An evolving fault starts as a single-phase fault which leads to single-phase tripping and then the fault spreads to another phase. The second fault is then cleared by three-phase tripping.

The auto recloser will first receive a start signal (START) without any three-phase signal (TR3P). The auto recloser will start a single-phase auto reclosing sequence, if programmed to do so. At the evolving fault clearance there will be a new START signal and three-phase trip information,
14.2.2.21 Automatic continuation of the auto reclosing sequence

The auto recloser can be programmed to proceed to the next auto reclosing shots (if multiple shots are selected) even if start signals are not received from protection functions, but the circuit breaker is still not closed. This is done by setting AutoCont = On and tAutoContWait to the required delay for the function to proceed without a new start.

14.2.2.22 Thermal overload protection holding the auto recloser back

If the THOLHOLD input (thermal overload protection holding auto reclosing back) is activated, it will keep the auto recloser on a hold until it is reset. There may thus be a considerable delay between start of the auto recloser and the breaker closing command to the circuit breaker. An external logic limiting the time and sending an inhibit to the INHIBIT input can be used. The input can also be used to set the auto recloser on hold for a longer or shorter period.

14.2.3 Setting guidelines

14.2.3.1 Configuration

Use the PCM600 configuration tool to configure signals.

Auto recloser function parameters are set via the local HMI or Parameter Setting Tool (PST). Parameter Setting Tool is a part of PCM600.

Recommendations for input signals

Please see Figure 122, Figure 123 and Figure 124 and default factory configuration for examples.

BLKOFF

Used to unblock the auto recloser when it has been blocked due to activating BLKON input or by an unsuccessful auto reclosing attempt if the BlockByUnsucCl setting is set to On.

BLKON

Used to block the auto recloser, for example, when certain special service conditions arise. When used, blocking must be reset with BLKOFF.

CBCCLOSED and CBREADY

These binary inputs should pick-up information from the circuit breaker. At three operating gears in the circuit breaker (single pole operated circuit breakers) the connection should be “All poles closed” (series connection of the NO contacts) or “At least one pole open” (parallel connection of NC contacts). The CBREADY is a signal meaning that the circuit breaker is ready for an auto reclosing operation, either Close-Open (CO), or Open-Close-Open (OCO). If the available signal is of type “circuit breaker not charged” or “not ready”, an inverter can be inserted in front of the CBREADY input.
INHIBIT

To this input shall be connected signals that interrupt an auto reclosing cycle or prevent a start from being accepted. Such signals can come from protection for a line connected shunt reactor, from transfer trip receive, from back-up protection functions, busbar protection trip or from breaker failure protection. When the circuit breaker open position is set to start the auto recloser, then manual opening must also be connected here. The inhibit is often a combination of signals from external IEDs via the I/O and internal functions. An OR-gate is then used for the combination.

MODEINT

The auto reclosing mode is selected with the ARMode setting. As an alternative to the setting, the mode can be selected by connecting an integer, for example from function block B16I, to the MODEINT input. The six possible modes are described in table 6 with their corresponding MODEINT integer value. When a valid integer is connected to the input MODEINT the selected ARMode setting will be invalid and the MODEINT input value will be used instead. The selected mode is reported as an integer on the MODE output.

ON and OFF

These inputs can be connected to binary inputs or to a communication interface block for external control.

PLCLOST

This is intended for line protection permissive signal channel lost (fail) for example, PLC= Power Line Carrier failure. It can be connected, when it is required to prolong the auto reclosing dead time when communication is not working, that is, one line end might trip with a zone2 delay. If this is used the auto recloser must also be started from zone2 time delayed trip.

RESET

Used to reset the auto recloser to start conditions. Possible hold by thermal overload protection will be reset. Circuit breaker position will be checked and time settings will be restarted with their set times.

RSTCOUNT

There is a counter for each type of auto reclosing and one for the total number of circuit breaker close commands issued. All counters are reset with the RSTCOUNT input or by an IEC 61850 command.

SKIPHS

The high-speed auto reclosing sequence can be skipped and be replaced by normal auto reclosing sequence by activating SKIPHS input before the STARTHS high-speed start input is activated. The replacement is done for the 1st shot.

START

The START input should be connected to the trip function (SMPPTRC) output, which starts the auto recloser for 1/2/3-phase operation. It can also be connected to a binary input for start from an external contact. A logical OR-gate can be used to combine the number of start sources.

If StartByCBOpen is used, the circuit breaker open condition shall also be connected to the START input.
STARTHS, Start high-speed auto reclosing

It may be used when one wants to use two different dead times in different protection trip operations. This input starts the dead time $t_{1\,3PhHS}$. High-speed reclosing shot 1 started by this input is without a synchronization check.

SYNC

This input is connected to the internal synchrocheck function when required or to an external device for synchronism. If neither internal nor external synchronism or energizing check is required, it can be connected to a permanently high source, TRUE. The signal is required for three-phase shots 1-5 to proceed (Note! Not the high-speed step).

THOLHOLD

Signal “Thermal overload protection holding back auto reclosing”. It can be connected to a thermal overload protection trip signal which resets only when the thermal content has fallen to an acceptable level, for example, 70%. As long as the signal is high, indicating that the line is hot, the auto reclosing is held back. When the signal resets, a reclosing cycle will continue. Observe that this have a considerable delay. Input can also be used for other purposes if for some reason the auto reclosing shot needs to be halted.

TR2P and TR3P

Signals for two-phase and three-phase trip. They are usually connected to the corresponding output of the trip function block. They control the choice of dead time and the auto reclosing cycle according to the selected program. Signal TR2P needs to be connected only if the trip function block has been selected to give 1ph/2ph/3ph trip and an auto reclosing cycle with two phase reclosing is foreseen.

TRSOTF

This is the signal “Trip by Switch Onto Fault”. It is usually connected to the “switch onto fault” output of line protection if multi-shot auto reclosing attempts are used. The input will start the shots two to five.

WAIT

Used to hold back reclosing of the “low priority unit” during sequential auto reclosing. See “Recommendation for multi-breaker arrangement” below. The signal is activated from output WFMASTER on the second breaker auto recloser in multi-breaker arrangements.

ZONESTEP

The ZONESTEP input is used when coordination between local auto reclosers and down stream auto reclosers is needed. When this input is activated the auto recloser increases its actual shot number by one and enters “reclaim time” status. If a start is received during this reclaim time the auto recloser is proceeding as usual but with the dead time for the increased shot number. Every new increase of the shot number needs a new activation of the ZONESTEP input. This functionality is controlled by the setting ZoneSeqCoord.

Recommendations for output signals

Please see Figure 122, Figure 123 and Figure 124 and default factory configuration for examples.

1PT1 and 2PT1

Indicates that single-phase or two-phase auto reclosing is in progress. It is used to temporarily block an earth-fault and/or pole disagreement function during the single-phase or two-phase open interval.
3PT1, 3PT2, 3PT3, 3PT4 and 3PT5
Indicates that three-phase auto reclosing shots one to five are in progress. The signals can be used as an indication of progress or for own logic.

**ABORTED**
The *ABORTED* output indicates that the auto recloser is inhibited while it is in one of the following internal states:
- inProgress: auto recloser is started and dead time is in progress
- reclaimTimeStarted: the circuit breaker closing command has started the reclaim timer
- wait: an auto recloser, acting as slave, is waiting for a release from the master to proceed with its own reclosing sequence

**ACTIVE**
Indicates that the auto recloser is active, from start until end of reclaim time.

**BLOCKED**
Indicates that auto recloser is temporarily or permanently blocked.

**CLOSECB**
Connect to a binary output for circuit breaker closing command.

**COUNT1P, COUNT2P, COUNT3P1, COUNT3P2, COUNT3P3, COUNT3P4 and COUNT3P5**
Indicates the number of auto reclosing shots made for respective shot.

**COUNTAR**
Indicates the total number of auto reclosing shots made.

**INHIBOUT**
If the *INHIBIT* input is activated it is reported on the *INHIBOUT* output.

**INPROGR**
Indicates that an auto recloser sequence is in progress, from start until circuit breaker close command.

**MODE**
When a valid integer is connected to the *MODEINT* input, the selected *ARMODE* setting will be invalid and the *MODEINT* input value will be used instead. The selected mode is reported as an integer on the *MODE* output. The six possible modes are described in Table 33 with their corresponding *MODEINT* integer value.

**PERMIT1P**
Permit single-phase trip is the inverse of *PREP3P*. It can be connected to a binary output relay for connection to external protection or trip relays. In case of a total loss of auxiliary power, the output relay drops and does not allow single-phase trip.

**PREP3P**
Prepare three-phase trip is usually connected to the trip block to force a coming trip to be a three-phase one. If the auto recloser cannot make a single-phase or two-phase auto reclosing, the tripping should be three-phase.
READY
Indicates that the auto recloser is ready for a new and complete auto reclosing sequence. It can be connected to the zone extension if a line protection should have extended zone reach before auto reclosing.

SETON
Indicates that auto recloser is switched on and operative.

SUCCL
If the circuit breaker closing command is given and the circuit breaker is closed within the set time interval $t_{UnsucCl}$, the SUCCL output is activated after the set time interval $t_{Successful}$.

SYNCFAIL
The SYNCFAIL output indicates that the auto recloser is inhibited because the synchrocheck or energizing check condition has not been fulfilled within the set time interval, tSync. Also ABORTED output will be activated.

UNSUCL
Indicates unsuccessful reclosing.

WFMASTER
Wait from master is used in high priority units to hold back auto reclosing of the low priority unit during sequential auto reclosing. Refer to the recommendation for multi-breaker arrangements in Figure 124.

Connection and setting examples
Figure 122 is showing an example of how to connect the auto recloser when used for three-phase auto reclosing and Figure 123 is showing an example of how to connect the auto recloser when used for single-phase, two-phase or three-phase auto reclosing.
Figure 122: Example of I/O-signal connections at a three-phase auto reclosing sequence
Setting recommendations for multi-breaker arrangements

Sequential reclosing in multi-breaker arrangements, like 1 1/2-breaker, double breaker and ring bus, is achieved by giving the two line breakers different priorities. Refer to figure 124. In a single breaker arrangement the setting is Priority = None. In a multi-breaker arrangement the setting for the first circuit breaker, the master, is Priority = High and for the other circuit breaker Priority = Low.

While the auto reclosing of the master is in progress, it issues the WFMASTER output. After an unsuccessful reclosing the WFMASTER output is also maintained by the UNSUCCL signal. When activating the WAIT input, in the auto recloser set as slave, every dead timer is changed to the value of setting tSlaveDeadTime and holds back the auto reclosing operation. When the WAIT input is reset at the time of a successful reclosing of the first circuit breaker, the slave is released to continue the reclosing sequence after the set tSlaveDeadTime. The reason for shortening the time, for the normal dead timers with the value of tSlaveDeadTime, is to give the slave permission to react almost immediately when the WAIT input resets. The minimum settable time for tSlaveDeadTime is 0.1sec because both master and slave should not send the breaker closing command at the same time. The slave should take the duration of the breaker closing time of the master into consideration before sending the breaker closing command. A setting tWaitForMaster sets a maximum wait time for the WAIT input to reset. If the wait time expires, the reclosing cycle of the slave is inhibited. If auto reclosing of the first breaker is unsuccessful, the UNSUCCL output connected to the INHIBIT input of the slave unit interrupts the auto reclosing sequence of the latter.

Figure 123: Example of I/O-signal connections for a single-phase, two-phase or three-phase auto reclosing sequence
The signals can be cross-connected to allow simple changing of the priority by just setting the High and the Low priorities without changing the configuration. The input \textit{CBCCLOSED} for each circuit breaker is important in multi-breaker arrangements to ensure that the circuit breaker was closed at the beginning of the cycle. If the High priority circuit breaker is not closed the High priority moves to the low priority circuit breaker.

\textbf{Figure 124:} Additional input and output signals at multi-breaker arrangement. The connections can be made “symmetrical” to make it possible to control the priority by the settings, Priority: High/Low.
14.2.3.2 Auto recloser settings

The settings for the auto recloser are set using the local HMI (LHMI) or PCM600.

This setting guideline describes the settings of the auto recloser using the LHMI.

The settings for the auto recloser are found under **Main menu/Settings/IED Settings/Control/AutoRecloser(79,5(0->1))/SMRREC(79,5(0->)):X** and have been divided into four different setting groups: General, CircuitBreaker, DeadTime and MasterSlave.

**General settings**

**Operation:** The operation of the auto recloser can be switched **On** or **Off**.

**ExternalCtrl:** This setting makes it possible to switch the auto recloser On or Off using an external switch via IO or communication ports.

**ARMode:** There are six different possibilities in the selection of auto reclosing programs. The type of auto reclosing used for different kinds of faults depends on the power system configuration and the users practices and preferences. When the circuit breaker only have three-phase operation, then three-phase auto reclosing has to be chosen. This is usually the case in sub-transmission and distribution lines. Three-phase tripping and reclosing for all types of faults is also widely accepted in completely meshed power systems. In transmission systems with few parallel circuits, single-phase reclosing for single-phase faults is an attractive alternative for maintaining service and system stability.

**AutoContinue:** Automatic continuation to the next shot if the circuit breaker is not closed within the set time of **tAutoContWait**. The normal setting is **AutoContinue = Off**.

**tAutoContWait:** This is the length in time the auto recloser waits to see if the circuit breaker is closed when AutoContinue is set to **On**. Normally, the setting of **tAutoContWait** can be **2 sec**.

**StartByCBOpen:** The normal setting **Off** is used when the function is started by protection trip signals. If set **On** the start of the auto recloser is controlled by an circuit breaker auxiliary contact.

**LongStartInhib:** Usually the protection trip command, used as an auto reclosing start signal, resets quickly as the fault is cleared. A prolonged trip command may depend on a circuit breaker failing to clear the fault. A protection trip signal present when the circuit breaker is reclosed will result in a new trip. The user can set a maximum start pulse duration time **tLongStartInh**. This start pulse duration time is controlled by the **LongStartInhib** setting. When the start pulse duration signal is longer than set maximum start pulse duration, the auto reclosing sequence interrupts in the same way as for a signal to the **INHIBIT** input.

**tLongStartInh:** The user can set a maximum start pulse duration time **tLongStartInh**. At a set time somewhat longer than the auto reclosing dead time, this facility will not influence the auto reclosing. A typical setting of **tLongStartInh** could be close to the auto reclosing dead time.

**tInhibit:** To ensure reliable interruption and temporary blocking of the auto recloser a resetting time delay **tInhibit** is used. The auto recloser will be blocked this time after the deactivation of the **INHIBIT** input. A typical resetting delay is **5.0 s**.

**ZoneSeqCoord:** The **ZONESTEP** input is used when coordination between local auto reclosers and down stream auto reclosers is needed. When this input is activated the auto recloser increases its actual shot number by one and enters “reclaim time” status. If a start is received during this reclaim time the auto recloser is proceeding as usual but with the dead time for the increased shot number. Every new increase of the shot number needs a new activation of the **ZONESTEP** input. The setting **NoOfShots** limits of course the possibility to increase the shot number. This functionality is controlled by the setting **ZoneSeqCoord**.
CircuitBreaker settings

**CBReadyType**: The selection depends on the type of performance available from the circuit breaker operating gear. At setting OCO (circuit breaker ready for an Open – Close – Open cycle), the condition is checked only at the start of the auto reclosing cycle. The signal will disappear after tripping, but the circuit breaker will still be able to perform the C-O sequence. For the selection CO (circuit breaker ready for a Close – Open cycle) the condition is also checked after the set auto reclosing dead time. This selection has a value first of all at multi-shot auto reclosing to ensure that the circuit breaker is ready for a C-O sequence at shot two and further shots. During single-shot auto reclosing, the OCO selection can be used. A breaker shall according to its duty cycle always have storing energy for a CO operation after the first trip. (IEC 56 duty cycle is O – 0.3sec – CO – 3min – CO).

**FollowCB**: The usual setting is Follow CB = Off. The setting On can be used for delayed auto reclosing with long delay, to cover the case when a circuit breaker is being manually closed during the auto reclosing dead time before the auto recloser has issued its breaker close command.

**UnsucClByCBChk**: The normal setting is NoCBCheck and the auto reclosing unsuccessful event is then decided by a new trip within the reclaim time after the last reclosing shot. If one wants to get the UNSUCCL (Reclosing is unsuccessful) signal in the case the circuit breaker does not respond to the circuit breaker close command, one can set UnsucClByCBCheck = CB Check and set tUnsucCl for instance to 1.0 s.

**BlockByUnsucCl**: Setting of whether an unsuccessful auto reclosing attempt shall set the auto recloser in blocked status. If used the BLKOFF input must be configured to unblock the function after an unsuccessful auto reclosing attempt. Normal setting is Off.

**CutPulse**: In circuit breakers without anti-pumping relays, the setting CutPulse = On can be used to avoid repeated closing operation when reclosing onto a fault. A new start will then cut the ongoing pulse.

**tPulse**: The circuit breaker closing command should be long enough to ensure reliable operation of the circuit breaker. The circuit breaker closing command pulse has a duration set by the tPulse setting. A typical setting may be tPulse = 200 ms. A longer pulse setting may facilitate dynamic indication at testing, for example, in debug mode of the Application Configuration Tool (ACT) in PCM600. In circuit breakers without anti-pumping relays, the setting CutPulse = On can be used to avoid repeated closing operations when reclosing onto a fault. A new start will then cut the ongoing pulse.

**tReclaim**: The reclaim time sets the time for resetting the function to its original state, after which a line fault and tripping will be treated as an independent new case with a new auto reclosing cycle. One may consider a nominal CB duty cycle of for instance, O – 0.3sec – CO – 3min – CO. However the 3 minute (180 s) recovery time is usually not critical as fault levels are mostly lower than rated value and the risk of a new fault within a short time is negligible. A typical time may be tReclaim = 60 or 180 s dependent on the fault level and circuit breaker duty cycle.

**tSync**: Maximum wait time for fulfilled synchrocheck conditions. The time window should be coordinated with the operate time and other settings of the synchrocheck function. Attention should also be paid to the possibility of a power swing when reclosing after a line fault. Too short a time may prevent a potentially successful auto reclosing.

**tCBClosedMin**: A typical setting is 5.0 s. If the circuit breaker has not been closed for at least this minimum time, an auto reclosing start will not be accepted.

**tSuccessful**: If the circuit breaker closing command is given and the circuit breaker is closed within the set time interval tUnsucCl, the SUCCL output is activated after the set time interval tSuccessful.
The reclaim timer, \( t_{\text{Reclaim}} \), is started each time a circuit breaker closing command is given. If no start occurs within this time, the auto recloser will reset. A new start received in “reclaim time” status will reenter the auto recloser to “in progress” status as long as the final shot is not reached. The auto recloser will reset and enter “inactive” status if a new start is given during the final reclaim time. This will also happen if the circuit breaker has not closed within set time interval \( t_{\text{UnsucCl}} \) at the end of the reclaim time. This latter case is controlled by setting \( \text{UnsucClByCBChk} \). The auto reclosing sequence is considered unsuccessful for both above cases and the \( \text{UNSUCCL} \) output is activated.

### DeadTime settings

**NoOfShots:** In power transmission one shot is mostly used. In most cases one auto reclosing shot is sufficient as the majority of arcing faults will cease after the first auto reclosing shot. In power systems with many other types of faults caused by other phenomena, for example wind, a greater number of auto reclosing attempts (shots) can be motivated.

**\( t_{1\text{Ph}}, t_{1\text{2Ph}}, t_{1\text{3Ph}} \):** There are separate settings for the first shot for single-, two- and three-phase auto reclosing dead times.

- **Single-phase auto reclosing dead time:** A typical setting is \( t_{1\text{Ph}} = 800\text{ms} \). Due to the influence of energized phases the arc extinction may not be instantaneous. In long lines with high voltage the use of shunt reactors in the form of a star with a neutral reactor improves the arc extinction.

- **Three-phase auto reclosing dead time:** Different local phenomena, such as moisture, salt, pollution, can influence the required dead time. Some users apply Delayed Auto Reclosing (DAR) with delays of 10s or more.

**Extended \( t_1 \):** The time extension below is controlled by the **Extended \( t_1 \)** setting.

**\( t_{\text{Extended } t_1} \):** A time extension delay, \( t_{\text{Extended } t_1} \), can be added to the dead time delay for the first shot. It is intended to come into use if the communication channel for permissive line protection is lost. The communication link in a permissive (not strict) line protection scheme, for instance a power line carrier (PLC) link, may not always be available. If lost, it can result in delayed tripping at one end of a line. There is a possibility to extend the auto reclosing dead time in such a case by use of the \( \text{PLCLOST} \) input, and the **\( t_{\text{Extended } t_1} \)** setting. Typical setting in such a case: Extended \( t_1 = \text{On} \) and \( t_{\text{Extended } t_1} = 0.8 \text{ s} \).

**\( t_{1\text{3PhHS}} \):** There is also a separate time setting facility for three-phase high-speed auto reclosing, \( t_{1\text{3PhHS}} \). This high-speed auto reclosing is activated by the \( \text{STARTHS} \) input and is used when auto reclosing is done without the requirement of synchrocheck conditions to be fulfilled. A typical dead time is 400ms.

**\( t_{2\text{3Ph}}, t_{3\text{3Ph}}, t_{4\text{3Ph}}, t_{5\text{3Ph}} \):** The delay of auto reclosing shot two and possible later shots are usually set at 30s or more. A check that the circuit breaker duty cycle can manage the selected setting must be done. The setting can in some cases be restricted by national regulations. For multiple shots the setting of shots two to five must be longer than the circuit breaker duty cycle time.

### MasterSlave settings

**Priority:** In single circuit breaker applications, one sets **Priority = None**. At sequential reclosing the auto recloser for the first circuit breaker, e.g. near the busbar, is set as master (High) and the auto recloser for the second circuit breaker is set as slave (Low).

**\( t_{\text{WaitForMaster}} \):** The slave should take the duration of the circuit breaker closing time of the master into consideration before sending the circuit breaker closing command. A setting \( t_{\text{WaitForMaster}} \) sets a maximum wait time for the \( \text{WAIT} \) input to reset. If the wait time expires, the auto reclosing cycle of the slave is inhibited. The maximum wait time, \( t_{\text{WaitForMaster}} \) for the second circuit breaker is set longer than the auto reclosing dead time plus a margin for synchrocheck conditions to be fulfilled for the first circuit breaker. Typical setting is 2sec.
**tSlaveDeadTime:** When activating the \textit{WAIT} input, in the auto recloser set as slave, every dead timer is changed to the value of setting \textit{tSlaveDeadTime} and holds back the auto reclosing operation. When the \textit{WAIT} input is reset at the time of a successful reclosing of the first circuit breaker, the slave is released to continue the auto reclosing sequence after the set \textit{tSlaveDeadTime}. The reason for shortening the time, for the normal dead timers with the value of \textit{tSlaveDeadTime}, is to give the slave permission to react almost immediately when the \textit{WAIT} input resets. The minimum settable time for \textit{tSlaveDeadTime} is 0.1sec because both master and slave should not send the circuit breaker closing command at the same time.

### 14.3 Apparatus control

#### 14.3.1 Application

The apparatus control is a functionality for control and supervising of circuit breakers, disconnectors, and earthing switches within a bay. Permission to operate is given after evaluation of conditions from other functions such as interlocking, synchrocheck, operator place selection and external or internal blockings.

The complete apparatus control function is not included in this product, and the information below is included for understanding of the principle for the use of QCBAY, LOCREM, LOCREMCTRL, SCILO, SCSWI, SXCBR.

Figure 125 shows from which places the apparatus control function receives commands. The commands to an apparatus can be initiated from the Control Centre (CC), the station HMI or the local HMI on the IED front.

---

**Figure 125: Overview of the apparatus control functions**

Features in the apparatus control function:
• Operation of primary apparatuses
• Select-Execute principle to give high security
• Selection and reservation function to prevent simultaneous operation
• Selection and supervision of operator place
• Command supervision
• Block/deblock of operation
• Block/deblock of updating of position indications
• Substitution of position indications
• Overriding of interlocking functions
• Overriding of synchrocheck
• Pole discordance supervision
• Operation counter
• Suppression of mid position

The apparatus control function is realized by means of a number of function blocks designated:

• Switch controller SCSWI
• Circuit breaker SXCBR
• Circuit switch SXSWI
• Bay control QCBAY
• Bay reserve QCRSV
• Reservation input RESIN
• Local remote LOCREM
• Local remote control LOCREMCTRL

The signal flow between the function blocks is shown in Figure 126. To realize the reservation function, the function blocks Reservation input (RESIN) and Bay reserve (QCRSV) also are included in the apparatus control function. The application description for all these functions can be found below. The function SCILO in the Figure below is the logical node for interlocking.

When the circuit breaker or switch is located in a breaker IED, two more functions are added:

• GOOSE receive for switching device GOOSEXLNRCV
• Proxy for signals from switching device via GOOSE XLNPROXY

The extension of the signal flow and the usage of the GOOSE communication are shown in Figure 127.
Figure 126: Signal flow between apparatus control function blocks when all functions are situated within the IED
Figure 127: Signal flow between apparatus control functions with XCBR and XSWI located in a breaker IED

Control operation can be performed from the local IED HMI. If users are defined in the IED, then the local/remote switch is under authority control, otherwise the default user can perform control operations from the local IED HMI without logging in. The default position of the local/remote switch is on remote.

Accepted originator categories for PSTO

If the requested command is accepted by the authority control, the value will change. Otherwise the attribute blocked-by-switching-hierarchy is set in the cause signal. If the PSTO value is changed during a command, then the command is aborted.
The accepted originator categories for each PSTO value are shown in Table 34.

Table 34: Accepted originator categories for each PSTO

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Permitted Source To Operate</th>
<th>Originator (orCat)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0 = Off</td>
<td>4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 = Local</td>
<td>1,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 = Remote</td>
<td>2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 = Faulty</td>
<td>4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 = Not in use</td>
<td>4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 = All</td>
<td>1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 = Station</td>
<td>2,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 = Remote</td>
<td>3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PSTO = All, then it is no priority between operator places. All operator places are allowed to operate.

According to IEC 61850 standard the orCat attribute in originator category are defined in Table 35.

Table 35: orCat attribute according to IEC 61850

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>not-supported</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>bay-control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>station-control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>remote-control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>automatic-bay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>automatic-station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>automatic-remote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>maintenance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>process</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.3.2 Bay control QCBAY

The Bay control (QCBAY) is used to handle the selection of the operator place per bay. The function gives permission to operate from two main types of locations either from Remote (for example, control centre or station HMI) or from Local (local HMI on the IED) or from all (Local and Remote). The Local/Remote switch position can also be set to Off, which means no operator place selected that is, operation is not possible either from local or from remote.

For IEC 61850-8-1 communication, the Bay Control function can be set to discriminate between commands with orCat station and remote (2 and 3). The selection is then done through the IEC 61850-8-1 edition 2 command LocSta.

QCBAY also provides blocking functions that can be distributed to different apparatuses within the bay. There are two different blocking alternatives:

- Blocking of update of positions
- Blocking of commands
14.3.3 Switch controller SCSWI

SCSWI may handle and operate on one three-phase device or three one-phase switching devices.

After the selection of an apparatus and before the execution, the switch controller performs the following checks and actions:

- A request initiates to reserve other bays to prevent simultaneous operation.
- Actual position inputs for interlocking information are read and evaluated if the operation is permitted.
- The synchrocheck/synchronizing conditions are read and checked, and performs operation upon positive response.
- The blocking conditions are evaluated
- The position indications are evaluated according to given command and its requested direction (open or closed).

The command sequence is supervised regarding the time between:

- Select and execute.
- Select and until the reservation is granted.
- Execute and the final end position of the apparatus.
- Execute and valid close conditions from the synchrocheck.

At error the command sequence is cancelled.
In the case when there are three one-phase switches (SXCBR) connected to the switch controller function, the switch controller will "merge" the position of the three switches to the resulting three-phase position. In case of a pole discordance situation, that is, the positions of the one-phase switches are not equal for a time longer than a settable time; an error signal will be given.

The switch controller is not dependent on the type of switching device SXCBR or SXSWI. The switch controller represents the content of the SCSWI logical node (according to IEC 61850) with mandatory functionality.

14.3.4 Switches SXCBR/SXSWI

Switches are functions used to close and interrupt an ac power circuit under normal conditions, or to interrupt the circuit under fault, or emergency conditions. The intention with these functions is to represent the lowest level of a power-switching device with or without short circuit breaking capability, for example, circuit breakers, disconnectors, earthing switches etc.

The purpose of these functions is to provide the actual status of positions and to perform the control operations, that is, pass all the commands to the primary apparatus via output boards and to supervise the switching operation and position.

Switches have the following functionalities:

- Local/Remote switch intended for the switchyard
- Block/deblock for open/close command respectively
- Update block/deblock of position indication
- Substitution of position indication
- Supervision timer that the primary device starts moving after a command
- Supervision of allowed time for intermediate position
- Definition of pulse duration for open/close command respectively

The realizations of these functions are done with SXCBR representing a circuit breaker and with SXSWI representing a circuit switch that is, a disconnector or an earthing switch.

Circuit breaker (SXCBR) can be realized either as three one-phase switches or as one three-phase switch.

The content of this function is represented by the IEC 61850 definitions for the logical nodes Circuit breaker (SXCBR) and Circuit switch (SXSWI) with mandatory functionality.

14.3.5 Proxy for signals from switching device via GOOSE XLNPROXY

The purpose of the proxy for signals from switching device via GOOSE (XLNPROXY) is to give the same internal representation of the position status and control response for a switch modeled in a breaker IED as if represented by a SXCBR or SXSWI function.

The command response functionality is dependent on the connection of the execution information, XIN, from the SCSWI function controlling the represented switch. Otherwise, the function only reflects the current status of the switch, such as blocking, selection, position, operating capability and operation counter.

Since different switches are represented differently on IEC 61850, the data that is mandatory to model in IEC 61850 is mandatory inputs and the other useful data for the command and status following is optional. To make it easy to choose which data to use for the XLNPROXY function, their usage is controlled by the connection of each data's signal input and valid input. These connections are usually from the GOOSEXLNRCV function (see Figure 129 and Figure 130).
Figure 129: Configuration with XLNPROY and GOOSEXLNRCV where all the IEC 61850 modelled data is used, including selection.

Figure 130: Configuration with XLNPROY and GOOSEXLNRCV where only the mandatory data in the IEC 61850 modelling is used.

All the information from the XLNPROY to the SCSWI about command following status, causes for failed command and selection status is transferred in the output XPOS. The other outputs...
may be used by other functions in the same way as the corresponding outputs of the SXCBR and SXSWI function.

When a command has been issued from the connected SCSWI function, the XLNPROXY function awaits the response on it from the represented switch through the inputs POSVAL and OPOK. While waiting for the switch to start moving, it checks if the switch is blocked for the operation. When the switch has started moving and no blocking condition has been detected, XLNPROXY issues a response to the SCSWI function that the command has started. If OPOK is used, this response is given when XLNPROXY receives the signal.

If no movement of the switch is registered within the limit \( t_{\text{StartMove}} \), the command is considered failed, and the cause of the failure is evaluated. In the evaluation, the function checks if the state of the represented switch is indicating that the command is blocked in any way during the command, and gives the appropriate cause to the SCSWI function. This cause is also shown on the output L_CAUSE as indicated in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause No</th>
<th>Cause Description</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Blocked-by-Mode</td>
<td>The BEH input is 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Blocked-by-switching-hierarchy</td>
<td>The LOC input indicates that only local commands are allowed for the breaker IED function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-24</td>
<td>Blocked-for-open-cmd</td>
<td>The BLKOPN is active indicating that the switch is blocked for open commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-25</td>
<td>Blocked-for-close-cmd</td>
<td>The BLKCLS is active indicating that the switch is blocked for close commands.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Blocked-by-process</td>
<td>If the Blk input is connected and active indicating that the switch is dynamically blocked. Or if the OPCAP input is connected, it indicates that the operation capability of the switch is not enough to perform the command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Position-reaching</td>
<td>Switch is already in the intended position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-31</td>
<td>Switch-not-start-moving</td>
<td>Switch did not start moving within ( t_{\text{StartMove}} ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-32</td>
<td>Persistent-intermediate-state</td>
<td>The switch stopped in intermediate state for longer than ( t_{\text{Intermediate}} ).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-33</td>
<td>Switch-pushed-to-initial-position</td>
<td>Switch returned to the initial position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-34</td>
<td>Switch-in-bad-state</td>
<td>Switch is in a bad position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-35</td>
<td>Not-expected-final-position</td>
<td>Switch did not reach the expected final position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The OPCAP input and output are used for the CBOpCap data of a XCBR respectively SwOpCap for a XSWI. The interpretation for the command following is controlled through the setting \( \text{SwitchType} \).

### 14.3.6 Reservation function (QCRSV and RESIN)

The purpose of the reservation function is primarily to transfer interlocking information between IEDs in a safe way and to prevent double operation in a bay, switchyard part, or complete substation.

For interlocking evaluation in a substation, the position information from switching devices, such as circuit breakers, disconnectors and earthing switches can be required from the same bay or from several other bays. When information is needed from other bays, it is exchanged over the station bus between the distributed IEDs. The problem that arises, even at a high speed of communication, is a space of time during which the information about the position
of the switching devices are uncertain. The interlocking function uses this information for evaluation, which means that also the interlocking conditions are uncertain.

To ensure that the interlocking information is correct at the time of operation, a unique reservation method is available in the IEDs. With this reservation method, the bay that wants the reservation sends a reservation request to other bays and then waits for a reservation granted signal from the other bays. Actual position indications from these bays are then transferred over the station bus for evaluation in the IED. After the evaluation the operation can be executed with high security.

This functionality is realized over the station bus by means of the function blocks QCRSV and RESIN. The application principle is shown in Figure 131.

The function block QCRSV handles the reservation. It sends out either the reservation request to other bays or the acknowledgement if the bay has received a request from another bay.

The other function block RESIN receives the reservation information from other bays. The number of instances is the same as the number of involved bays (up to 60 instances are available). The received signals are either the request for reservation from another bay or the acknowledgment from each bay respectively, which have received a request from this bay. Also the information of valid transmission over the station bus must be received.

Figure 131: Application principles for reservation over the station bus

The reservation can also be realized with external wiring according to the application example in Figure 132. This solution is realized with external auxiliary relays and extra binary inputs and outputs in each IED, but without use of function blocks QCRSV and RESIN.
**Figure 132: Application principles for reservation with external wiring**

The solution in Figure 132 can also be realized over the station bus according to the application example in Figure 133. The solutions in Figure 132 and Figure 133 do not have the same high security compared to the solution in Figure 131, but instead have a higher availability, since no acknowledgment is required.

**Figure 133: Application principle for an alternative reservation solution**

### 14.3.7 Interaction between modules

A typical bay with apparatus control function consists of a combination of logical nodes or functions that are described here:

- The Switch controller (SCSWI) initializes all operations for one apparatus. It is the command interface of the apparatus. It includes the position reporting as well as the control of the position.
- The Circuit breaker (SXCBR) is the process interface to the circuit breaker for the apparatus control function.
- The Circuit switch (SXSWI) is the process interface to the disconnector or the earthing switch for the apparatus control function.
- The Bay control (QCBAY) fulfils the bay-level functions for the apparatuses, such as operator place selection and blockings for the complete bay.
- The Reservation (QCRSV) deals with the reservation function.
- The Protection trip logic (SMPPTRC) connects the “trip” outputs of one or more protection functions to a common “trip” to be transmitted to SXCBR.
• The Autorecloser (SMBRREC) consists of the facilities to automatically close a tripped breaker with respect to a number of configurable conditions.
• The logical node Interlocking (SCIRO) provides the information to SCSWI whether it is permitted to operate due to the switchyard topology. The interlocking conditions are evaluated with separate logic and connected to SCILO.
• The Synchrocheck, energizing check, and synchronizing (SESRSYN) calculates and compares the voltage phasor difference from both sides of an open breaker with predefined switching conditions (synchrocheck). Also the case that one side is dead (energizing-check) is included.
• The Generic Automatic Process Control function, GAPC, handles generic commands from the operator to the system.

The overview of the interaction between these functions is shown in Figure 134 below.
14.3.8 Setting guidelines

The setting parameters for the apparatus control function are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

14.3.8.1 Bay control (QCBAY)

If the parameter AllPSTOValid is set to No priority, all originators from local and remote are accepted without any priority.
If the parameter `RemoteIncStation` is set to `Yes`, commands from IEC 61850-8-1 clients at both station and remote level are accepted, when the QCBAY function is in Remote. If set to `No`, the command LocSta controls which operator place is accepted when QCBAY is in Remote. If LocSta is true, only commands from station level are accepted, otherwise only commands from remote level are accepted.

The parameter `RemoteIncStation` has only effect on the IEC 61850-8-1 communication. Further, when using IEC 61850 edition 1 communication, the parameter should be set to `Yes`, since the command LocSta is not defined in IEC 61850-8-1 edition 1.

### 14.3.8.2 Switch controller (SCSWI)

The parameter `CtlModel` specifies the type of control model according to IEC 61850. The default for control of circuit breakers, disconnectors and earthing switches the control model is set to `SBO Enh` (Select-Before-Operate) with enhanced security.

When the operation shall be performed in one step, and no monitoring of the result of the command is desired, the model direct control with normal security is used.

At control with enhanced security there is an additional supervision of the status value by the control object, which means that each command sequence must be terminated by a termination command.

The parameter `PosDependent` gives permission to operate depending on the position indication, that is, at `Always permitted` it is always permitted to operate independent of the value of the position. At `Not perm at 00/11` it is not permitted to operate if the position is in bad or intermediate state.

`tSelect` is the maximum allowed time between the select and the execute command signal, that is, the time the operator has to perform the command execution after the selection of the object to operate. When the time has expired, the selected output signal is set to false and a cause-code is given.

The time parameter `tResResponse` is the allowed time from reservation request to the feedback reservation granted from all bays involved in the reservation function. When the time has expired, the control function is reset, and a cause-code is given.

`tSynchrocheck` is the allowed time for the synchrocheck function to fulfill the close conditions. When the time has expired, the function tries to start the synchronizing function. If `tSynchrocheck` is set to `0`, no synchrocheck is done, before starting the synchronizing function.

The timer `tSynchronizing` supervises that the signal synchronizing in progress is obtained in SCSWI after start of the synchronizing function. The start signal for the synchronizing is set if the synchrocheck conditions are not fulfilled. When the time has expired, the control function is reset, and a cause-code is given. If no synchronizing function is included, the time is set to `0`, which means no start of the synchronizing function is done, and when `tSynchrocheck` has expired, the control function is reset and a cause-code is given.

`tExecutionFB` is the maximum time between the execute command signal and the command termination. When the time has expired, the control function is reset and a cause-code is given.

`tPoleDiscord` is the allowed time to have discrepancy between the poles at control of three one-phase breakers. At discrepancy an output signal is activated to be used for trip or alarm, and during a command, the control function is reset, and a cause-code is given.
SuppressMidPos when On suppresses the mid-position during the time Intermediate of the connected switches.

The parameter InterlockCheck decides if interlock check should be done at both select and operate, Sel & Op phase, or only at operate, Op phase.

### 14.3.8.3 Switch (SXCBR/SXSWI)

$t_{\text{StartMove}}$ is the supervision time for the apparatus to start moving after a command execution is done from the SCSWI function. When the time has expired, the command supervision is reset, and a cause-code is given.

During the Intermediate time, the position indication is allowed to be in an intermediate (00) state. When the time has expired, the command supervision is reset, and a cause-code is given. The indication of the mid-position at SCSWI is suppressed during this time period when the position changes from open to close or vice-versa if the parameter SuppressMidPos is set to On in the SCSWI function.

If the parameter AdaptivePulse is set to Adaptive the command output pulse resets when a new correct end position is reached. If the parameter is set to Not adaptive the command output pulse remains active until the timer $t_{\text{OpenPulseClosePulse}}$ has elapsed.

$t_{\text{OpenPulse}}$ is the output pulse length for an open command. If AdaptivePulse is set to Adaptive, it is the maximum length of the output pulse for an open command. The default length is set to 200 ms for a circuit breaker (SXCBR) and 500 ms for a disconnector (SXSWI).

$t_{\text{ClosePulse}}$ is the output pulse length for a close command. If AdaptivePulse is set to Adaptive, it is the maximum length of the output pulse for an open command. The default length is set to 200 ms for a circuit breaker (SXCBR) and 500 ms for a disconnector (SXSWI).

### 14.3.8.4 Proxy for signals from switching device via GOOSE XLNPROXY

The SwitchType setting controls the evaluation of the operating capability. If SwitchType is set to Circuit Breaker, the input OPCAP is interpreted as a breaker operating capability, otherwise it is interpreted as a switch operating capability.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Breaker operating capability, CbOpCap</th>
<th>Switch operating capability, SwOpCap</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Open</td>
<td>Open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Close – Open</td>
<td>Close</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Open – Close – Open</td>
<td>Close and Open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Close – Open – Close – Open</td>
<td>Larger values handled as 4, both Close and Open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Open – Close – Open – Close – Open</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>more</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

$t_{\text{StartMove}}$ is the supervision time for the apparatus to start moving after a command execution is done from the SCSWI function. When the time has expired, the command supervision is reset, and a cause-code is given.

During the Intermediate time, the position indication is allowed to be in an intermediate (00) state. When the time has expired, the command supervision is reset, and a cause-code is given. The indication of the mid-position at SCSWI is suppressed during this time period when the position changes from open to close or vice-versa if the parameter SuppressMidPos is set to On in the SCSWI function.
In most cases, the same value can be used for both \( t_{\text{StartMove}} \) and \( t_{\text{Intermediate}} \) as in the source function. However, \( t_{\text{StartMove}} \) may need to be increased to accommodate for the communication delays, mainly when representing a circuit breaker.

### 14.3.8.5 Bay Reserve (QCRSV)

The timer \( t_{\text{CancelRes}} \) defines the supervision time for canceling the reservation, when this cannot be done by requesting bay due to for example communication failure.

When the parameter \( \text{ParamRequest}x \) (\( x=1-8 \)) is set to *Only own bay res.* individually for each apparatus (\( x \)) in the bay, only the own bay is reserved, that is, the output for reservation request of other bays (RES_BAYS) will not be activated at selection of apparatus \( x \).

### 14.3.8.6 Reservation input (RESIN)

With the *FutureUse* parameter set to *Bay future use* the function can handle bays not yet installed in the SA system.

### 14.4 Interlocking

The main purpose of switchgear interlocking is:

- To avoid the dangerous or damaging operation of switchgear
- To enforce restrictions on the operation of the substation for other reasons for example, load configuration. Examples of the latter are to limit the number of parallel transformers to a maximum of two or to ensure that energizing is always from one side, for example, the high voltage side of a transformer.

This section only deals with the first point, and only with restrictions caused by switching devices other than the one to be controlled. This means that switch interlock, because of device alarms, is not included in this section.

Disconnectors and earthing switches have a limited switching capacity. Disconnectors may therefore only operate:

- With basically zero current. The circuit is open on one side and has a small extension. The capacitive current is small (for example, < 5A) and power transformers with inrush current are not allowed.
- To connect or disconnect a parallel circuit carrying load current. The switching voltage across the open contacts is thus virtually zero, thanks to the parallel circuit (for example, < 1% of rated voltage). Paralleling of power transformers is not allowed.

Earthing switches are allowed to connect and disconnect earthing of isolated points. Due to capacitive or inductive coupling there may be some voltage (for example < 40% of rated voltage) before earthing and some current (for example < 100A) after earthing of a line.

Circuit breakers are usually not interlocked. Closing is only interlocked against running disconnectors in the same bay, and the bus-coupler opening is interlocked during a busbar transfer.

The positions of all switching devices in a bay and from some other bays determine the conditions for operational interlocking. Conditions from other stations are usually not available. Therefore, a line earthing switch is usually not fully interlocked. The operator must be convinced that the line is not energized from the other side before closing the earthing switch. As an option, a voltage indication can be used for interlocking. Take care to avoid a
dangerous *enable* condition at the loss of a VT secondary voltage, for example, because of a blown fuse.

The switch positions used by the operational interlocking logic are obtained from auxiliary contacts or position sensors. For each end position (open or closed) a true indication is needed - thus forming a double indication. The apparatus control function continuously checks its consistency. If neither condition is high (1 or TRUE), the switch may be in an intermediate position, for example, moving. This dynamic state may continue for some time, which in the case of disconnectors may be up to 10 seconds. Should both indications stay low for a longer period, the position indication will be interpreted as *unknown*. If both indications stay high, something is wrong, and the state is again treated as *unknown*.

In both cases an alarm is sent to the operator. Indications from position sensors shall be self-checked and system faults indicated by a fault signal. In the interlocking logic, the signals are used to avoid dangerous *enable or release* conditions. When the switching state of a switching device cannot be determined operation is not permitted.

For switches with an individual operation gear per phase, the evaluation must consider possible phase discrepancies. This is done with the aid of an AND-function for all three phases in each apparatus for both open and close indications. Phase discrepancies will result in an unknown double indication state.

### 14.4.1 Configuration guidelines

The following sections describe how the interlocking for a certain switchgear configuration can be realized in the IED by using standard interlocking modules and their interconnections. They also describe the configuration settings. The inputs for delivery specific conditions (Qx_EXy) are set to 1=TRUE if they are not used, except in the following cases:

- QB9_EX2 and QB9_EX4 in modules BH_LINE_A and BH_LINE_B
- QA1_EX3 in module AB_TRAFO

when they are set to 0=FALSE.

### 14.4.2 Interlocking for line bay ABC_LINE

#### 14.4.2.1 Application

The interlocking for line bay (ABC_LINE) function is used for a line connected to a double busbar arrangement with a transfer busbar according to figure 135. The function can also be used for a double busbar arrangement without transfer busbar or a single busbar arrangement with/without transfer busbar.
Figure 135: Switchyard layout ABC_LINE

The signals from other bays connected to the module ABC_LINE are described below.

14.4.2.2 Signals from bypass busbar

To derive the signals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BB7_D_OP</td>
<td>All line disconnectors on bypass WA7 except in the own bay are open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP_BB7_D</td>
<td>The switch status of disconnectors on bypass busbar WA7 are valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BPB</td>
<td>No transmission error from any bay containing disconnectors on bypass busbar WA7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These signals from each line bay (ABC_LINE) except that of the own bay are needed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QB7OPTR</td>
<td>Q7 is open</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPQB7TR</td>
<td>The switch status for QB7 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BPB</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For bay n, these conditions are valid:
14.4.2.3 Signals from bus-coupler

If the busbar is divided by bus-section disconnectors into bus sections, the busbar-busbar connection could exist via the bus-section disconnector and bus-coupler within the other bus section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BC_12_CL</td>
<td>A bus-coupler connection exists between busbar WA1 and WA2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC_17_OP</td>
<td>No bus-coupler connection between busbar WA1 and WA7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC_17_CL</td>
<td>A bus-coupler connection exists between busbar WA1 and WA7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC_27_OP</td>
<td>No bus-coupler connection between busbar WA2 and WA7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC_27_CL</td>
<td>A bus-coupler connection exists between busbar WA2 and WA7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP_BC_12</td>
<td>The switch status of BC_12 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP_BC_17</td>
<td>The switch status of BC_17 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP_BC_27</td>
<td>The switch status of BC_27 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BC</td>
<td>No transmission error from any bus-coupler bay (BC).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These signals from each bus-coupler bay (ABC_BC) are needed:
A bus-coupler connection through the own bus-coupler exists between busbar WA1 and WA2.

No bus-coupler connection through the own bus-coupler between busbar WA1 and WA7.

A bus-coupler connection through the own bus-coupler exists between busbar WA1 and WA7.

No bus-coupler connection through the own bus-coupler between busbar WA2 and WA7.

A bus-coupler connection through the own bus-coupler exists between busbar WA2 and WA7.

The switch status of BC_12 is valid.

The switch status of BC_17 is valid.

The switch status of BC_27 is valid.

No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.

These signals from each bus-section disconnector bay (A1A2_DC) are also needed. For B1B2_DC, corresponding signals from busbar B are used. The same type of module (A1A2_DC) is used for different busbars, that is, for both bus-section disconnector A1A2_DC and B1B2_DC.

The bus-section disconnector is open.

The bus-section disconnector is closed.

The switch status of bus-section disconnector DC is valid.

No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.

If the busbar is divided by bus-section circuit breakers, the signals from the bus-section coupler bay (A1A2_BS), rather than the bus-section disconnector bay (A1A2_DC) must be used. For B1B2_BS, corresponding signals from busbar B are used. The same type of module (A1A2_BS) is used for different busbars, that is, for both bus-section circuit breakers A1A2_BS and B1B2_BS.

No bus-section coupler connection between bus-sections 1 and 2.

A bus-section coupler connection exists between bus-sections 1 and 2.

The switch status of bus-section coupler BS is valid.

No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.

For a line bay in section 1, these conditions are valid:
Figure 138: Signals to a line bay in section 1 from the bus-coupler bays in each section

For a line bay in section 2, the same conditions as above are valid by changing section 1 to section 2 and vice versa.

14.4.2.4 Configuration setting

If there is no bypass busbar and therefore no QB7 disconnector, then the interlocking for QB7 is not used. The states for QB7, QC71, BB7_D, BC_17, BC_27 are set to open by setting the appropriate module inputs as follows. In the functional block diagram, 0 and 1 are designated 0=FALSE and 1=TRUE:

- QB7_OP = 1
- QB7_CL = 0
If there is no second busbar WA2 and therefore no QB2 disconnector, then the interlocking for QB2 is not used. The state for QB2, QC21, BC_12, BC_27 are set to open by setting the appropriate module inputs as follows. In the functional block diagram, 0 and 1 are designated 0=FALSE and 1=TRUE:

- QB2_OP = 1
- QB2_CL = 0
- QC21_OP = 1
- QC21_CL = 0
- BC_12_CL = 0
- BC_27_OP = 1
- BC_27_CL = 0
- VP_BC_12 = 1
- VP_BC_27 = 1

### 14.4.3 Interlocking for bus-coupler bay ABC_BC

#### 14.4.3.1 Application

The interlocking for bus-coupler bay (ABC_BC) function is used for a bus-coupler bay connected to a double busbar arrangement according to figure 139. The function can also be used for a single busbar arrangement with transfer busbar or double busbar arrangement without transfer busbar.
14.4.3.2 Configuration

The signals from the other bays connected to the bus-coupler module ABC_BC are described below.

14.4.3.3 Signals from all feeders

To derive the signals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BBTR_OP</td>
<td>No busbar transfer is in progress concerning this bus-coupler.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP_BBTR</td>
<td>The switch status is valid for all apparatuses involved in the busbar transfer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_12</td>
<td>No transmission error from any bay connected to the WA1/WA2 busbars.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These signals from each line bay (ABC_LINE), each transformer bay (AB_TRAFO), and bus-coupler bay (ABC_BC), except the own bus-coupler bay are needed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QQB12OPTR</td>
<td>QB1 or QB2 or both are open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPQ812TR</td>
<td>The switch status of QB1 and QB2 are valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_12</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For bus-coupler bay n, these conditions are valid:
Figure 140: Signals from any bays in bus-coupler bay n

If the busbar is divided by bus-section disconnectors into bus-sections, the signals BBTR are connected in parallel - if both bus-section disconnectors are closed. So for the basic project-specific logic for BBTR above, add this logic:

Diagrams are shown here.

Figure 141: Busbars divided by bus-section disconnectors (circuit breakers)

The following signals from each bus-section disconnector bay (A1A2_DC) are needed. For B1B2_DC, corresponding signals from busbar B are used. The same type of module (A1A2_DC) is used for different busbars, that is, for both bus-section disconnector A1A2_DC and B1B2_DC.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DCOPTR</td>
<td>The bus-section disconnector is open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPDCTR</td>
<td>The switch status of bus-section disconnector DC is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_DC</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the busbar is divided by bus-section circuit breakers, the signals from the bus-section coupler bay (A1A2_BS), rather than the bus-section disconnector bay (A1A2_DC), have to be used. For B1B2_BS, corresponding signals from busbar B are used. The same type of module (A1A2_BS) is used for different busbars, that is, for both bus-section circuit breakers A1A2_BS and B1B2_BS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S1S2OPT</td>
<td>No bus-section coupler connection between bus-sections 1 and 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPS1S2TR</td>
<td>The switch status of bus-section coupler BS is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BS</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
For a bus-coupler bay in section 1, these conditions are valid:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{BBTR\_OP (sect.1)} & \quad \& \quad \text{BBTR\_OP} \\
\text{DCOPTR (A1A2)} & \quad \& \quad \geq 1 \\
\text{DCOPTR (B1B2)} & \\
\text{BBTR\_OP (sect.2)} & \\
\text{VP\_BBTR (sect.1)} & \quad \& \quad \text{VP\_BBTR} \\
\text{VPDCTR (A1A2)} & \\
\text{VPDCTR (B1B2)} & \\
\text{VP\_BBTR (sect.2)} & \\
\text{EXDU\_12 (sect.1)} & \quad \& \quad \text{EXDU\_12} \\
\text{EXDU\_DC (A1A2)} & \\
\text{EXDU\_DC (B1B2)} & \\
\text{EXDU\_12 (sect.2)} & \\
\end{align*}
\]

Figure 142: Signals to a bus-coupler bay in section 1 from any bays in each section

For a bus-coupler bay in section 2, the same conditions as above are valid by changing section 1 to section 2 and vice versa.

14.4.3.4 Signals from bus-coupler

If the busbar is divided by bus-section disconnectors into bus-sections, the signals BC\_12 from the busbar coupler of the other busbar section must be transmitted to the own busbar coupler if both disconnectors are closed.

\[
\begin{align*}
(WA1)A1 & \quad \text{Section 1} \quad \text{Section 2} \quad (WA2)B1 \\
(WA7)C & \quad \text{A1A2\_DC(BS)} \quad B1B2\_DC(BS) \\
\text{ABC\_BC} & \quad \text{ABC\_BC} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Figure 143: Busbars divided by bus-section disconnectors (circuit breakers)

To derive the signals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BC_12_CL</td>
<td>Another bus-coupler connection exists between busbar WA1 and WA2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP_BC_12</td>
<td>The switch status of BC_12 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BC</td>
<td>No transmission error from any bus-coupler bay (BC).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These signals from each bus-coupler bay (ABC\_BC), except the own bay, are needed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BC12CLTR</td>
<td>A bus-coupler connection through the own bus-coupler exists between busbar WA1 and WA2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPBC12TR</td>
<td>The switch status of BC_12 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BC</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
These signals from each bus-section disconnector bay (A1A2_DC) are also needed. For B1B2_DC, corresponding signals from busbar B are used. The same type of module (A1A2_DC) is used for different busbars, that is, for both bus-section disconnector A1A2_DC and B1B2_DC.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DCCLTR</td>
<td>The bus-section disconnector is closed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPDCTR</td>
<td>The switch status of bus-section disconnector DC is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_DC</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the busbar is divided by bus-section circuit breakers, the signals from the bus-section coupler bay (A1A2_BS), rather than the bus-section disconnector bay (A1A2_DC), must be used. For B1B2_BS, corresponding signals from busbar B are used. The same type of module (A1A2_BS) is used for different busbars, that is, for both bus-section circuit breakers A1A2_BS and B1B2_BS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S1S2CLTR</td>
<td>A bus-section coupler connection exists between bus sections 1 and 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPS1S2TR</td>
<td>The switch status of bus-section coupler BS is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BS</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay containing the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For a bus-coupler bay in section 1, these conditions are valid:

```
DCCLTR (A1A2) & BC_12_CL
DCCLTR (B1B2) & VP_BC_12
BC12CLTR (sect.2) & EXDU_BC
VPDCTR (A1A2) &
VPDCTR (B1B2) &
VPBC12TR (sect.2) &
EXDU_DC (A1A2) &
EXDU_DC (B1B2) &
EXDU_BC (sect.2) &
```

**Figure 144: Signals to a bus-coupler bay in section 1 from a bus-coupler bay in another section**

For a bus-coupler bay in section 2, the same conditions as above are valid by changing section 1 to section 2 and vice versa.

### 14.4.3.5 Configuration setting

If there is no bypass busbar and therefore no QB2 and QB7 disconnectors, then the interlocking for QB2 and QB7 is not used. The states for QB2, QB7, QC71 are set to open by setting the appropriate module inputs as follows. In the functional block diagram, 0 and 1 are designated 0=FALSE and 1=TRUE:

- QB2_OP = 1
- QB2_CL = 0
- QB7_OP = 1
- QB7_CL = 0
• QC71_OP = 1
• QC71_CL = 0

If there is no second busbar B and therefore no QB2 and QB20 disconnectors, then the interlocking for QB2 and QB20 are not used. The states for QB2, QB20, QC21, BC_12, BBTR are set to open by setting the appropriate module inputs as follows. In the functional block diagram, 0 and 1 are designated 0=FALSE and 1=TRUE:

• QB2_OP = 1
• QB2_CL = 0

• QB20_OP = 1
• QB20_CL = 0

• QC21_OP = 1
• QC21_CL = 0

• BC_12_CL = 0
• VP_BC_12 = 1

• BBTR_OP = 1
• VP_BBTR = 1

14.4.4 Interlocking for transformer bay AB_TRAFO

14.4.4.1 Application

The interlocking for transformer bay (AB_TRAFO) function is used for a transformer bay connected to a double busbar arrangement according to figure 145. The function is used when there is no disconnector between circuit breaker and transformer. Otherwise, the interlocking for line bay (ABC_LINE) function can be used. This function can also be used in single busbar arrangements.
14.4.4.2 **Signals from bus-coupler**

If the busbar is divided by bus-section disconnectors into bus-sections, the busbar-busbar connection could exist via the bus-section disconnector and bus-coupler within the other bus-section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BC_12_CL</td>
<td>A bus-coupler connection exists between busbar WA1 and WA2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP_BC_12</td>
<td>The switch status of BC_12 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BC</td>
<td>No transmission error from bus-coupler bay (BC).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The logic is identical to the double busbar configuration “Signals from bus-coupler”.

**Figure 145: Switchyard layout AB_TRAFO**

The signals from other bays connected to the module AB_TRAFO are described below.
14.4.4.3 Configuration setting

If there are no second busbar B and therefore no QB2 disconnector, then the interlocking for QB2 is not used. The state for QB2, QC21, BC_12 are set to open by setting the appropriate module inputs as follows. In the functional block diagram, 0 and 1 are designated 0=FALSE and 1=TRUE:

- QB2_OP = 1
- QB2QB2_CL = 0
- QC21_OP = 1
- QC21_CL = 0
- BC_12_CL = 0
- VP_BC_12 = 1

If there is no second busbar B at the other side of the transformer and therefore no QB4 disconnector, then the state for QB4 is set to open by setting the appropriate module inputs as follows:

- QB4_OP = 1
- QB4_CL = 0

14.4.5 Interlocking for bus-section breaker A1A2_BS

14.4.5.1 Application

The interlocking for bus-section breaker (A1A2_BS) function is used for one bus-section circuit breaker between section 1 and 2 according to figure 147. The function can be used for different busbars, which includes a bus-section circuit breaker.

![Figure 147: Switchyard layout A1A2_BS](en04000516.vsd)

The signals from other bays connected to the module A1A2_BS are described below.

14.4.5.2 Signals from all feeders

If the busbar is divided by bus-section circuit breakers into bus-sections and both circuit breakers are closed, the opening of the circuit breaker must be blocked if a bus-coupler
connection exists between busbars on one bus-section side and if on the other bus-section side a busbar transfer is in progress:

![Diagram of busbars divided by bus-section circuit breakers](en04000489.vsd)

**Figure 148: Busbars divided by bus-section circuit breakers**

To derive the signals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BBTR_OP</td>
<td>No busbar transfer is in progress concerning this bus-section.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP_BBTR</td>
<td>The switch status of BBTR is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_12</td>
<td>No transmission error from any bay connected to busbar 1(A) and 2(B).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These signals from each line bay (ABC_LINE), each transformer bay (AB_TRAFO), and bus-coupler bay (ABC_BC) are needed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QB12OPTR</td>
<td>QB1 or QB2 or both are open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPQB12TR</td>
<td>The switch status of QB1 and QB2 are valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_12</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These signals from each bus-coupler bay (ABC_BC) are needed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BC12OPTR</td>
<td>No bus-coupler connection through the own bus-coupler between busbar WA1 and WA2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPBC12TR</td>
<td>The switch status of BC_12 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BC</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These signals from the bus-section circuit breaker bay (A1A2_BS, B1B2_BS) are needed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S1S2OPTR</td>
<td>No bus-section coupler connection between bus-sections 1 and 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPS1S2TR</td>
<td>The switch status of bus-section coupler BS is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BS</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For a bus-section circuit breaker between A1 and A2 section busbars, these conditions are valid:
Figure 149: Signals from any bays for a bus-section circuit breaker between sections A1 and A2

For a bus-section circuit breaker between B1 and B2 section busbars, these conditions are valid:
14.4.5.3 Configuration setting

If there is no other busbar via the busbar loops that are possible, then either the interlocking for the QA1 open circuit breaker is not used or the state for BBTR is set to open. That is, no busbar transfer is in progress in this bus-section:

- $BBTR\_OP = 1$
- $VP\_BBTR = 1$

14.4.6 Interlocking for bus-section disconnector A1A2\_DC
14.4.6.1 Application

The interlocking for bus-section disconnector (A1A2_DC) function is used for one bus-section disconnector between section 1 and 2 according to figure 151. A1A2_DC function can be used for different busbars, which includes a bus-section disconnector.

**Figure 151: Switchyard layout A1A2_DC**
The signals from other bays connected to the module A1A2_DC are described below.

14.4.6.2 Signals in single breaker arrangement

If the busbar is divided by bus-section disconnectors, the condition no other disconnector connected to the bus-section must be made by a project-specific logic.

The same type of module (A1A2_DC) is used for different busbars, that is, for both bus-section disconnector A1A2_DC and B1B2_DC. But for B1B2_DC, corresponding signals from busbar B are used.

**Figure 152: Busbars divided by bus-section disconnectors (circuit breakers)**

To derive the signals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S1DC_OP</td>
<td>All disconnectors on bus-section 1 are open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S2DC_OP</td>
<td>All disconnectors on bus-section 2 are open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPS1_DC</td>
<td>The switch status of disconnectors on bus-section 1 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPS2_DC</td>
<td>The switch status of disconnectors on bus-section 2 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BB</td>
<td>No transmission error from any bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These signals from each line bay (ABC_LINE), each transformer bay (AB_TRAFO), and each bus-coupler bay (ABC_BC) are needed:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QB1OPTR</td>
<td>QB1 is open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QB2OPTR</td>
<td>QB2 is open (AB.TRAFO, ABC.LINE).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QB220OTR</td>
<td>QB2 and QB20 are open (ABC_BC).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPQB1TR</td>
<td>The switch status of QB1 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPQB2TR</td>
<td>The switch status of QB2 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VQB220TR</td>
<td>The switch status of QB2 and QB20 are valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BB</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If there is an additional bus-section disconnector, the signal from the bus-section disconnector bay (A1A2_DC) must be used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DCOPTR</td>
<td>The bus-section disconnector is open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPDCTR</td>
<td>The switch status of bus-section disconnector DC is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_DC</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If there is an additional bus-section circuit breaker rather than an additional bus-section disconnector the signals from the bus-section, circuit-breaker bay (A1A2_BS) rather than the bus-section disconnector bay (A1A2_DC) must be used:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QB1OPTR</td>
<td>QB1 is open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QB2OPTR</td>
<td>QB2 is open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPQB1TR</td>
<td>The switch status of QB1 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPQB2TR</td>
<td>The switch status of QB2 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BS</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay BS (bus-section coupler bay) that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For a bus-section disconnector, these conditions from the A1 busbar section are valid:

![Diagram](en04000494.vsd)

*Figure 153: Signals from any bays in section A1 to a bus-section disconnector*

For a bus-section disconnector, these conditions from the A2 busbar section are valid:
Figure 154: Signals from any bays in section A2 to a bus-section disconnector
For a bus-section disconnector, these conditions from the B1 busbar section are valid:

QB1OPTR (bay 1/sect.A2) & S2DC_OP
QB1OPTR (bay n/sect.A2) & VPS2_DC
VPQB1TR (bay 1/sect.A2) & EXDU_BB
VPQB1TR (bay n/sect.A2)
EXDU_BB (bay 1/sect.A2) &
EXDU_BB (bay n/sect.A2)

Figure 155: Signals from any bays in section B1 to a bus-section disconnector
For a bus-section disconnector, these conditions from the B2 busbar section are valid:

QB2OPTR (QB220OTR)(bay 1/sect.B1) & S1DC_OP
QB2OPTR (QB220OTR)(bay n/sect.B1) & VPS1_DC
VPQB2TR (VQB220TR)(bay 1/sect.B1) & EXDU_BB
VPQB2TR (VQB220TR)(bay n/sect.B1)
EXDU_BB (bay 1/sect.B1) &
EXDU_BB (bay n/sect.B1)
14.4.6.3 Signals in double-breaker arrangement

If the busbar is divided by bus-section disconnectors, the condition for the busbar disconnector bay no other disconnector connected to the bus-section must be made by a project-specific logic.

The same type of module (A1A2_DC) is used for different busbars, that is, for both bus-section disconnector A1A2_DC and B1B2_DC. But for B1B2_DC, corresponding signals from busbar B are used.

Figure 157: Busbars divided by bus-section disconnectors (circuit breakers)

To derive the signals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S1DC_OP</td>
<td>All disconnectors on bus-section 1 are open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S2DC_OP</td>
<td>All disconnectors on bus-section 2 are open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPS1_DC</td>
<td>The switch status of all disconnectors on bus-section 1 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPS2_DC</td>
<td>The switch status of all disconnectors on bus-section 2 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BB</td>
<td>No transmission error from double-breaker bay (DB) that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These signals from each double-breaker bay (DB_BUS) are needed:
The logic is identical to the double busbar configuration “Signals in single breaker arrangement”.

For a bus-section disconnector, these conditions from the A1 busbar section are valid:

![Diagram](en04000499.vsd)

**Figure 158: Signals from double-breaker bays in section A1 to a bus-section disconnector**

For a bus-section disconnector, these conditions from the A2 busbar section are valid:

![Diagram](en04000500.vsd)

**Figure 159: Signals from double-breaker bays in section A2 to a bus-section disconnector**

For a bus-section disconnector, these conditions from the B1 busbar section are valid:

![Diagram](en04000500.vsd)
For a bus-section disconnector, these conditions from the B2 busbar section are valid:

Figure 161: Signals from double-breaker bays in section B2 to a bus-section disconnector

14.4.6.4 Signals in 1 1/2 breaker arrangement

If the busbar is divided by bus-section disconnectors, the condition for the busbar disconnector bay no other disconnector connected to the bus-section must be made by a project-specific logic.

The same type of module (A1A2_DC) is used for different busbars, that is, for both bus-section disconnector A1A2_DC and B1B2_DC. But for B1B2_DC, corresponding signals from busbar B are used.

Figure 162: Busbars divided by bus-section disconnectors (circuit breakers)
The project-specific logic is the same as for the logic for the double-breaker configuration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S1DC_OP</td>
<td>All disconnectors on bus-section 1 are open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S2DC_OP</td>
<td>All disconnectors on bus-section 2 are open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPS1_DC</td>
<td>The switch status of disconnectors on bus-section 1 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPS2_DC</td>
<td>The switch status of disconnectors on bus-section 2 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BB</td>
<td>No transmission error from breaker and a half (BH) that contains the above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 14.4.7 Interlocking for busbar earthing switch BB_ES

#### 14.4.7.1 Application

The interlocking for busbar earthing switch (BB_ES) function is used for one busbar earthing switch on any busbar parts according to figure 163.

![Figure 163: Switchyard layout BB_ES](en04000504.vsd)

**Figure 163: Switchyard layout BB_ES**

The signals from other bays connected to the module BB_ES are described below.

#### 14.4.7.2 Signals in single breaker arrangement

The busbar earthing switch is only allowed to operate if all disconnectors of the bus-section are open.

![Figure 164: Busbars divided by bus-section disconnectors (circuit breakers)](en04000505.vsd)

**Figure 164: Busbars divided by bus-section disconnectors (circuit breakers)**

To derive the signals:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BB_DC_OP</td>
<td>All disconnectors on this part of the busbar are open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP_BB_DC</td>
<td>The switch status of all disconnectors on this part of the busbar is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BB</td>
<td>No transmission error from any bay containing the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
These signals from each line bay (ABC_LINE), each transformer bay (AB_TRAFO), and each bus-coupler bay (ABC_BC) are needed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QB1OPTR</td>
<td>QB1 is open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QB2OPTR</td>
<td>QB2 is open (AB_TRAFO, ABC_LINE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QB20OPTR</td>
<td>QB2 and QB20 are open (ABC_BC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QB7OPTR</td>
<td>QB7 is open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPQB1TR</td>
<td>The switch status of QB1 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPQB2TR</td>
<td>The switch status of QB2 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VQB20TR</td>
<td>The switch status of QB2 and QB20 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPQB7TR</td>
<td>The switch status of QB7 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BB</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These signals from each bus-section disconnector bay (A1A2_DC) are also needed. For B1B2_DC, corresponding signals from busbar B are used. The same type of module (A1A2_DC) is used for different busbars, that is, for both bus-section disconnectors A1A2_DC and B1B2_DC.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DCOPTR</td>
<td>The bus-section disconnector is open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPDCTR</td>
<td>The switch status of bus-section disconnector DC is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_DC</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If no bus-section disconnector exists, the signal DCOPTR, VPDCTR and EXDU_DC are set to 1 (TRUE).

If the busbar is divided by bus-section circuit breakers, the signals from the bus-section coupler bay (A1A2_BS) rather than the bus-section disconnector bay (A1A2_DC) must be used. For B1B2_BS, corresponding signals from busbar B are used. The same type of module (A1A2_BS) is used for different busbars, that is, for both bus-section circuit breakers A1A2_BS and B1B2_BS.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>QB1OPTR</td>
<td>QB1 is open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QB2OPTR</td>
<td>QB2 is open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPQB1TR</td>
<td>The switch status of QB1 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPQB2TR</td>
<td>The switch status of QB2 is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BS</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay BS (bus-section coupler bay) that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For a busbar earthing switch, these conditions from the A1 busbar section are valid:
Figure 165: Signals from any bays in section A1 to a busbar earthing switch in the same section

For a busbar earthing switch, these conditions from the A2 busbar section are valid:

Figure 166: Signals from any bays in section A2 to a busbar earthing switch in the same section

For a busbar earthing switch, these conditions from the B1 busbar section are valid:
For a busbar earthing switch, these conditions from the B2 busbar section are valid:

Figure 167: Signals from any bays in section B1 to a busbar earthing switch in the same section

For a busbar earthing switch on bypass busbar C, these conditions are valid:

Figure 168: Signals from any bays in section B2 to a busbar earthing switch in the same section
14.4.7.3 Signals in double-breaker arrangement

The busbar earthing switch is only allowed to operate if all disconnectors of the bus section are open.

To derive the signals:

**Signal**

- **BB_DC_OP**: All disconnectors of this part of the busbar are open.
- **VP_BB_DC**: The switch status of all disconnectors on this part of the busbar are valid.
- **EXDU_BB**: No transmission error from any bay that contains the above information.

These signals from each double-breaker bay (DB_BUS) are needed:

**Signal**

- **QB1OPTR**: QB1 is open.
- **QB2OPTR**: QB2 is open.
- **VPQB1TR**: The switch status of QB1 is valid.
- **VPQB2TR**: The switch status of QB2 is valid.
- **EXDU_DB**: No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.

These signals from each bus-section disconnector bay (A1A2_DC) are also needed. For B1B2_DC, corresponding signals from busbar B are used. The same type of module (A1A2_DC)
is used for different busbars, that is, for both bus-section disconnectors A1A2_DC and B1B2_DC.

### Signal

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DCOPTR</td>
<td>The bus-section disconnector is open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPDCTR</td>
<td>The switch status of bus-section disconnector DC is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_DC</td>
<td>No transmission error from the bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The logic is identical to the double busbar configuration described in section “Signals in single breaker arrangement”.

#### 14.4.7.4 Signals in 1 1/2 breaker arrangement

The busbar earthing switch is only allowed to operate if all disconnectors of the bus-section are open.

![Busbars divided by bus-section disconnectors (circuit breakers)](en04000512.vsd)

**Figure 171**: Busbars divided by bus-section disconnectors (circuit breakers)

The project-specific logic are the same as for the logic for the double busbar configuration described in section “Signals in single breaker arrangement”.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BB_DC_OP</td>
<td>All disconnectors on this part of the busbar are open.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VP_BB_DC</td>
<td>The switch status of all disconnectors on this part of the busbar is valid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXDU_BB</td>
<td>No transmission error from any bay that contains the above information.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 14.4.8 Interlocking for double CB bay DB

#### 14.4.8.1 Application

The interlocking for a double busbar double circuit breaker bay including DB_BUS_A, DB_BUS_B and DB_LINE functions are used for a line connected to a double busbar arrangement according to figure 172.
For a double circuit-breaker bay, the modules DB_BUS_A, DB_LINE and DB_BUS_B must be used.

### 14.4.8.2 Configuration setting

For application without QB9 and QC9, just set the appropriate inputs to open state and disregard the outputs. In the functional block diagram, 0 and 1 are designated 0=FALSE and 1=TRUE:

- QB9_OP = 1
- QB9_CL = 0
- QC9_OP = 1
- QC9_CL = 0

If, in this case, line voltage supervision is added, then rather than setting QB9 to open state, specify the state of the voltage supervision:

- QB9_OP = VOLT_OFF
- QB9_CL = VOLT_ON

If there is no voltage supervision, then set the corresponding inputs as follows:

- VOLT_OFF = 1
- VOLT_ON = 0

### 14.4.9 Interlocking for 1 1/2 CB BH
14.4.9.1 Application

The interlocking for 1 1/2 breaker diameter (BH_CONN, BH_LINE_A, BH_LINE_B) functions are used for lines connected to a 1 1/2 breaker diameter according to figure 173.

![Switchyard layout 1 1/2 breaker](en04000513.vsd)

**Figure 173: Switchyard layout 1 1/2 breaker**

Three types of interlocking modules per diameter are defined. BH_LINE_A and BH_LINE_B are the connections from a line to a busbar. BH_CONN is the connection between the two lines of the diameter in the 1 1/2 breaker switchyard layout.

For a 1 1/2 breaker arrangement, the modules BH_LINE_A, BH_CONN and BH_LINE_B must be used.

14.4.9.2 Configuration setting

For application without QB9 and QC9, just set the appropriate inputs to open state and disregard the outputs. In the functional block diagram, 0 and 1 are designated 0=FALSE and 1=TRUE:

- QB9_OP = 1
- QB9_CL = 0
- QC9_OP = 1
- QC9_CL = 0

If, in this case, line voltage supervision is added, then rather than setting QB9 to open state, specify the state of the voltage supervision:

- QB9_OP = VOLT_OFF
- QB9_CL = VOLT_ON
If there is no voltage supervision, then set the corresponding inputs as follows:

- VOLT_OFF = 1
- VOLT_ON = 0

14.5 Voltage control

14.5.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Automatic voltage control for tap changer, single control</td>
<td>TRIATCC</td>
<td></td>
<td>U$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Automatic voltage control for tap changer, parallel control</td>
<td>TR8ATCC</td>
<td></td>
<td>U$1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tap changer control and supervision, 6 binary inputs</td>
<td>TCMYLTC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tap changer control and supervision, 32 binary inputs</td>
<td>TCLYLTC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.5.2 Application

When the load in a power network is increased, the voltage will decrease and vice versa. To maintain the network voltage at a constant level, power transformers are usually equipped with on-load tap-changer. This alters the power transformer ratio in a number of predefined steps and in that way changes the voltage. Each step usually represents a change in voltage of approximately 0.5-1.7%.

The voltage control function is intended for control of power transformers with a motor driven on-load tap-changer. The function is designed to regulate the voltage at the secondary side of the power transformer. The control method is based on a step-by-step principle which means that a control pulse, one at a time, will be issued to the tap changer mechanism to move it one position up or down. The length of the control pulse can be set within a wide range to accommodate different types of tap changer mechanisms. The pulse is generated whenever the measured voltage, for a given time, deviates from the set reference value by more than the preset deadband (degree of insensitivity).

The voltage can be controlled at the point of voltage measurement, as well as at a load point located out in the network. In the latter case, the load point voltage is calculated based on the measured load current and the known impedance from the voltage measuring point to the load point.

The automatic voltage control can be either for a single transformer, or for parallel transformers. Parallel control of power transformers can be made in three alternative ways:

- With the master-follower method
- With the reverse reactance method
- With the circulating current method
Of these alternatives, the first and the last require communication between the function control blocks of the different transformers, whereas the middle alternative does not require any communication.

The voltage control includes many extra features such as possibility to avoid simultaneous tapping of parallel transformers, hot stand by regulation of a transformer within a parallel group, with a LV CB open, compensation for a possible capacitor bank on the LV side bay of a transformer, extensive tap changer monitoring including contact wear and hunting detection, monitoring of the power flow in the transformer so that for example, the voltage control can be blocked if the power reverses and so on.

The voltage control function is built up by two function blocks which both are logical nodes in IEC 61850-8-1:

- Automatic voltage control for tap changer, TR1ATCC for single control and TR8ATCC for parallel control.
- Tap changer control and supervision, 6 binary inputs, TCMYLT and 32 binary inputs, TCLYLTC

Automatic voltage control for tap changer, TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC is a function designed to automatically maintain the voltage at the LV-side side of a power transformer within given limits around a set target voltage. A raise or lower command is generated whenever the measured voltage, for a given period of time, deviates from the set target value by more than the preset deadband value (degree of insensitivity). A time delay (inverse or definite time) is set to avoid unnecessary operation during shorter voltage deviations from the target value, and in order to coordinate with other automatic voltage controllers in the system.

TCMYLT and TCLYLTC are an interface between the Automatic voltage control for tap changer, TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC and the transformer load tap changer itself. More specifically this means that it gives command-pulses to a power transformer motor driven load tap changer and that it receives information from the load tap changer regarding tap position, progress of given commands, and so on.

TCMYLT and TCLYLTC also serve the purpose of giving information about tap position to the transformer differential protection.

Control location local/remote
The tap changer can be operated from the front of the IED or from a remote place alternatively. On the IED front there is a local remote switch that can be used to select the operator place. For this functionality the Apparatus control function blocks Bay control (QCBAY), Local remote (LOCREM) and Local remote control (LOCREMCTRL) are used.

Information about the control location is given to TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC function through connection of the Permitted Source to Operate (PSTO) output of the QCBAY function block to the input PSTO of the TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC function block.

Control Mode
The control mode of the automatic voltage control for tap changer function, TR1ATCC for single control and TR8ATCC for parallel control can be:

- Manual
- Automatic

The control mode can be changed from the local location via the command menu on the local HMI under Main menu/Control/Commands/TransformerVoltageControl(ATCC,90)/TR1ATCC:x/TR8ATCC:x, or changed from a remote location via binary signals connected to the MANCTRL, AUTOCTRL inputs on TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC function block.
Measured Quantities
In normal applications, the LV side of the transformer is used as the voltage measuring point. If necessary, the LV side current is used as load current to calculate the line-voltage drop to the regulation point.

Automatic voltage control for tap changer, TR1ATCC for single control and TR8ATCC for parallel control function block has three inputs I3P1, I3P2 and U3P2 corresponding to HV-current, LV-current and LV-voltage respectively. These analog quantities are fed to the IED via the transformer input module, the Analog to Digital Converter and thereafter a Pre-Processing Block. In the Pre-Processing Block, a great number of quantities for example, phase-to-phase analog values, sequence values, max value in a three phase group etc., are derived. The different function blocks in the IED are then “subscribing” on selected quantities from the pre-processing blocks. In case of TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC, there are the following possibilities:

- I3P1 represents a three-phase group of phase current with the highest current in any of the three phases considered. As only the highest of the phase current is considered, it is also possible to use one single-phase current as well as two-phase currents. In these cases, the currents that are not used will be zero.
- For I3P2 and U3P2 the setting alternatives are: any individual phase current/voltage, as well as any combination of phase-phase current/voltage or the positive sequence current/voltage. Thus, single-phase as well as, phase-phase or three-phase feeding on the LV-side is possible but it is commonly selected for current and voltage.

![Signal flow for a single transformer with voltage control](IEC1000044-2-en.vsd)

**Figure 174: Signal flow for a single transformer with voltage control**

On the HV side, the three-phase current is normally required in order to feed the three-phase over current protection that blocks the load tap changer in case of over-current above harmful levels.

The voltage measurement on the LV-side can be made single phase-earth. However, it shall be remembered that this can only be used in solidly earthed systems, as the measured phase-
earth voltage can increase with as much as a factor $\sqrt{3}$ in case of earth faults in a non-solidly earthed system.

The analog input signals are normally common with other functions in the IED for example, protection functions.

The LV-busbar voltage is designated $U_B$, the load current $I_L$ and load point voltage $U_L$.

**Automatic voltage control for a single transformer**

Automatic voltage control for tap changer, single control TR1ATCC measures the magnitude of the busbar voltage $U_B$. If no other additional features are enabled (line voltage drop compensation), this voltage is further used for voltage regulation.

TR1ATCC then compares this voltage with the set voltage, $U_{Set}$ and decides which action should be taken. To avoid unnecessary switching around the setpoint, a deadband (degree of insensitivity) is introduced. The deadband is symmetrical around $U_{Set}$, see figure 175, and it is arranged in such a way that there is an outer and an inner deadband. Measured voltages outside the outer deadband start the timer to initiate tap commands, whilst the sequence resets when the measured voltage is once again back inside the inner deadband. One half of the outer deadband is denoted $\Delta U$. The setting of $\Delta U$, setting $U_{deadband}$ should be set to a value near to the power transformer’s tap changer voltage step (typically 75–125% of the tap changer step).

![Figure 175: Control actions on a voltage scale](IEC06000489_2_en.vsd)

**Figure 175: Control actions on a voltage scale**

During normal operating conditions the busbar voltage $U_B$, stays within the outer deadband (interval between $U_1$ and $U_2$ in figure 175). In that case no actions will be taken by TR1ATCC. However, if $U_B$ becomes smaller than $U_1$, or greater than $U_2$, an appropriate raise or lower timer will start. The timer will run as long as the measured voltage stays outside the inner deadband. If this condition persists longer than the preset time delay, TR1ATCC will initiate that the appropriate $U_{LOWER}$ or $U_{RAISE}$ command will be sent from TCMYLTC or TCLYLTC function block to the transformer tap changer. If necessary, the procedure will be repeated until the magnitude of the busbar voltage again falls within the inner deadband. One half of the inner deadband is denoted $\Delta U_{in}$. The inner deadband $\Delta U_{in}$, setting $U_{deadbandInner}$ should be set to a value smaller than $\Delta U$. It is recommended to set the inner deadband to 25-70% of the $\Delta U$ value.

This way of working is used by TR1ATCC while the busbar voltage is within the security range defined by settings $U_{min}$ and $U_{max}$.

A situation where $U_B$ falls outside this range will be regarded as an abnormal situation.

When $U_B$ falls below setting $U_{block}$, or alternatively, falls below setting $U_{min}$ but still above $U_{block}$, or rises above $U_{max}$, actions will be taken in accordance with settings for blocking conditions (refer to table 41).
If the busbar voltage rises above $U_{max}$, TR1ATCC can initiate one or more fast step down commands (ULOWER commands) in order to bring the voltage back into the security range (settings $U_{min}$ and $U_{max}$). The fast step down function operation can be set in one of the following three ways: off /auto/auto and manual, according to the setting $FSDMode$. The ULOWER command, in fast step down mode, is issued with the settable time delay $t_{FSD}$.

The measured RMS magnitude of the busbar voltage $U_B$ is shown on the local HMI as value BUSVOLT under Main menu/Test/Function status/Control/TransformerVoltageControl(ATCC,90)/TR1ATCC:x/TR8ATCC:x.

**Time characteristic**

The time characteristic defines the time that elapses between the moment when measured voltage exceeds the deadband interval until the appropriate URAISE or ULOWER command is initiated.

The purpose of the time delay is to prevent unnecessary load tap changer operations caused by temporary voltage fluctuations and to coordinate load tap changer operations in radial networks in order to limit the number of load tap changer operations. This can be done by setting a longer time delay closer to the consumer and shorter time delays higher up in the system.

The first time delay, $t_1$, is used as a time delay (usually long delay) for the first command in one direction. It can have a definite or inverse time characteristic, according to the setting $t1Use$ (Constant/Inverse). For inverse time characteristics larger voltage deviations from the $U_{Set}$ value will result in shorter time delays, limited by the shortest time delay equal to the $t_{Min}$ setting. This setting should be coordinated with the tap changer mechanism operation time.

Constant (definite) time delay is independent of the voltage deviation.

The inverse time characteristic for the first time delay follows the formulas:

$$D_A = |U_s - U_{Set}|$$

(Equation 120)

$$D = \frac{D_A}{\Delta U}$$

(Equation 121)

$$t_{Min} = \frac{t_{1}}{D}$$

(Equation 122)

Where:
- $D_A$ absolute voltage deviation from the set point
- $D$ relative voltage deviation in respect to set deadband value

For the last equation, the condition $t_{1} > t_{Min}$ shall also be fulfilled. This practically means that $t_{Min}$ will be equal to the set $t_{1}$ value when absolute voltage deviation $D_A$ is equal to $\Delta U$ (relative voltage deviation $D$ is equal to 1). For other values see figure 176. It should be noted that operating times, shown in the figure 176 are for 30, 60, 90, 120, 150 & 180 seconds settings for $t_{1}$ and 10 seconds for $t_{Min}$.
The second time delay, $t_2$, will be used for consecutive commands (commands in the same direction as the first command). It can have a definite or inverse time characteristic according to the setting $t_{2Use}$ (Constant/Inverse). Inverse time characteristic for the second time delay follows the similar formulas as for the first time delay, but the $t_2$ setting is used instead of $t_1$.

**Line voltage drop**

The purpose with the line voltage drop compensation is to control the voltage, not at the power transformer low voltage side, but at a point closer to the load point.

Figure 177 shows the vector diagram for a line modelled as a series impedance with the voltage $U_B$ at the LV busbar and voltage $U_L$ at the load center. The load current on the line is $I_L$, the line resistance and reactance from the station busbar to the load point are $R_L$ and $X_L$. The angle between the busbar voltage and the current, is $\phi$. If all these parameters are known $U_L$ can be obtained by simple vector calculation.

Values for $R_L$ and $X_L$ are given as settings in primary system ohms. If more than one line is connected to the LV busbar, an equivalent impedance should be calculated and given as a parameter setting.

The line voltage drop compensation function can be turned On/Off by the setting parameter $OperationLDC$. When it is enabled, the voltage $U_L$ will be used by the Automatic voltage control for tap changer function, TR1ATCC for single control and TR8ATCC for parallel control for voltage regulation instead of $U_B$. However, TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC will still perform the following two checks:

1. The magnitude of the measured busbar voltage $U_B$, shall be within the security range, (setting $U_{min}$ and $U_{max}$). If the busbar voltage falls-out of this range the line voltage drop compensation calculations will be temporarily stopped until the voltage $U_B$ comes back within the range.
2. The magnitude of the calculated voltage $U_L$ at the load point, can be limited such that it is only allowed to be equal to or smaller than the magnitude of $U_B$, otherwise $U_B$ will be used. However, a situation where $U_L > U_B$ can be caused by a capacitive load condition, and if the wish is to allow for a situation like that, the limitation can be removed by setting the parameter $OperCapaLDC$ to On.
The calculated load voltage $U_L$ is shown on the local HMI as value $U_{LOAD}$ under Main menu/Test/Function status/Control/TransformerVoltageControl(ATCC,90)/TR1ATCC:x/TR8ATCC:x.

**Load voltage adjustment**

Due to the fact that most loads are proportional to the square of the voltage, it is possible to provide a way to shed part of the load by decreasing the supply voltage a couple of percent. During high load conditions, the voltage drop might be considerable and there might be reasons to increase the supply voltage to keep up the power quality and customer satisfaction.

It is possible to do this voltage adjustment in two different ways in Automatic voltage control for tap changer, single control TR1ATCC and parallel control TR8ATCC:

1. Automatic load voltage adjustment, proportional to the load current.
2. Constant load voltage adjustment with four different preset values.

In the first case, the voltage adjustment is dependent on the load and maximum voltage adjustment should be obtained at rated load of the transformer.

In the second case, a voltage adjustment of the set point voltage can be made in four discrete steps (positive or negative) activated with binary signals connected to TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC function block inputs LVA1, LVA2, LVA3 and LVA4. The corresponding voltage adjustment factors are given as setting parameters $LVAConst1$, $LVAConst2$, $LVAConst3$ and $LVAConst4$. The inputs are activated with a pulse, and the latest activation of anyone of the four inputs is valid. Activation of the input LVARESET in TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC block, brings the voltage setpoint back to $U_{Set}$.

With these factors, TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC adjusts the value of the set voltage $U_{Set}$ according to the following formula:

$$U_{set, adjust} = U_{set} + S_a \cdot \frac{I_2}{I_{2 Base}} + S_e$$

(Equation 123)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$U_{set, adjust}$</th>
<th>Adjusted set voltage in per unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$U_{Set}$</td>
<td>Original set voltage: Base quality is $U_n$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$S_a$</td>
<td>Automatic load voltage adjustment factor, setting $VRAuto$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
I

Load current

I_{2}\text{Base}

Rated current, LV winding

S_{ci}

Constant load voltage adjust. factor for active input 1 (corresponding to LVACConst1, LVACConst2, LVACConst3 and LVACConst4)

It shall be noted that the adjustment factor is negative in order to decrease the load voltage and positive in order to increase the load voltage. After this calculation $U_{\text{set, adjust}}$ will be used by TRIATCC or TR8ATCC for voltage regulation instead of the original value $U_{\text{Set}}$. The calculated set point voltage $U_{\text{set, adjust}}$ is shown on the local HMI as a service value under Main menu/Test/Function status/Control/TransformerVoltageControl(ATCC,90)/TR1ATCC:x/TR8ATCC:x.

**Automatic control of parallel transformers**

Control of parallel transformers means control of two or more power transformers connected to the same busbar on the LV side and in most cases also on the HV side. Special measures must be taken in order to avoid a runaway situation where the tap changers on the parallel transformers gradually diverge and end up in opposite end positions.

Three alternative methods can be used for parallel control with the Automatic voltage control for tap changer, single/parallel control TR8ATCC:

- master-follower method
- reverse reactance method
- circulating current method

In order to realize the need for special measures to be taken when controlling transformers in parallel, consider first two parallel transformers which are supposed to be equal with similar tap changers. If they would each be in automatic voltage control for single transformer that is, each of them regulating the voltage on the LV busbar individually without any further measures taken, then the following could happen. Assuming for instance that they start out on the same tap position and that the LV busbar voltage $U_{B}$ is within $U_{\text{Set}} \pm \Delta U$, then a gradual increase or decrease in the load would at some stage make $U_{B}$ fall outside $U_{\text{Set}} \pm \Delta U$ and a raise or lower command would be initiated. However, the rate of change of voltage would normally be slow, which would make one tap changer act before the other. This is unavoidable and is due to small inequalities in measurement and so on. The one tap changer that responds first on a low voltage condition with a raise command will be prone to always do so, and vice versa. The situation could thus develop such that, for example T1 responds first to a low busbar voltage with a raise command and thereby restores the voltage. When the busbar voltage thereafter at a later stage gets high, T2 could respond with a lower command and thereby again restore the busbar voltage to be within the inner deadband. However, this has now caused the load tap changer for the two transformers to be 2 tap positions apart, which in turn causes an increasing circulating current. This course of events will then repeat with T1 initiating raise commands and T2 initiating lower commands in order to keep the busbar voltage within $U_{\text{Set}} \pm \Delta U$, but at the same time it will drive the two tap changers to their opposite end positions. High circulating currents and loss of control would be the result of this runaway tap situation.

**Parallel control with the master-follower method**

In the master-follower method, one of the transformers is selected to be master, and will regulate the voltage in accordance with the principles for Automatic voltage control. Selection of the master is made by activating the binary input FORCMAST in TR8ATCC function block for one of the transformers in the group.

The followers can act in two alternative ways depending on the setting of the parameter MFMode. When this setting is Follow Cmd, raise and lower commands (URAISE and ULOWER) generated by the master, will initiate the corresponding command in all follower TR8ATCCs.
simultaneously, and consequently they will blindly follow the master irrespective of their
individual tap positions. Effectively this means that if the tap positions of the followers were
harmonized with the master from the beginning, they would stay like that as long as all
transformers in the parallel group continue to participate in the parallel control. On the other
hand for example, one transformer is disconnected from the group and misses a one tap step
operation, and thereafter is reconnected to the group again, it will thereafter participate in the
regulation but with a one tap position offset.

If the parameter **MFMode** is set to Follow Tap, then the followers will read the tap position of
the master and adopt to the same tap position or to a tap position with an offset relative to
the master, and given by setting parameter **TapPosOffs** (positive or negative integer value).
The setting parameter **tAutoMSF** introduces a time delay on URAISE/ULOWER commands
individually for each follower when setting **MFMode** has the value Follow Tap.

Selecting a master is made by activating the input FORCMAST in TR8ATCC function block.
Deselecting a master is made by activating the input RSTMAST. These two inputs are pulse
activated, and the most recent activation is valid that is, an activation of any of these two
inputs overrides previous activations. If none of these inputs has been activated, the default is
that the transformer acts as a follower (given of course that the settings are parallel control
with the master follower method).

When the selection of master or follower in parallel control, or automatic control in single
mode, is made with a three position switch in the substation, an arrangement as in figure 178
below is arranged with application configuration.

---

**Figure 178: Principle for a three-position switch Master/Follower/Single**

**Parallel control with the reverse reactance method**
Consider Figure 179 with two parallel transformers with equal rated data and similar tap
changers. The tap positions will diverge and finally end up in a runaway tap situation if no
measures to avoid this are taken.
In the reverse reactance method, the line voltage drop compensation is used. The original of the line voltage drop compensation function purpose is to control the voltage at a load point further out in the network. The very same function can also be used here to control the voltage at a load point inside the transformer, by choosing a negative value of the parameter $X_{line}$.

Figure 180 shows a vector diagram where the principle of reverse reactance has been introduced for the transformers in figure 179. The transformers are here supposed to be on the same tap position, and the busbar voltage is supposed to give a calculated compensated value $U_L$ that coincides with the target voltage $U_{Set}$.

A comparison with figure 177 gives that the line voltage drop compensation for the purpose of reverse reactance control is made with a value with opposite sign on $X_{line}$, hence the designation "reverse reactance" or "negative reactance". Effectively this means that, whereas the line voltage drop compensation in figure 177 gave a voltage drop along a line from the busbar voltage $U_B$ to a load point voltage $U_L$, the line voltage drop compensation in figure 180 gives a voltage increase (actually, by adjusting the ratio $X_{line}/R_{line}$ with respect to the power factor, the length of the vector $U_L$ will be approximately equal to the length of $U_B$) from $U_B$ up towards the transformer itself. Thus in principal the difference between the vector diagrams in figure 177 and figure 180 is the sign of the setting parameter $X_{line}$. 
If now the tap position between the transformers will differ, a circulating current will appear, and the transformer with the highest tap (highest no load voltage) will be the source of this circulating current. Figure 181 below shows this situation with T1 being on a higher tap than T2.

**Figure 181: Circulating current caused by T1 on a higher tap than T2.**

The circulating current $I_{cc}$ is predominantly reactive due to the reactive nature of the transformers. The impact of $I_{cc}$ on the individual transformer currents is that it increases the current in T1 (the transformer that is driving $I_{cc}$) and decreases it in T2 at the same time as it introduces contradictive phase shifts, as can be seen in figure 181. The result is thus, that the line voltage drop compensation calculated voltage $U_L$ for T1 will be higher than the line voltage drop compensation calculated voltage $U_L$ for T2, or in other words, the transformer with the higher tap position will have the higher $U_L$ value and the transformer with the lower tap position will have the lower $U_L$ value. Consequently, when the busbar voltage increases, T1 will be the one to tap down, and when the busbar voltage decreases, T2 will be the one to tap up. The overall performance will then be that the runaway tap situation will be avoided and that the circulating current will be minimized.

**Parallel control with the circulating current method**

Two transformers with different turns ratio, connected to the same busbar on the HV-side, will apparently show different LV-side voltage. If they are now connected to the same LV busbar but remain unloaded, this difference in no-load voltage will cause a circulating current to flow through the transformers. When load is put on the transformers, the circulating current will remain the same, but now it will be superimposed on the load current in each transformer. Voltage control of parallel transformers with the circulating current method means minimizing of the circulating current at a given voltage target value, thereby achieving:

1. that the busbar or load voltage is regulated to a preset target value
2. that the load is shared between parallel transformers in proportion to their ohmic short circuit reactance

If the transformers have equal percentage impedance given in the respective transformer MVA base, the load will be divided in direct proportion to the rated power of the transformers when the circulating current is minimized.

This method requires extensive exchange of data between the TR8ATCC function blocks (one TR8ATCC function for each transformer in the parallel group). TR8ATCC function block can either be located in the same IED, where they are configured in PCM600 to co-operate, or in
different IEDs. If the functions are located in different IEDs they must communicate via GOOSE interbay communication on the IEC 61850 communication protocol. Complete exchange of TR8ATCC data, analog as well as binary, via GOOSE is made cyclically every 300 ms.

The busbar voltage $U_B$ is measured individually for each transformer in the parallel group by its associated TR8ATCC function. These measured values will then be exchanged between the transformers, and in each TR8ATCC block, the mean value of all $U_B$ values will be calculated. The resulting value $U_{B\text{mean}}$ will then be used in each IED instead of $U_B$ for the voltage regulation, thus assuring that the same value is used by all TR8ATCC functions, and thereby avoiding that one erroneous measurement in one transformer could upset the voltage regulation. At the same time, supervision of the VT mismatch is also performed. This works such that, if a measured voltage $U_B$ differs from $U_{B\text{mean}}$ with more than a preset value (setting parameter $VT\text{mismatch}$) and for more than a pre set time (setting parameter $tVT\text{mismatch}$) an alarm signal VTALARM will be generated.

The calculated mean busbar voltage $U_{B\text{mean}}$ is shown on the local HMI as a service value BusVolt under Main menu/Test/Function status/Control/TransformerVoltageControl(ATCC,90)/TR8ATCC:x.

Measured current values for the individual transformers must be communicated between the participating TR8ATCC functions, in order to calculate the circulating current.

The calculated circulating current $I_{cc,i}$ for transformer “i” is shown on the HMI as a service value ICIRCUL under Main menu/Test/Function status/Control/TransformerVoltageControl(ATCC,90)/TR8ATCC:x.

When the circulating current is known, it is possible to calculate a no-load voltage for each transformer in the parallel group. To do that the magnitude of the circulating current in each bay, is first converted to a voltage deviation, $U_{di}$, with equation 124:

$$U_{di} = C_i \times I_{cc,i} \times X_i$$

(Equation 124)

where $X_i$ is the short-circuit reactance for transformer $i$ and $C_i$ is a setting parameter named Comp which serves the purpose of alternatively increasing or decreasing the impact of the circulating current in TR8ATCC control calculations. It should be noted that $U_{di}$ will have positive values for transformers that produce circulating currents and negative values for transformers that receive circulating currents.

Now the magnitude of the no-load voltage for each transformer can be approximated with:

$$U_i = U_{B\text{mean}} + U_{di}$$

(Equation 125)

This value for the no-load voltage is then simply put into the voltage control function for single transformer. There it is treated as the measured busbar voltage, and further control actions are taken as described previously in section "Automatic voltage control for a single transformer". By doing this, the overall control strategy can be summarized as follows.

For the transformer producing/receiving the circulating current, the calculated no-load voltage will be greater/smaller than the measured voltage $U_{B\text{mean}}$. The calculated no-load voltage will then be compared with the set voltage $U_{Set}$. A steady deviation which is outside the outer deadband will result in $ULower$ or $URaise$ being initiated alternatively. In this way the overall control action will always be correct since the position of a tap changer is directly proportional to the transformer no-load voltage. The sequence resets when $U_{B\text{mean}}$ is inside the inner deadband at the same time as the calculated no-load voltages for all transformers in the parallel group are inside the outer deadband.
In parallel operation with the circulating current method, different $U_{Set}$ values for individual transformers can cause the voltage regulation to be unstable. For this reason, the mean value of $U_{Set}$ for parallel operating transformers can be automatically calculated and used for the voltage regulation. This is set On/Off by setting parameter $OperUsetPar$. The calculated mean $U_{Set}$ value is shown on the local HMI as a service value $USETPAR$ under Main menu/Test/Function status/Control/TransformerVoltageControl(ATCC,90)/TR8ATCC:x.

The use of mean $U_{Set}$ is recommended for parallel operation with the circulating current method, especially in cases when Load Voltage Adjustment is also used.

**Line voltage drop compensation for parallel control**

The line voltage drop compensation for a single transformer is described in section "Line voltage drop". The same principle is used for parallel control with the circulating current method and with the master – follower method, except that the total load current, $I_{L}$, is used in the calculation instead of the individual transformer current. (See figure 177 for details). The same values for the parameters $R_{line}$ and $X_{line}$ shall be set in all IEDs in the same parallel group. There is no automatic change of these parameters due to changes in the substation topology, thus they should be changed manually if needed.

**Avoidance of simultaneous tapping**

Avoidance of simultaneous tapping (operation with the circulating current method)

For some types of tap changers, especially older designs, an unexpected interruption of the auxiliary voltage in the middle of a tap manoeuvre, can jam the tap changer. In order not to expose more than one tap changer at a time, simultaneous tapping of parallel transformers (regulated with the circulating current method) can be avoided. This is done by setting parameter $OperSimTap$ to On. Simultaneous tapping is then avoided at the same time as tapping actions (in the long term) are distributed evenly amongst the parallel transformers.

The algorithm in Automatic voltage control for tap changer, parallel control TR8ATCC will select the transformer with the greatest voltage deviation $U_{di}$ to tap first. That transformer will then start timing, and after time delay $t_1$ the appropriate $URAISE$ or $ULOWER$ command will be initiated. If now further tapping is required to bring the busbar voltage inside $U_{DeadbandInner}$, the process will be repeated, and the transformer with the then greatest value of $U_{di}$ amongst the remaining transformers in the group will tap after a further time delay $t_2$ and so on. This is made possible as the calculation of $I_{cc}$ is cyclically updated with the most recent measured values. If two transformers have equal magnitude of $U_{di}$ then there is a predetermined order governing which one is going to tap first.

Avoidance of simultaneous tapping (operation with the master follower method)

A time delay for the follower in relation to the command given from the master can be set when the setting $MFMode$ is Follow Tap that is, when the follower follows the tap position (with or without an offset) of the master. The setting parameter $tAutoMSF$ then introduces a time delay on $UVRAISE/ULOWER$ commands individually for each follower, and effectively this can be used to avoid simultaneous tapping.

**Homing**

Homing (operation with the circulating current method)

This function can be used with parallel operation of power transformers using the circulating current method. It makes possible to keep a transformer energized from the HV side, but open on the LV side (hot stand-by), to follow the voltage regulation of loaded parallel transformers, and thus be on a proper tap position when the LV circuit breaker closes.

For this function, it is needed to have the LV VTs for each transformer on the cable (tail) side (not the busbar side) of the CB, and to have the LV CB position hardwired to the IED.

In TR8ATCC block for one transformer, the state "Homing" will be defined as the situation when the transformer has information that it belongs to a parallel group (for example, information on $T1INCLD=1$ or $T2INCLD=1$ ... and so on), at the same time as the binary input
DISC on TR8ATCC block is activated by open LV CB. If now the setting parameter OperHoming = On for that transformer, TR8ATCC will act in the following way:

- The algorithm calculates the “true” busbar voltage, by averaging the voltage measurements of the other transformers included in the parallel group (voltage measurement of the “disconnected transformer” itself is not considered in the calculation).
- The value of this true busbar voltage is used in the same way as U_{set} for control of a single transformer. The “disconnected transformer” will then automatically initiate URAISE or ULOWER commands (with appropriate t1 or t2 time delay) in order to keep the LV side of the transformer within the deadband of the busbar voltage.

Homing (operation with the master follower method)
If one (or more) follower has its LV circuit breaker open and its HV circuit breaker closed, and if OperHoming = On, this follower continues to follow the master just as it would have made with the LV circuit breaker closed. On the other hand, if the LV circuit breaker of the master opens, automatic control will be blocked and TR8ATCC function output MFERR will be activated as the system will not have a master.

Adapt mode, manual control of a parallel group
Adapt mode (operation with the circulating current method)
When the circulating current method is used, it is also possible to manually control the transformers as a group. To achieve this, the setting OperationAdapt must be set On, then the control mode for one TR8ATCC shall be set to “Manual” via the binary input MANCTRL or the local HMI under Main menu/Control/Commands/TransformerVoltageControl(ATCC,90)/TR8ATCC:x whereas the other TR8ATCCs are left in “Automatic”. TR8ATCCs in automatic mode will then observe that one transformer in the parallel group is in manual mode and will then automatically be set in adapt mode. As the name indicates they will adapt to the manual tapping of the transformer that has been put in manual mode.

TR8ATCC in adapt mode will continue the calculation of U_{di}, but instead of adding U_{di} to the measured busbar voltage, it will compare it with the deadband ΔU. The following control rules are used:

1. If U_{di} is positive and its modulus is greater than ΔU, then initiate an ULOWER command. Tapping will then take place after appropriate t1/t2 timing.
2. If U_{di} is negative and its modulus is greater than ΔU, then initiate an URAISE command. Tapping will then take place after appropriate t1/t2 timing.
3. If U_{di} modulus is smaller than ΔU, then do nothing.

The binary output signal ADAPT on the TR8ATCC function block will be activated to indicate that this TR8ATCC is adapting to another TR8ATCC in the parallel group.

It shall be noted that control with adapt mode works as described under the condition that only one transformer in the parallel group is set to manual mode via the binary input MANCTRL or, the local HMI Main menu/Control/Commands/TransformerVoltageControl(ATCC,90)/TR8ATCC:x.

In order to operate each tap changer individually when the circulating current method is used, the operator must set each TR8ATCC in the parallel group, in manual.

Adapt mode (operation with the master follower method)
When in master follower mode, the adapt situation occurs when the setting OperationAdapt is On, and the master is put in manual control with the followers still in parallel master-follower control. In this situation the followers will continue to follow the master the same way as when it is in automatic control.
If one follower in a master follower parallel group is put in manual mode, still with the setting `OperationAdaptOn`, the rest of the group will continue in automatic master follower control. The follower in manual mode will of course disregard any possible tapping of the master. However, as one transformer in the parallel group is now exempted from the parallel control, the binary output signal ADAPT on TR8ATCC function block will be activated for the rest of the parallel group.

**Plant with capacitive shunt compensation (for operation with the circulating current method)**

If significant capacitive shunt generation is connected in a substation and it is not symmetrically connected to all transformers in a parallel group, the situation may require compensation of the capacitive current to the ATCC.

An asymmetric connection will exist if for example, the capacitor is situated on the LV-side of a transformer, between the CT measuring point and the power transformer or at a tertiary winding of the power transformer, see figure 182. In a situation like this, the capacitive current will interact in opposite way in the different ATCCs with regard to the calculation of circulating currents. The capacitive current is part of the imaginary load current and therefore essential in the calculation. The calculated circulating current and the real circulating currents will in this case not be the same, and they will not reach a minimum at the same time. This might result in a situation when minimizing of the calculated circulating current will not regulate the tap changers to the same tap positions even if the power transformers are equal.

However if the capacitive current is also considered in the calculation of the circulating current, then the influence can be compensated for.

![Diagram of capacitive shunt compensation](IEC06000512-2-en.vsd)

*Figure 182: Capacitor bank on the LV-side*

From figure 182 it is obvious that the two different connections of the capacitor banks are completely the same regarding the currents in the primary network. However the CT measured currents for the transformers would be different. The capacitor bank current may flow entirely...
to the load on the LV side, or it may be divided between the LV and the HV side. In the latter case, the part of $I_C$ that goes to the HV side will divide between the two transformers and will be measured with opposite direction for T2 and T1. This in turn would be misinterpreted as a circulating current, and would upset a correct calculation of $I_{cc}$. Thus, if the actual connection is as in the left figure the capacitive current $I_C$ needs to be compensated for regardless of the operating conditions and in ATCC this is made numerically. The reactive power of the capacitor bank is given as a setting $Q_1$, which makes it possible to calculate the reactive capacitance:

$$X_C = \frac{U^2}{Q_1}$$

(Equation 126)

Thereafter the current $I_C$ at the actual measured voltage $U_B$ can be calculated as:

$$I_C = \frac{U_B}{\sqrt{3} \times X_C}$$

(Equation 127)

In this way the measured LV currents can be adjusted so that the capacitor bank current will not influence the calculation of the circulating current.

Three independent capacitor bank values $Q_1$, $Q_2$ and $Q_3$ can be set for each transformer in order to make possible switching of three steps in a capacitor bank in one bay.

**Power monitoring**

The level (with sign) of active and reactive power flow through the transformer, can be monitored. This function can be utilized for different purposes for example, to block the voltage control function when active power is flowing from the LV side to the HV side or to initiate switching of reactive power compensation plant, and so on.

There are four setting parameters $P>$, $P<$, $Q>$ and $Q<$ with associated outputs in TR8ATCC and TR1ATCC function blocks PGTFWD, PLTREV, QGTFWD and QLTREV. When passing the pre-set value, the associated output will be activated after the common time delay setting $t_{Power}$.

The definition of direction of the power is such that the active power $P$ is forward when power flows from the HV-side to the LV-side as shown in figure 183. The reactive power $Q$ is forward when the total load on the LV side is inductive (reactance) as shown in figure 183.

**Figure 183: Power direction references**
With the four outputs in the function block available, it is possible to do more than just supervise a level of power flow in one direction. By combining the outputs with logical elements in application configuration, it is also possible to cover for example, intervals as well as areas in the P-Q plane.

**Busbar topology logic**
Information of the busbar topology that is, position of circuit breakers and isolators, yielding which transformers that are connected to which busbar and which busbars that are connected to each other, is vital for the Automatic voltage control for tap changer, parallel control function TR8ATCC when the circulating current or the master-follower method is used. This information tells each TR8ATCC, which transformers that it has to consider in the parallel control.

In a simple case, when only the switchgear in the transformer bays needs to be considered, there is a built-in function in TR8ATCC block that can provide information on whether a transformer is connected to the parallel group or not. This is made by connecting the transformer CB auxiliary contact status to TR8ATCC function block input DISC, which can be made via a binary input, or via GOOSE from another IED in the substation. When the transformer CB is open, this activates that input which in turn will make a corresponding signal DISC=1 in TR8ATCC data set. This data set is the same data package as the package that contains all TR8ATCC data transmitted to the other transformers in the parallel group (see section "Exchange of information between TR8ATCC functions" for more details). Figure 184 shows an example where T3 is disconnected which will lead to T3 sending the DISC=1 signal to the other two parallel TR8ATCC modules (T1 and T2) in the group. Also see table 40.

![Figure 184: Disconnection of one transformer in a parallel group](image)

**Exchange of information between TR8ATCC functions**
Each transformer in a parallel group needs an Automatic voltage control for tap changer, parallel control TR8ATCC function block of its own for the parallel voltage control.
Communication between these TR8ATCCs is made either on the GOOSE interbay communication on the IEC 61850 protocol if TR8ATCC functions reside in different IEDs, or alternatively configured internally in one IED if multiple instances of TR8ATCC reside in the same IED. Complete exchange of TR8ATCC data, analog as well as binary, on GOOSE is made cyclically every 300 ms.

TR8ATCC function block has an output ATCCOUT. This output contains two sets of signals. One is the data set that needs to be transmitted to other TR8ATCC blocks in the same parallel group, and the other is the data set that is transferred to the TCMYLTCC or TCLYLTCC function block for the same transformer as TR8ATCC block belongs to.

There are 10 binary signals and 6 analog signals in the data set that is transmitted from one TR8ATCC block to the other TR8ATCC blocks in the same parallel group:

**Table 38: Binary signals**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TimerOn</td>
<td>This signal is activated by the transformer that has started its timer and is going to tap when the set time has expired.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>automaticCTRL</td>
<td>Activated when the transformer is set in automatic control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mutualBlock</td>
<td>Activated when the automatic control is blocked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disc</td>
<td>Activated when the transformer is disconnected from the busbar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receiveStat</td>
<td>Signal used for the horizontal communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TermIsForcedMaster</td>
<td>Activated when the transformer is selected Master in the master-follower parallel control mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TermIsMaster</td>
<td>Activated for the transformer that is master in the master-follower parallel control mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>termReadyForMSF</td>
<td>Activated when the transformer is ready for master-follower parallel control mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raiseVoltageOut</td>
<td>Order from the master to the followers to tap up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lowerVoltageOut</td>
<td>Order from the master to the followers to tap down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 39: Analog signals**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>voltageBusbar</td>
<td>Measured busbar voltage for this transformer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ownLoadCurrim</td>
<td>Measured load current imaginary part for this transformer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ownLoadCurrre</td>
<td>Measured load current real part for this transformer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reactSec</td>
<td>Transformer reactance in primary ohms referred to the LV side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relativePosition</td>
<td>The transformer's actual tap position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voltage Setpoint</td>
<td>The transformer's set voltage (USet) for automatic control</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Manual configuration of VCTR GOOSE data set is required. Note that both data value attributes and quality attributes have to be mapped. The following data objects must be configured:

- BusV
- LodAIm
- LodARE
- PosRel
- SetV
- VCTRStatus
- X2

The transformers controlled in parallel with the circulating current method or the master-follower method must be assigned unique identities. These identities are entered as a setting in each TR8ATCC, and they are predefined as T1, T2, T3,..., T8 (transformers 1 to 8). In figure 184 there are three transformers with the parameter Trfid set to T1, T2 and T3, respectively.

For parallel control with the circulating current method or the master-follower method alternatively, the same type of data set as described above, must be exchanged between two TR8ATCC. To achieve this, each TR8ATCC is transmitting its own data set on the output ATCCOUT as previously mentioned. To receive data from the other transformers in the parallel group, the output ATCCOUT from each transformer must be connected (via GOOSE or internally in the application configuration) to the inputs HORIZx (x = identifier for the other transformers in the parallel group) on TR8ATCC function block. Apart from this, there is also a setting in each TR8ATCC =/,..., =/T1RXOP=Off,On,..., T8RXOP=Off,On. This setting determines from which of the other transformer individuals that data shall be received.

Settings in the three TR8ATCC blocks for the transformers in figure 184, would then be according to the table 40:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trfid=1</th>
<th>T1RXOP=</th>
<th>T2RXOP=</th>
<th>T3RXOP=</th>
<th>T4RXOP=</th>
<th>T5RXOP=</th>
<th>T6RXOP=</th>
<th>T7RXOP=</th>
<th>T8RXOP=</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trfid=2</td>
<td>T1RXOP=</td>
<td>T2RXOP=</td>
<td>T3RXOP=</td>
<td>T4RXOP=</td>
<td>T5RXOP=</td>
<td>T6RXOP=</td>
<td>T7RXOP=</td>
<td>T8RXOP=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trfid=3</td>
<td>T1RXOP=</td>
<td>T2RXOP=</td>
<td>T3RXOP=</td>
<td>T4RXOP=</td>
<td>T5RXOP=</td>
<td>T6RXOP=</td>
<td>T7RXOP=</td>
<td>T8RXOP=</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Observe that this parameter must be set to Off for the “own” transformer. (for transformer with identity T1 parameter T1RXOP must be set to Off, and so on.

**Blocking**

Blocking conditions

The purpose of blocking is to prevent the tap changer from operating under conditions that can damage it, or otherwise when the conditions are such that power system related limits would be exceeded or when, for example the conditions for automatic control are not met.

For the Automatic voltage control for tap changer function, TR1ATCC for single control and TR8ATCC for parallel control, three types of blocking are used:

- **Partial Block:** Prevents operation of the tap changer only in one direction (only URAISE or ULOWER command is blocked) in manual and automatic control mode.
- **Auto Block:** Prevents automatic voltage regulation, but the tap changer can still be controlled manually.
**Total Block:** Prevents any tap changer operation independently of the control mode (automatic as well as manual).

Setting parameters for blocking that can be set in TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC under general settings in PST/local HMI are listed in table 41.

**Table 41: Blocking settings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Values (Range)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OCBk (automatically reset)</td>
<td>Alarm Auto Block Auto&amp;Man Block</td>
<td>When any one of the three HV currents exceeds the preset value IBlock, TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC will be temporarily totally blocked. The outputs IBLK and TOTBLK or AUTOBLK will be activated depending on the actual parameter setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OVPartBk (automatically reset)</td>
<td>Alarm Auto&amp;Man Block</td>
<td>If the busbar voltage $U_B$ (not the compensated load point voltage UVL) exceeds $U_{max}$ (see figure 175), an alarm will be initiated or further URAISE commands will be blocked. If permitted by setting in PST configuration, Fast Step Down (FSD) of the tap changer will be initiated in order to re-enter the voltage into the range $U_{min} &lt; U_B &lt; U_{max}$. The FSD function is blocked when the lowest voltage tap position is reached. The time delay for the FSD function is separately set. The output UHIGH will be activated as long as the voltage is above $U_{max}$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UVPartBk (automatically reset)</td>
<td>Alarm Auto&amp;Man Block</td>
<td>If the busbar voltage $U_B$ (not the compensated load point voltage $U_L$) is between $U_{block}$ and $U_{min}$ (see figure 175), an alarm will be initiated or further ULOWER commands will be blocked. The output ULOW will be activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UVBk (automatically reset)</td>
<td>Alarm Auto Block Auto&amp;Man Block</td>
<td>If the busbar voltage $U_B$ falls below $U_{block}$ this blocking condition is active. It is recommended to block automatic control in this situation and allow manual control. This is because the situation normally would correspond to a disconnected transformer and then it should be allowed to operate the tap changer before reconnecting the transformer. The outputs UBLK and TOTBLK or AUTOBLK will be activated depending on the actual parameter setting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Values (Range)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| RevActPartBk (automatically reset) | Alarm Auto Block          | The risk of voltage instability increases as transmission lines become more heavily loaded in an attempt to maximize the efficient use of existing generation and transmission facilities. In the same time lack of reactive power may move the operation point of the power network to the lower part of the P-V-curve (unstable part). Under these conditions, when the voltage starts to drop, it might happen that an URAISE command can give reversed result that is, a lower busbar voltage. Tap changer operation under voltage instability conditions makes it more difficult for the power system to recover. Therefore, it might be desirable to block TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC temporarily. Requirements for this blocking are:  
• The load current must exceed the set value RevActLim  
• After an URAISE command, the measured busbar voltage shall have a lower value than its previous value  
• The second requirement has to be fulfilled for two consecutive URAISE commands  
If all three requirements are fulfilled, TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC automatic control will be blocked for raise commands for a period of time given by the setting parameter tRevAct and the output signal REVACBLK will be set. The reversed action feature can be turned off/on with the setting parameter OperationRA. |
| CmdErrBk (manually reset)           | Alarm Auto Block          | Typical operating time for a tap changer mechanism is around 3-8 seconds. Therefore, the function should wait for a position change before a new command is issued. The command error signal, CMDERRAL on the TCMYLTC or TCLYLTC function block, will be set if the tap changer position does not change one step in the correct direction within the time given by the setting tTCTimeout in TCMYLTC or TCLYLTC function block. The tap changer module TCMYLTC or TCLYLTC will then indicate the error until a successful command has been carried out or it has been reset by changing control mode of TRIATCC or TR8ATCC function to Manual and then back to Automatic. The outputs CMDERRAL on TCMYLTC or TCLYLTC and TOTBLK or AUTOBLK on TRIATCC or TR8ATCC will be activated depending on the actual parameter setting. This error condition can be reset by the input RESETERR on TCMYLTC function block, or alternatively by changing control mode of TRIATCC or TR8ATCC function to Manual and then back to Automatic. |
| TapChgBk (manually reset)           | Alarm Auto Block          | If the input TCINPROG of TCMYLTC or TCLYLTC function block is connected to the tap changer mechanism, then this blocking condition will be active if the TCINPROG input has not reset when the tTCTimeout timer has timed out. The output TCERRAL will be activated depending on the actual parameter setting. In correct operation the TCINPROG shall appear during the URAISE/ULOWER output pulse and disappear before the tTCTimeout time has elapsed. This error condition can be reset by the input RESETERR on TCMYLTC function block, or alternatively by changing control mode of TRIATCC or TR8ATCC function to Manual and then back to Automatic. |

Table continues on next page
### Setting Parameters for Blocking

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Values (Range)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TapPosBk (automatically</td>
<td>Alarm</td>
<td>This blocking/alarm is activated by either:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reset/manually reset)</td>
<td>Auto Block</td>
<td>1. The tap changer reaching an end position i.e. one of the extreme positions according to the setting parameters LowVoltTap and HighVoltTap. When the tap changer reaches one of these two positions further commands in the corresponding direction will be blocked. Effectively this will then be a partial block if Auto Block or Auto&amp;Man Block is set. The outputs POSERRAL and LOPOSAL or HIPOSAL will be activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auto&amp;Man Block</td>
<td>2. Tap Position Error which in turn can be caused by one of the following conditions:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Tap position is out of range that is, the indicated position is above or below the end positions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The tap changer indicates that it has changed more than one position on a single raise or lower command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The tap position reading shows a BCD code error (unaccepted combination) or a parity fault.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The reading of tap position shows a mA value that is out of the mA-range. Supervision of the input signal for MIM is made by setting the MIM parameters I_Max and I_Min to desired values, for example, I_Max = 20mA and I_Min = 4mA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Very low or negative mA-values.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Indication of hardware fault on BIM or MIM module. Supervision of the input hardware module is provided by connecting the corresponding error signal to the INERR input (input module error) or BIERR on TCMYLTC or TCLYLTC function block.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Interruption of communication with the tap changer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The outputs POSERRAL and AUTOBLK or TOTBLK will be set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This error condition can be reset by the input RESETERR on TCMYLTC function block, or alternatively by changing control mode of TRIATCC or TR8ATCC function to Manual and then back to Automatic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CircCurrBk (automatically</td>
<td>Alarm</td>
<td>When the magnitude of the circulating current exceeds the preset value (setting parameter CircCurrLimit) for longer time than the set time delay (setting parameter tCircCurr) it will cause this blocking condition to be fulfilled provided that the setting parameter OperCCBlock is On. The signal resets automatically when the circulating current decreases below the preset value. Usually this can be achieved by manual control of the tap changers. TRIATCC or TR8ATCC outputs ICIRC and TOTBLK or AUTOBLK will be activated depending on the actual parameter setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reset)</td>
<td>Auto Block</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Auto&amp;Man Block</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFPosDiffBk (manually</td>
<td>Alarm</td>
<td>In the master-follower mode, if the tap difference between a follower and the master is greater than the set value (setting parameter MFPosDiffLim) then this blocking condition is fulfilled and the outputs AUTOFPOS and AUTOBLK (alternatively an alarm) will be set.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reset)</td>
<td>Auto Block</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Setting parameters for blocking that can be set in TRIATCC or TR8ATCC under setting group Nx in PST/local HMI are listed in table 42.
Table 42: Blocking settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Value (Range)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TotalBlock (manually reset)</td>
<td>On/Off</td>
<td>TRIATCC or TR8ATCC function can be totally blocked via the setting parameter TotalBlock, which can be set On/Off from the local HMI or PST. The output TOTBLK will be activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AutoBlock (manually reset)</td>
<td>On/Off</td>
<td>TRIATCC or TR8ATCC function can be blocked for automatic control via the setting parameter AutoBlock, which can be set On/Off from the local HMI or PST. The output AUTOBLK will be set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC blockings that can be made via input signals in the function block are listed in table 43.

Table 43: Blocking via binary inputs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input name</th>
<th>Activation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BLOCK (manually reset)</td>
<td>On/Off (via binary input)</td>
<td>The voltage control function can be totally blocked via the binary input BLOCK on TRIATCC or TR8ATCC function block. The output TOTBLK will be activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAUTOBLK (manually reset)</td>
<td>On/Off (via binary input)</td>
<td>The voltage control function can be blocked for automatic control via the binary input EAUTOBLK on TRIATCC or TR8ATCC function block. The output AUTOBLK will be activated. Deblocking is made via the input DEBLKAUT.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Blockings activated by the operating conditions, without setting or separate external activation possibilities, are listed in table 44.
### Table 44: Blockings without setting possibilities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activation</th>
<th>Type of blocking</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disconnected transformer (automatically reset)</td>
<td>Auto Block</td>
<td>Automatic control is blocked for a transformer when parallel control with the circulating current method is used, and that transformer is disconnected from the LV-busbar. (This is under the condition that the setting OperHoming is selected Off for the disconnected transformer. Otherwise the transformer will get into the state Homing). The binary input signal DISC in TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC function shall be used to supervise if the transformer LV circuit breaker is closed or not. The outputs TRFDISC and AUTOBLK will be activated. Blocking will be removed when the transformer is reconnected (input signal DISC set back to zero).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No Master/More than one Master (automatically reset)</td>
<td>Auto Block</td>
<td>Automatic control is blocked when parallel control with the master-follower method is used, and the master is disconnected from the LV-busbar. Also if there for some reason should be a situation with more than one master in the system, the same blocking will occur. The binary input signal DISC in TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC function shall be used to supervise if the transformer LV circuit breaker is closed or not. The outputs TRFDISC, MFERR and AUTOBLK will be activated. The followers will also be blocked by mutual blocking in this situation. Blocking will be removed when the transformer is reconnected (input signal DISC set back to zero).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One transformer in a parallel group switched to manual control (automatically reset)</td>
<td>Auto Block</td>
<td>When the setting OperationAdapt is “Off”, automatic control will be blocked when parallel control with the master-follower or the circulating current method is used, and one of the transformers in the group is switched from auto to manual. The output AUTOBLK will be activated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication error (COMMERR) (automatic deblocking)</td>
<td>Auto block</td>
<td>If the horizontal communication (GOOSE) for any one of TR8ATCCs in the group fails it will cause blocking of automatic control in all TR8ATCC functions, which belong to that parallel group. This error condition will be reset automatically when the communication is re-established. The outputs COMMERR and AUTOBLK will be set.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Circulating current method**

**Mutual blocking**

When one parallel instance of voltage control TR8ATCC blocks its operation, all other TR8ATCCs working in parallel with that module, shall block their operation as well. To achieve this, the affected TR8ATCC function broadcasts a mutual block to the other group members via the horizontal communication. When mutual block is received from any of the group members, automatic operation is blocked in the receiving TR8ATCCs that is, all units of the parallel group.

The following conditions in any one of TR8ATCCs in the group will cause mutual blocking when the circulating current method is used:

- Over-Current
- Total block via settings
- Total block via configuration
- Analog input error
- Automatic block via settings
- Automatic block via configuration
- Under-Voltage
- Command error
- Position indication error
- Tap changer error
- Reversed Action
- Circulating current
- Communication error

**Master-follower method**

When the master is blocked, the followers will not tap by themselves and there is consequently no need for further mutual blocking. On the other hand, when a follower is blocked there is a need to send a mutual blocking signal to the master. This will prevent a situation where the rest of the group otherwise would be able to tap away from the blocked individual, and that way cause high circulating currents.

Thus, when a follower is blocked, it broadcasts a mutual block on the horizontal communication. The master picks up this message, and blocks its automatic operation as well.

Besides the conditions listed above for mutual blocking with the circulating current method, the following blocking conditions in any of the followers will also cause mutual blocking:

- Master-follower out of position
- Master-follower error (No master/More than one master)

**General**

It should be noted that partial blocking will not cause mutual blocking.

TR8ATCC, which is the “source” of the mutual blocking will set its AUTOBLK output as well as the output which corresponds to the actual blocking condition for example, IBLK for over-current blocking. The other TR8ATCCs that receive a mutual block signal will only set its AUTOBLK output.

The mutual blocking remains until TR8ATCC that dispatched the mutual block signal is de-blocked. Another way to release the mutual blocking is to force TR8ATCC, which caused mutual blocking to Single mode operation. This is done by activating the binary input SNGLMODE on TR8ATCC function block or by setting the parameter OperationPAR to Off from the built-in local HMI or PST.

TR8ATCC function can be forced to single mode at any time. It will then behave exactly the same way as described in section “Automatic voltage control for a single transformer”, except that horizontal communication messages are still sent and received, but the received messages are ignored. TR8ATCC is at the same time also automatically excluded from the parallel group.

Disabling of blockings in special situations

When the Automatic voltage control for tap changer TR1ATCC for single control and TR8ATCC for parallel control, function block is connected to read back information (tap position value and tap changer in progress signal) it may sometimes be difficult to find timing data to be set in TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC for proper operation. Especially at commissioning of for example, older transformers the sensors can be worn and the contacts maybe bouncing etc. Before the right timing data is set it may then happen that TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC becomes totally blocked or blocked in auto mode because of incorrect settings. In this situation, it is recommended to temporarily set these types of blockings to alarm instead until the commissioning of all main items are working as expected.

**Tap Changer position measurement and monitoring**
Tap changer extreme positions
This feature supervises the extreme positions of the tap changer according to the settings LowVoltTap and HighVoltTap. When the tap changer reaches its lowest/highest position, the corresponding ULOWER/URALOWER command is prevented in both automatic and manual mode.

Monitoring of tap changer operation
The Tap changer control and supervision, 6 binary inputs TCMYLTC or 32 binary inputs TclylTcTc output signal URAISE or ULOWER is set high when TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC function has reached a decision to operate the tap changer. These outputs from TCMYLTC and TclylTcTc function blocks shall be connected to a binary output module, BOM in order to give the commands to the tap changer mechanism. The length of the output pulse can be set via TCMYLTC or TclylTcTc setting parameter tPulseDur. When an URAISE/URALOWER command is given, a timer (set by setting tTCTimeout) (settable in PST/local HMI) is also started, and the idea is then that this timer shall have a setting that covers, with some margin, a normal tap changer operation.

Usually the tap changer mechanism can give a signal, “Tap change in progress”, during the time that it is carrying through an operation. This signal from the tap changer mechanism can be connected via a BIM module to TCMYLTC or TclylTcTc input TCINPROG, and it can then be used by TCMYLTC or TclylTcTc function in three ways, which is explained below with the help of figure 185.

Figure 185: Timing of pulses for tap changer operation monitoring

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pos</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>Safety margin to avoid that TCINPROG is not set high without the simultaneous presence of an URAISE or ULOWER command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>Time setting tPulseDur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>Fixed extension 4 sec. of tPulseDur, made internally in TCMYLTC or TclylTcTc function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>Time setting tStable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>New tap position reached, making the signal “tap change in progress” disappear from the tap changer, and a new position reported.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>The new tap position available in TCMYLTC or TclylTcTc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>Fixed extension 2 sec. of TCINPROG, made internally in TCMYLTC or TclylTcTc function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>Safety margin to avoid that TCINPROG extends beyond tTCTimeout.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first use is to reset the Automatic voltage control for tap changer function TR1ATCC for single control and TR8ATCC for parallel control as soon as the signal TCINPROG disappears. If the TCINPROG signal is not fed back from the tap changer mechanism, TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC will not reset until tTCTimeout has timed out. The advantage with monitoring the TCINPROG
signal in this case is thus that resetting of TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC can sometimes be made faster, which in turn makes the system ready for consecutive commands in a shorter time.

The second use is to detect a jammed tap changer. If the timer \( TCTimeout \) times out before the TCINPROG signal is set back to zero, the output signal TCERRAL is set high and TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC function is blocked.

The third use is to check the proper operation of the tap changer mechanism. As soon as the input signal TCINPROG is set back to zero TCMYLTC or TCLYLTC function expects to read a new and correct value for the tap position. If this does not happen the output signal CMDERRAL is set high and TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC function is blocked. The fixed extension (g) 2 sec. of TCINPROG, is made to prevent a situation where this could happen despite no real malfunction.

In figure 185, it can be noted that the fixed extension (c) 4 sec. of \( tPulseDur \), is made to prevent a situation with TCINPROG set high without the simultaneous presence of an URAISE or ULOWER command. If this would happen, TCMYLTC or TCLYLTC would see this as a spontaneous TCINPROG signal without an accompanying URAISE or ULOWER command, and this would then lead to the output signal TCERRAL being set high and TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC function being blocked. Effectively this is then also a supervision of a run-away tap situation.

**Hunting detection**

Hunting detection is provided in order to generate an alarm when the voltage control gives an abnormal number of commands or abnormal sequence of commands within a pre-defined period of time.

There are three hunting functions:

1. The Automatic voltage control for tap changer function, TR1ATCC for single control and TR8ATCC for parallel control will activate the output signal DAYHUNT when the number of tap changer operations exceed the number given by the setting \( \text{DayHuntDetect} \) during the last 24 hours (sliding window). Active as well in manual as in automatic mode.
2. TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC function will activate the output signal HOURHUNT when the number of tap changer operations exceed the number given by the setting \( \text{HourHuntDetect} \) during the last hour (sliding window). Active as well in manual as in automatic mode.
3. TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC function will activate the output signal HUNTING when the total number of contradictory tap changer operations (RAISE, LOWER, RAISE, LOWER, and so on) exceeds the pre-set value given by the setting \( \text{NoOpWindow} \) within the time sliding window specified via the setting parameter \( tWindowHunt \). Only active in automatic mode.

Hunting can be the result of a narrow deadband setting or some other abnormalities in the control system.

**Wearing of the tap changer contacts**

Two counters, ContactLife and NoOfOperations are available within the Tap changer control and supervision function, 6 binary inputs TCMYLTC or 32 binary inputs TCLYLTC. They can be used as a guide for maintenance of the tap changer mechanism. The ContactLife counter represents the remaining number of operations (decremental counter) at rated load.

\[
\text{ContactLife}_{n+1} = \text{ContactLife}_n \times \left( \frac{I_{\text{load}}}{I_{\text{rated}}} \right)^\alpha
\]

(Equation 128)

where \( n \) is the number of operations and \( \alpha \) is an adjustable setting parameter, \( CLFactor \), with default value is set to 2. With this default setting an operation at rated load (current measured on HV-side) decrements the ContactLife counter with 1.
The NoOfOperations counter simply counts the total number of operations (incremental counter).

Both counters are stored in a non-volatile memory as well as, the times and dates of their last reset. These dates are stored automatically when the command to reset the counter is issued. It is therefore necessary to check that the IED internal time is correct before these counters are reset. The counter value can be reset on the local HMI under Main menu/Reset/Reset counters/TransformerTapControl(YLTC,84)/TCMYLTC:1 or TCRYLTC:1/Reset Counter and ResetCLCounter

Both counters and their last reset dates are shown on the local HMI as service values under Main menu/Test/Function status/Control/TransformerTapControl(YLTC,84)/TCMYLTC:x/TCRYLTC:x/CLCNT_VAL and Main menu/Test/Function status/Control/TransformerTapControl(YLTC,84)/TCMYLTC:x/TCRYLTC:x/CNT_VAL

14.5.3 Setting guidelines

14.5.3.1 TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC general settings

Common base IED values for the primary current (I_Base), primary voltage (U_Base) and primary power (S_Base) are set in global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

GlobalBaseSel1: Used to select a GBASVAL function for reference of base values for winding 1 (HV).

GlobalBaseSel2: Used to select a GBASVAL function for reference of base values for winding 2 (LV).

TrfId: The transformer identity is used to identify transformer individuals in a parallel group. Thus, transformers that can be part of the same parallel group must have unique identities. Moreover, all transformers that communicate over the same horizontal communication (GOOSE) must have unique identities.

Xr2: The reactance of the transformer in primary ohms referred to the LV side.

tAutoMSF: Time delay set in a follower for execution of a raise or lower command given from a master. This feature can be used when a parallel group is controlled in the master-follower mode, follow tap, and it is individually set for each follower, which means that different time delays can be used in the different followers in order to avoid simultaneous tapping if this is wanted. It shall be observed that it is not applicable in the follow command mode.

If the Follow Tap mode has been selected, then the tAutoMSF must be set to a higher value than the set value of the tStable timer in TCMYLT/TCLYLT functions.

OperationAdapt: This setting enables or disables adapt mode for parallel control with the circulating current method or the master-follower method.

MFMode: Selection of Follow Command or Follow Tap in the master-follower mode.

CircCurrBk: Selection of action to be taken in case the circulating current exceeds CircCurrLimit.

CmdErrBk: Selection of action to be taken in case the feedback from the tap changer has resulted in command error.

OCBk: Selection of action to be taken in case any of the three phase currents on the HV-side has exceeded Iblock.
MFPosDiffBk: Selection of action to be taken in case the tap difference between a follower and the master is greater than MFPosDiffLim.

OVPartBk: Selection of action to be taken in case the busbar voltage $U_B$ exceeds $U_{max}$.

RevActPartBk: Selection of action to be taken in case Reverse Action has been activated.

TapChgBk: Selection of action to be taken in case a Tap Changer Error has been identified.

TapPosBk: Selection of action to be taken in case of Tap Position Error, or if the tap changer has reached an end position.

UVBk: Selection of action to be taken in case the busbar voltage $U_B$ falls below $U_{block}$.

UVPartBk: Selection of action to be taken in case the busbar voltage $U_B$ is between $U_{block}$ and $U_{min}$.

14.5.3.2 TR1ATCC or TR8ATCC Setting group

General

Operation: Switching automatic voltage control for tap changer, TR1ATCC for single control and TR8ATCC for parallel control function On/Off.

($IB1$): Base current in primary Ampere for the HV-side of the transformer.

($IB2$): Base current in primary Ampere for the LV-side of the transformer.

($UB$): Base voltage in primary kV for the LV-side of the transformer.

MeasMode: Selection of single phase, or phase-phase, or positive sequence quantity to be used for voltage and current measurement on the LV-side. The involved phases are also selected. Thus, single phase as well as phase-phase or three-phase feeding on the LV-side is possible but it is commonly selected for current and voltage.

$Q1$, $Q2$ and $Q3$: Mvar value of a capacitor bank or reactor that is connected between the power transformer and the CT, such that the current of the capacitor bank (reactor) needs to be compensated for in the calculation of circulating currents. There are three independent settings $Q1$, $Q2$ and $Q3$ in order to make possible switching of three steps in a capacitor bank in one bay.

TotalBlock: When this setting is On the voltage control function, TR1ATCC for single control and TR8ATCC for parallel control, is totally blocked for manual as well as automatic control.

AutoBlock: When this setting is On the voltage control function, TR1ATCC for single control and TR8ATCC for parallel control, is blocked for automatic control.

Operation

FSDMode: This setting enables/disables the fast step down function. Enabling can be for automatic and manual control, or for only automatic control alternatively.

tFSD: Time delay to be used for the fast step down tapping.

Voltage

UseCmdUSet: This setting enabled makes it possible to set the target voltage level via IEC 61850 set point command. This, in turn, makes the setting $U_{Set}$ redundant.

$U_{Set}$: Setting value for the target voltage, to be set in percent of $U_{Base}$.
**UDeadband:** Setting value for one half of the outer deadband, to be set in percent of UBase. The deadband is symmetrical around USet, see section "Automatic voltage control for a single transformer", figure 175. In that figure UDeadband is equal to ∆U. The setting is normally selected to a value near the power transformer’s tap changer voltage step (typically 75 - 125% of the tap changer step).

**UDeadbandInner:** Setting value for one half of the inner deadband, to be set in percent of UBase. The inner deadband is symmetrical around USet, see section "Automatic voltage control for a single transformer", figure 175. In that figure UDeadbandInner is equal to ∆U in. The setting shall be smaller than UDeadband. Typically the inner deadband can be set to 25-70% of the UDeadband value.

**Umax:** This setting gives the upper limit of permitted busbar voltage (see section "Automatic voltage control for a single transformer", figure 175). It is set in percent of UBase. If OVPartBk is set to Auto&ManBlock, then busbar voltages above Umax will result in a partial blocking such that only lower commands are permitted.

**Umin:** This setting gives the lower limit of permitted busbar voltage (see section "Automatic voltage control for a single transformer", figure 175). It is set in percent of UBase. If UVPartBk is set to Auto Block or Auto&ManBlock, then busbar voltages below Umin will result in a partial blocking such that only raise commands are permitted.

**Ublock:** Voltages below Ublock normally correspond to a disconnected transformer and therefore it is recommended to block automatic control for this condition (setting UVBk). Ublock is set in percent of UBase.

**Time**

**t1Use:** Selection of time characteristic (definite or inverse) for t1.

**t1:** Time delay for the initial (first) raise/lower command.

**t2Use:** Selection of time characteristic (definite or inverse) for t2.

**t2:** Time delay for consecutive raise/lower commands. In the circulating current method, the second, third, etc. commands are all executed with time delay t2 independently of which transformer in the parallel group that is tapping. In the master-follower method with the follow tap option, the master is executing the second, third, etc. commands with time delay t2. The followers on the other hand read the master’s tap position, and adapt to that with the additional time delay given by the setting tAutoMSF and set individually for each follower.

**tMin:** The minimum operate time when inverse time characteristic is used (see section "Time characteristic", figure 176).

**Line voltage drop compensation (LDC)**

**OperLDC:** Sets the line voltage drop compensation function On/Off.

**OperCapaLDC:** This setting, if set On, will permit the load point voltage to be greater than the busbar voltage when line voltage drop compensation is used. That situation can be caused by a capacitive load. When the line voltage drop compensation function is used for parallel control with the reverse reactance method, then OperCapaLDC must always be set On.

**Rline and Xline:** For line voltage drop compensation, these settings give the line resistance and reactance from the station busbar to the load point. The settings for Rline and Xline are given in primary system ohms. If more than one line is connected to the LV busbar, equivalent Rline and Xline values should be calculated and given as settings.

When the line voltage drop compensation function is used for parallel control with the reverse reactance method, then the compensated voltage which is designated “load point voltage” UL is effectively an increase in voltage up into the transformer. To achieve this voltage increase,
**Xline** must be negative. The sensitivity of the parallel voltage regulation is given by the magnitude of **Rline** and **Xline** settings, with **Rline** being important in order to get a correct control of the busbar voltage. This can be realized in the following way. Figure 177 shows the vector diagram for a transformer controlled in a parallel group with the reverse reactance method and with no circulation (for example, assume two equal transformers on the same tap position). The load current lags the busbar voltage \( U_B \) with the power factor \( \varphi \) and the argument of the impedance **Rline** and **Xline** is designated \( \varphi_1 \).

![Vector Diagram](en06000626.vsd)

**Figure 186: Transformer with reverse reactance regulation and no circulating current**

The voltage \( \Delta U = U_B - U_L = I_T Rline + j I_T Xline \) has the argument \( \varphi_2 \) and it is realised that if \( \varphi_2 \) is slightly less than \(-90^\circ\), then \( U_L \) will have approximately the same length as \( U_B \) regardless of the magnitude of the transformer load current \( I_T \) (indicated with the dashed line). The automatic tap change control regulates the voltage towards a set target value, representing a voltage magnitude, without considering the phase angle. Thus, \( U_B \) as well as \( U_L \) and also the dashed line could all be said to be on the target value.

Assume that we want to achieve that \( \varphi_2 = -90^\circ \), then:

\[
\begin{align*}
\Delta U & = Z \times I \\
\bar{\Delta U} e^{-j90} & = \bar{Z} e^{j\varphi_1} \times e^{j\varphi} = Z I e^{j(\varphi_1 + \varphi)} \\
-90^\circ & = \varphi_1 + \varphi \\
\varphi_1 & = -\varphi - 90^\circ \\
\end{align*}
\]

(Equation 129)

If for example \( \cos \varphi = 0.8 \) then \( \varphi = \arccos 0.8 = 37^\circ \). With the references in figure 186, \( \varphi \) will be negative (inductive load) and we get:

\[
\varphi_1 = -(-37^\circ) - 90^\circ = -53^\circ
\]

(Equation 130)
To achieve a more correct regulation, an adjustment to a value of \( \varphi_2 \) slightly less than \(-90^\circ\) (2 – 4° less) can be made.

The effect of changing power factor of the load will be that \( \varphi_2 \) will no longer be close to \(-90^\circ\) resulting in \( U_L \) being smaller or greater than \( U_B \) if the ratio \( R_{line}/X_{line} \) is not adjusted.

Figure 187 shows an example of this where the settings of \( R_{line} \) and \( X_{line} \) for \( \varphi = 11^\circ \) from figure 186 has been applied with a different value of \( \varphi \) (\( \varphi = 30^\circ \)).

As can be seen in figure 187, the change of power factor has resulted in an increase of \( \varphi_2 \) which in turn causes the magnitude of \( U_L \) to be greater than \( U_B \). It can also be noted that an increase in the load current aggravates the situation, as does also an increase in the setting of \( Z_{line} \) (\( R_{line} \) and \( X_{line} \)).

Apparently the ratio \( R_{line}/X_{line} \) according to equation 130, that is the value of \( \varphi_1 \) must be set with respect to the power factor, also meaning that the reverse reactance method should not be applied to systems with varying power factor.

The setting of \( X_{line} \) gives the sensitivity of the parallel regulation. If \( X_{line} \) is set too low, the transformers will not pull together and a run away tap situation will occur. On the other hand, a high setting will keep the transformers strongly together with no, or only a small difference in tap position, but the voltage regulation as such will be more sensitive to a deviation from the anticipated power factor. A too high setting of \( X_{line} \) can cause a hunting situation as the transformers will then be prone to over react on deviations from the target value.

There is no rule for the setting of \( X_{line} \) such that an optimal balance between control response and susceptibility to changing power factor is achieved. One way of determining the setting is by trial and error. This can be done by setting e.g. \( X_{line} \) equal to half of the transformer reactance, and then observe how the parallel control behaves during a couple of days, and then tune it as required. It shall be emphasized that a quick response of the regulation that quickly pulls the transformer tap changers into equal positions, which pass the transformer reactance, not necessarily corresponds to the optimal setting. This kind of response is easily achieved by setting a high \( X_{line} \) value, as was discussed above, and the disadvantage is then a high susceptibility to changing power factor.

A combination of line voltage drop compensation and parallel control with the negative reactance method is possible to do simply by adding the required \( R_{line} \) values and the required \( X_{line} \) values separately to get the combined impedance. However, the line drop impedance has
a tendency to drive the tap changers apart, which means that the reverse reactance impedance normally needs to be increased.

**Load voltage adjustment (LVA)**

- **LVAConst1**: Setting of the first load voltage adjustment value. This adjustment of the target value $U_{Set}$ is given in percent of $U_{Base}$.

- **LVAConst2**: Setting of the second load voltage adjustment value. This adjustment of the target value $U_{Set}$ is given in percent of $U_{Base}$.

- **LVAConst3**: Setting of the third load voltage adjustment value. This adjustment of the target value $U_{Set}$ is given in percent of $U_{Base}$.

- **LVAConst4**: Setting of the fourth load voltage adjustment value. This adjustment of the target value $U_{Set}$ is given in percent of $U_{Base}$.

- **VRAuto**: Setting of the automatic load voltage adjustment. This adjustment of the target value $U_{Set}$ is given in percent of $U_{Base}$, and it is proportional to the load current with the set value reached at the nominal current $i_{2Base}$.

**RevAct**

- **OperationRA**: This setting enables/disables the reverse action partial blocking function.

- **tRevAct**: After the reverse action has picked up, this time setting gives the time during which the partial blocking is active.

- **RevActLim**: Current threshold for the reverse action activation. This is just one of two criteria for activation of the reverse action partial blocking.

**Tap changer control (TCCtrl)**

- **Iblock**: Current setting of the over current blocking function. In case, the transformer is carrying a current exceeding the rated current of the tap changer for example, because of an external fault. The tap changer operations shall be temporarily blocked. This function typically monitors the three phase currents on the HV side of the transformer.

- **DayHuntDetect**: Setting of the number of tap changer operations required during the last 24 hours (sliding window) to activate the signal DAYHUNT

- **HourHuntDetect**: Setting of the number of tap changer operations required during the last hour (sliding window) to activate the signal HOURHUNT

- **tWindowHunt**: Setting of the time window for the window hunting function. This function is activated when the number of contradictory commands to the tap changer exceeds the specified number given by $NoOpWindow$ within the time $t_{WindowHunt}$.

- **NoOpWindow**: Setting of the number of contradictory tap changer operations (RAISE, LOWER, RAISE, LOWER etc.) required during the time window $t_{WindowHunt}$ to activate the signal HUNTING.

**Power**

- **$P$**: When the active power exceeds the value given by this setting, the output PGTFWD will be activated after the time delay $t_{Power}$. It shall be noticed that the setting is given with sign, which effectively means that a negative value of $P$ means an active power greater than a value in the reverse direction. This is shown in figure 188 where a negative value of $P$ means pickup for all values to the right of the setting. Reference is made to figure 183 for definition of forward and reverse direction of power through the transformer.
Figure 188: Setting of a negative value for $P>$

$P<$: When the active power falls below the value given by this setting, the output PLTREV will be activated after the time delay $tPower$. It shall be noticed that the setting is given with sign, which effectively means that, for example a positive value of $P<$ means an active power less than a value in the forward direction. This is shown in figure 189 where a positive value of $P<$ means pickup for all values to the left of the setting. Reference is made to figure 183 for definition of forward and reverse direction of power through the transformer.

Figure 189: Setting of a positive value for $P<$

$Q>$: When the reactive power exceeds the value given by this setting, the output QGTFWD will be activated after the time delay $tPower$. It shall be noticed that the setting is given with sign, which effectively means that the function picks up for all values of reactive power greater than the set value, similar to the functionality for $P>$.

$Q<$: When the reactive power falls below the value given by this setting, the output QLTREV will be activated after the time delay $tPower$. It shall be noticed that the setting is given with sign, which effectively means that the function picks up for all values of reactive power less than the set value, similar to the functionality for $P<$.

$tPower$: Time delay for activation of the power monitoring output signals (PGTFWD, PLTREV, QGTFWD and QLTREV).

**Parallel control (ParCtrl)**

*OperationPAR*: Setting of the method for parallel operation.

*OperCCBlock*: This setting enables/disables blocking if the circulating current exceeds $CircCurrLimit$.

*CircCurrLimit*: Pick up value for the circulating current blocking function. The setting is made in percent of $I2Base$.

$tCircCurr$: Time delay for the circulating current blocking function.

*Comp*: When parallel operation with the circulating current method is used, this setting increases or decreases the influence of the circulating current on the regulation.

If the transformers are connected to the same bus on the HV- as well as the LV-side, *Comp* can be calculated with the following formula which is valid for any number of two-winding transformers in parallel, irrespective if the transformers are of different size and short circuit impedance.
Comp = a × \frac{2 \times \Delta U}{n \times p} \times 100\%

(Equation 131)

where:

- $\Delta U$ is the deadband setting in percent.
- $n$ denotes the desired number of difference in tap position between the transformers, that shall give a voltage deviation $U_{di}$ which corresponds to the dead-band setting.
- $p$ is the tap step (in percent of transformer nominal voltage).
- $a$ is a safety margin that shall cover component tolerances and other non-linear measurements at different tap positions (for example, transformer reactances changes from rated value at the ends of the regulation range). In most cases a value of $a = 1.25$ serves well.

This calculation gives a setting of $Comp$ that will always initiate an action (start timer) when the transformers have $n$ tap positions difference.

**OperSimTap:** Enabling/disabling the functionality to allow only one transformer at a time to execute a Lower/Raise command. This setting is applicable only to the circulating current method, and when enabled, consecutive tap changes of the next transformer (if required) will be separated with the time delay $t2$.

**OperUsetPar:** Enables/disables the use of a common setting for the target voltage $U_{Set}$. The common setting for target voltage is mainly used for the circulating current method, but can also be applied to the master follower method. When enabled, a mean value of the $U_{Set}$ values for the transformers in the same parallel group will be calculated and used.

**OperHoming:** Enables/disables the homing function. Applicable for parallel control with the circulating current method, as well for parallel control with the master-follower method.

**VTmismatch:** Setting of the level for activation of the output VTALARM in case the voltage measurement in one transformer bay deviates to the mean value of all voltage measurements in the parallel group.

**tVTmismatch:** Time delay for activation of the output VTALARM.

**T1RXOP......T8RXOP:** This setting is set On for every transformer that can participate in a parallel group with the transformer in case. For this transformer (own transformer), the setting must always be Off.

**TapPosOffs:** This setting gives the tap position offset in relation to the master so that the follower can follow the master’s tap position including this offset. Applicable when regulating in the follow tap command mode.

**MFPosDiffLim:** When the difference (including a possible offset according to TapPosOffs) between a follower and the master reaches the value in this setting, then the output OUTOFPOS in the Automatic voltage control for tap changer, parallel control TR8ATCC function block of the follower will be activated after the time delay $tMFPosDiff$.

**tMFPosDiff:** Time delay for activation of the output OUTOFPOS.
14.5.3.3 TCMYLTC and TCLYLTC general settings

Common base IED values for the primary current (\(I_{\text{Base}}\)), primary voltage (\(U_{\text{Base}}\)) and primary power (\(S_{\text{Base}}\)) are set in global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

\textit{GlobalBaseSel}: Selects the global base value group used by the function to define \(I_{\text{Base}}, U_{\text{Base}}\) and \(S_{\text{Base}}\). Note that this function will only use \(I_{\text{Base}}\) value.

\textit{LowVoltTap}: This gives the tap position for the lowest LV-voltage.

\textit{HighVoltTap}: This gives the tap position for the highest LV-voltage.

\(m_{\text{ALow}}\): The mA value that corresponds to the lowest tap position. Applicable when reading of the tap position is made via a mA signal.

\(m_{\text{AHigh}}\): The mA value that corresponds to the highest tap position. Applicable when reading of the tap position is made via a mA signal.

\textit{CodeType}: This setting gives the method of tap position reading.

\textit{UseParity}: Sets the parity check On/Off for tap position reading when this is made by Binary, BCD, or Gray code.

\textit{tStable}: This is the time that needs to elapse after a new tap position has been reported to TCMYLTC until it is accepted.

\textit{CLFactor}: This is the factor designated “a” in equation 131. When a tap changer operates at nominal load current (current measured on the HV-side), the ContactLife counter decrements with 1, irrespective of the setting of \(CLFactor\). The setting of this factor gives the weighting of the deviation with respect to the load current.

\textit{InitCLCounter}: The ContactLife counter monitors the remaining number of operations (decremental counter). The setting \(InitCLCounter\) then gives the start value for the counter that is, the total number of operations at rated load that the tap changer is designed for.

\textit{EnabTapCmd}: This setting enables/disables the lower and raise commands to the tap changer. It shall be \textit{On} for voltage control, and \textit{Off} for tap position feedback to the transformer differential protection T2WPDIFF or T3WPDIFF.

**TCMYLTC and TCLYLTC Setting group**

**General**

\textit{Operation}: Switching the TCMYLTC or TCLYLTC function \textit{On}/\textit{Off}.

\(I_{\text{Base}}\): Base current in primary Ampere for the HV-side of the transformer.

\textit{tTCTimeout}: This setting gives the maximum time interval for a raise or lower command to be completed.

\textit{tPulseDur}: Length of the command pulse (URaise/ULower) to the tap changer. It shall be noticed that this pulse has a fixed extension of 4 seconds that adds to the setting value of \(tPulseDur\).

14.6 Logic rotating switch for function selection and LHMI presentation SLGAPC
14.6.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logic rotating switch for function selection and LHMI presentation</td>
<td>SLGAPC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.6.2 Application

The logic rotating switch for function selection and LHMI presentation function (SLGAPC) (or the selector switch function block, as it is also known) is used to get a selector switch functionality similar with the one provided by a hardware multi-position selector switch. Hardware selector switches are used extensively by utilities, in order to have different functions operating on pre-set values. Hardware switches are however sources for maintenance issues, lower system reliability and extended purchase portfolio. The virtual selector switches eliminate all these problems.

SLGAPC function block has two operating inputs (UP and DOWN), one blocking input (BLOCK) and one operator position input (PSTO).

SLGAPC can be activated both from the local HMI and from external sources (switches) via the IED binary inputs. It also allows the operation from remote (like the station computer). SWPOSN is an integer value output, giving the actual output number. Since the number of positions of the switch can be established by settings (see below), one must be careful in coordinating the settings with the configuration (if one sets the number of positions to x in settings – for example, there will be only the first x outputs available from the block in the configuration). Also the frequency of the (UP or DOWN) pulses should be lower than the setting tPulse.

From the local HMI, the selector switch can be operated from Single-line diagram (SLD).

14.6.3 Setting guidelines

The following settings are available for the Logic rotating switch for function selection and LHMI presentation (SLGAPC) function:

- **Operation**: Sets the operation of the function *On* or *Off*.
- **NrPos**: Sets the number of positions in the switch (max. 32).
- **OutType**: *Steady* or *Pulsed*.
- **tPulse**: In case of a pulsed output, it gives the length of the pulse (in seconds).
- **tDelay**: The delay between the UP or DOWN activation signal positive front and the output activation.
- **StopAtExtremes**: Sets the behavior of the switch at the end positions – if set to *Disabled*, when pressing UP while on first position, the switch will jump to the last position; when pressing DOWN at the last position, the switch will jump to the first position; when set to *Enabled*, no jump will be allowed.

14.7 Selector mini switch VSGAPC
14.7.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Selector mini switch</td>
<td>VSGAPC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.7.2 Application

Selector mini switch (VSGAPC) function is a multipurpose function used in the configuration tool in PCM600 for a variety of applications, as a general purpose switch. VSGAPC can be used for both acquiring an external switch position (through the IPOS1 and the IPOS2 inputs) and represent it through the single line diagram symbols (or use it in the configuration through the outputs POS1 and POS2) as well as, a command function (controlled by the PSTO input), giving switching commands through the CMDPOS12 and CMDPOS21 outputs.

The output POSITION is an integer output, showing the actual position as an integer number 0 – 3, where 0 = MidPos, 1 = Open, 2 = Closed and 3 = Error.

An example where VSGAPC is configured to switch Autorecloser on–off from a button symbol on the local HMI is shown in figure 190. The I and O buttons on the local HMI are normally used for on–off operations of the circuit breaker.

![Control of Autorecloser from local HMI through Selector mini switch](IEC07000112-3-en.vsd)

**Figure 190:** Control of Autorecloser from local HMI through Selector mini switch

VSGAPC is also provided with IEC 61850 communication so it can be controlled from SA system as well.

14.7.3 Setting guidelines

Selector mini switch (VSGAPC) function can generate pulsed or steady commands (by setting the Mode parameter). When pulsed commands are generated, the length of the pulse can be set using the tPulse parameter. Also, being accessible on the single line diagram (SLD), this function block has two control modes (settable through CtlModel): Dir Norm and SBO Enh.

14.8 Generic communication function for Double Point indication DPGAPC
14.8.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Generic communication function for Double Point indication</td>
<td>DPGAPC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.8.2 Application

Generic communication function for Double Point indication (DPGAPC) function block is used to send double point position indication to other systems, equipment or functions in the substation through IEC 61850-8-1 or other communication protocols. It is especially intended to be used in the interlocking station-wide logics. To be able to get the signals into other systems, equipment or functions, one must use other tools, described in the Engineering manual, and define which function block in which systems, equipment or functions should receive this information.

More specifically, DPGAPC function reports a combined double point position indication output POSITION, by evaluating the value and the timestamp attributes of the inputs OPEN and CLOSE, together with the logical input signal VALID.

When the input signal VALID is active, the values of the OPEN and CLOSE inputs determine the two-bit integer value of the output POSITION. The timestamp of the output POSITION will have the latest updated timestamp of the inputs OPEN and CLOSE.

When the input signal VALID is inactive, DPGAPC function forces the position to intermediated state.

When the value of the input signal VALID changes, the timestamp of the output POSITION will be updated as the time when DPGAPC function detects the change.

Refer to Table 45 for the description of the input-output relationship in terms of the value and the quality attributes.

Table 45: Description of the input-output relationship

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VALID</th>
<th>OPEN</th>
<th>CLOSE</th>
<th>POSITION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.8.3 Setting guidelines

The function does not have any parameters available in the local HMI or PCM600.

14.9 Single point generic control 8 signals SPC8GAPC
### 14.9.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Single point generic control 8 signals</td>
<td>SPC8GAPC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 14.9.2 Application

The Single point generic control 8 signals (SPC8GAPC) function block is a collection of 8 single point commands that can be used for direct commands for example reset of LED’s or putting IED in “ChangeLock” state from remote. In this way, simple commands can be sent directly to the IED outputs, without confirmation. Confirmation (status) of the result of the commands is supposed to be achieved by other means, such as binary inputs and SPGAPC function blocks.

PSTO is the universal operator place selector for all control functions. Even if PSTO can be configured to allow LOCAL or ALL operator positions, the only functional position usable with the SPC8GAPC function block is REMOTE.

### 14.9.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for the single point generic control 8 signals (SPC8GAPC) function are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

**Operation:** turning the function operation On/Off.

There are two settings for every command output (totally 8):

- **PulseModex:** decides if the command signal for output x is **Latched** (steady) or **Pulsed**.
- **tPulsex:** if **PulseModex** is set to **Pulsed**, then **tPulsex** will set the length of the pulse (in seconds).

### 14.10 AutomationBits, command function for DNP3.0 AUTOBITS

#### 14.10.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AutomationBits, command function for DNP3</td>
<td>AUTOBITS</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 14.10.2 Application

Automation bits, command function for DNP3 (AUTOBITS) is used within PCM600 in order to get into the configuration the commands coming through the DNP3.0 protocol. The AUTOBITS function plays the same role as functions GOOSEBINRCV (for IEC 61850) and MULTICMDRCV.
AUTOBITS function block have 32 individual outputs which each can be mapped as a Binary Output point in DNP3. The output is operated by a "Object 12" in DNP3. This object contains parameters for control-code, count, on-time and off-time. To operate an AUTOBITS output point, send a control-code of latch-On, latch-Off, pulse-On, pulse-Off, Trip or Close. The remaining parameters are regarded as appropriate. For example, pulse-On, on-time=100, off-time=300, count=5 would give 5 positive 100 ms pulses, 300 ms apart.

For description of the DNP3 protocol implementation, refer to the Communication manual.

14.10.3 Setting guidelines

AUTOBITS function block has one setting, (Operation: On/Off) enabling or disabling the function. These names will be seen in the DNP3 communication management tool in PCM600.

14.11 Single command, 16 signals SINGLECMD

14.11.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Single command, 16 signals</td>
<td>SINGLECMD</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.11.2 Application

Single command, 16 signals (SINGLECMD) is a common function and always included in the IED.

The IEDs may be provided with a function to receive commands either from a substation automation system or from the local HMI. That receiving function block has outputs that can be used, for example, to control high voltage apparatuses in switchyards. For local control functions, the local HMI can also be used. Together with the configuration logic circuits, the user can govern pulses or steady output signals for control purposes within the IED or via binary outputs.

Figure 191 shows an application example of how the user can connect SINGLECMD via configuration logic circuit to control a high-voltage apparatus. This type of command control is normally carried out by sending a pulse to the binary outputs of the IED. Figure 191 shows a close operation. An open breaker operation is performed in a similar way but without the synchro-check condition.
Single command function

Configuration logic circuits

Close CB1

&

User-defined conditions
Synchro-check

Figure 191: Application example showing a logic diagram for control of a circuit breaker via configuration logic circuits

Figure 192 and figure 193 show other ways to control functions, which require steady On/Off signals. Here, the output is used to control built-in functions or external devices.

Figure 192: Application example showing a logic diagram for control of built-in functions
14.11.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for Single command, 16 signals (SINGLECMD) are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

Parameters to be set are MODE, common for the whole block, and CMDOUTy which includes the user defined name for each output signal. The MODE input sets the outputs to be one of the types Off, Steady, or Pulse.

- Off, sets all outputs to 0, independent of the values sent from the station level, that is, the operator station or remote-control gateway.
- Steady, sets the outputs to a steady signal 0 or 1, depending on the values sent from the station level.
- Pulse, gives a pulse with 100 ms duration, if a value sent from the station level is changed from 0 to 1. That means the configured logic connected to the command function block may not have a cycle time longer than the cycle time for the command function block.
Section 15    Scheme communication

15.1    Scheme communication logic for distance or overcurrent protection ZCPSCH

15.1.1    Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scheme communication logic for distance or overcurrent protection</td>
<td>ZCPSCH</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.1.2    Application

To achieve fast fault clearing for a fault on the part of the line not covered by the instantaneous zone 1, the stepped distance protection function can be supported with logic that uses a communication channel.

One communication channel in each direction, which can transmit an on/off signal is required. The performance and security of this function is directly related to the transmission channel speed and security against false or lost signals. Communication speed, or minimum time delay, is always of utmost importance because the purpose for using communication is to improve the tripping speed of the scheme.

To avoid false signals that could cause false tripping, it is necessary to pay attention to the security of the communication channel. At the same time it is important to pay attention to the communication channel dependability to ensure that proper signals are communicated during power system faults, the time during which the protection schemes must perform their tasks flawlessly.

The logic supports the following communications schemes:

- blocking schemes (blocking and delta blocking)
- permissive schemes (overreaching and underreaching)
- unblocking scheme and direct intertrip

A permissive scheme is inherently faster and has better security against false tripping than a blocking scheme. On the other hand, a permissive scheme depend on a received CR signal for a fast trip, so its dependability is lower than that of a blocking scheme.

15.1.2.1    Blocking schemes

In a blocking scheme a reverse looking zone is used to send a block signal to the remote end to block an overreaching zone.

Since the scheme is sending the blocking signal during conditions where the protected line is healthy, it is common to use the line itself as communication media (PLC). The scheme can be used on all line lengths.
The blocking scheme is very dependable because it will operate for faults anywhere on the protected line if the communication channel is out of service. On the other hand, it is less secure than permissive schemes because it will trip for external faults within the reach of the tripping function if the communication channel is out of service.

Inadequate speed or dependability can cause spurious tripping for external faults. Inadequate security can cause delayed tripping for internal faults.

To secure that the send signal will arrive before the zone used in the communication scheme will trip, the trip is released first after the time delay $t_{Coord}$ has elapsed. The setting of $t_{Coord}$ must be set longer than the maximal transmission time of the channel. A security margin of at least 10 ms should be considered.

The timer $t_{SendMin}$ for prolonging the send signal is proposed to set to zero.

\[ Z_{revA} \rightarrow CS_A \]
\[ TRIP_B = OR_B + t_{Coord} + CR \]

**Figure 194: Principle of blocking scheme**

**15.1.2.2 Delta blocking scheme**

In the delta blocking scheme a fault inception detection element using delta based quantities of voltage and current will send a block signal to the remote end to block an overreaching zone.

The delta based start is very fast and if the transmission channel is fast then there is no need for delaying the operation of remote distance element. If the fault is in forward direction, the sending is inhibited by a forward directed distance (or directional current or directional earth fault) element.

Since the scheme is sending the blocking signal during conditions where the protected line is healthy, it is common to use the line itself as communication media (PLC). The scheme can be used on all line lengths.

The blocking scheme is very dependable because it will operate for faults anywhere on the protected line if the communication channel is out of service. Conversely, it is less secure than permissive schemes because it will trip for external faults within the reach of the tripping function if the communication channel is out of service.
Inadequate speed or dependability can cause spurious tripping for external faults. Inadequate security can cause delayed tripping for internal faults.

Since the blocking signal is initiated by the delta based detection which is very fast the time delay $t_{Coord}$ can be set to zero seconds, except in cases where the transmission channel is slow.

The timer $t_{SendMin}$ for prolonging the send signal is proposed to set to zero.

$$\text{DeltaBasedDetection (deltaA)}$$

$$\begin{align*}
\text{OR}_B & = \text{deltaA} + t_{Coord} + \text{CR} \\
\text{deltaA} \rightarrow \text{CS} & = \text{TRIP}_B
\end{align*}$$

**Figure 195: Principle of delta blocking scheme**

- **OR:** Overreaching
- **CR:** Communication signal received
- **CS:** Communication signal send
- **deltaA:** Delta based fault inception detection on A side that gets inhibited for forward faults

### 15.1.2.3 Permissive schemes

In permissive schemes, the permission to trip is sent from the local end to the remote end(s), when the protection at the local end has detected a fault on the protected object. The received signal(s) is combined with an overreaching zone and gives an instantaneous trip if the received signal is present during the time the chosen zone has detected a fault.

Either end may send a permissive (or command) signal to trip to the other end(s), and the teleprotection equipment needs to be able to receive while transmitting.

A general requirement on permissive schemes is that it shall be fast and secure.

If the sending signal(s) is issued by underreaching or overreaching zone, it is divided into a permissive underreach or permissive overreach scheme.

**Permissive underreaching scheme**

Permissive underreaching scheme is not suitable to use on short line length due to difficulties for distance protection measurement in general to distinguish between internal and external faults in those applications.

The underreaching zones at the local and remote end(s) must overlap in reach to prevent a gap between the protection zones where faults would not be detected. If the underreaching zone do not meet the required sensitivity due to for instance fault infeed from the remote end, a blocking or permissive overreaching scheme should be considered.

The received signal (CR) must be received when the overreaching zone is activated to achieve an instantaneous trip. In some cases, due to the fault current distribution, the overreaching zone can operate only after the fault has been cleared at the terminal nearest to the fault.
There is a certain risk that in case of a trip from an independent tripping zone, the zone issuing the send signal (CS) resets before the overreaching zone has started at the remote terminal. To assure a sufficient duration of the received signal (CR), the send signal (CS) can be prolonged by a $t_{SendMin}$ reset timer. The recommended setting of $t_{SendMin}$ is 100 ms.

Since the received communication signal is combined with the output from an overreaching zone, there is less concern about a false signal causing an incorrect trip. Therefore set the timer $t_{Coord}$ to zero.

Failure of the communication channel does not affect the selectivity, but delays tripping at one end(s) for certain fault locations.

\[ \text{UR}_A \quad \text{OR}_A \]
\[ \text{UR}_B \quad \text{CS}_A \]
\[ \text{UR}_B \quad \text{CS}_B \]

TRIP: UR or OR+CR

**Figure 196: Principle of Permissive underreaching scheme**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>UR</th>
<th>OR</th>
<th>CR</th>
<th>CS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Underreaching</td>
<td>Overreaching</td>
<td>Communication signal received</td>
<td>Communication signal send</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Permissive overreaching scheme**

In a permissive overreaching scheme there is an overreaching zone that issues the send signal. At the remote end the received signal together with the start of an overreaching zone will give an instantaneous trip. The scheme can be used for all line lengths.

In permissive overreaching schemes, the communication channel plays an essential roll to obtain fast tripping at both ends. Failure of the communication channel may affect the selectivity and delay the tripping at one end at least, for faults anywhere along the protected circuit.

Teleprotection, operating in permissive overreaching scheme, must consider besides the general requirement of fast and secure operation also consider requirement on the dependability. Inadequate security can cause unwanted tripping for external faults. Inadequate speed or dependability can cause delayed tripping for internal faults or even unwanted operations.

This scheme may use virtually any communication media that is not adversely affected by electrical interference from fault generated noise or by electrical phenomena, such as lightning. Communication media that uses metallic paths are particularly subjected to this type of interference, therefore they must be properly shielded or otherwise designed to provide an adequate communication signal during power system faults.
The send signal (CS) might be issued in parallel both from an overreaching zone and an underreaching, independent tripping zone. The CS signal from the overreaching zone must not be prolonged while the CS signal from zone 1 can be prolonged.

To secure correct operations of current reversal logic in case of parallel lines the send signal CS shall not be prolonged. Set the $t_{SendMin}$ to zero in this case.

There is no need to delay the trip at receipt of the signal, so set the timer $t_{Coord}$ to zero.

![Diagram](IEC09000014-1-en.vsd)

Figure 197: Principle of Permissive overreaching scheme

- OR: Overreaching
- CR: Communication signal received
- CS: Communication signal send
- T2: Timer step 2

Unblocking scheme

Metallic communication paths adversely affected by fault generated noise may not be suitable for conventional permissive schemes that rely on a signal transmitted during a protected line fault. With power line carrier for example, the communication signal may be attenuated by the fault, especially when the fault is close to the line end, thereby disabling the communication channel.

To overcome the lower dependability in permissive schemes, an unblocking function can be used. Use this function at older, less reliable, power-line carrier (PLC) communication, where the signal has to be sent through the primary fault. The unblocking function uses a guard signal CRG, which must always be present, even when no CR signal is received. The absence of the CRG signal during the security time is used as a CR signal. This also enables a permissive scheme to operate when the line fault blocks the signal transmission. Set the $t_{Security}$ to 35 ms.

15.1.2.4 Intertrip scheme

In some power system applications, there is a need to trip the remote end breaker immediately from local protections. This applies for instance when transformers or reactors are connected to the system without circuit-breakers or for remote tripping following operation of breaker failure protection.

In an intertrip scheme, the send signal is initiated by an underreaching zone or from an external protection (transformer or reactor protection). At the remote end, the received signals initiate a trip without any further protection criteria. To limit the risk for an unwanted trip due to the spurious sending of signals, the timer $t_{Coord}$ should be set to 10-30 ms dependant on the type of communication channel.
The general requirement for teleprotection equipment operating in intertripping applications is that it should be very secure and very dependable, since both inadequate security and dependability may cause unwanted operation. In some applications the equipment shall be able to receive while transmitting, and commands may be transmitted over longer time period than for other teleprotection systems.

15.1.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for the scheme communication logic function are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

Configure the zones used for the CS send and for scheme communication tripping by using the ACT configuration tool.

The recommended settings of $t_{Coord}$ timer are based on maximal recommended transmission time for analogue channels according to IEC 60834-1. It is recommended to coordinate the proposed settings with actual performance for the teleprotection equipment to get optimized settings.

15.1.3.1 Blocking scheme

| Set Operation | = On |
| Set SchemeType | = Blocking |
| Set $t_{Coord}$ | = 25 ms (10 ms + maximal transmission time) |
| Set $t_{SendMin}$ | = 0 s |
| Set Unblock | = Off (Set to NoRestart if Unblocking scheme with no alarm for loss of guard is to be used. Set to Restart if Unblocking scheme with alarm for loss of guard is to be used) |
| Set $t_{Security}$ | = 0.035 s |

15.1.3.2 Delta blocking scheme

| Set Operation | = On |
| Set SchemeType | = DeltaBlocking |
| Set $t_{Coord}$ | = 0 s |
| Set $t_{SendMin}$ | = 0 s |
| Set Unblock | = Off (Set to NoRestart if Unblocking scheme with no alarm for loss of guard is to be used. Set to Restart if Unblocking scheme with alarm for loss of guard is to be used) |
| Set $t_{Security}$ | = 0.035 s |
| Set DeltaI | = 10 %IB |
| Set DeltaU | = 5 %UB |
| Set Delta3I0 | = 10 %IB |
| Set Delta3U0 | = 5 %UB |
15.1.3.3 Permissive underreaching scheme

Set Operation = On
Set SchemeType = Permissive UR
Set tCoord = 0 ms
Set tSendMin = 0.1 s
Set Unblock = Off
Set tSecurity = 0.035 s

15.1.3.4 Permissive overreaching scheme

Set Operation = On
Set SchemeType = Permissive OR
Set tCoord = 0 ms
Set tSendMin = 0.1 s (0 s in parallel line applications)
Set Unblock = Off
Set tSecurity = 0.035 s

15.1.3.5 Unblocking scheme

Set Unblock = Restart
(Loss of guard signal will give both trip and alarm
Choose NoRestart if only trip is required)
Set tSecurity = 0.035 s

15.1.3.6 Intertrip scheme

Set Operation = On
Set SchemeType = Intertrip
Set tCoord = 50 ms (10 ms + maximal transmission time)
Set tSendMin = 0.1 s (0 s in parallel line applications)
Set Unblock = Off
Set tSecurity = 0.015 s

15.2 Current reversal and Weak-end infeed logic for distance protection 3-phase ZCRWPSCH

15.2.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60867 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current reversal and weak-end infeed logic for distance protection 3-phase</td>
<td>ZCRWPSCH</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.2.2 Application

15.2.2.1 Current reversal logic

To avoid this kind of disturbances, a fault current reversal logic (transient blocking logic) can be used.

The unwanted operations that might occur can be explained by looking into Figure 198 and Figure 199. Initially the protection A2 at A side will detect a fault in forward direction and send a communication signal to the protection B2 at remote end, which is measuring a fault in reverse direction.

Figure 198: Current distribution for a fault close to B side when all breakers are closed

When the breaker B1 opens for clearing the fault, the fault current through B2 bay will invert. If the communication signal has not reset at the same time as the distance protection function used in the teleprotection scheme has switched on to forward direction, we will have an unwanted operation of breaker B2 at B side.

Figure 199: Current distribution for a fault close to B side when breaker B1 has opened

To handle this the send signal CS or CSLn from B2 is held back until the reverse zone IRVLn has reset and the tDelayRev time has been elapsed. To achieve this the reverse zone on the distance protection shall be connected to input IRV and the output IRVL shall be connected to input BLKCS on the communication function block ZCPSCH.

The function can be blocked by activating the input IRVBLK or the general BLOCK input.

15.2.2.2 Weak-end infeed logic

Permissive communication schemes can only operate when the protection in the remote IED can detect the fault. The detection requires a sufficient minimum fault current, normally >20% of In. The fault current can be too low due to an open breaker or low short-circuit power of the source. To overcome these conditions, weak-end infeed (WEI) echo logic is used. The fault current can also be initially too low due to the fault current distribution. Here, the fault current increases when the breaker opens at the strong terminal, and a sequential tripping is achieved. This requires a detection of the fault by an independent tripping zone 1. To avoid sequential tripping as described, and when zone 1 is not available, weak-end infeed tripping logic is used. The weak end infeed function only works together with permissive overreach communication schemes as the carrier send signal must cover the complete line length.
The WEI function sends back (echoes) the received signal under the condition that no fault has been detected on the weak-end by different fault detection elements (distance protection in forward and reverse direction).

Also, the WEI function can be additionally extended to trip the breaker in the weak side. The trip is achieved when one or more phase voltages are low during an echo function.

In case of single-pole tripping, the phase voltages are used as phase selectors together with the received signal CRLn.

When used with the blocking teleprotection scheme some limitations apply:

- Only the trip part of the function can be used together with the blocking scheme. It is not possible to use the echo function to send the echo signal to the remote line IED. The echo signal would block the operation of the distance protection at the remote line end and in this way prevents the correct operation of a complete protection scheme.
- A separate direct intertrip channel must be arranged from the remote end when a trip or accelerated trip is given there. The intertrip receive signal is connect to input CRL.
- The WEI function shall be set to WEI=Echo&Trip. The WEI function block will then give phase selection and trip the local breaker.

Avoid using WEI function at both line ends. It shall only be activated at the weak-end.

15.2.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for the current reversal logic and the weak-end infeed logic (WEI) function are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

Common base IED values for the primary current (I_Base), primary voltage (U_Base) and primary power (S_Base) are set in global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

GlobalBaseSel: Selects the global base value group used by the function to define I_Base, U_Base and S_Base. Note that this function will only use I_Base value.

15.2.3.1 Current reversal logic

The forward zone timer must be set longer than the \( t_{DelayRev} \) set value.

Set \textit{CurrRev} to \textit{On} to activate the function.

Set \textit{tDelayRev} timer of the maximum reset time for the communication equipment that gives the carrier receive (CRL) signal plus 30 ms. A minimum setting of 40 ms is recommended, typical 60 ms.

A long \textit{tDelayRev} setting increases security against unwanted tripping, but delays the fault clearing time in case of a fault from one line that evolves to the other one. The probability of this type of fault is small. Therefore set \textit{tDelayRev} with a good margin.

Set the pick-up delay \textit{tPickUpRev} to <80% of the minimum sum of breaker operate time + communication delay time, but with a minimum of 20 ms.

15.2.3.2 Weak-end infeed logic

Set \textit{WEI} to \textit{Echo}, to activate the weak-end infeed function with only echo function.

Set \textit{WEI} to \textit{Echo&Trip} to obtain echo with trip.
The t\textit{PickUpWEI} is the on-time delay to activate the weak-end infeed function. Set \textit{tPickUpWEI} to 10 ms, a short delay is recommended to avoid that spurious carrier received signals will activate WEI and cause unwanted carrier send (ECHO) signals.

When single phase tripping is required, a detailed study of the voltages during phase-to-phase and phase-to-earth faults should be done, at different fault locations.

15.3 Local acceleration logic ZCLCP SCH

15.3.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Local acceleration logic</td>
<td>ZCLCP SCH</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.3.2 Application

The local acceleration logic (ZCLCP SCH) is used in applications where a conventional teleprotection scheme is not available (no communication channel), but where the user still requires fast clearance for faults on the whole line.

The logic can be controlled either by the autorecloser (zone extension) or by the loss-of-load current (loss-of-load acceleration).

The loss-of-load acceleration gives selected overreach zone permission to operate instantaneously after checking the loss-of-load condition. It can not operate for three-phase faults.

15.3.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for the local acceleration logic functions are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

Set \textit{ZoneExtension} to \textit{On} when the first trip from selected overreaching zone shall be instantaneous and the definitive trip after autoreclosure a normal time-delayed trip.

Set \textit{LossOfLoad} to \textit{On} when the acceleration shall be controlled by loss-of-load in healthy phase(s).

\textit{LoadCurr} must be set below the current that will flow on the healthy phase when one or two of the other phases are faulty and the breaker has opened at remote end. Calculate the setting according to equation 132.

\[
\text{LoadCurr} = \frac{0.5 \cdot I_{\text{Load, min}}}{I_{\text{base}}}
\]

(Equation 132)

where:

\text{ILoad admin} is the minimum load current on the line during normal operation conditions.
The timer $t_{\text{LoadOn}}$ is used to increase the security of the loss-of-load function for example to avoid unwanted release due to transient inrush current when energizing the line power transformer. The loss-of-load function will be released after the timer $t_{\text{LoadOn}}$ has elapsed at the same time as the load current in all three phases are above the setting $\text{LoadCurr}$. In normal acceleration applications there is no need for delaying the release, so set the $t_{\text{LoadOn}}$ to zero.

The drop-out timer $t_{\text{LoadOff}}$ is used to determine the window for the current release conditions for Loss-of-load. The timer is by default set to 300ms, which is judged to be enough to secure the current release.

The setting of the minimum current detector, $\text{MinCurr}$, should be set higher than the unsymmetrical current that might flow on the non faulty line, when the breaker at remote end has opened. At the same time it should be set below the minimum load current transfer during normal operations that the line can be subjected to. By default, $\text{MinCurr}$ is set to 5% of $I_{\text{Base}}$.

The pick-up timer $t_{\text{LowCurr}}$ determine the window needed for pick-up of the minimum current value used to release the function. The timer is by default set to 200 ms, which is judged to be enough to avoid unwanted release of the function (avoid unwanted trip).

15.4 Scheme communication logic for residual overcurrent protection ECPSCH

15.4.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Scheme communication logic for residual overcurrent protection</td>
<td>ECPSCH</td>
<td></td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.4.2 Application

To achieve fast fault clearance of earth faults on the part of the line not covered by the instantaneous step of the residual overcurrent protection, the directional residual overcurrent protection can be supported with a logic that uses communication channels.

One communication channel is used in each direction, which can transmit an on/off signal if required. The performance and security of this function is directly related to the transmission channel speed and security against false or lost signals.

In the directional scheme, information of the fault current direction must be transmitted to the other line end.

With directional comparison in permissive schemes, a short operate time of the protection including a channel transmission time, can be achieved. This short operate time enables rapid autoreclosing function after the fault clearance.

During a single-phase reclosing cycle, the autoreclosing device must block the directional comparison earth-fault communication scheme.

The communication logic module enables blocking as well as permissive under/overreaching schemes. The logic can also be supported by additional logic for weak-end infeed and current reversal, included in the Current reversal and weak-end infeed logic for residual overcurrent protection (ECRWPSCH) function.
Metallic communication paths adversely affected by fault generated noise may not be suitable for conventional permissive schemes that rely on signal transmitted during a protected line fault. With power line carrier, for example, the communication signal may be attenuated by the fault, especially when the fault is close to the line end, thereby disabling the communication channel.

To overcome the lower dependability in permissive schemes, an unblocking function can be used. Use this function at older, less reliable, power line carrier (PLC) communication, where the signal has to be sent through the primary fault. The unblocking function uses a guard signal CRG, which must always be present, even when no CR signal is received. The absence of the CRG signal during the security time is used as a CR signal. This also enables a permissive scheme to operate when the line fault blocks the signal transmission. Set the $t_{\text{Security}}$ to 35 ms.

### 15.4.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for the scheme communication logic for residual overcurrent protection function are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

The following settings can be done for the scheme communication logic for residual overcurrent protection function:

- **Operation**: Off or On.
- **SchemeType**: This parameter can be set to Off, Intertrip, Permissive UR, Permissive OR or Blocking.
- **$t_{\text{Coord}}$**: Delay time for trip from ECPSCH function. For Permissive under/overreaching schemes, this timer shall be set to at least 20 ms plus maximum reset time of the communication channel as a security margin. For Blocking scheme, the setting should be > maximum signal transmission time +10 ms.
- **Unblock**: Select Off if unblocking scheme with no alarm for loss of guard is used. Set to Restart if unblocking scheme with alarm for loss of guard is used.
- **$t_{\text{SendMin}}$**: Time duration, the carrier send signal is prolonged.
- **$t_{\text{Security}}$**: The absence of CRG signal for a time duration of $t_{\text{Security}}$ is considered as CR signal.

### 15.5 Current reversal and weak-end infeed logic for residual overcurrent protection ECRWPSCH

#### 15.5.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current reversal and weak-end infeed logic for residual overcurrent protection</td>
<td>ECRWPSCH</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15.5.2 Application

15.5.2.1 Fault current reversal logic

Figure 200 and figure 201 show a typical system condition, which can result in a fault current reversal.

Assume that fault is near the B1 breaker. B1 Relay sees the fault in Zone1 and A1 relay identifies the fault in Zone2.

Note that the fault current is reversed in line L2 after the breaker B1 opening.

It can cause an unselective trip on line L2 if the current reversal logic does not block the permissive overreaching scheme in the IED at B2.

Figure 200: Current distribution for a fault close to B side when all breakers are closed

![Figure 200: Current distribution for a fault close to B side when all breakers are closed](IEC99000043-2.vsd)

Figure 201: Current distribution for a fault close to B side when breaker at B1 is opened

When the breaker on the parallel line operates, the fault current on the healthy line is reversed. The IED at B2 recognizes the fault in forward direction from reverse direction before breaker operates. As IED at B2 already received permissive signal from A2 and IED at B2 is now detecting the fault as forward fault, it will immediately trip breaker at B2. To ensure that tripping at B2 should not occur, the permissive overreaching function at B2 needs to be blocked by IRVL till the received permissive signal from A2 is reset.

The IED at A2, where the forward direction element was initially activated, must reset before the send signal is initiated from B2. The delayed reset of output signal IRVL also ensures the send signal from IED B2 is held back till the forward direction element is reset in IED A2.

15.5.2.2 Weak-end infeed logic

Figure 202 shows a typical system condition that can result in a missing operation. Note that there is no fault current from node B. This causes that the IED at B cannot detect the fault and trip the breaker in B. To cope with this situation, a selectable weak-end infeed logic is provided for the permissive overreaching scheme.
15.5.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for the current reversal and weak-end infeed logic for residual overcurrent protection function are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

Common base IED values for primary current (IBase), primary voltage (UBase) and primary power (SBase) are set in a Global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

GlobalBaseSel: It is used to select a GBASVAL function for reference of base values.

15.5.3.1 Current reversal

The current reversal function is set on or off by setting the parameter CurrRev to On or Off. Time delays shall be set for the timers tPickUpRev and tDelayRev.

tPickUpRev is chosen shorter (<80%) than the breaker opening time, but minimum 20 ms.

tDelayRev is chosen at a minimum to the sum of protection reset time and the communication reset time. A minimum tDelayRev setting of 40 ms is recommended.

The reset time of the directional residual overcurrent protection (EF4PTOC) is typically 25 ms.
If other type of residual overcurrent protection is used in the remote line end, its reset time should be used.

The signal propagation time is in the range 3 – 10 ms/km for most types of communication media. In communication networks small additional time delays are added in multiplexers and repeaters. Theses delays are less than 1 ms per process. It is often stated that the total propagation time is less than 5 ms.

When a signal picks-up or drops out there is a decision time to be added. This decision time is highly dependent on the interface between communication and protection used. In many cases an external interface (teleprotection equipment) is used. This equipment makes a decision and gives a binary signal to the protection device. In case of analog teleprotection equipment typical decision time is in the range 10 – 30 ms. For digital teleprotection equipment this time is in the range 2 – 10 ms.

If the teleprotection equipment is integrated in the protection IED the decision time can be slightly reduced.

The principle time sequence of signaling at current reversal is shown.
15.5.3.2 Weak-end infeed

The weak-end infeed can be set by setting the parameter WEI to Off, Echo or Echo & Trip. Operating zero sequence voltage when parameter WEI is set to Echo & Trip is set with 3U0>.

The zero sequence voltage for a fault at the remote line end and appropriate fault resistance is calculated.

To avoid unwanted trip from the weak-end infeed logic (if spurious signals should occur), set the operate value of the broken delta voltage level detector (3U0) higher than the maximum false network frequency residual voltage that can occur during normal service conditions. The recommended minimum setting is two times the false zero-sequence voltage during normal service conditions.
Section 16  Logic

16.1 Tripping logic SMPPTRC

16.1.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tripping logic</td>
<td>SMPPTRC</td>
<td></td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.1.2 Application

All trip signals from the different protection functions shall be routed through the trip logic. All start signals and directional information can be routed through the trip logic as well. In its simplest form, the trip logic will only link the TRIP signal to a binary output and make sure that the pulse time is long enough.

Tripping logic SMPPTRC offers three different operating modes:

- Three-phase tripping for all fault types (3ph operating mode)
- Single-phase tripping for single-phase faults and three-phase tripping for multi-phase and evolving faults (1ph/3ph operating mode).
- Single-phase tripping for single-phase faults, two-phase tripping for two-phase faults and three-phase tripping for three-phase faults (1ph/2ph/3ph operating mode).

The logic also issues a three-phase tripping command when phase selection within the operating protection functions is not possible, or when external conditions request three-phase tripping. To meet the different double, 1½ breaker and other multiple circuit breaker arrangements, multiple identical SMPPTRC function blocks are provided within the IED. In such installation, use one instance of SMPPTRC function per circuit breaker.

If the OHL is connected to the substation via more than one breaker, one SMPPTRC function block should be used for each breaker. For example when single-phase tripping and autoreclosing is used on the line, both breakers are normally set up for 1/3-phase tripping and 1/3-phase autoreclosing. Alternatively, the breaker chosen as master can have single-phase tripping, while the slave breaker could have three-phase tripping and autoreclosing. In the case of a permanent fault, only one of the breakers has to be operated when the fault is energized a second time. In the event of a transient fault the slave breaker performs a three-phase reclosing onto the non-faulted line.

The same philosophy can be used for two-phase tripping and autoreclosing.

To prevent closing of a circuit breaker after a trip, the function offers a lockout function.
### 16.1.2.1 Three-phase tripping

Connect the inputs from the protection functions to the input TRIN. The TMGAPC function block is used to combine up to 32 inputs into one output. Connect the output TRIP to the binary outputs on the IO board.

This signal can also be used for other purposes internally in the IED. An example could be the starting of breaker failure protection. The three outputs TRL1, TRL2, TRL3 will always be activated at every trip and can be utilized on individual trip outputs if single-phase operating devices are available on the circuit breaker even when a three-phase tripping scheme is selected.

Set the function block to *Program = 3 phase* and set the required length of the trip pulse to for example, \( t_{TripMin} = 150 \text{ms} \).

The typical connection is shown below in figure 204.

### 16.1.2.2 Single- and/or three-phase tripping

The single-/three-phase tripping operation mode will give single-phase tripping for single-phase faults and three-phase tripping for multi-phase fault. This operating mode is always used together with a single-phase autoreclosing scheme.

The single-phase tripping operation mode can include different options and the use of the different inputs in the function block. Inputs TRINL1, TRINL2 and TRINL3 shall be used for trip signals from functions with built-in phase selection logic such as distance or line differential protection functions.

The inputs 1PTRZ and 1PTREF are used for single-phase tripping from functions which do not have built-in phase selection logic:

- 1PTRZ can be connected to the carrier aided trip signal from the distance protection scheme (it means that another distance protection function has seen or detected the fault)
- 1PTREF can be connected to an earth fault function such as EF4PTOC or a carrier aided trip signal from the earth fault protection scheme

*Figure 204: Tripping logic SMPPTRC is used for a simple three-phase tripping application*
These two inputs are combined with the external phase selection logic. Phase selection signals from the external phase selector must be connected to the inputs PSL1, PSL2 and PSL3 to achieve the tripping on the respective single-phase trip outputs TRL1, TRL2 and TRL3. The output TRIP is a general trip and is always activated independent of which phase is involved. Depending on which phases are involved the outputs TR1P, TR2P and TR3P will be activated as well.

When single-phase tripping schemes are used, a single-phase autoreclosing attempt is expected to follow. For cases where the autoreclosing is not in service or will not follow for some reason, the input prepare three-phase trip P3PTR must be activated. This input is normally connected to the output PREP3P on the autorecloser function SMPPREC but can also be connected to other signals, for example, an external logic signal. If two circuit breakers are involved, one SMPPREC block instance and one SMPPREC instance are used for each circuit breaker. This will ensure correct operation and behavior of each circuit breaker.

The output TR3P must be connected to the input TR3P on the SMPPREC function in order to switch SMPPREC to perform a three-phase reclosing. If this signal is not activated, SMPPREC will use single-phase dead time.

If a second line protection is utilizing the same SMPPREC, the three-phase trip signal must be generated as OR conditions from both line protections.

Other back-up functions are connected to the input TRIN as described above for three-phase tripping. A typical connection for a single-phase tripping scheme is shown in figure 205.

![Diagram](image.png)

*Figure 205: The trip logic function SMPPREC used for single-phase tripping application*
16.1.2.3 Single-, two- or three-phase tripping

The single-/two-/three-phase tripping mode provides single-phase tripping for single-phase faults, two-phase tripping for two-phase faults and three-phase tripping for three-phase faults. The operating mode is always used together with an autoreclosing scheme with setting $ARMode = 1/2/3$ ph or $ARMode = 1/2$ ph.

The functionality is very similar to the single-phase scheme described above. However, in addition to the connections for single phase SMBRREC must also be informed that the trip is two phases by connecting the output TR2P to the input TR2P in the SMBRREC function.

16.1.2.4 Lock-out

The SMPPTRC function block is provided with possibilities to initiate lock-out. The lock-out can be set to only activate the block closing output CLLKOUT or initiate the block closing output and also maintain the trip signal output TR3P (latched trip).

The lock-out can then be manually reset after checking the primary fault by activating the input reset lock-out RSTLKOUT.

If external conditions are required to initiate a closing circuit lock-out but not to lockout trip, this can be achieved by activating input SETLKOUT. The setting AutoLock = Off means that the internal trip will not activate lock-out so only initiation of the input SETLKOUT will result in lock-out. This is normally the case for overhead line protection where most faults are transient. Unsuccessful autoreclose and back-up zone tripping can in such cases be connected to initiate lock-out by activating the input SETLKOUT.

16.1.2.5 Example of directional data

An example how to connect the directional data from different application functions to the trip function is given below, see Figure 206:
Figure 206: Example of the connection of directional start logic

The Start Matrix (SMAGAPC) merges start and directional output signals from different application functions and creates a common directional output signal (STDIR) to be connected to the Trip function (SMPPTRC). Protection functions connect their directional data via the STARTCOMB function to SMAGAPC and then to SMPPTRC, or directly to SMAGAPC and then to SMPPTRC.

The trip function (SMPPTRC) splits up the directional data as general output data for \textit{START}, \textit{STL1}, \textit{STL2}, \textit{STL3}, \textit{STN}, \textit{FW} and \textit{REV}.

All start and directional outputs are mapped to the logical node data model of the trip function and provided via the IEC 61850 attributes dirGeneral, DIRL1, DIRL2, DIRL3 and DIRN.
16.1.2.6 Blocking of the function block

Total block of the trip function is done by activating the input BLOCK and can be used to disable the outputs of the trip logic in the event of internal failures. Block of lock-out output is achieved by activating the input BLKLKOUT.

16.1.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for tripping logic SMPPTRC are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

Operation: Sets the mode of operation. Off switches the tripping off. The normal selection is On.

Program: Sets the required tripping scheme. Normally 3 phase or 1ph/3ph is used.

TripLockout: Sets the scheme for lock-out. Off only activates the closing circuit lock-out output. On activates the closing circuit lock-out output and latches the TRIP related outputs. The normal selection is Off.

AutoLock: Sets the scheme for lock-out. Off only activates lock-out through the input SETLKOUT. On additionally allows lock-out activation via the trip inputs. The normal selection is Off.

TripMin: Sets the required minimum duration of the trip pulse. It should be set to ensure that the circuit breaker is opened correctly. The normal setting is 0.150s.

WaitForPHS: Sets a duration during which external phase selection must operate in order to get a single phase trip, after any of the inputs 1PTRZ or 1PTREF has been activated. If no phase selection has been achieved, a three-phase trip will be issued after this time has elapsed.

EvolvingFault: Secures two- or three-pole tripping depending on Program selection during evolving faults.

16.2 Trip matrix logic TMAGAPC

16.2.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Trip matrix logic</td>
<td>TMAGAPC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.2.2 Application

The trip matrix logic (TMAGAPC) function is used to route trip signals and other logical output signals to different output contacts on the IED.

The trip matrix logic function has 3 output signals and these outputs can be connected to physical tripping outputs according to the specific application needs for settable pulse or steady output.
16.2.3 Setting guidelines

*Operation:* Operation of function On/Off.

*PulseTime:* Defines the pulse time when in *Pulsed* mode. When used for direct tripping of circuit breaker(s) the pulse time delay shall be set to approximately 0.150 seconds in order to obtain satisfactory minimum duration of the trip pulse to the circuit breaker trip coils.

*OnDelay:* Used to prevent output signals to be given for spurious inputs. Normally set to 0 or a low value.

*OffDelay:* Defines a delay of the reset of the outputs after the activation conditions no longer are fulfilled. It is only used in *Steady* mode. When used for direct tripping of circuit breaker(s) the off delay time shall be set to at least 0.150 seconds in order to obtain a satisfactory minimum duration of the trip pulse to the circuit breaker trip coils.

*ModeOutputx:* Defines if output signal OUTPUTx (where x=1-3) is *Steady* or *Pulsed*.

16.3 Logic for group alarm ALMCALH

16.3.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logic for group alarm</td>
<td>ALMCALH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.3.2 Application

Group alarm logic function ALMCALH is used to route alarm signals to different LEDs and/or output contacts on the IED.

ALMCALH output signal and the physical outputs allows the user to adapt the alarm signal to physical tripping outputs according to the specific application needs.

16.3.3 Setting guidelines

*Operation:* On or Off

16.4 Logic for group alarm WRNCALH

16.4.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logic for group warning</td>
<td>WRNCALH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.4.1.1 Application

Group warning logic function WRNCALH is used to route warning signals to LEDs and/or output contacts on the IED.
WRNCALH output signal WARNING and the physical outputs allows the user to adapt the warning signal to physical tripping outputs according to the specific application needs.

16.4.1.2 Setting guidelines

Operation On or Off

16.5 Logic for group indication INDCALH

16.5.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logic for group indication</td>
<td>INDCALH</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.5.1.1 Application

Group indication logic function INDCALH is used to route indication signals to different LEDs and/or output contacts on the IED.

INDCALH output signal IND and the physical outputs allows the user to adapt the indication signal to physical outputs according to the specific application needs.

16.5.1.2 Setting guidelines

Operation: On or Off

16.6 Configurable logic blocks

The configurable logic blocks are available in two categories:

- Configurable logic blocks that do not propagate the time stamp and the quality of signals. They do not have the suffix QT at the end of their function block name, for example, SRMEMORY. These logic blocks are also available as part of an extension logic package with the same number of instances.
- Configurable logic blocks that propagate the time stamp and the quality of signals. They have the suffix QT at the end of their function block name, for example, SRMEMORYQT.

16.6.1 Application

A set of standard logic blocks, like AND, OR etc, and timers are available for adapting the IED configuration to the specific application needs. Additional logic blocks that, beside the normal logical function, have the capability to propagate timestamp and quality are also available. Those blocks have a designation including the letters QT, like ANDQT, ORQT etc.

16.6.2 Setting guidelines

There are no settings for AND gates, OR gates, inverters or XOR gates as well as, for ANDQT gates, ORQT gates or XORQT gates.
For normal On/Off delay and pulse timers the time delays and pulse lengths are set from the local HMI or via the PST tool.

Both timers in the same logic block (the one delayed on pick-up and the one delayed on dropout) always have a common setting value.

For controllable gates, settable timers and SR flip-flops with memory, the setting parameters are accessible via the local HMI or via the PST tool.

### 16.6.2.1 Configuration

Logic is configured using the ACT configuration tool in PCM600.

Execution of functions as defined by the configurable logic blocks runs according to a fixed sequence with different cycle times.

For each cycle time, the function block is given an serial execution number. This is shown when using the ACT configuration tool with the designation of the function block and the cycle time, see example below.

**Figure 207:** Example designation, serial execution number and cycle time for logic function

The execution of different function blocks within the same cycle is determined by the order of their serial execution numbers. Always remember this when connecting two or more logical function blocks in series.
Always be careful when connecting function blocks with a fast cycle time to function blocks with a slow cycle time. Remember to design the logic circuits carefully and always check the execution sequence for different functions. In other cases, additional time delays must be introduced into the logic schemes to prevent errors, for example, race between functions.

16.7 Fixed signal function block FXDSIGN

16.7.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fixed signals</td>
<td>FXDSIGN</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.7.2 Application

The Fixed signals function (FXDSIGN) has nine pre-set (fixed) signals that can be used in the configuration of an IED, either for forcing the unused inputs in other function blocks to a certain level/value, or for creating certain logic. Boolean, integer, floating point, string types of signals are available.

One FXDSIGN function block is included in all IEDs.

**Example for use of GRP_OFF signal in FXDSIGN**

The Restricted earth fault function (REFPDIF) can be used both for auto-transformers and normal transformers.

When used for auto-transformers, information from both windings parts, together with the neutral point current, needs to be available to the function. This means that three inputs are needed.

For normal transformers only one winding and the neutral point is available. This means that only two inputs are used. Since all group connections are mandatory to be connected, the third input needs to be connected to something, which is the GRP_OFF signal in FXDSIGN function block.

![IEC09000619_3_en.vsd](https://example.com/IEC09000619_3_en.vsd)

**Figure 209: REFPDIF function inputs for autotransformer application**

For normal transformers only one winding and the neutral point is available. This means that only two inputs are used. Since all group connections are mandatory to be connected, the third input needs to be connected to something, which is the GRP_OFF signal in FXDSIGN function block.
16.8 Boolean 16 to Integer conversion B16I

16.8.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boolean 16 to integer conversion</td>
<td>B16I</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.8.2 Application

Boolean 16 to integer conversion function B16I is used to transform a set of 16 binary (logical) signals into an integer. It can be used – for example, to connect logical output signals from a function (like distance protection) to integer inputs from another function (like line differential protection). B16I does not have a logical node mapping.

The Boolean 16 to integer conversion function (B16I) will transfer a combination of up to 16 binary inputs INx where 1≤x≤16 to an integer. Each INx represents a value according to the table below from 0 to 32768. This follows the general formula: INx = 2\(^{x-1}\) where 1≤x≤16. The sum of all the values on the activated INx will be available on the output OUT as a sum of the values of all the inputs INx that are activated. OUT is an integer. When all INx where 1≤x≤16 are activated that is = Boolean 1 it corresponds to that integer 65535 is available on the output OUT. B16I function is designed for receiving up to 16 booleans input locally. If the BLOCK input is activated, it will freeze the output at the last value.

Values of each of the different OUTx from function block B16I for 1≤x≤16.

The sum of the value on each INx corresponds to the integer presented on the output OUT on the function block B16I.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of input</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value when activated</th>
<th>Value when deactivated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IN1</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN2</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN3</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN4</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN5</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 5</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of input</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value when activated</th>
<th>Value when deactivated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IN6</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 6</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN7</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 7</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN8</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 8</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN9</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 9</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN10</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 10</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN11</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 11</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN12</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 12</td>
<td>2048</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN13</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 13</td>
<td>4096</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN14</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 14</td>
<td>8192</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN15</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 15</td>
<td>16384</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN16</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 16</td>
<td>32768</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sum of the numbers in column “Value when activated” when all INx (where 1≤x≤16) are active that is =1, is 65535. 65535 is the highest boolean value that can be converted to an integer by the B16I function block.

16.9 Boolean to integer conversion with logical node representation, 16 bit BTIGAPC

16.9.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boolean to integer conversion with logical node representation, 16 bit BTIGAPC</td>
<td>BTIGAPC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.9.2 Application

Boolean to integer conversion with logical node representation, 16 bit (BTIGAPC) is used to transform a set of 16 binary (logical) signals into an integer. BTIGAPC has a logical node mapping in IEC 61850.

The BTIGAPC function will transfer a combination of up to 16 binary inputs INx where 1≤x≤16 to an integer. Each INx represents a value according to the table below from 0 to 32768. This follows the general formula: \( INx = 2^{x-1} \) where 1≤x≤16. The sum of all the values on the activated INx will be available on the output OUT as a sum of the values of all the inputs INx that are activated. OUT is an integer. When all INx where 1≤x≤16 are activated that is = Boolean 1 it corresponds to that integer 65535 is available on the output OUT. BTIGAPC function is designed for receiving up to 16 booleans input locally. If the BLOCK input is activated, it will freeze the output at the last value.

Values of each of the different OUTx from function block BTIGAPC for 1≤x≤16.

The sum of the value on each INx corresponds to the integer presented on the output OUT on the function block BTIGAPC.
The sum of the numbers in column “Value when activated” when all INx (where 1 ≤ x ≤ 16) are active that is = 1; is 65535. 65535 is the highest boolean value that can be converted to an integer by the BTIGAPC function block.

### 16.10 Integer to Boolean 16 conversion IB16

#### 16.10.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Integer to boolean 16 conversion</td>
<td>IB16</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 16.10.2 Application

Integer to boolean 16 conversion function (IB16) is used to transform an integer into a set of 16 binary (logical) signals. It can be used – for example, to connect integer output signals from one function to binary (logical) inputs to another function. IB16 function does not have a logical node mapping.

The Boolean 16 to integer conversion function (IB16) will transfer a combination of up to 16 binary inputs INx where 1 ≤ x ≤ 16 to an integer. Each INx represents a value according to the table below from 0 to 32768. This follows the general formula: INx = 2^(x-1) where 1 ≤ x ≤ 16. The sum of all the values on the activated INx will be available on the output OUT as a sum of the values of all the inputs INx that are activated. OUT is an integer. When all INx where 1 ≤ x ≤ 16 are activated that is = Boolean 1 it corresponds to that integer 65535 is available on the output OUT. IB16 function is designed for receiving up to 16 booleans input locally. If the BLOCK input is activated, it will freeze the output at the last value.
Values of each of the different \( \text{OUT}_x \) from function block IB16 for \( 1 \leq x \leq 16 \).

The sum of the value on each \( \text{IN}_x \) corresponds to the integer presented on the output \( \text{OUT} \) on the function block IB16.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Input</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Default</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value when activated</th>
<th>Value when deactivated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_1 )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_2 )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_3 )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_4 )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_5 )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 5</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_6 )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 6</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_7 )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 7</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_8 )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 8</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_9 )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 9</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_{10} )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 10</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_{11} )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 11</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_{12} )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 12</td>
<td>2048</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_{13} )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 13</td>
<td>4096</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_{14} )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 14</td>
<td>8192</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_{15} )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 15</td>
<td>16384</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{IN}_{16} )</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Input 16</td>
<td>32768</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sum of the numbers in column “Value when activated” when all \( \text{IN}_x \) (where \( 1 \leq x \leq 16 \)) are active that is=1; is 65535. 65535 is the highest boolean value that can be converted to an integer by the IB16 function block.

### 16.11 Integer to Boolean 16 conversion with logic node representation ITBGAPC

#### 16.11.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60817 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Integer to boolean 16 conversion with logic node representation</td>
<td>ITBGAPC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 16.11.2 Application

Integer to boolean 16 conversion with logic node representation function (ITBGAPC) is used to transform an integer into a set of 16 boolean signals. ITBGAPC function can receive an integer from a station computer – for example, over IEC 61850–8–1. This function is very useful when the user wants to generate logical commands (for selector switches or voltage controllers) by inputting an integer number. ITBGAPC function has a logical node mapping in IEC 61850.
The Integer to Boolean 16 conversion with logic node representation function (ITBGAPC) will transfer an integer with a value between 0 to 65535 communicated via IEC 61850 and connected to the ITBGAPC function block to a combination of activated outputs OUTx where 1 ≤ x ≤ 16.

The values of the different OUTx are according to the Table 46.

If the BLOCK input is activated, it freezes the logical outputs at the last value.

### Table 46: Output signals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of OUTx</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value when activated</th>
<th>Value when deactivated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OUT1</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT2</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT3</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT4</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT5</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 5</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT6</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 6</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT7</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 7</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT8</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 8</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT9</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 9</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT10</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 10</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT11</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 11</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT12</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 12</td>
<td>2048</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT13</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 13</td>
<td>4096</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT14</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 14</td>
<td>8192</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT15</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 15</td>
<td>16384</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUT16</td>
<td>BOOLEAN</td>
<td>Output 16</td>
<td>32768</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sum of the numbers in column "Value when activated" when all OUTx (1 ≤ x ≤ 16) are active equals 65535. This is the highest integer that can be converted by the ITBGAPC function block.

### 16.12 Elapsed time integrator with limit transgression and overflow supervision TEIGAPC

#### 16.12.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function Description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Elapsed time integrator</td>
<td>TEIGAPC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 16.12.2 Application

The function TEIGAPC is used for user-defined logics and it can also be used for different purposes internally in the IED. An application example is the integration of elapsed time during the measurement of neutral point voltage or neutral current at earth-fault conditions.
Settable time limits for warning and alarm are provided. The time limit for overflow indication is fixed to 999999.9 seconds.

16.12.3 Setting guidelines

The settings $t_{\text{Alarm}}$ and $t_{\text{Warning}}$ are user settable limits defined in seconds. The achievable resolution of the settings depends on the level of the values defined.

A resolution of 10 ms can be achieved when the settings are defined within the range

\[
1.00 \text{ second} \leq t_{\text{Alarm}} \leq 99999.99 \text{ seconds}
\]

\[
1.00 \text{ second} \leq t_{\text{Warning}} \leq 99999.99 \text{ seconds}.
\]

If the values are above this range, the resolution becomes lower due to the 32 bit float representation

\[
99999.99 \text{ seconds} < t_{\text{Alarm}} \leq 999999.0 \text{ seconds}
\]

\[
99999.99 \text{ seconds} < t_{\text{Warning}} \leq 999999.0 \text{ seconds}
\]

Note that $t_{\text{Alarm}}$ and $t_{\text{Warning}}$ are independent settings, that is, there is no check if $t_{\text{Alarm}} > t_{\text{Warning}}$.

The limit for the overflow supervision is fixed at 999999.9 seconds.

16.13 Comparator for integer inputs - INTCOMP

16.13.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Comparison of integer values</td>
<td>INTCOMP</td>
<td>Int&lt;=&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.13.2 Application

The function gives the possibility to monitor the level of integer values in the system relative to each other or to a fixed value. It is a basic arithmetic function that can be used for monitoring, supervision, interlocking and other logics.

16.13.3 Setting guidelines

For proper operation of comparison the set value should be set within the range of $\pm 2 \times 10^9$.

Setting procedure on the IED:

$EnaAbs$: This setting is used to select the comparison type between signed and absolute values.

- **Absolute**: Comparison is performed on absolute values of input and reference values
- **Signed**: Comparison is performed on signed values of input and reference values.
RefSource: This setting is used to select the reference source between input and setting for comparison.

- Input REF: The function will take reference value from input REF
- Set Value: The function will take reference value from setting SetValue

SetValue: This setting is used to set the reference value for comparison when setting RefSource is selected as SetValue.

16.13.4 Setting example

For absolute comparison between inputs:
Set the EnaAbs = Absolute
Set the RefSource = Input REF

Similarly for Signed comparison between inputs
Set the EnaAbs = Signed
Set the RefSource = Input REF

For absolute comparison between input and setting
Set the EnaAbs = Absolute
Set the RefSource = Set Value
SetValue shall be set between -2000000000 to 2000000000

Similarly for signed comparison between input and setting
Set the EnaAbs = Signed
Set the RefSource = Set Value
SetValue shall be set between -2000000000 to 2000000000

16.14 Comparator for real inputs - REALCOMP

16.14.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Comparator for real inputs</td>
<td>REALCOMP</td>
<td>Real&lt;=&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

16.14.2 Application

The function gives the possibility to monitor the level of real values in the system relative to each other or to a fixed value. It is a basic arithmetic function that can be used for monitoring, supervision, interlocking and other logics.
16.14.3 Setting guidelines

Setting procedure on the IED:

*EnaAbs*: This setting is used to select the comparison type between signed and absolute values.

- *Absolute*: Comparison is performed with absolute values of input and reference.
- *Signed*: Comparison is performed with signed values of input and reference.

*RefSource*: This setting is used to select the reference source between input and setting for comparison.

- *Input REF*: The function will take reference value from input REF
- *Set Value*: The function will take reference value from setting *SetValue*

*SetValue*: This setting is used to set the reference value for comparison when setting *RefSource* is selected as *Set Value*. If this setting value is less than 0.2% of the set unit then the output INLOW will never pickup.

*RefPrefix*: This setting is used to set the unit of the reference value for comparison when setting *RefSource* is selected as *SetValue*. It has 5 unit selections and they are Milli, Unity, Kilo, Mega and Giga.

*EqualBandHigh*: This setting is used to set the equal condition high band limit in % of reference value. This high band limit will act as reset limit for INHIGH output when INHIGH.

*EqualBandLow*: This setting is used to set the equal condition low band limit in % of reference value. This low band limit will act as reset limit for INLOW output when INLOW.

16.14.4 Setting example

Let us consider a comparison is to be done between current magnitudes in the range of 90 to 110 with nominal rating is 100 and the order is kA.

For the above condition the comparator can be designed with settings as follows,

*EnaAbs* = Absolute

*RefSource* = Set Value

*SetValue* = 100

*RefPrefix* = Kilo

*EqualBandHigh* = 5.0 % of reference value

*EqualBandLow* = 5.0 % of reference value

**Operation**

The function will set the outputs for the following conditions,

INEQUAL will set when the INPUT is between the ranges of 95 to 105 kA.

INHIGH will set when the INPUT crosses above 105 kA.

INLOW will set when the INPUT crosses below 95 kA.
If the comparison should be done between two current magnitudes then those current signals need to be connected to function inputs, INPUT and REF. Then the settings should be adjusted as below,

\[ \text{EnaAbs} = \text{Absolute} \]

\[ \text{RefSource} = \text{Input REF} \]

\[ \text{EqualBandHigh} = 5.0 \% \text{ of reference value} \]

\[ \text{EqualBandLow} = 5.0 \% \text{ of reference value.} \]
Section 17 Monitoring

17.1 Measurement

17.1.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Power system measurements</td>
<td>CVMMXN</td>
<td>P, Q, S, I, U, f</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase current measurement</td>
<td>CMMXU</td>
<td>I</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase-phase voltage measurement</td>
<td>VMMXU</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current sequence component measurement</td>
<td>CMSQI</td>
<td>I1, I2, I0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage sequence component measurement</td>
<td>VMSQI</td>
<td>U1, U2, U0</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase-neutral voltage measurement</td>
<td>VNMMXU</td>
<td>U</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

17.1.2 Application

Measurement functions are used for power system measurement, supervision and reporting to the local HMI, monitoring tool within PCM600 or to station level for example, via IEC 61850. The possibility to continuously monitor measured values of active power, reactive power, currents, voltages, frequency, power factor etc. is vital for efficient production, transmission and distribution of electrical energy. It provides to the system operator fast and easy overview of the present status of the power system. Additionally, it can be used during testing and commissioning of protection and control IEDs in order to verify proper operation and connection of instrument transformers (CTs and VTs). During normal service by periodic comparison of the measured value from the IED with other independent meters the proper operation of the IED analog measurement chain can be verified. Finally, it can be used to verify proper direction orientation for distance or directional overcurrent protection function.
The available measured values from an IED are depending on the actual hardware (TRM) and the logic configuration made in PCM600.

All measured values can be supervised with four settable limits that is, low-low limit, low limit, high limit and high-high limit. A zero clamping reduction is also supported, that is, the measured value below a settable limit is forced to zero which reduces the impact of noise in the inputs.

Dead-band supervision can be used to report measured signal value to station level when change in measured value is above set threshold limit or time integral of all changes since the last time value updating exceeds the threshold limit. Measure value can also be based on periodic reporting.

**Main menu/Measurement/Monitoring/Service values/CVMMXN**

The measurement function, CVMMXN, provides the following power system quantities:

- P, Q and S: three phase active, reactive and apparent power
- PF: power factor
- U: phase-to-phase voltage amplitude
- I: phase current amplitude
- F: power system frequency

The measuring functions CMMXU, VMMXU and VNMMXU provide physical quantities:

- I: phase currents (amplitude and angle) (CMMXU)
- U: voltages (phase-to-earth and phase-to-phase voltage, amplitude and angle) (VMMXU, VNMMXU)

The CVMMXN function calculates three-phase power quantities by using fundamental frequency phasors (DFT values) of the measured current and voltage signals. The measured power quantities are available either, as instantaneously calculated quantities or, averaged values over a period of time (low pass filtered) depending on the selected settings.

It is possible to calibrate the measuring function above to get better than class 0.5 presentation. This is accomplished by angle and amplitude compensation at 5, 30 and 100% of rated current and at 100% of rated voltage.

The power system quantities provided, depends on the actual hardware, (TRM) and the logic configuration made in PCM600.

The measuring functions CMSQI and VMSQI provide sequence component quantities:

- I: sequence currents (positive, zero, negative sequence, amplitude and angle)
- U: sequence voltages (positive, zero and negative sequence, amplitude and angle).

### 17.1.3 Zero clamping

Measuring functions CVMMXN, CMMXU, VMMXU and VNMMXU have no interconnections regarding any settings or parameters.

Zero clumpings are also handled entirely by ZeroDb separately for each function's every output signal. For example, zero clamping of U12 is handled by UL12ZeroDb in VMMXU, zero clamping of I1 is handled by IL1ZeroDb in CMMXU, and so on.
Example of CVMMXN operation

Outputs seen on the local HMI under **Main menu/Measurements/Monitoring/Servicevalues(P_Q)/CVMMXN(P_Q):**

- **S** Apparent three-phase power
- **P** Active three-phase power
- **Q** Reactive three-phase power
- **PF** Power factor
- **ILAG** I lagging U
- **ILEAD** I leading U
- **U** System mean voltage, calculated according to selected mode
- **I** System mean current, calculated according to selected mode
- **F** Frequency

Relevant settings and their values on the local HMI under **Main menu/Settings/IED settings/Monitoring/Servicevalues(P_Q)/CVMMXN(P_Q):**

- When system voltage falls below **UGenZeroDb**, values for S, P, Q, PF, ILAG, ILEAD, U and F are forced to zero.
- When system current falls below **IGenZeroDb**, values for S, P, Q, PF, ILAG, ILEAD, U and F are forced to zero.
- When the value of a single signal falls below its set deadband, the value is forced to zero.
  For example, if the apparent three-phase power falls below **SZeroDb**, the value for S is forced to zero.

### 17.1.4 Setting guidelines

The available setting parameters of the measurement function CVMMXN, CMMXU, VMMXU, CMSQI, VMSQI, VNMMXU are depending on the actual hardware (TRM) and the logic configuration made in PCM600.

The parameters for the Measurement functions CVMMXN, CMMXU, VMMXU, CMSQI, VMSQI, VNMMXU are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

**GlobalBaseSel:** Selects the global base value group used by the function to define **IBase**, **UBase** and **SBase.** Note that this function will only use **IBase** value.

**Operation:** Off/On. Every function instance (CVMMXN, CMMXU, VMMXU, CMSQI, VMSQI, VNMMXU) can be taken in operation (On) or out of operation (Off).

The following general settings can be set for the **Measurement function** (CVMMXN).

**PowAmpFact:** Amplitude factor to scale power calculations.

**PowAngComp:** Angle compensation for phase shift between measured I & U.

**Mode:** Selection of measured current and voltage. There are 9 different ways of calculating monitored three-phase values depending on the available VT inputs connected to the IED. See parameter group setting table.

**k:** Low pass filter coefficient for power measurement, U and I.

**UGenZeroDb:** Minimum level of voltage in % of UBase, used as indication of zero voltage (zero point clamping). If measured value is below **UGenZeroDb** calculated S, P, Q and PF will be zero.
**IGenZeroDb**: Minimum level of current in % of IBase, used as indication of zero current (zero point clamping). If measured value is below IGenZeroDb calculated S, P, Q and PF will be zero.

**UAmpCompY**: Amplitude compensation to calibrate voltage measurements at Y% of Ur, where Y is equal to 5, 30 or 100.

**IAmpCompY**: Amplitude compensation to calibrate current measurements at Y% of Ir, where Y is equal to 5, 30 or 100.

**IAngCompY**: Angle compensation to calibrate angle measurements at Y% of Ir, where Y is equal to 5, 30 or 100.

The following general settings can be set for the **Phase current measurement** (CMMXU).

**IAmpCompY**: Amplitude compensation to calibrate current measurements at Y% of Ir, where Y is equal to 5, 30 or 100.

**IAngCompY**: Angle compensation to calibrate angle measurements at Y% of Ir, where Y is equal to 5, 30 or 100.

The following general settings can be set for the **Phase-phase voltage measurement** (VMMXU).

**UAmpCompY**: Amplitude compensation to calibrate voltage measurements at Y% of Ur, where Y is equal to 5, 30 or 100.

**UAngCompY**: Angle compensation to calibrate angle measurements at Y% of Ur, where Y is equal to 5, 30 or 100.

The following general settings can be set for **all monitored quantities** included in the functions (CVMMXN, CMMXU, VMMXU, CMSQI, VMSQI, VNMMXU) X in setting names below equals S, P, Q, PF, U, I, F, IL1-3, UL1-3UL12-31, I1, I2, 3I0, U1, U2 or 3U0.

**Xmin**: Minimum value for analog signal X set directly in applicable measuring unit. This forms the minimum limit of the range.

**Xmax**: Maximum value for analog signal X. This forms the maximum limit of the range.

**XZeroDb**: Zero point clamping. A signal value less than XZeroDb is forced to zero.

Observe the related zero point clamping settings in Setting group N for CVMMXN (UGenZeroDb and IGenZeroDb). If measured value is below UGenZeroDb and/or IGenZeroDb calculated S, P, Q and PF will be zero and these settings will override XZeroDb.

**XRepTyp**: Reporting type. Cyclic (Cyclic), amplitude deadband (Dead band), integral deadband (Int deadband) or Deadband and xx se cyclic (xx: 5 sec, 30 sec, 1 min). The reporting interval is controlled by the parameter XDbRepInt.

**XDbRepInt**: This setting handles all the reporting types. If setting is deadband in XRepTyp, XDbRepInt defines the deadband in m% of the measuring range. For cyclic reporting type (XRepTyp : cyclic), the setting value reporting interval is in seconds. Amplitude deadband is the setting value in m% of measuring range. Integral deadband setting is the integral area, that is, measured value in m% of measuring range multiplied by the time between two measured values.

**XHiHiLim**: High-high limit. Set as % of YBase (Y is SBase for S,P,Q UBase for Voltage measurement and IBase for current measurement).

**XHiLim**: High limit. Set as % of YBase (Y is SBase for S,P,Q UBase for Voltage measurement and IBase for current measurement).
XLowLim: Low limit. Set as % of YBase (Y is SBase for S, P, Q UBase for Voltage measurement and IBase for current measurement).

XLowLowLim: Low-low limit. Set as % of YBase (Y is SBase for S, P, Q UBase for Voltage measurement and IBase for current measurement).

XLimHyst: Hysteresis value in % of range and is common for all limits.

All phase angles are presented in relation to defined reference channel. The parameter PhaseAngleRef defines the reference, see Section "Analog Inputs".

**Calibration curves**

It is possible to calibrate the functions (CVMMXN, CMMXU, VMMXU and VNMMXU) to get class 0.5 presentations of currents, voltages and powers. This is accomplished by amplitude and angle compensation at 5, 30 and 100% of rated current and voltage. The compensation curve will have the characteristic for amplitude and angle compensation of currents as shown in figure 211 (example). The first phase will be used as reference channel and compared with the curve for calculation of factors. The factors will then be used for all related channels.

![Calibration curves](en0500068 2.vdp)

**Figure 211: Calibration curves**

### 17.1.4.1 Setting examples

Three setting examples, in connection to Measurement function (CVMMXN), are provided:

- Measurement function (CVMMXN) application for a OHL
- Measurement function (CVMMXN) application on the secondary side of a transformer
- Measurement function (CVMMXN) application for a generator

For each of them detail explanation and final list of selected setting parameters values will be provided.
The available measured values of an IED are depending on the actual hardware (TRM) and the logic configuration made in PCM600.

**Measurement function application for a 400kV OHL**

Single line diagram for this application is given in figure 212:

![Single line diagram for 400kV OHL application](IEC09000039-3-en.vsdx)

**Figure 212: Single line diagram for 400kV OHL application**

In order to monitor, supervise and calibrate the active and reactive power as indicated in figure 212 it is necessary to do the following:

1. Set correctly CT and VT data and phase angle reference channel `PhaseAngleRef` (see Section “Setting of the phase reference channel”) using PCM600 for analog input channels
2. Connect, in PCM600, measurement function to three-phase CT and VT inputs
3. Set under General settings parameters for the Measurement function:
   - general settings as shown in table 47.
   - level supervision of active power as shown in table 48.
   - calibration parameters as shown in table 49.

**Table 47: General settings parameters for the Measurement function**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Short Description</th>
<th>Selected value</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Operation Off/On</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Function must be On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PowAmpFact</td>
<td>Amplitude factor to scale power calculations</td>
<td>1.000</td>
<td>It can be used during commissioning to achieve higher measurement accuracy. Typically no scaling is required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PowAngComp</td>
<td>Angle compensation for phase shift between measured I &amp; U</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>It can be used during commissioning to achieve higher measurement accuracy. Typically no angle compensation is required. As well here required direction of P &amp; Q measurement is towards protected object (as per IED internal default direction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Selection of measured current and voltage</td>
<td>L1, L2, L3</td>
<td>All three phase-to-earth VT inputs are available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Low pass filter coefficient for power measurement, U and I</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>Typically no additional filtering is required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Short Description</th>
<th>Selected value</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UGenZeroDb</td>
<td>Zero point clamping in % of Ubase</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Set minimum voltage level to 25%. Voltage below 25% will force S, P and Q to zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGenZeroDb</td>
<td>Zero point clamping in % of Ibase</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Set minimum current level to 3%. Current below 3% will force S, P and Q to zero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UBase (set in Global base)</td>
<td>Base setting for voltage level in kV</td>
<td>400.00</td>
<td>Set rated OHL phase-to-phase voltage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBase (set in Global base)</td>
<td>Base setting for current level in A</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Set rated primary CT current used for OHL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBase (set in Global base)</td>
<td>Base Setting for power base in MVA</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>Set based on rated Power</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 48: Settings parameters for level supervision

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Short Description</th>
<th>Selected value</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PMin</td>
<td>Minimum value</td>
<td>-100</td>
<td>Minimum expected load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMax</td>
<td>Minimum value</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>Maximum expected load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PZeroDb</td>
<td>Zero point clamping in 0.001% of range</td>
<td>3000</td>
<td>Set zero point clamping to 60 MW that is, 3% of 200 MW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRepTyp</td>
<td>Reporting type</td>
<td>db</td>
<td>Select amplitude deadband supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDbRepInt</td>
<td>Cycl: Report interval (s), Db: in 0.001% of range, Int Db: in 0.001%</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Set ±Δdb=40 MW that is, 2% (larger changes than 40 MW will be reported)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHiHiLim</td>
<td>High High limit (physical value), % of SBase</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>High alarm limit that is, extreme overload alarm, hence it will be 415 MW.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHiLim</td>
<td>High limit (physical value), in % of SBase</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>High warning limit that is, overload warning, hence it will be 371 MW.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLowLim</td>
<td>Low limit (physical value), in % of SBase</td>
<td>-50</td>
<td>Low warning limit -500 MW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLowLowLim</td>
<td>Low Low limit (physical value), in % of SBase</td>
<td>-60</td>
<td>Low alarm limit -600 MW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLimHyst</td>
<td>Hysteresis value in % of range (common for all limits)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Set ±Δ Hysteresis 20 MW that is, 1% of range (2000 MW)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 49: Settings for calibration parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Short Description</th>
<th>Selected value</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IAmpComp5</td>
<td>Amplitude factor to calibrate current at 5% of Ir</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAmpComp30</td>
<td>Amplitude factor to calibrate current at 30% of Ir</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAmpComp100</td>
<td>Amplitude factor to calibrate current at 100% of Ir</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAmpComp5</td>
<td>Amplitude factor to calibrate voltage at 5% of Ur</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAmpComp30</td>
<td>Amplitude factor to calibrate voltage at 30% of Ur</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UAmpComp100</td>
<td>Amplitude factor to calibrate voltage at 100% of Ur</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
# Measurement function application for a power transformer

Single line diagram for this application is given in figure 213.

![Single line diagram](IEC09000040-1-en.vsd)

**Figure 213: Single line diagram for transformer application**

In order to measure the active and reactive power as indicated in figure 213, it is necessary to do the following:
1. Set correctly all CT and VT and phase angle reference channel PhaseAngleRef (see Section “Setting of the phase reference channel”) data using PCM600 for analog input channels
2. Connect, in PCM600, measurement function to LV side CT & VT inputs
3. Set the setting parameters for relevant Measurement function as shown in the following table 50:

Table 50: General settings parameters for the Measurement function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Short description</th>
<th>Selected value</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Operation Off/On</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Function must be On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PowAmpFact</td>
<td>Amplitude factor to scale power calculations</td>
<td>1.000</td>
<td>Typically no scaling is required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PowAngComp</td>
<td>Angle compensation for phase shift between measured I &amp; U</td>
<td>180.0</td>
<td>Typically no angle compensation is required. However here the required direction of P &amp; Q measurement is towards busbar (Not per IED internal default direction). Therefore angle compensation have to be used in order to get measurements in alignment with the required direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Selection of measured current and voltage</td>
<td>L1L2</td>
<td>Only UL1L2 phase-to-phase voltage is available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Low pass filter coefficient for power measurement, U and I</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>Typically no additional filtering is required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UGenZeroDb</td>
<td>Zero point clamping in % of Ubase</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Set minimum voltage level to 25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGenZeroDb</td>
<td>Zero point clamping in % of Ibase</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Set minimum current level to 3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UBase (set in Global base)</td>
<td>Base setting for voltage level in kV</td>
<td>35.00</td>
<td>Set LV side rated phase-to-phase voltage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBase (set in Global base)</td>
<td>Base setting for current level in A</td>
<td>495</td>
<td>Set transformer LV winding rated current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBase (set in Global base)</td>
<td>Base setting for power in MVA</td>
<td>31.5</td>
<td>Set based on rated power</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Measurement function application for a generator
Single line diagram for this application is given in figure 214.
In order to measure the active and reactive power as indicated in figure 214, it is necessary to do the following:

1. Set correctly all CT and VT data and phase angle reference channel \textit{PhaseAngleRef} (see Section "Setting of the phase reference channel") using PCM600 for analog input channels
2. Connect, in PCM600, measurement function to the generator CT & VT inputs
3. Set the setting parameters for relevant Measurement function as shown in the following table:
### Table 51: General settings parameters for the Measurement function

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Short description</th>
<th>Selected value</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Operation Off/On</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Function must be On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PowAmpFact</td>
<td>Amplitude factor to scale power calculations</td>
<td>1.000</td>
<td>Typically no scaling is required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PowAngComp</td>
<td>Angle compensation for phase shift between measured I &amp; U</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>Typically no angle compensation is required. As well here required direction of P &amp; Q measurement is towards protected object (as per IED internal default direction)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode</td>
<td>Selection of measured current and voltage</td>
<td>Arone</td>
<td>Generator VTs are connected between phases (V-connected)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>Low pass filter coefficient for power measurement, U and I</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>Typically no additional filtering is required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UGenZeroDb</td>
<td>Zero point clamping in % of Ubase</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>Set minimum voltage level to 25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGenZeroDb</td>
<td>Zero point clamping in % of Ibase</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Set minimum current level to 3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UBase (set in Global base)</td>
<td>Base setting for voltage level in kV</td>
<td>15.65</td>
<td>Set generator rated phase-to-phase voltage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBase (set in Global base)</td>
<td>Base setting for current level in A</td>
<td>3690</td>
<td>Set generator rated current</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 17.2 Gas medium supervision SSIMG

#### 17.2.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Insulation gas monitoring function</td>
<td>SSIMG</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 17.2.2 Application

Gas medium supervision (SSIMG) is used for monitoring the circuit breaker condition. Proper arc extinction by the compressed gas in the circuit breaker is very important. When the pressure becomes too low compared to the required value, the circuit breaker operation shall be blocked to minimize the risk of internal failure. Binary information based on the gas pressure in the circuit breaker is used as an input signal to the function. The function generates alarms based on the received information.

#### 17.2.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for Gas medium supervision SSIMG can be set via local HMI or Protection and Control Manager PCM600.

*Operation:* This is used to disable/enable the operation of gas medium supervision i.e. Off/On.

*PresAlmLimit:* This is used to set the limit for a pressure alarm condition in the circuit breaker.

*PresLOLimit:* This is used to set the limit for a pressure lockout condition in the circuit breaker.
**TempAlarmLimit**: This is used to set the limit for a temperature alarm condition in the circuit breaker.

**TempLOLimit**: This is used to set the limit for a temperature lockout condition in the circuit breaker.

**tPressureAlarm**: This is used to set the time delay for a pressure alarm indication, given in s.

**tPressureLO**: This is used to set the time delay for a pressure lockout indication, given in s.

**tTempAlarm**: This is used to set the time delay for a temperature alarm indication, given in s.

**tTempLockOut**: This is used to set the time delay for a temperature lockout indication, given in s.

**tResetPressAlm**: This is used for the pressure alarm indication to reset after a set time delay in s.

**tResetPressLO**: This is used for the pressure lockout indication to reset after a set time delay in s.

**tResetTempLO**: This is used for the temperature lockout indication to reset after a set time delay in s.

**tResetTempAlm**: This is used for the temperature alarm indication to reset after a set time delay in s.

### 17.3 Liquid medium supervision SSIML

#### 17.3.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Insulation liquid monitoring function</td>
<td>SSIML</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 17.3.2 Application

Liquid medium supervision (SSIML) is used for monitoring the oil insulated device condition. For example, transformers, shunt reactors, and so on. When the level becomes too low compared to the required value, the operation is blocked to minimize the risk of internal failures. Binary information based on the oil level in the oil insulated devices are used as input signals to the function. In addition, the function generates alarms based on the received information.

#### 17.3.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for Liquid medium supervision SSIML can be set via local HMI or Protection and Control Manager PCM600.

**Operation**: This is used to disable/enable the operation of liquid medium supervision i.e. Off/On.

**LevelAlarmLimit**: This is used to set the limit for a level alarm condition in the oil insulated device.
**LevelLOLimit:** This is used to set the limit for a level lockout condition in the oil insulated device.

**TempAlarmLimit:** This is used to set the limit for a temperature alarm condition in the oil insulated device.

**TempLOLimit:** This is used to set the limit for a temperature lockout condition in the oil insulated device.

tLevelAlarm: This is used to set the time delay for a level alarm indication, given in s.

tLevelLockOut: This is used to set the time delay for a level lockout indication, given in s.

tTempAlarm: This is used to set the time delay for a temperature alarm indication, given in s.

tTempLockOut: This is used to set the time delay for a temperature lockout indication, given in s.

tResetLevelAlm: This is used for the level alarm indication to reset after a set time delay in s.

tResetLevelLO: This is used for the level lockout indication to reset after a set time delay in s.

tResetTempLO: This is used for the temperature lockout indication to reset after a set time delay in s.

tResetTempAlm: This is used for the temperature alarm indication to reset after a set time delay in s.

### 17.4 Breaker monitoring SSCBR

#### 17.4.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Breaker monitoring</td>
<td>SSCBR</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 17.4.2 Application

The circuit breaker maintenance is usually based on regular time intervals or the number of operations performed. This has some disadvantages because there could be a number of abnormal operations or few operations with high-level currents within the predetermined maintenance interval. Hence, condition-based maintenance scheduling is an optimum solution in assessing the condition of circuit breakers.

**Circuit breaker contact travel time**

Auxiliary contacts provide information about the mechanical operation, opening time and closing time of a breaker. Detecting an excessive traveling time is essential to indicate the need for maintenance of the circuit breaker mechanism. The excessive travel time can be due to problems in the driving mechanism or failures of the contacts.

**Circuit breaker status**

Monitoring the breaker status ensures proper functioning of the features within the protection relay such as breaker control, breaker failure and autoreclosing. The breaker status is monitored using breaker auxiliary contacts. The breaker status is indicated by the binary outputs. These signals indicate whether the circuit breaker is in an open, closed or error state.
Remaining life of circuit breaker

Every time the breaker operates, the circuit breaker life reduces due to wear. The wear in a breaker depends on the interrupted current. For breaker maintenance or replacement at the right time, the remaining life of the breaker must be estimated. The remaining life of a breaker can be estimated using the maintenance curve provided by the circuit breaker manufacturer.

Circuit breaker manufacturers provide the number of make-break operations possible at various interrupted currents. An example is shown in figure 215.

Figure 215: An example for estimating the remaining life of a circuit breaker

Calculation for estimating the remaining life

The graph shows that there are 10000 possible operations at the rated operating current and 900 operations at 10 kA and 50 operations at rated fault current. Therefore, if the interrupted current is 10 kA, one operation is equivalent to 10000/900 = 11 operations at the rated current. It is assumed that prior to tripping, the remaining life of a breaker is 10000 operations.

Remaining life calculation for three different interrupted current conditions is explained below.

- Breaker interrupts at and below the rated operating current, that is, 2 kA, the remaining life of the CB is decreased by 1 operation and therefore, 9999 operations remaining at the rated operating current.
- Breaker interrupts between rated operating current and rated fault current, that is, 10 kA, one operation at 10kA is equivalent to 10000/900 = 11 operations at the rated current. The
remaining life of the CB would be \((10000 - 10) = 9989\) at the rated operating current after one operation at 10 kA.

- Breaker interrupts at and above rated fault current, that is, 50 kA, one operation at 50 kA is equivalent to \(10000/50 = 200\) operations at the rated operating current. The remaining life of the CB would become \((10000 - 200) = 9800\) operations at the rated operating current after one operation at 50 kA.

**Accumulated energy**

Monitoring the contact erosion and interrupter wear has a direct influence on the required maintenance frequency. Therefore, it is necessary to accurately estimate the erosion of the contacts and condition of interrupters using cumulative summation of \(I^y\). The factor "\(y\)" depends on the type of circuit breaker. The energy values were accumulated using the current value and exponent factor for CB contact opening duration. When the next CB opening operation is started, the energy is accumulated from the previous value. The accumulated energy value can be reset to initial accumulation energy value by using the Reset accumulating energy input, RSTIPOW.

**Circuit breaker operation cycles**

Routine breaker maintenance like lubricating breaker mechanism is based on the number of operations. A suitable threshold setting helps in preventive maintenance. This can also be used to indicate the requirement for oil sampling for dielectric testing in case of an oil circuit breaker.

**Circuit breaker operation monitoring**

By monitoring the activity of the number of operations, it is possible to calculate the number of days the breaker has been inactive. Long periods of inactivity degrade the reliability for the protection system.

**Circuit breaker spring charge monitoring**

For normal circuit breaker operation, the circuit breaker spring should be charged within a specified time. Detecting a long spring charging time indicates the time for circuit breaker maintenance. The last value of the spring charging time can be given as a service value.

**Circuit breaker gas pressure indication**

For proper arc extinction by the compressed gas in the circuit breaker, the pressure of the gas must be adequate. Binary input available from the pressure sensor is based on the pressure levels inside the arc chamber. When the pressure becomes too low compared to the required value, the circuit breaker operation is blocked.

17.4.3 **Setting guidelines**

The breaker monitoring function is used to monitor different parameters of the circuit breaker. The breaker requires maintenance when the number of operations has reached a predefined value. For proper functioning of the circuit breaker, it is also essential to monitor the circuit breaker operation, spring charge indication or breaker wear, travel time, number of operation cycles and accumulated energy during arc extinction.
Since there is no current measurement in SAM600-IO, evaluation of the following parameters are not possible in the circuit breaker condition monitoring function (SSCBR):

- Circuit breaker status
- Remaining life of the circuit breaker
- Contact erosion estimation
- Circuit breaker contact travel time

Ensure that OPENPOS, CLOSEPOS, INVDPOS, CBLIFEAL, IPOWALPH, IPOWLOPH, TRVTOPAL and TRVTCLAL signals are not used in SAM600-IO.

### 17.4.3.1 Setting procedure on the IED

The parameters for breaker monitoring (SSCBR) can be set via the local HMI or Protection and Control Manager (PCM600).

Common base IED values for primary current ($I_{Base}$), primary voltage ($U_{Base}$) and primary power ($S_{Base}$) are set in Global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

**GlobalBaseSel**: It is used to select a GBASVAL function for reference of base values.

- **Operation**: On or Off.
- **$I_{Base}$**: Base phase current in primary A. This current is used as reference for current settings.
- **OpenTimeCorr**: Correction factor for circuit breaker opening travel time.
- **CloseTimeCorr**: Correction factor for circuit breaker closing travel time.
- **tTrOpenAlm**: Setting of alarm level for opening travel time.
- **tTrCloseAlm**: Setting of alarm level for closing travel time.
- **OperAlmLevel**: Alarm limit for number of mechanical operations.
- **OperLOLevel**: Lockout limit for number of mechanical operations.
- **CurrExponent**: Current exponent setting for energy calculation. It varies for different types of circuit breakers. This factor ranges from 0.5 to 3.0.
- **AccStopCurr**: RMS current setting below which calculation of energy accumulation stops. It is given as a percentage of $I_{Base}$.
- **ContTrCorr**: Correction factor for time difference in auxiliary and main contacts’ opening time.
- **AlmAccCurrPwr**: Setting of alarm level for accumulated energy.
- **LOAccCurrPwr**: Lockout limit setting for accumulated energy.
- **SpChAlmTime**: Time delay for spring charging time alarm.
- **tDGasPresAlm**: Time delay for gas pressure alarm.
- **tDGasPresLO**: Time delay for gas pressure lockout.
- **DirCoef**: Directional coefficient for circuit breaker life calculation.
- **RatedOperCurr**: Rated operating current of the circuit breaker.
RatedFltCurr: Rated fault current of the circuit breaker.

OperNoRated: Number of operations possible at rated current.

OperNoFault: Number of operations possible at rated fault current.

CBLifeAlmLevel: Alarm level for circuit breaker remaining life.

AccSelCal: Selection between the method of calculation of accumulated energy.

OperTimeDelay: Time delay between change of status of trip output and start of main contact separation.

17.5 Event function EVENT

17.5.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Event function</td>
<td>EVENT</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

17.5.2 Application

When using a Substation Automation system with LON or SPA communication, time-tagged events can be sent at change or cyclically from the IED to the station level. These events are created from any available signal in the IED that is connected to the Event function (EVENT). The EVENT function block is used for LON and SPA communication.

Analog, integer and double indication values are also transferred through the EVENT function.

17.5.3 Setting guidelines

The input parameters for the Event function (EVENT) can be set individually via the local HMI (Main Menu/Settings / IED Settings / Monitoring / Event Function) or via the Parameter Setting Tool (PST).

EventMask (Ch_1 - 16)
The inputs can be set individually as:

- NoEvents
- OnSet, at pick-up of the signal
- OnReset, at drop-out of the signal
- OnChange, at both pick-up and drop-out of the signal
- AutoDetect, the EVENT function makes the reporting decision (reporting criteria for integers have no semantic, prefer to be set by the user)

LONChannelMask or SPACchannelMask
Definition of which part of the event function block that shall generate events:
- Off
- Channel 1-8
- Channel 9-16
- Channel 1-16

**MinRepIntVal (1 - 16)**
A time interval between cyclic events can be set individually for each input channel. This can be set between 0 s to 3600 s in steps of 1 s. It should normally be set to 0, that is, no cyclic communication.

It is important to set the time interval for cyclic events in an optimized way to minimize the load on the station bus.

## 17.6 Disturbance report DRPRDRE

### 17.6.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disturbance report</td>
<td>DRPRDRE</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disturbance report</td>
<td>A1RADR - A4RADR</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disturbance report</td>
<td>B1RBD - B22RBD</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 17.6.2 Application

To get fast, complete and reliable information about disturbances in the primary and/or in the secondary system it is very important to gather information on fault currents, voltages and events. It is also important having a continuous event-logging to be able to monitor in an overview perspective. These tasks are accomplished by the disturbance report function DRPRDRE and facilitate a better understanding of the power system behavior and related primary and secondary equipment during and after a disturbance. An analysis of the recorded data provides valuable information that can be used to explain a disturbance, basis for change of IED setting plan, improve existing equipment, and so on. This information can also be used in a longer perspective when planning for and designing new installations, that is, a disturbance recording could be a part of Functional Analysis (FA).

Disturbance report DRPRDRE, always included in the IED, acquires sampled data of all selected analog and binary signals connected to the function blocks that is,

- Maximum 30 external analog signals,
- 10 internal derived analog signals, and
- 352 binary signals

Disturbance report function is a common name for several functions; Indications (IND), Event recorder (ER), Event list (EL), Trip value recorder (TVR), Disturbance recorder (DR) and Fault locator (FL).
Disturbance report function is characterized by great flexibility as far as configuration, starting conditions, recording times, and storage capacity are concerned. Thus, disturbance report is not dependent on the operation of protective functions, and it can record disturbances that were not discovered by protective functions for one reason or another. Disturbance report can be used as an advanced stand-alone disturbance recorder.

Every disturbance report recording is saved in the IED. The same applies to all events, which are continuously saved in a ring-buffer. Local HMI can be used to get information about the recordings, and the disturbance report files may be uploaded in the PCM600 using the Disturbance handling tool, for report reading or further analysis (using WaveWin, that can be found on the PCM600 installation CD). The user can also upload disturbance report files using FTP or MMS (over 61850–8–1) clients.

If the IED is connected to a station bus (IEC 61850-8-1), the disturbance recorder (record made and fault number) and the fault locator information are available. The same information is obtainable if IEC 60870-5-103 is used.

### 17.6.3 Setting guidelines

The setting parameters for the Disturbance report function DRPRDRE are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

It is possible to handle up to 40 analog and 352 binary signals, either internal signals or signals coming from external inputs. The binary signals are identical in all functions that is, Disturbance recorder (DR), Event recorder (ER), Indication (IND), Trip value recorder (TVR) and Event list (EL) function.

User-defined names of binary and analog input signals are set using PCM600. The analog and binary signals appear with their user-defined names. The name is used in all related functions (Disturbance recorder (DR), Event recorder (ER), Indication (IND), Trip value recorder (TVR) and Event list (EL)).

Figure 216 shows the relations between Disturbance report, included functions and function blocks. Event list (EL), Event recorder (ER) and Indication (IND) uses information from the binary input function blocks (BxRBDR). Trip value recorder (TVR) uses analog information from the analog input function blocks (AxRADR), which is used by Fault locator (FL) after estimation by Trip Value Recorder (TVR). Disturbance report function acquires information from both AxRADR and BxRBDR.
**Figure 216: Disturbance report functions and related function blocks**

For Disturbance report function there are a number of settings which also influences the sub-functions.

Three LED indications placed above the LCD screen makes it possible to get quick status information about the IED.

- **Green LED:**
  - Steady light: In Service
  - Flashing light: Internal failure
  - Dark: No power supply

- **Yellow LED:**
  - Steady light: Triggered on binary signal N with SetLEDx = Start (or Start and Trip)
  - Flashing light: The IED is in test mode

- **Red LED:**
  - Steady light: Triggered on binary signal N with SetLEDx = Trip (or Start and Trip)
  - Flashing: The IED is in configuration mode

**Operation**

The operation of Disturbance report function DRPRDRE has to be set On or Off. If Off is selected, note that no disturbance report is registered, and none sub-function will operate (the only general parameter that influences Event list (EL)).
Operation = Off:

- Disturbance reports are not stored.
- LED information (yellow - start, red - trip) is not stored or changed.

Operation = On:

- Disturbance reports are stored, disturbance data can be read from the local HMI and from a PC for example using PCM600.
- LED information (yellow - start, red - trip) is stored.

Every recording will get a number (0 to 999) which is used as identifier (local HMI, disturbance handling tool and IEC 61850). An alternative recording identification is date, time and sequence number. The sequence number is automatically increased by one for each new recording and is reset to zero at midnight. The maximum number of recordings stored in the IED is 100. The oldest recording will be overwritten when a new recording arrives (FIFO).

To be able to delete disturbance records, Operation parameter has to be On.

The maximum number of recordings depend on each recordings total recording time. Long recording time will reduce the number of recordings to less than 100.

The IED flash disk should NOT be used to store any user files. This might cause disturbance recordings to be deleted due to lack of disk space.

17.6.3.1 Recording times

The different recording times for Disturbance report are set (the pre-fault time, post-fault time, and limit time). These recording times affect all sub-functions more or less but not the Event list (EL) function.

Prefault recording time \((\text{PreFaultRecT})\) is the recording time before the starting point of the disturbance. The setting should be at least 0.1 s to ensure enough samples for the estimation of pre-fault values in the Trip value recorder (TVR) function.

Postfault recording time \((\text{PostFaultRecT})\) is the maximum recording time after the disappearance of the trig-signal (does not influence the Trip value recorder (TVR) function).

Recording time limit \((\text{TimeLimit})\) is the maximum recording time after trig. The parameter limits the recording time if some trigging condition (fault-time) is very long or permanently set (does not influence the Trip value recorder (TVR) function).

Operation in test mode

If the IED is in test mode and \(\text{OpModeTest} = \text{Off}\). Disturbance report function does not save any recordings and no LED information is displayed.

If the IED is in test mode and \(\text{OpModeTest} = \text{On}\). Disturbance report function works in normal mode and the status is indicated in the saved recording.
**Post Retrigger**

Disturbance report function does not automatically respond to any new trig condition during a recording, after all signals set as trigger signals have been reset. However, under certain circumstances the fault condition may reoccur during the post-fault recording, for instance by automatic reclosing to a still faulty power line.

In order to capture the new disturbance it is possible to allow retriggering (PostRetrig = On) during the post-fault time. In this case a new, complete recording will start and, during a period, run in parallel with the initial recording.

When the retrig parameter is disabled (PostRetrig = Off), a new recording will not start until the post-fault (PostFaultrecT or TimeLimit) period is terminated. If a new trig occurs during the post-fault period and lasts longer than the proceeding recording a new complete recording will be started.

Disturbance report function can handle a maximum of 3 simultaneous disturbance recordings.

### 17.6.3.2 Binary input signals

Up to 352 binary signals can be selected among internal logical and binary input signals. The configuration tool is used to configure the signals.

For each of the 352 signals, it is also possible to select if the signal is to be used as a trigger for the start of the Disturbance report and if the trigger should be activated on positive (1) or negative (0) slope.

- **OperationN**: Disturbance report may trig for binary input N (On) or not (Off).
- **TrigLevelN**: Trig on positive (Trig on 1) or negative (Trig on 0) slope for binary input N.
- **Func103N**: Function type number (0-255) for binary input N according to IEC-60870-5-103, that is, 128: Distance protection, 160: overcurrent protection, 176: transformer differential protection and 192: line differential protection.
- **Info103N**: Information number (0-255) for binary input N according to IEC-60870-5-103, that is, 69-71: Trip L1-L3, 78-83: Zone 1-6.

See also description in the chapter IEC 60870-5-103.

### 17.6.3.3 Analog input signals

Up to 40 analog signals can be selected among internal analog and analog input signals. PCM600 is used to configure the signals.

For retrieving remote data from LDCM module, the Disturbance report function should be connected to a 8 ms SMAI function block if this is the only intended use for the remote data.

The analog trigger of Disturbance report is not affected if analog input M is to be included in the disturbance recording or not (OperationM = On/Off).

If **OperationM** = Off, no waveform (samples) will be recorded and reported in graph. However, Trip value, pre-fault and fault value will be recorded and reported. The input channel can still be used to trig the disturbance recorder.

If **OperationM** = On, waveform (samples) will also be recorded and reported in graph.

- **NomValueM**: Nominal value for input M.
OverTrigOpM, UnderTrigOpM: Over or Under trig operation, Disturbance report may trig for high/low level of analog input M (On) or not (Off).

OverTrigLeM, UnderTrigLeM: Over or under trig level, Trig high/low level relative nominal value for analog input M in percent of nominal value.

### 17.6.3.4 Sub-function parameters

All functions are in operation as long as Disturbance report is in operation.

**Indications**

*IndicationMaN*: Indication mask for binary input N. If set *(Show)*, a status change of that particular input, will be fetched and shown in the disturbance summary on local HMI. If not set *(Hide)*, status change will not be indicated.

*SetLEDN*: Set red LED on local HMI in front of the IED if binary input N changes status.

**Disturbance recorder**

*OperationM*: Analog channel M is to be recorded by the disturbance recorder *(On)* or not *(Off)*.

If *OperationM* = *Off*, no waveform (samples) will be recorded and reported in graph. However, Trip value, pre-fault and fault value will be recorded and reported. The input channel can still be used to trig the disturbance recorder.

If *OperationM* = *On*, waveform (samples) will also be recorded and reported in graph.

**Setting information**

*SetInfoInDrep*: Parameter used to enable or disable the settings information in disturbance header.

**Event recorder**

Event recorder (ER) function has no dedicated parameters.

**Trip value recorder**

*ZeroAngleRef*: The parameter defines which analog signal that will be used as phase angle reference for all other analog input signals. This signal will also be used for frequency measurement and the measured frequency is used when calculating trip values. It is suggested to point out a sampled voltage input signal, for example, a line or busbar phase voltage (channel 1-30).

**Event list**

Event list (EL) (SOE) function has no dedicated parameters.

### 17.6.3.5 Consideration

The density of recording equipment in power systems is increasing, since the number of modern IEDs, where recorders are included, is increasing. This leads to a vast number of recordings at every single disturbance and a lot of information has to be handled if the recording functions do not have proper settings. The goal is to optimize the settings in each IED to be able to capture just valuable disturbances and to maximize the number that is possible to save in the IED.

The recording time should not be longer than necessary *(PostFaultrecT and TimeLimit)*.

* Should the function record faults only for the protected object or cover more?
* How long is the longest expected fault clearing time?
* Is it necessary to include reclosure in the recording or should a persistent fault generate a second recording *(PostRetrig)*?
Minimize the number of recordings:

- **Binary signals**: Use only relevant signals to start the recording that is, protection trip, carrier receive and/or start signals.
- **Analog signals**: The level triggering should be used with great care, since unfortunate settings will cause enormously number of recordings. If nevertheless analog input triggering is used, chose settings by a sufficient margin from normal operation values. Phase voltages are not recommended for trigging.

![Warning icon]

There is a risk of flash wear out if the disturbance report triggers too often.

Remember that values of parameters set elsewhere are linked to the information on a report. Such parameters are, for example, station and object identifiers, CT and VT ratios.

### 17.7 Logical signal status report BINSTATREP

#### 17.7.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Logical signal status report</td>
<td>BINSTATREP</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 17.7.2 Application

The Logical signal status report (BINSTATREP) function makes it possible to poll signals from various other function blocks.

BINSTATREP has 16 inputs and 16 outputs. The output status follows the inputs and can be read from the local HMI or via SPA communication.

When an input is set, the respective output is set for a user defined time. If the input signal remains set for a longer period, the output will remain set until the input signal resets.

![Logical signal status report diagram](IEC09000732-1-en.vsd)

*Figure 217: BINSTATREP logical diagram*

#### 17.7.3 Setting guidelines

The pulse time $t$ is the only setting for the Logical signal status report (BINSTATREP). Each output can be set or reset individually, but the pulse time will be the same for all outputs in the entire BINSTATREP function.
17.8 Fault locator LMBRFLO

17.8.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fault locator</td>
<td>LMBRFLO</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

17.8.2 Application

The main objective of line protection and monitoring IEDs is fast, selective and reliable operation for faults on a protected line section. Besides this, information on distance to fault is very important for those involved in operation and maintenance. Reliable information on the fault location greatly decreases the downtime of the protected lines and increases the total availability of a power system.

The fault locator is started with the input CALCDIST to which trip signals indicating in-line faults are connected, typically distance protection zone 1 and accelerating zone or the line differential protection. The disturbance report must also be started for the same faults since the function uses pre- and post-fault information from the trip value recorder function (TVR).

Beside this information the function must be informed about faulted phases for correct loop selection (phase selective outputs from differential protection, distance protection, directional OC protection, and so on). The following loops are used for different types of faults:

- for 3 phase faults: loop L1 - L2.
- for 2 phase faults: the loop between the faulted phases.
- for 2 phase-to-earth faults: the loop between the faulted phases.
- for phase-to-earth faults: the phase-to-earth loop.

LMBRFLO function indicates the distance to fault as a percentage of the line length, in kilometers or miles as selected on the local HMI. LineLengthUnit setting is used to select the unit of length either, in kilometer or miles for the distance to fault. The distance to the fault, which is calculated with a high accuracy, is stored together with the recorded disturbances. This information can be read on the local HMI, uploaded to PCM600 and is available on the station bus according to IEC 61850–8–1.

The distance to fault can be recalculated on the local HMI by using the measuring algorithm for different fault loops or for changed system parameters.

17.8.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for the Fault locator function are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

The Fault locator algorithm uses phase voltages, phase currents and residual current in observed bay (protected line) and residual current from a parallel bay (line, which is mutual coupled to protected line).

The Fault locator has close connection to the Disturbance report function. All external analog inputs (channel 1-30), connected to the Disturbance report function, are available to the Fault locator and the function uses information calculated by the Trip value recorder. After allocation of analog inputs to the Disturbance report function, the user has to point out which analog inputs to be used by the Fault locator. According to the default settings the first four
analog inputs are currents and next three are voltages in the observed bay (no parallel line expected since chosen input is set to zero). Use the Parameter Setting tool within PCM600 for changing analog configuration.

The measured phase voltages can be fine tuned with the parameters UL1Gain, UL2Gain and UL3Gain to further increase the accuracy of the fault locator.

The list of parameters explains the meaning of the abbreviations. Figure 218 also presents these system parameters graphically. Note, that all impedance values relate to their primary values and to the total length of the protected line.

\[
\begin{align*}
Z_{0m} &= Z_{0m} + jX_{0m} \\
R_{1A} + jX_{1A} &= Z_{0m} \\
R_{IL} + jX_{IL} &= Z_{om} + jX_{om} \\
R_{1B} + jX_{1B} &= Z_{0m} \\
R_{0L} + jX_{0L} &= R_{1L} + jX_{1L} \\
R_{0L} + jX_{0L} &= R_{1L} + jX_{1L} \\
\end{align*}
\]

**Figure 218:** Simplified network configuration with network data, required for settings of the fault location-measuring function

For a single-circuit line (no parallel line), the figures for mutual zero-sequence impedance \(X_{0M}, R_{0M}\) and analog input are set at zero.

Power system specific parameter settings are not general settings but specific setting included in the setting groups, that is, this makes it possible to change conditions for the Fault locator with short notice by changing setting group.

The source impedance is not constant in the network. However, this has a minor influence on the accuracy of the distance-to-fault calculation, because only the phase angle of the distribution factor has an influence on the accuracy. The phase angle of the distribution factor is normally very low and practically constant, because the positive sequence line impedance, which has an angle close to 90°, dominates it. Always set the source impedance resistance to values other than zero. If the actual values are not known, the values that correspond to the source impedance characteristic angle of 85° give satisfactory results.

### 17.8.3.1 Connection of analog currents

Connection diagram for analog currents included IN from parallel line shown in figure 219.
17.9 Limit counter L4UFCNT

17.9.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Limit counter</td>
<td>L4UFCNT</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

17.9.2 Application

Limit counter (L4UFCNT) is intended for applications where positive and/or negative flanks on a binary signal need to be counted.

The limit counter provides four independent limits to be checked against the accumulated counted value. The four limit reach indication outputs can be utilized to initiate proceeding actions. The output indicators remain high until the reset of the function.

It is also possible to initiate the counter from a non-zero value by resetting the function to the wanted initial value provided as a setting.

Figure 219: Example of connection of parallel line IN for Fault locator LMBRFLO
If applicable, the counter can be set to stop or rollover to zero and continue counting after reaching the maximum count value. The steady overflow output flag indicates the next count after reaching the maximum count value. It is also possible to set the counter to rollover and indicate the overflow as a pulse, which lasts up to the first count after rolling over to zero. In this case, periodic pulses will be generated at multiple overflow of the function.

17.9.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters for Limit counter L4UFCNT are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

17.10 Running hour-meter TEILGAPC

17.10.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function Description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Running hour-meter</td>
<td>TEILGAPC</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

17.10.2 Application

The function is used for user-defined logics and it can also be used for different purposes internally in the IED. An application example is to accumulate the total running/energized time of the generator, transformer, reactor, capacitor bank or even line.

Settable time limits for warning and alarm are provided. The time limit for overflow indication is fixed to 99999.9 hours. At overflow the accumulated time resets and the accumulation starts from zero again.

17.10.3 Setting guidelines

The settings $t_{\text{Alarm}}$ and $t_{\text{Warning}}$ are user settable limits defined in hours. The achievable resolution of the settings is 0.1 hours (6 minutes).

$t_{\text{Alarm}}$ and $t_{\text{Warning}}$ are independent settings, that is, there is no check if $t_{\text{Alarm}} > t_{\text{Warning}}$.

The limit for the overflow supervision is fixed at 99999.9 hours.

The setting $t_{\text{AddToTime}}$ is a user settable time parameter in hours.

17.11 Estimation of transformer insulation life LOLSPTR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Estimation of transformer winding insulation life</td>
<td>LOLSPTR</td>
<td>3Ihp&gt;T</td>
<td>26/49HS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17.11.1 Application

A typical power transformer is composed of:

- Laminated steel core with copper or aluminium windings
- Solid refined paper insulation
- Highly refined mineral oil as insulating and cooling medium for the entire transformer

The oil is cooled by a separate cooling system using air or water. The core, windings and insulation have specific thermal capabilities.

Losses in the winding and core can cause temperature rises in the transformer, which is transferred to the insulating oil. Failure to limit these temperature rises to the thermal capability of the insulation and core materials can cause premature failure of the transformer.

A transformer is rated at the power output. It can continuously deliver at rated voltage and frequency without exceeding the specified temperature limit. This temperature rise is based on thermal limitations of the core, winding and insulation. Therefore, transformer MVA rating is based on maximum allowable temperature of the insulation. Design standards express temperature limits for transformers exceeds ambient temperature. Use of ambient temperature as a base ensures that a transformer has adequate thermal capacity and independent of daily environmental conditions.

Transformers in the power system are designed to withstand certain overload conditions. The permissible transformer load level is highly depends on the transformer cooling system. Both IEEE and IEC standards have established transformer thermal model for all cooling system types and described formulae for transformer temperature calculation.

Table 52: Different cooling systems used in transformers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cooling system</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OF (non-directed oil flow)</td>
<td>Pumped oil from the radiators or heat exchangers flows freely inside the tank and not forced to flow through the windings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ON (non-directed oil flow)</td>
<td>Oil from the radiators or heat exchangers flows freely inside the tank and not forced to flow through the windings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OD (non-directed oil flow)</td>
<td>Part of pumped oil from the radiators or heat exchangers is forced to flow through the windings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition to types of cooling system used, size of the transformer also determines transformer loading beyond the nameplate rating. Leakage flux density, short circuit force and high electric stress on the insulation increases once size of the transformer increases. Hence, determination of hot spot temperature becomes more complex. Therefore, large transformers are more vulnerable than the smaller ones. Consequences of transformer failures are more severe for larger sizes than for smaller ones.

As per IEC 60076 guidelines, reasonable risk degree for the expected duties are categorized into three types:

- **Distribution transformers**: Only hot spot temperature in the windings and thermal deterioration are considered.
- **Medium power transformers**: Hot spot temperature in the windings, thermal deterioration and variations in the cooling modes are considered.
- **Large power transformer**: Hot spot temperature in the windings, thermal deterioration, variations in the cooling modes and effects of stray leakage flux are considered.
Conductors on top of the winding experience the maximum leakage field and the highest transformer oil temperature. It would be natural to consider that conductors at the top have the hottest spot. However, measurements have shown that the hottest spot might be moved to conductors in the lower part of the winding. Therefore, direct hot spot temperature measurement is difficult. Hence, it should be calculated using the empirical formulae given by relevant standards. The hot spot temperature shall be monitored continuously so that it will not exceed the transformer oil flashover value.

Figure 220 shows the complex transformer temperature distribution. The assumptions made are:

- Oil temperature increases linearly from bottom to top irrespective of the cooling system.
- Winding temperature rise is parallel to the oil temperature rise with constant difference ‘g’ (average winding to average oil temperature gradient).
- The hot spot temperature rise is higher than the top winding temperature rise with the factor called Hot Spot Factor (H).

**Figure 220: Thermal diagram**

Winding hot spot temperature depends on the oil temperature inside the winding, load losses in the winding, cooling type and ambient temperature. For most transformers in service, oil temperature inside a winding is difficult to measure. On the other hand, top oil temperature at the top of the tank is well known, either by measurement or calculation.

In addition to loading of the transformer, oil temperature rise depends also on reduced oil flow inside the winding and malfunctioning/failure of the cooling system (water or air circulation). Therefore, hot spot temperature can be measured by sensing top oil temperature without separately considering the effects of oil flow blockage and malfunction of cooler groups.

Normal life expected of the transformer is a conventional reference based on the designed operating condition and ambient temperature. If the transformer load exceeds its rated condition, ageing will accelerate. Consequences of excessive transformer loading leads to unacceptable temperature rise in windings, leads, insulation and oil. When temperature changes, moisture and gas content in the insulation and oil will change.
IEEE C57.91-1995 standard has developed four different loading conditions beyond nameplate to explain the risk involved in the higher operating temperatures, see Figure 221. The four types of loading are:

- **Normal life expectancy**
  - Normal life expectancy loading: The transformer loading is continuous at rated output when operated under usual conditions.

- **Sacrifice of life expectancy**
  - Planned loading beyond nameplate: Restricted to transformers that do not carry a continuous steady load and it is a normal, planned repetitive load.
  - Long time emergency loading: Loading results from the prolonged outage of some system element. This is not a normal operating condition, but may persist for some time.
  - Short time emergency loading: Unusually heavy loading for short time due to occurrence of one or more unwanted events that disturb the normal system loading seriously.

**Figure 221: Typical load cycles for example**

Impact of the increased currents and temperature leads to premature transformer failure and this may have an immediate short term effect or a cumulative long term effect.
• **Short-term effect:** Reduction in dielectric strength due to the possible presence of gas bubbles which leads to super saturation of the oil and reduction in short circuit strength.

• **Long-term effect:** Continuous deterioration of the conductor reduces the transformer life.

Deterioration of insulation reduces mechanical strength and dielectric strength. Heating from heavy overload or large electromagnetic force resulting from short circuit causes expansion and unusual movement of conductors and it leads to turn-to-turn fault.

Insulation aging or deterioration is a time function of temperature, moisture content, and oxygen content. With modern oil preservation systems, the moisture and oxygen contributions to insulation deterioration can be minimized, leaving insulation temperature as the controlling parameter.

Temperature distribution is not uniform in transformers, the part that is operating at the highest temperature normally undergoes the greatest deterioration. Therefore, in aging studies it is usual to consider the aging effects produced by the highest (hottest-spot) temperature. Since many factors influences the cumulative effect of temperature over time which causes transformer insulation deterioration, it is difficult to predict the useful life of the insulation in a transformer with great degree of accuracy. However, this function will help in reducing the accelerated aging of power transformers during overload conditions and thus maximize the transformer operating life.

### Setting guidelines

The parameters for the estimation of transformer insulation life function LOLSPTR are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

Minimum information about the transformer parameters which are required to decide the transformer insulation life are:

1. Top oil temperature rise over ambient temperature at rated load
2. Average conductor temperature rise over ambient temperature at rated load
3. Winding hot spot temperature rise over ambient temperature
4. Load losses at rated load
5. No-Load (core) loss
6. Oil flow design (Directed or non-directed)
7. Weight of core and coil assembly
8. Weight of tank and fittings
9. Weight of oil in the tank and cooling equipment (excluding load tap changer, oil expansion tanks)

For information about 1 to 5, the conditions (load, ambient temperature, tap, etc.) under which the measurements are made should be known. In order to have more precise calculations, load loss at rated and tap extremes or all possible tap connection combinations are required.

*Operation:* Off or On.

*TrafoRating:* Rated transformer power in MVA.

*TrafoType:* This setting is used to set the number of phases in the transformer. The options are:

- *Three Phase Trafo:* The function considers the given transformer as three phase transformer.
- *Single Phase Trafo:* The function considers the given transformer as single phase transformer.
Based on the settings \textit{TrafoRating} and \textit{TrafoType}, transformer parameters are selected for temperature calculations. Both IEEE and IEC standards defines the transformer parameters based on three categories of transformer rating.

In the case of three phase transformers:
- If the transformer rating is less than 2.5 MVA, the function considers this as a distribution transformer.
- If the transformer rating is less than 100 MVA, it is considered as a medium power transformer.
- If the transformer rating is above 100 MVA, it is considered as a larger power transformer.

In the case of single phase transformers:
- If the transformer rating is less than 0.833 MVA, the function considers this as a distribution transformer.
- If the transformer rating is less than 33.3 MVA, it is considered as a medium power transformer.
- If the transformer rating is above 33.3 MVA, it is considered as a larger power transformer.

\textit{NoOfWindings}: This setting is used to set the number of windings in the transformer. The options are:
- \textit{Three winding}: The function considers the given transformer as three winding transformer.
- \textit{Two winding}: The function considers the given transformer as two winding transformer.

Based on the setting \textit{NoOfWindings}, hot spot temperature of the winding 3 is either calculated or assigned as zero.

\textit{ConstSelection}: This setting is used to select the transformer parameters taken either from IEC 60076-7 standard or IEEE C57.96-1995 standard. The options are:
- \textit{IEC}: Transformer parameters like constants, winding and oil exponents will be taken from IEC 60076-7 standard for temperature calculations.
- \textit{IEEE}: Transformer parameters like constants, winding and oil exponents will be taken from IEEE C57.96-1995 standard for temperature calculations.

\textit{CurrSelectMode}: This setting is used to select the current determining method which is used for the load factor calculation. The function takes phase currents of each winding as input. From each winding, only one phase current is considered for load factor calculation. The options are:
- \textit{Average}: The average of all phase currents of winding is considered for calculation.
- \textit{Maximum}: The maximum current out of the all phase currents is considered for calculation.

\textit{TempeUnitMode}: This setting is used to select the temperature unit to be used for the function interface. The options are:
- \textdegree F: The temperature unit will be selected as \textdegree F. Since all calculation formulae needs temperature values in \textdegree C, the temperature inputs are converted into \textdegree C for calculation. Once the calculations are done, the outputs in \textdegree C are converted into \textdegree F.
- \textdegree C: The temperature unit will be selected as \textdegree C. All temperature inputs will be taken as they are and the output is given in \textdegree C.

LOLSPTR can work with (n-1) winding CT availability, that is, if the given transformer has three windings and it has CTs only in two windings, then the function will calculate the missing
winding current based on voltage transformation ratio. Following settings are required to calculate the winding current with available CT input:

**AvailableCT**: Availability of CT connection can be set by this setting. The options are:

- **Winding 1**: Only winding 1 CT is available. This option can be selected when two winding transformer is considered.
- **Winding 2**: Only winding 2 CT is available. This option can be selected when two winding transformer is considered.
- **Winding 1&2**: Only winding 1 and winding 2 CTs are available. This option can be selected when three winding transformer is considered.
- **Winding 1&3**: Only winding 1 and winding 3 CTs are available. This option can be selected when three winding transformer is considered.
- **Winding 2&3**: Only winding 2 and winding 3 CTs are available. This option can be selected when three winding transformer is considered.
- **All windings**: All windings CTs are available. This option can be selected for both two and three winding transformer.

**RatedVoltW1**: This setting is used to set the rated voltage of winding 1 in kV.

**RatedVoltW2**: This setting is used to set the rated voltage of winding 2 in kV.

**RatedVoltW3**: This setting is used to set the rated voltage of winding 3 in kV.

**UPerTap**: This setting is used to set the voltage increment/decrement between two successive tap positions (ΔV) in kV.

Time required for the top oil temperature in relation to ambient temperature to reach its ultimate value is a function of the thermal oil time constant. The function has the following settings related to oil time constant.

**OilTmConstMode**: This setting is used to select the oil time constant mode of input to the function. It has three options:

- **Standard**: Oil time constant is taken from the IEEE or IEC standard as selected for the temperature calculations.
- **User defined**: Oil time constant is provided by the user through setting. The value may be given by the transformer manufacturer.
- **Calculated**: Oil time constant is calculated by the function based on the transformer parameters given by the user.

**OilTimeConst**: This setting is used to get the oil time constant from the user and this will be used when **OilTmConstMode** setting is selected as **User defined**. Likely it is between 1 and 3 hours.

**AvgOilTmpRise**: The top oil temperature is based on the average temperature rise of the lumped mass. In the case of transformer, this would be the average oil temperature. This setting is used to set the average oil temperature rise above ambient temperature in K (Kelvin). This value should be obtained from the manufacturer based on certified heat run test reports conducted at maximum rating given in the name plate.

**CoilCoreMass**: This setting is used to set the transformer coil and core assembly mass. This mass consists of all winding mass, core mass and paper mass of the transformer.

**OilMass**: This setting is used to set the transformer oil mass. This mass consists of free oil mass and oil insulation mass of the transformer.

**TankMass**: This setting is used to set the transformer tank mass. This mass is only the tank and fittings that are in contact with heated oil.
LoadLoss: This setting is used to set the transformer load loss at rated condition.

TTLoadLoss: This setting is used to set the transformer load loss arrived from type test.

NoloadLoss: This setting is used to set the transformer no-load loss.

TTNoloadLoss: This setting is used to set the transformer no-load loss arrived from type test.

Winding time constant is the time for winding temperature to rise over the oil temperature to reach 63.2% of the difference between the final rise and initial rise during a load change. The winding time constant may be estimated from the resistance cooling curve during thermal tests or calculated by the manufacturer using mass of the conductor material. The function has the following settings related to winding time constant.

WdgTmConstMode: This setting is used to select the winding time constant mode of input to the function. It has three options:

- **Standard**: Winding time constant is taken from the IEEE or IEC standard as selected for the temperature calculations.
- **User defined**: Winding time constant is provided by the user through setting. The value may be given by the transformer manufacturer.
- **Calculated**: Winding time constant is calculated by the function based on the transformer parameters given by the user.

WdgTimeConst1: This setting is used to get the winding time constant for winding 1. This is used when the WdgTmConstMode setting is selected as User defined.

WdgTimeConst2: This setting is used to get the winding time constant for winding 2. This is used when the WdgTmConstMode setting is selected as User defined.

WdgTimeConst3: This setting is used to get the winding time constant for winding 3. This is used when the WdgTmConstMode setting is selected as User defined.

The winding time constant is likely to be in the order of 5 to 20 minutes.

ConductorType: This setting is used to select the winding material between copper and aluminum. This setting is useful when setting WdgTmConstMode is selected for calculation. This setting has two options:

- **Copper**: Winding material is selected as copper.
- **Aluminum**: Winding material is selected as aluminum.

Winding to oil temperature gradient differs from winding to winding depending on current density in the winding, physical dimensions, cooling system etc., This value can be between 10 to 20°C for both distribution and power transformers. For low current density winding it can be 10°C and for high current density winding it can be 20°C. The settings given below are also used for the calculation of winding time constant.

WdgToOilGrad1: Winding to oil temperature gradient for the winding 1 at rated load.

WdgToOilGrad2: Winding to oil temperature gradient for the winding 2 at rated load.

WdgToOilGrad3: Winding to oil temperature gradient for the winding 3 at rated load.

CuLossW1: This setting is used to set the winding loss at rated load for the winding 1.

CuLossW2: This setting is used to set the winding loss at rated load for the winding 2.

CuLossW3: This setting is used to set the winding loss at rated load for the winding 3.

MassW1: This setting is used to set the mass of the winding 1.
**MassW2**: This setting is used to set the mass of the winding 2.

**MassW3**: This setting is used to set the mass of the winding 3.

Loss ratios at different tap positions are required for the calculation of top oil temperature, especially when the transformer is using online tap changer. This loss ratio is the ratio between load losses to no-load loss. It may vary from 6-7 for distribution transformer and 4-8 for power transformer. Normally it varies from 3 to 11. The function has the following settings related to loss ratio calculation.

**RLRated**: This setting is used to set the ratio of load losses to no-load loss at principal tapping position.

**RLHighRated**: This setting is used to set the ratio of load losses to no-load loss at principal tapping +1 position.

**RLMaxTap**: This setting is used to set the ratio of load losses to no-load loss at maximum tap position where maximum voltage is possible.

**RLMinTap**: This setting is used to set the ratio of load losses to no-load loss at minimum tap position where minimum voltage is possible.

**RatedVoltTap**: This setting is used to set the position number of tap changer at rated voltage.

**HighVoltTap**: This setting is used to set the position number of tap changer at possible maximum voltage.

**LowVoltTap**: This setting is used to set the position number of tap changer at possible minimum voltage.

The following settings are required to perform the calculation of top oil temperature using monthly model of ambient temperature when AMBVALID is low:

**JanAmbTmp**: This setting is used to set the January month average ambient temperature.

**FebAmbTmp**: This setting is used to set the February month average ambient temperature.

**MarchAmbTmp**: This setting is used to set the March month average ambient temperature.

**AprilAmbTmp**: This setting is used to set the April month average ambient temperature.

**MayAmbTmp**: This setting is used to set the May month average ambient temperature.

**JuneAmbTmp**: This setting is used to set the June month average ambient temperature.

**JulyAmbTmp**: This setting is used to set the July month average ambient temperature.

**AugAmbTmp**: This setting is used to set the August month average ambient temperature.

**SepAmbTmp**: This setting is used to set the September month average ambient temperature.

**OctAmbTmp**: This setting is used to set the October month average ambient temperature.

**NovAmbTmp**: This setting is used to set the November month average ambient temperature.

**DecAmbTmp**: This setting is used to set the December month average ambient temperature.

The hot spot temperature calculation is done by estimating the temperature rise between the hot spot and the top oil. This difference is due to stray losses, local oil flows and additional paper on conductor. The function has the following settings related to hot spot to top oil temperature gradient calculation.
**HPTmpRiseW1:** This setting is used to set the hot spot temperature rise of winding 1 above ambient temperature in K (Kelvin).

**HPTmpRiseW2:** This setting is used to set the hot spot temperature rise of winding 2 above ambient temperature in K (Kelvin).

**HPTmpRiseW3:** This setting is used to set the hot spot temperature rise of winding 3 above ambient temperature in K (Kelvin).

**TopOilTmpRise:** This setting is used to set the top oil temperature rise above ambient temperature in K (Kelvin).

The above setting values (HPTmpRiseWX and TopOilTmpRise) should be obtained from the manufacturer based on certified heat run test reports conducted at maximum rating given in the name plate. The IEEE C57.91-1995 also recommends assuming a value of 80 °C for a 65 °C average winding rise and a value of 65 °C for a 55 °C average winding rise on its nameplate, respectively.

**RatedCurrW1:** This setting is used to set the rated RMS current of winding 1 in A.

**RatedCurrW2:** This setting is used to set the rated RMS current of winding 2 in A.

**RatedCurrW3:** This setting is used to set the rated RMS current of winding 3 in A.

**CurrTypeTestW1:** This setting is used to set the RMS value of the current which is applied during the type test in A for winding 1.

**CurrTypeTestW2:** This setting is used to set the RMS value of the current which is applied during the type test in A for winding 2.

**CurrTypeTestW3:** This setting is used to set the RMS value of the current which is applied during the type test in A for winding 3.

The following settings are required to perform the insulation loss of life calculation:

**EnaAgeCalc:** This setting is used to enable or disable the transformer insulation loss of life calculation. It has the following options:

- **Enable:** Transformer insulation age calculation is enabled.
- **Disable:** Transformer insulation age calculation is disabled. The function only calculates up to hot spot temperature and age calculation will not take place.

**InitialLife:** This setting is used to set the transformer initial insulation loss of life. This should be set before implementing the function in service. If it is a newly installed transformer, this setting should be set as zero hours and if it is previously installed transformer then, the user should predetermine the transformer insulation life consumed in hours and set it. If the transformer insulation loss of life value will start from this value and at any time the insulation loss of life value can be reset with this value by activating LOLRST from local HMI reset menu.

**ExpectedLife:** The transformer expected insulation life in hours can be set by this setting. As per IEEE C57.91-1995 the normal life expectancy at a continuous hot spot temperature of 110 °C is 180,000 Hours.

**AgeingRateMeth:** This setting is used to select the method to be used for transformer insulation relative ageing rate calculation between IEC standard method and IEEE standard method. It has the following options:

- **IEC:** Transformer insulation age calculation based on IEC standard method.
- **IEEE:** Transformer insulation age calculation based on IEEE standard method.
**ThermalUpgrade:** This setting is used to select the transformer insulation paper type between thermally upgraded insulation and normal insulation. It has the following options:

- **Upgraded:** The function considers the given transformer has thermally upgraded paper insulation.
- **Normal:** The function considers the given transformer has normal insulation.

**TimeToUpdate:** This setting is used to set the time interval for updating the transformer insulation loss of life calculation outputs LOLINDAY and LOLINYRS. It can be selected as 1 hour / 2 hour / 4 hour / 8 hour / 12 hour / 24 hour depending on user requirement.

Two settable warning levels are available for hot spot temperature with separate outputs. If warning level exceeds for the set time, an alarm is generated.

IEEE C57.96-1995 has suggested maximum temperature limits for the four types of loading, see table 53.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of temperature</th>
<th>Normal life expectancy loading</th>
<th>Planned loading beyond nameplate rating</th>
<th>Long term loading</th>
<th>Short term loading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Insulated winding hot spot temperature in °C</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Top oil temperature in °C</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IEEE standard has also suggested the limits of temperature and load for loads higher than transformer nameplate.

- For distribution transformers with 65°C hot spot temperature rise:
  - Top oil temperature = 120°C
  - Hot spot winding temperature = 200°C
  - Short-time loading (1/2 h or less) = 300%
- For power transformer with 65°C hot spot temperature rise:
  - Top oil temperature = 110°C
  - Hot spot winding temperature = 180°C
  - Maximum loading = 200%

Settings related to warning and alarm are:

**WrnHPTmpLev1:** This setting is used to set the level 1 value for hot spot temperature warning.

**WrnHPTmpLev2:** This setting is used to set the level 2 value for hot spot temperature warning. This should be more than the **WrnHPTmpLev1** setting.

**tDelayToAlarm1:** This setting is used to set the time delay for the level 1 hot spot temperature alarm. This time setting can be less than the winding time constant. For example if the winding time constant is 420 sec, this setting can be 400 sec.

**tDelayToAlarm2:** This setting is used to set the time delay for the level 2 hot spot temperature alarm. This should be less than time setting in **tDelayToAlarm1**.
17.11.3 Setting example

17.11.3.1 Transformer Rated Data

Table 54: Transformer Rated Data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>50 Hz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rated Power</td>
<td>500 MVA / 500 MVA / 20 MVA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage ratio</td>
<td>415 kV / 230 kV / 20 kV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tap changer</td>
<td>±9</td>
<td>1.67% of 230 kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winding 1 rated current</td>
<td>696 A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winding 2 rated current</td>
<td>1255 A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winding 3 rated current</td>
<td>577 A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection Type</td>
<td>YNyn0d1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooling</td>
<td>ONAF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.u. Impedance</td>
<td>0.120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At Base</td>
<td>500 MVA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT ratio Winding 1</td>
<td>1000/1 A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT ratio Winding 2</td>
<td>2000/1 A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT ratio Winding 3</td>
<td>1000/1 A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

17.11.3.2 Setting parameters for insulation loss of life calculation function (LOL1)

Table 55: Setting parameters for insulation loss of life calculation function (LOL1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Short Description</th>
<th>Selected value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operation</td>
<td>Activation of transformer insulation loss of life calculation function</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TrafoRating</td>
<td>Set the transformer rated power of the function on which the parameters are selected</td>
<td>500 MVA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TrafoType</td>
<td>Select the transformer number of phases</td>
<td>Three phase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NoOfWindings</td>
<td>Select the transformer number of windings</td>
<td>Three winding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConstSelection</td>
<td>Select the standard from which the transformer parameters should be taken</td>
<td>IEC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CurrSelectMode</td>
<td>Select the method for the determination of current on which the load factor needs to be calculated</td>
<td>Maximum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TempeUnitMode</td>
<td>Select the unit of temperature should be used in the function</td>
<td>ºC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AvailableCT</td>
<td>Select the available CT connections on the windings</td>
<td>All windings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RatedVoltageW1</td>
<td>Set the winding 1 rated nominal voltage</td>
<td>415.0 kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RatedVoltageW2</td>
<td>Set the winding 2 rated nominal voltage</td>
<td>230.0 kV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>Short Description</th>
<th>Selected value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RatedVoltageW3</td>
<td>Set the winding 3 rated nominal voltage</td>
<td>20.0 kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPerTap</td>
<td>Set the voltage increment or decrement between two successive tap positions</td>
<td>3.84 kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tap changer is with winding 2 and it is mentioned that voltage difference 1.67 % of winding 2 rated voltage.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OilTmConstMode</td>
<td>Select the transformer oil time constant mode of input to the function</td>
<td>Standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OilTimeConst</td>
<td>Set the transformer oil time constant when the oil time constant mode is selected as User defined</td>
<td>9000.0 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AvgOilTmpRise</td>
<td>Set the transformer average oil temperature rise for the calculation of oil time constant</td>
<td>45° C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoilCoreMass</td>
<td>Set the transformer coil and core assembly mass for the calculation of oil time constant</td>
<td>65.0 t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OilMass</td>
<td>Set the transformer oil mass for the calculation of oil time constant</td>
<td>35.0 t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TankMass</td>
<td>Set the transformer tank mass which is having direct contact with heated oil for the calculation of oil time constant</td>
<td>15.0 t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LoadLoss</td>
<td>Set the rated load loss of the transformer for the calculation of oil time constant</td>
<td>10.0 MW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTLoadLoss</td>
<td>Set the load loss of the transformer arrived from the type test for the calculation of oil time constant</td>
<td>10.0 MW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NoloadLoss</td>
<td>Set the rated no-load loss of the transformer for the calculation of oil time constant</td>
<td>2.0 MW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTNoloadLoss</td>
<td>Set the no-load loss of the transformer arrived from the type test for the calculation of oil time constant</td>
<td>2.0 MW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WdgTmConstMode</td>
<td>Select the transformer winding time constant mode of input to the function</td>
<td>Standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WdgTimeConst1</td>
<td>Set the transformer winding time constant for the winding 1 when the winding time constant mode is selected as User defined</td>
<td>420.0 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WdgTimeConst2</td>
<td>Set the transformer winding time constant for the winding 2 when the winding time constant mode is selected as User defined</td>
<td>420.0 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WdgTimeConst3</td>
<td>Set the transformer winding time constant for the winding 3 when the winding time constant mode is selected as User defined</td>
<td>420.0 sec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting</td>
<td>Short Description</td>
<td>Selected value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConductorType</td>
<td>Select the transformer winding material for the winding time constant Calculated</td>
<td>Copper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WdgToOilGrad1</td>
<td>Set the transformer winding to oil temperature gradient for the winding 1 when the winding time constant mode is selected as Calculated</td>
<td>20° C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WdgToOilGrad2</td>
<td>Set the transformer winding to oil temperature gradient for the winding 2 when the winding time constant mode is selected as Calculated</td>
<td>20° C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WdgToOilGrad3</td>
<td>Set the transformer winding to oil temperature gradient for the winding 3 when the winding time constant mode is selected as Calculated</td>
<td>20° C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CuLossW1</td>
<td>Set the transformer winding loss for the winding 1 when the winding time constant mode is selected as Calculated</td>
<td>2.0 MW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CuLossW2</td>
<td>Set the transformer winding loss for the winding 2 when the winding time constant mode is selected as Calculated</td>
<td>4.0 MW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CuLossW3</td>
<td>Set the transformer winding loss for the winding 3 when the winding time constant mode is selected as Calculated</td>
<td>1.0 MW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MassW1</td>
<td>Set the mass of transformer winding 1 when the winding time constant mode is selected as Calculated</td>
<td>10.0 t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MassW2</td>
<td>Set the mass of transformer winding 2 when the winding time constant mode is selected as Calculated</td>
<td>10.0 t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MassW3</td>
<td>Set the mass of transformer winding 3 when the winding time constant mode is selected as Calculated</td>
<td>10.0 t</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RLRated</td>
<td>Set the loss ratio at principal tapping position for the calculation of ratio loss at the given tap position</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RLHighRated</td>
<td>Set the loss ratio at principal tapping +1 position for the calculation of ratio loss at the given tap position</td>
<td>5.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RLMaxTap</td>
<td>Set the loss ratio at maximum tapping position where maximum voltage is possible for the calculation of ratio loss at the given tap position</td>
<td>8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RLMinTap</td>
<td>Set the loss ratio at minimum tapping position where minimum voltage is possible for the calculation of ratio loss at the given tap position</td>
<td>11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RatedVoltTap</td>
<td>Set the rated voltage tap position number</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HighVoltTap</td>
<td>Set the tap position number where maximum voltage is possible</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LowVoltTap</td>
<td>Set the tap position number where minimum voltage is possible</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
### Setting | Short Description | Selected value
--- | --- | ---
JanAmbTmp | Set the January month average ambient temperature for the calculation of top oil temperature when ambient temperature sensor failure/absence | 30° C
FebAmbTmp | Set the February month average ambient temperature for the calculation of top oil temperature when ambient temperature sensor failure/absence | 30° C
MarchAmbTmp | Set the March month average ambient temperature for the calculation of top oil temperature when ambient temperature sensor failure/absence | 30° C
AprilAmbTmp | Set the April month average ambient temperature for the calculation of top oil temperature when ambient temperature sensor failure/absence | 30° C
MayAmbTmp | Set the May month average ambient temperature for the calculation of top oil temperature when ambient temperature sensor failure/absence | 30° C
JuneAmbTmp | Set the June month average ambient temperature for the calculation of top oil temperature when ambient temperature sensor failure/absence | 30° C
JulyAmbTmp | Set the July month average ambient temperature for the calculation of top oil temperature when ambient temperature sensor failure/absence | 30° C
AugAmbTmp | Set the August month average ambient temperature for the calculation of top oil temperature when ambient temperature sensor failure/absence | 30° C
SepAmbTmp | Set the September month average ambient temperature for the calculation of top oil temperature when ambient temperature sensor failure/absence | 30° C
OctAmbTmp | Set the October month average ambient temperature for the calculation of top oil temperature when ambient temperature sensor failure/absence | 30° C
NovAmbTmp | Set the November month average ambient temperature for the calculation of top oil temperature when ambient temperature sensor failure/absence | 30° C
DecAmbTmp | Set the December month average ambient temperature for the calculation of top oil temperature when ambient temperature sensor failure/absence | 30° C
HPTmpRiseW1 | Set the hot spot temperature rise of winding 1 for the calculation of hot spot to top oil temperature gradient | 65° C

Table continues on next page
### Setting | Short Description | Selected value
--- | --- | ---
HPTmpRiseW2 | Set the hot spot temperature rise of winding 2 for the calculation of hot spot to top oil temperature gradient | 65° C

HPTmpRiseW3 | Set the hot spot temperature rise of winding 3 for the calculation of hot spot to top oil temperature gradient | 65° C

TopOilTmpRise | Set the top oil temperature rise for the calculation of hot spot to top oil temperature gradient | 55° C

RatedCurrW1 | Set the rated current of the winding 1 | 696.0 A

RatedCurrW2 | Set the rated current of the winding 2 | 1255.0 A

RatedCurrW3 | Set the rated current of the winding 3 | 577.0 A

CurrTypeTestW1 | Set the current applied to the winding 1 during type test | 696.0 A

CurrTypeTestW2 | Set the current applied to the winding 2 during type test | 1255.0 A

CurrTypeTestW3 | Set the current applied to the winding 3 during type test | 577.0 A

EnaAgeCalc | Enable the transformer insulation loss of life calculation | Enable

InitialLife | Set the initial loss of insulation life | 0.0 Hours

ExpectedLife | Set the expected life of the transformer | 1,80,000 Hours

AgeingRateMeth | Select the ageing rate method of calculation | IEC

ThermalUpgrade | Select the transformer insulation paper type | Upgraded

TimeToUpdate | Set the time interval for the update of loss of life outputs | 1 Hour

WrnHPTmpLev1 | Set the hot spot temperature value for the level 1 warning | 110° C

WrnHPTmpLev2 | Set the hot spot temperature value for the level 2 warning | 120° C

tDelayToAlarm1 | Set the time delay for the alarm level 1 | 1800 sec

tDelayToAlarm2 | Set the time delay for the alarm level 2 | 900 sec

### 17.12 Through fault monitoring PTRSTHR

#### 17.12.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Through fault monitoring</td>
<td>PTRSTHR</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>51TF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 17.12.2 Application

The through fault monitoring function PTRSTHR is used to monitor the mechanical stress on a transformer and place it against its withstand capability. During through faults, the fault-
current magnitude is higher as the allowed overload current range. At low fault current magnitudes which are below the overload capability of the transformer, mechanical effects are considered less important unless the frequency of fault occurrence is high. Since through fault current magnitudes are typically closer to the extreme design capabilities of the transformer, mechanical effects are more significant than thermal effects.

The point of transition between mechanical stress and thermal stress cannot be precisely defined. However, mechanical stresses tend to have a prominent role in larger kilovolt-amps ratings, since the currents are higher. It is important to identify all transformer through faults, capture the energy profile of each individual through fault, and ascertain the consequences of aggregate effects to the transformer.

According to IEEE C57.12.00-1993 standard, transformers rated over 10 MVA come under category IV. For these transformers, a single curve represents both thermal and mechanical damage considerations. The recommended duration limit is based upon the curve in Figure 222. The validity of these damage limit curves cannot be demonstrated by tests since the effects are cumulative over the transformers lifetime. They are based principally on informed engineering judgment and favorable, historical field experience as said in IEEE standard.

![Figure 222: Transformer capability curve for category IV](image)

Low values of 3.5 or fewer times normal base current may result from overloads rather than faults. For such cases, loading guides may indicate different allowable time durations, that is given in Figure 222. The short-circuit currents shown in Figure 222 is the balanced transformer winding currents. The line currents that relate to these winding currents depend upon the transformer connection and the type of fault present. The protection curves only apply to transformers described in the IEEE C57.12.00-1993 standard. For transformers built the prior to early 1970s, consult the manufacturer for short circuit withstand capabilities.
17.12.3 Setting guidelines

17.12.3.1 Setting procedure on the IED

Parameters for the PTRSTHR function are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

17.12.3.2 Consideration of zero sequence currents

Transformer withstand capability against through faults are determined based on fault current flows through the windings. If the winding and CT connections are in star, then CT measures the winding currents which can be used directly for calculations. However, if any one of the windings or the CT is delta connected, then the measured current cannot be used directly for the calculation. This is due to the fact that the zero sequence current cannot be measured if any one of the windings or CT is delta connected. It is important to consider zero sequence currents in order to calculate the $I_2t$ accurately.

Calculation of zero sequence current is difficult when more than one measured current does not have zero sequence current. The function is able to calculate zero sequence current for a winding by knowing the zero sequence currents of other winding(s). The zero sequence current calculation is done numerically by setting $ZSCurrCor = \text{Off or On}$ and does not require any auxiliary transformers or zero sequence traps. However, it is necessary to consider zero sequence currents from every individual winding by proper setting of $ZSCurrCor$ to $\text{Off or On}$.

On the other hand, winding current transformers measure the winding currents directly so that there is no need to calculate winding currents. In these cases, the $ZSCurrCor$ should be set as $\text{Off}$ and $ConnTypeWx$ should be set as $\text{WYE}$.

The following settings are related to the winding current calculation which is set under advanced settings.

Common base IED values for primary current ($IBase$) and primary voltage ($UBase$) for a particular winding are set in global base values for settings function GBASVAL. The settings $GlobalBaseSelW1$, $GlobalBaseSelW2$ and $GlobalBaseSelW3$ in the through fault monitoring function are used to select the corresponding GBASVAL function as a reference.

$GlobalBaseSelW1$: It defines the GBASVAL function instance for the reference of base values for winding 1. Similarly, $GlobalBaseSelW2$ and $GlobalBaseSelW3$ settings shall be used to define the GBASVAL function instance for winding 2 and winding 3 respectively.

$NoOfWindings$: It defines the number of windings in a transformer. It has two options to select between; $Two \text{ windings}$ and $Three \text{ windings}$. When the value $Two \text{ windings}$ is selected, then the third winding related outputs are set to zero. General data in the through fault monitoring report will show zero for all outputs which is related to winding 3 for two-winding configuration.

$ConnTypeW1$: It defines the connection type of winding 1. It has two options to select between; $\text{WYE}$ and $\text{Delta}$. Similarly, connection types shall be set for winding 2 and winding 3 in settings which designated with $W2$ and $W3$ in the settings name. In this case, if more than one winding connection type is $\text{Delta}$, then setting $ZSCurrCor$ shall be set as $\text{Off}$.

$ClockNumberW2$: It defines the phase displacement between winding 1 and winding 2. It has the options to select the clock number between 0 to 11. Similarly, the phase displacement between winding 1 and winding 3 shall be set using setting $ClockNumberW3$. 
17.12.3.3 On-line correction with on-load tap changer position

The PTRSTHR function in the IED has a built-in logic to correct the calculated winding current according to the present tap position of an on-load tap changer. The following settings are related this correction feature which is set under advanced settings:

**OLTCWinding**: It defines where the OLTC's (OLTC1, OLTC2) are physically located. It has 10 options to select between; *Not Used / Winding 1 / Winding 2 / Winding 3 / Winding 1, Winding 2 / Winding 1, Winding 3 / Winding 2, Winding 1 / Winding 2, Winding 3 / Winding 3, Winding 1 / Winding 3, Winding 2.*

- If the value *Not Used* is selected, then the function assumes that both OLTC1 and OLTC2 do not exist and it disregards all other settings related to OLTC's.
- If either one of the *Winding 1 / Winding 2 / Winding 3* values is selected, then the function assumes that only one OLTC has existed and it discards settings related to second OLTC.
- If any values other than the above-mentioned options are selected, then the function assumes that the OLTC1 is located in first mentioned winding and OLTC 2 is located in secondly mentioned winding. For example, if the value *Winding 1, Winding 3* is selected, then the function assumes OLTC1 is located in winding 1 and OLTC2 is located in winding 3.

**LowTapOLTC1**: It defines the tap position number at which minimum voltage is possible for OLTC1.

**RatedTapOLTC1**: It defines the tap position number at which rated current and voltage of that winding for OLTC1.

**HighTapPsOLTC1**: It defines the tap position number at which maximum voltage is possible for OLTC1.

**StepSizeOLTC1**: It defines the change per OLTC1 step (for example, 1.5% of the rated voltage of that winding).

The above settings are defined for OLTC1. Similar settings shall be set for second on-load tap changer designated with OLTC2 in the setting names, for three winding configurations.

17.12.3.4 Through fault detection

The transformer is subjected to electrical and mechanical stress when a fault current flows through it, which is more than the transformer overload current. In general, stress reduces the transformer life and it becomes even worse when stress occurs due to through faults. The function checks the measured RMS currents against the set start level for through fault detection. If the measured RMS current is above the set threshold limit and sustains even after the set time delay, then through fault is detected. This time delay is used to ignore inadvertent detection of faults. Also, for resetting through fault detection, a hysteresis has been considered to avoid oscillations in boundary conditions.

The following settings are related to through fault detection which are set under basic settings:

**W1I>**: It defines the current start value for through fault detection in percentage of winding 1 IB. This setting shall be set higher than the overload capacity of the transformer. This is because currents below 3.5 times the rated current may generate due to overloads. Similarly, current start values shall be set for winding 2 and winding 3 using settings which designated with *W2* and *W3* in the settings name.
\( t_{\text{Min}} \): It defines the minimum duration of fault to start any calculations. It is used to ignore accidental detection and calculations if the fault current drops below the lower threshold level within a short time.

The function monitors the time between last two subsequent through fault detections and it gives a warning signal when the time difference is below the set time. This indicates that the transformer has faults very frequently and it may undergo heavy electrical and mechanical stress. Thereby, the utility can take prior attention and undertake preventive actions to avoid serious consequences. This warning signal resets if no more faults occurred within the same set time.

\( t_{\text{MultiThroFlt}} \): It defines the time window to detect multi through faults. This setting shall be set based on the maximum allowed number of through fault per time period, which may be indicated by the transformer manufacturer.

### 17.12.3.5 Through fault \( \dot{F}t \) alarms

Through fault \( \dot{F}t \) calculations are done for all windings and phase-wise, and when this integration exceeds the set limit in any one phase, an alarm is raised. The \( \dot{F}t \) limit shall be set winding-wise and once the alarm is raised, then control actions can be taken such as changing auto-reclosing settings.

\( \text{Max}i_{\text{2tW1}} \): It defines the \( \dot{F}t \) threshold limit for an individual event or fault per phase. This setting shall be set based on the withstand capability of each winding with respect to corresponding rated current. Similarly, the threshold limit for winding 2 and winding 3 shall be set using \( \text{Max}i_{\text{2tW2}} \) and \( \text{Max}i_{\text{2tW3}} \) settings.

Even though transformer damages caused by through faults are cumulative by nature, individual through fault events also require attention. This is because the impact of several small through faults can be less compared to one heavy through fault.

The PTRSTHR function monitors each through fault events and accumulates the calculated \( \dot{F}t \) values for each fault to determine the cumulative effect. This cumulative \( \dot{F}t \) is calculated for all windings phase-wise and when this value exceeds the cumulative \( \dot{F}t \) set limit, an alarm is raised.

\( \text{Max}i_{\text{2tCmlW1}} \): It defines the cumulative \( \dot{F}t \) threshold limit for all fault events in winding 1, per phase. Similarly, the cumulative threshold limit for winding 2 and winding 3 shall be set using \( \text{Max}i_{\text{2tCmlW2}} \) and \( \text{Max}i_{\text{2tCmlW3}} \) settings.

The alarm signal due to individual event \( \dot{F}t \) will be reset either after the ongoing fault is cleared or the set minimum time delay, whichever is longer. The alarm signal due to cumulative \( \dot{F}t \) is set high continuously until the cumulative \( \dot{F}t \) values are reset to a lower value than the set limit.

\( t_{\text{Pulse}} \): It defines the pulse duration for an individual event \( \dot{F}t \) alarm.

Consider all the calculations based on through fault not as a precise indicator of transformer health. These values indicate that the transformer should be inspected, they do not indicate a strict necessity to shut-down the transformer.

### 17.12.3.6 Initial values for cumulative \( \dot{F}t \) and number of through faults

The calculated cumulative \( \dot{F}t \) values for each phase of windings and number of through faults counts can be reset with preset values using command inputs under the clear menu or via binary inputs. The following parameters which are set under advanced parameters are related to the initial values of cumulative \( \dot{F}t \) and number of through faults.
InitCI2tW1L1: It defines the initial cumulative $I^2t$ value for winding 1 and phase L1. Similarly, initial cumulative $I^2t$ value for L2 and L3 phase shall be set using parameters which are designated with L2 and L3 in the parameters name. For other windings, the initial cumulative $I^2t$ values shall be set using the parameters which are designated with W2 and W3 in the parameters name.

InitTFCntW1L1: It defines the initial fault counter value of winding 1 and phase L1. Similarly, the initial fault counter value for other phases L2 and L3 shall be set using parameters which are designated with L2 and L3 in the parameters name. Also, for other windings the initial fault counter value shall be set using the parameters which are designated with W2 and W3 in the parameters name.

InitCmlTFCnt: It defines the initial overall fault counter value for the transformer.

17.12.4 Setting examples

In order to correctly apply transformer through fault monitoring with proper zero sequence current, correction is needed for:

- Power transformer phase shift (vector group compensation)
- Zero sequence current (zero sequence current consideration)

The through fault monitoring is suitable for all standard three-phase power transformers without any interposing CTs. It is designed with the assumption that all main CTs are star connected. For such applications, it is only necessary to enter CT rated data and power transformer data directly as they are given on the power transformer nameplate. The zero sequence current is then calculated and included in the winding currents itself unless there is more than one delta winding configuration.

However, the IED can also be used in applications where some of the main CTs are connected in delta. In such cases, the ratio for the main CT connected in delta shall be intentionally set to $\sqrt{3} = 1.732$ times smaller than the actual ratio of individual phase CTs (for example, set 462/5 instead of 800/5). In case the ratio is 800/2.88A, often designed for such typical delta connections, set the ratio as 800/5 in the IED.

At the same time, the power transformer vector group shall be set as Yy0 since the IED shall not internally provide any phase angle shift compensation. The necessary phase angle shift compensation will be provided externally by delta connected main CT. All other settings should have the same values irrespective of main CT connections.

Irrespective of the main CT connections (star or delta), online reading and automatic correction for actual load tap changer position can be used in the IED.

17.12.4.1 Typical main CT connections for transformer

Three most typical main CT connections used for transformers are shown in Figure 223. It is assumed that the primary phase sequence is L1-L2-L3.
Figure 223: Main CT connections for transformers

For star connected main CTs, secondary currents fed to the IED:

- Are directly proportional to the measured primary currents
- Are in phase with the measured primary currents
- Contains all sequence components including zero sequence current component

For star connected main CTs, the main CT ratio shall be set as it is in the actual application. The StarPoint parameter, for the particular star connection shown in Figure 223, shall be set as ToObject. If star connected main CTs have their star point away from the protected transformer, this parameter shall be set as FromObject.

For delta DAC connected main CTs, secondary currents fed to the IED:

- Are increased $\sqrt{3}$ times (1.732 times) in comparison with star connected CTs
- Lag by 30° the primary winding currents (this CT connection rotates currents by 30° in clockwise direction)
- Does not contain zero sequence current component and consequently winding currents are not properly measured for all types of faults

For DAC delta connected main CTs, the ratio shall be set for $\sqrt{3}$ times smaller than the actual ratio of individual phase CTs. The StarPoint parameter, for the particular star connection shall be set as ToObject.

The delta DAC connected main CTs must be connected exactly as shown in Figure 223.

For delta DAB connected main CTs, secondary currents fed to the IED:

- Are increased $\sqrt{3}$ times (1.732 times) in comparison with star connected CTs
- Lead by 30° the primary winding currents (this CT connection rotates currents by 30° in anti-clockwise direction)
- Does not contain zero sequence current component and consequently winding currents are not properly measured for all types of faults

For DAB delta connected, main CT ratio shall be set $\sqrt{3}$ times smaller than the actual ratio of individual phase CTs. The StarPoint parameter for this particular connection shall be set as ToObject.
The delta DAB connected main CTs must be connected exactly as shown in Figure 223.

For more detailed information regarding CT data settings, refer to Section Application examples.

It is strongly recommended to use star connected main CTs on all sides of the monitored power transformer.

17.12.4.2 Application examples for power transformers

Three application examples are presented here and each one has the following solutions:

- Solution 1: with all main CTs star connected
- Solution 2: with delta connected main CT on Y (i.e., star) connected sides of the protected power transformer

The following settings are given for each solution:

- Input CT channels on the transformer input modules
- General settings for the transformer through fault monitoring where specific data about monitored power transformer is entered.

Example 1: Star-delta connected power transformer without on-load tap changer

Single line diagrams for two possible solutions for such type of power transformer with all relevant application data is given in Figure 224.
Figure 224: Star-delta connected power transformer solutions

For this particular power transformer, the 69 kV side phase-to-earth no-load voltages lead the 12.5 kV side phase-to-earth no-load voltages by 30 degrees. Thus, ensure that the HV currents are rotated by 30° in the clockwise direction when external phase angle shift compensation is done by connecting main HV CTs in delta (as shown in Figure 224, right-hand side). Therefore, the DAC delta CT connection must be used for 69 kV CTs in order to put 69 kV & 12.5 kV currents in phase.

In order to ensure proper application of the IED for this power transformer, proceed as follows:

1. Ensure that HV & LV CTs are connected to 5 A CT inputs in the IED.
2. For the second solution, make sure that HV delta connected CTs are DAC connected.
3. For star connected CTs, make sure how they are star-connected (i.e., earthed) to/from the protected transformer.
4. Enter the settings for all three CT input channels used for the LV side CTs as shown in Table 56.

Table 56: LV side CTs input channels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting parameter</th>
<th>Selected value for both solutions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CTprim</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTsec</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTStarPoint</td>
<td>ToObject</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Enter the settings for all three CT input channels used for the HV side CTs as shown in Table 57.
Table 57: HV side CTs input channels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting parameter</th>
<th>Selected value for solution 1 (star connected CT)</th>
<th>Selected value for solution 2 (delta connected CT)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CTprim</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>$\frac{300}{\sqrt{3}} = 173$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(To compensate for delta connected CTs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTsec</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTStarPoint</td>
<td>FromObject</td>
<td>ToObject</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Enter the values for the general settings of the PTRSTHR function as shown in Table 58.

Table 58: Through fault monitoring function general settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting parameter</th>
<th>Select value for solution 1 (star connected CT)</th>
<th>Select value for solution 2 (delta connected CT)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ConnTypeW1</td>
<td>WYE (Y)</td>
<td>WYE (Y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConnTypeW2</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>WYE (Y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClockNumberW2</td>
<td>1 [30 deg lag]</td>
<td>0 [0 deg]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZSCurrCor</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OLTCWinding</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) To compensate for delta connected CTs
2) Zero-sequence current is removed by connecting main CTs in delta

Example 2: Delta-star connected power transformer without tap charger

Single line diagrams for two possible solutions for such type of power transformer with all relevant application data is given in Figure 225.
Figure 225: Delta-star connected power transformer solutions

For this particular power transformer, the 115 kV side phase-to-earth no-load voltages lead the 24.9 kV side phase-to-earth no-load voltages by 30 degrees. Thus, ensure that the 24.9 kV currents are rotated by 30° in the anti-clockwise direction when external phase angle shift compensation is done by connecting main 24.9 kV CTs in delta (as shown in Figure 225, right-hand side). Therefore, the DAB CT connection must be used for 24.9 kV CTs in order to put 115 kV & 24.9 kV currents in phase.

In order to ensure proper application of the IED for this power transformer, proceed as follows:

1. Ensure that HV & LV CTs are connected to 5 A CT inputs in the IED.
2. For the second solution, make sure that LV delta connected CTs are DAB connected.
3. For star connected CTs, make sure how they are star connected (i.e., earthed) to/from the protected transformer.
4. Enter the settings for all three CT input channels used for the HV side CTs as shown in Table 59.

Table 59: HV side CTs input channels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting parameter</th>
<th>Selected value for both solutions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CTprim</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTsec</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTStarPoint</td>
<td>ToObject</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Enter the settings for all three CT input channels used for the LV side CTs as shown in Table 60.
Table 60: LV side CTs input channels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting parameter</th>
<th>Selected value for solution 1 (star connected CT)</th>
<th>Selected value for solution 2 (delta connected CT)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CTprim</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>1500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>$\frac{1500}{\sqrt{3}} = 866$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(To compensate for delta connected CTs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTsec</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTStarPoint</td>
<td>ToObject</td>
<td>ToObject</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Enter the values for the general settings of the PTRSTHR function as shown in Table 61.

Table 61: Through fault monitoring function general settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting parameter</th>
<th>Select value for solution 1 (star connected CT)</th>
<th>Selected value for solution 2 (delta connected CT)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ConnTypeW1</td>
<td>Delta</td>
<td>WYE (Y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConnTypeW2</td>
<td>WYE (Y)</td>
<td>WYE (Y)$^1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClockNumberW2</td>
<td>1 [30 deg lag]</td>
<td>0 [0 deg]$^1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZSCurrCor</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>Off$^2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OLTCWinding</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
<td>Not in use</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) To compensate for delta connected CTs
2) Zero-sequence current is removed by connecting main CTs in delta, so winding current with zero sequence current is not possible

Example 3: Star-star connected power transformer with load tap changer and tertiary not loaded delta winding

Single line diagrams for two possible solutions for such type of power transformer with all relevant application data is given in Figure 226.

This example is also applicable for autotransformer not loaded with tertiary delta.
Figure 226: Star-star connected power transformer solutions

For this particular power transformer, the 110 kV side phase-to-earth no-load voltages are exactly in phase with the 36.75 kV side phase-to-earth no-load voltages. Thus, when external phase angle shift compensation is done by connecting main CTs in delta, both set of CTs must be identically connected (i.e., either both DAC or both DAB as shown in the right-hand side in Figure 226) in order to put 110 kV & 36.75 kV currents in phase.

In order to ensure proper application of the IED for this power transformer, proceed as follows:

1. Ensure that HV & LV CTs are connected to 1 A CT inputs in the IED.
2. Check that LV CTs are connected to 5 A CT inputs in the IED.
3. Make sure that both CT sets are identically connected (i.e., either both side DAC or both side DAB) when delta connected CTs are used.
4. For star connected CTs, make sure how they are star connected (i.e., earthed) towards or away from the protected transformer.
5. Enter the settings for all three CT input channels used for the HV side CTs as shown in Figure 226.

Table 62: HV side CTs input channels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting parameter</th>
<th>Selected value for solution 1 (star connected CT)</th>
<th>Selected value for solution 2 (delta connected CT)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CTprim</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>$\frac{200}{\sqrt{3}} = 115$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(To compensate for delta connected CTs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTsec</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTStarPoint</td>
<td>FromObject</td>
<td>ToObject</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Enter the settings for all three CT input channels used for the LV side CTs as shown in Table 62.
Table 63: LV side CTs input channels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting parameter</th>
<th>Selected value for solution 1 (star connected CT)</th>
<th>Selected value for solution 2 (delta connected CT)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CTprim</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>$\frac{500}{\sqrt{3}} = 289$ (To compensate for delta connected CTs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTsec</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTStarPoint</td>
<td>ToObject</td>
<td>ToObject</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. Enter the values for the general settings of the PTRSTHR function as shown in Table 64.

Table 64: Through fault monitoring function general settings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting parameter</th>
<th>Select value for solution 1 (star connected CT)</th>
<th>Select value for solution 2 (delta connected CT)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ConnTypeW1</td>
<td>WYE (Y)</td>
<td>WYE (Y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ConnTypeW2</td>
<td>WYE (Y)</td>
<td>WYE (Y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClockNumberW2</td>
<td>0 [0 deg]</td>
<td>0 [0 deg]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZSCurrCor</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Off(^1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OLTCWinding</td>
<td>Winding 1 (W1)</td>
<td>Winding 1 (W1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LowTapOLTC1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RatedTapOLTC1</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HighTapOLTC1</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StepSizeOLTC1</td>
<td>1.5%</td>
<td>1.5%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Zero-sequence current is removed by connecting main CTs in delta, so winding current with zero sequence current is not possible

Summary and conclusions

The IED can be used for through fault monitoring of transformers with main CTs are either star or delta connected. However, the IED is designed with an assumption that all main CTs are star connected. The IED can be used in applications where the main CTs are delta connected. For such applications, consider the following:

- The ratio for delta connected CTs shall be set $\sqrt{3} = 1.732$ times smaller than the actual individual phase CT ratio.
- The power transformer vector group shall typically be set as Yy0 since the compensation for power transformer the actual phase shift is provided by the external delta CT connection.
- The zero sequence current is removed by the main CT delta connections. Therefore, when star winding sides, the CTs are connected in delta the zero sequence current correction shall be set to Off in the IED.

Table below summarizes the most commonly used star-delta vector groups around the world and provides information about the required type of main CT delta connection on the star side of the transformer.
### IEC vector group

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IEC vector group</th>
<th>Positive sequence no-load voltage phasor diagram</th>
<th>Required delta CT connection type on star side of the protected power transformer and internal vector group setting in the IED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>YNd1</td>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="YNd1 Diagram" /></td>
<td>DAC/Yy0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyn1</td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Dyn1 Diagram" /></td>
<td>DAB/Yy0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YNd11</td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="YNd11 Diagram" /></td>
<td>DAB/Yy0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyn11</td>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Dyn11 Diagram" /></td>
<td>DAC/Yy0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YNd5</td>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="YNd5 Diagram" /></td>
<td>DAB/Yy6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyn5</td>
<td><img src="image6.png" alt="Dyn5 Diagram" /></td>
<td>DAC/Yy6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Settings for transformer withstand capability calculation

Four different protection curves are given in the IEEE C57.109.1993 standard for different categories of transformer which are covered by IEEE C57.12.00-1993 standard. These curves are based on the historical evolution of the short circuit withstand requirements and these should be applicable to transformers built beginning in the early 1970s.
For transformers built prior to the early 1970s, consult the manufacturer for short circuit withstand capabilities as a precaution.

According to IEEE C57.109.1993 standard, single phase transformers above 10 MVA and three phase transformers above 30 MVA come under category IV transformers. The recommended protection curve for category IV transformer is given in Figure 222. This curve should be applied as a protection curve for all faults, frequent and in-frequent. The curve is dependent upon the transformer short circuit impedance for fault currents above 50% of the maximum possible and it leads to worst case mechanical duty with maximum fault current for 2s. The damage intensity from through faults depends on the current magnitude, fault duration, and the total number of fault occurrences. Refer to Table 65 for the through fault monitoring function settings values corresponding to the given transformer.

Table 65: Transformer nameplate data

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frequency</td>
<td>50 Hz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rated Power</td>
<td>500 MVA / 500 MVA / 20 MVA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage ratio</td>
<td>415 kV / 230 kV / 20 kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winding 1 rated current</td>
<td>696 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winding 2 rated current</td>
<td>1255 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Winding 3 rated current</td>
<td>577 A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tap changer</td>
<td>±9; 1.67% of 230 kV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connection Type YNyn0d1</td>
<td>YNyn0d1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooling</td>
<td>ONAF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% Impedance</td>
<td>12 @ Base 500 MVA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

According to the IEEE standard and Figure 222, the given transformer withstand capability can be calculated with respect to transformer % impedance 12. In this case, $I^2t$ limits are calculated based on the maximum allowable fault current 800 % of rated current for 2s duration. Also, if the transformer manufacturer indicates that 10 such through faults can be withstand over the life time of the transformer, then the cumulative $I^2t$ limits can be set accordingly.

Table 66: PTRSTHR setting parameters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting parameter</th>
<th>Select value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$W1\text{I}&gt;$</td>
<td>350 % $I_{\text{BaseW1}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$W2\text{I}&gt;$</td>
<td>350 % $I_{\text{BaseW2}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$W3\text{I}&gt;$</td>
<td>350 % $I_{\text{BaseW3}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$t_{\text{Min}}$</td>
<td>0.2 s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{MaxI}^2t_{W1}$</td>
<td>$\left(\frac{696 \times 8}{1000000}\right)^2 \times 2 = 62.0(kA)^2s$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{MaxI}^2t_{W2}$</td>
<td>$\left(\frac{1255 \times 8}{1000000}\right)^2 \times 2 = 201.608(kA)^2s$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\text{MaxI}^2t_{W3}$</td>
<td>$\left(\frac{577 \times 8}{1000000}\right)^2 \times 2 = 45.615(kA)^2s$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
### 17.12.4.3 Application example for OHL

Additionally, the PTRSTHR function can be used to monitor faults on OHL. In such cases, the OHL current and voltage shall be connected to W1 inputs. In case of one-and-a-half breaker configuration, W1 and W2 currents shall be used.

For such applications, the PTRSTHR function can be triggered either by the set phase current level or externally by the START or TRIP signal from the distance protection. As a result, a summary list that provides an overview about all through faults seen by the IED will be available on the local HMI.

### 17.13 Current harmonic monitoring CHMMHAI

#### 17.13.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current harmonic monitoring</td>
<td>CHMMHAI</td>
<td>ITHD</td>
<td>ITHD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 17.13.2 Application

In order to maintain the power quality for better supply, harmonics in the system must be monitored. Due to the nonlinear loads connected to the system, harmonics (apart from fundamental frequency component) are generated and thereby the system voltage is distorted. Voltage distortion appears to have a little effect on operation of nonlinear loads connected, either phase-to-phase or phase-to-neutral. Current distortion is limited at the point of common coupling PCC to control the harmonic current from the utility to the consumer. Thereby, the voltage distortion must be limited in order to prevent it from spreading to other facilities.

Voltage harmonic distortion levels can vary drastically, depending on the configuration of system. These voltage harmonics can damage the equipment as they are designed to operate for certain range of voltage inaccuracy.

Moreover, in four-wire distribution systems (three-phase and neutral), the currents in the three phases will return via the neutral conductor, a 120 degree phase shift between corresponding phase currents that causes the currents to cancel out in the neutral, under balanced loading conditions. When nonlinear loads are present, any 'Triplen' (3rd, 9th...) harmonics in the phase currents does not cancel out. However, they will be added cumulatively in the neutral conductor, which can carry up to 173% of phase current at a frequency of predominately 180 Hz (3rd harmonic).

In case of electric traction systems, it generates various power quality problems that have an important impact on its distribution network. DC traction loads, fed through AC/DC rectifiers, generates non-linear voltages and currents on the AC system, that will result in harmonic
voltage distortion of the power supply system. Traction power supply system creates power quality problems to the corresponding grid, which can cause:

- Poor power quality
- Increase in operational cost due to less productivity
- Damage to sensitive equipment in nearby facilities.

Maintaining high power quality in traction system is very complex. The presence of non-linear loads reduces the capability of the existing harmonic mitigation techniques. However, it is essential to minimize the issues like harmonics, voltage sags and flicker to protect sensitive equipment affected by the aforementioned issues produced by traction systems.

Various practical conditions which have dynamic characteristics like the speed of locomotion, load and line condition will make this problem even worse. Harmonic current increases the heat dissipation due to hysteresis and eddy currents, which causes stress on insulation materials. Harmonic current increases transmission loss and the voltage drops.

In general, harmonics can cause reduced equipment life if a system is designed without considering the harmonics and if the equipment is not designed to withstand harmonics. Hence, it is important to measure and monitor harmonics in power systems. Harmonic voltage distortions on 161 kV power system and above is limited to 1.5% of total harmonic distortion (THD), in with each individual harmonic is limited to 1.0%.

Current harmonic limits vary based on the short circuit strength of the corresponding system they are injected into. Harmonic current limit defines the maximum amount of harmonic current that can be inject into the utility system. The difference between THD and TDD is used to calculate the harmonics level during light load conditions.

### 17.13.3 Setting guidelines

The recommended limits for total harmonic distortion and individual harmonic distortion are available in the IEEE 519 standard. The limits are based on measurements which are done at the point of common coupling. It should not be applied to either individual pieces of equipment or at locations within a user’s facility. In most cases, harmonic voltages and currents at these locations could be found to be significantly beyond recommended limits at the PCC due to the lack of diversity, cancellation, and other phenomena that tend to reduce the combined effects of multiple harmonic sources to levels below their algebraic summation.

### 17.13.3.1 Setting procedure on the IED

Parameters for CHMMHAI function are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

Common base IED values for primary current ($I_{Base}$) is set in the global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

**GlobalBaseSel.** It is used to select GBASVAL function for reference of base values.

- **Minimum and maximum current limit** is set as 5% of the $I_B$ and 300.0% of $I_B$ respectively. If the current is outside the above range, the calculation of total harmonic distortion, individual harmonic distortion, total demand distortion and crest factor are blocked and outputs are provided as zero.

- **MaxLoadCurr.** Maximum demand load current at PCC for total demand distortion calculation. When the point of common coupling (PCC) is considered at the service entrance or utility metering point, IEEE 519 standard recommends that the maximum demand load current must be calculated as the average current of maximum demand for the preceding 12 months.
Voltage harmonic monitoring VHMMHAI

17.14.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Voltage harmonic monitoring</td>
<td>VHMMHAI</td>
<td>UTHD</td>
<td>VTHD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

17.14.2 Application

In order to maintain the power quality for better supply, harmonics in the system must be monitored. Due to the nonlinear loads connected to the system, harmonics (apart from fundamental frequency component) are generated and thereby the system voltage is distorted. Voltage distortion appears to have a little effect on operation of nonlinear loads connected, either phase-to-phase or phase-to-neutral. Current distortion is limited at the point of common coupling PCC to control the harmonic current from the utility to the consumer. Thereby, the voltage distortion must be limited in order to prevent it from spreading to other facilities.

Voltage harmonic distortion levels can vary drastically, depending on the configuration of system. These voltage harmonics can damage the equipment as they are designed to operate for certain range of voltage inaccuracy.
Moreover, in four-wire distribution systems (three-phase and neutral), the currents in the three phases will return via the neutral conductor, a 120 degree phase shift between corresponding phase currents that causes the currents to cancel out in the neutral, under balanced loading conditions. When nonlinear loads are present, any ‘Triplen’ (3\textsuperscript{rd}, 9\textsuperscript{th}, ...) harmonics in the phase currents does not cancel out. However, they will be added cumulatively in the neutral conductor, which can carry up to 173% of phase current at a frequency of predominately 180 Hz (3\textsuperscript{rd} harmonic).

In case of electric traction systems, it generates various power quality problems that have an important impact on its distribution network. DC traction loads, fed through AC/DC rectifiers, generates non-linear voltages and currents on the AC system, that will result in harmonic voltage distortion of the power supply system. Traction power supply system creates power quality problems to the corresponding grid, which can cause:

- Poor power quality
- Increase in operational cost due to less productivity
- Damage to sensitive equipment in nearby facilities.

In general, harmonics can cause reduced equipment life if a system is designed without considering the harmonics and if the equipment is not designed to withstand harmonics. Hence, it is important to measure and monitor harmonics in power systems. Harmonic voltage distortions on 161 kV power system and above is limited to 1.5% of total harmonic distortion (THD), in with each individual harmonic is limited to 1.0%.

17.14.3 Setting guidelines

The recommended limits for total harmonic distortion and individual harmonic distortion are available in the IEEE 519 standard. The limits are based on measurements which are done at the point of common coupling. It should not be applied to either individual pieces of equipment or at locations within a user’s facility. In most cases, harmonic voltages and currents at these locations could be found to be significantly beyond recommended limits at the PCC due to the lack of diversity, cancellation, and other phenomena that tend to reduce the combined effects of multiple harmonic sources to levels below their algebraic summation.

17.14.3.1 Setting procedure on the IED

Parameters for VHMMHAI function are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

Common base IED values for primary voltage ($U_{Base}$) is set in the global base values for settings function GBASVAL.

$GlobalBaseSel$: It is used to select GBASVAL function for reference of base values.

Minimum and maximum voltage limit is set as 5\% of the $U_B$ and 300.0\% of $U_B$ respectively. If the voltage is outside the above range, the calculation of total harmonic distortion, individual harmonic distortion and crest factor are blocked and outputs are provided as zero.

$WrnLimitTHD$: It defines the warning limit for the calculated total harmonic distortion.

$tDelayAlmTHD$: It defines the alarm delay time from warning for the calculated total harmonic distortion. This intimates the operator to take corrective operations immediately, otherwise the system will undergo thermal stress.

$WrnLimit2ndHD$: It defines the warning limit for the calculated second harmonic distortion.
tDelayAlm2ndHD. It defines the alarm delay time from warning for the calculated second harmonic distortion.

WrnLimit3rdHD. It defines the warning limit for the calculated third harmonic distortion.

tDelayAlm3rdHD. It defines the alarm delay time from warning for the calculated third harmonic distortion.

WrnLimit4thHD. It defines the warning limit for the calculated fourth harmonic distortion.

tDelayAlm4thHD. It defines the alarm delay time from warning for the calculated fourth harmonic distortion.

WrnLimit5thHD. It defines the warning limit for the calculated fifth harmonic distortion.

tDelayAlm5thHD. It defines the alarm delay time from warning for the calculated fifth harmonic distortion.
Section 18  Metering

18.1  Pulse-counter logic PCFCNT

18.1.1  Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pulse-counter logic</td>
<td>PCFCNT</td>
<td></td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

18.1.2  Application

Pulse-counter logic (PCFCNT) function counts externally generated binary pulses, for instance pulses coming from an external energy meter, for calculation of energy consumption values. The pulses are captured by the binary input module (BIM), and read by the PCFCNT function. The number of pulses in the counter is then reported via the station bus to the substation automation system or read via the station monitoring system as a service value. When using IEC 61850–8–1, a scaled service value is available over the station bus.

The normal use for this function is the counting of energy pulses from external energy meters. An optional number of inputs from an arbitrary input module in IED can be used for this purpose with a frequency of up to 40 Hz. The pulse-counter logic PCFCNT can also be used as a general purpose counter.

18.1.3  Setting guidelines

Parameters that can be set individually for each pulse counter from PCM600:

- **Operation**: Off/On
- **tReporting**: 0-3600s
- **EventMask**: NoEvents/ReportEvents

Configuration of inputs and outputs of PCFCNT is made via PCM600.

On the Binary input module (BIM), the debounce filter default time is set to 1 ms, that is, the counter suppresses pulses with a pulse length less than 1 ms. The input oscillation blocking frequency is preset to 40 Hz meaning that the counter detects the input to oscillate if the input frequency is greater than 40 Hz. Oscillation suppression is released at 30 Hz. Block/release values for oscillation can be changed on the local HMI and PCM600 under **Main menu/Configuration/I/O modules**.

The setting is common for all input channels on BIM, that is, if limit changes are made for inputs not connected to the pulse counter, the setting also influences the inputs on the same board used for pulse counting.
18.2 Function for energy calculation and demand handling ETPMMTR

18.2.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Function for energy calculation and demand handling</td>
<td>ETPMMTR</td>
<td>W_Varh</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

18.2.2 Application

Energy calculation and demand handling function (ETPMMTR) is intended for statistics of the forward and reverse active and reactive energy. It has a high accuracy basically given by the measurements function (CVMMXN). This function has a site calibration possibility to further increase the total accuracy.

The function is connected to the instantaneous outputs of (CVMMXN) as shown in figure 227.

![Figure 227: Connection of energy calculation and demand handling function ETPMMTR to the measurements function (CVMMXN)](IEC13000190-2-en.vsdx)

The energy values can be read through communication in MWh and MVArh in monitoring tool of PCM600 and/or alternatively the values can be presented on the local HMI. The local HMI graphical display is configured with PCM600 Graphical Display Editor tool (GDE) with a measuring value which is selected to the active and reactive component as preferred. Also all Accumulated Active Forward, Active Reverse, Reactive Forward and Reactive Reverse energy values can be presented.

Maximum demand values are presented in MWh or MVArh in the same way.

Alternatively, the energy values can be presented with use of the pulse counters function (PCGGIO). The output energy values are scaled with the pulse output setting values \( EAF\text{AccPlsQt}_y, EAR\text{AccPlsQt}_y, ER\text{FAccPlsQt}_y \) and \( ER\text{VAccPlsQt}_y \) of the energy metering function and then the pulse counter can be set-up to present the correct values by scaling in this function. Pulse counter values can then be presented on the local HMI in the same way and/or sent to the SA (Substation Automation) system through communication where the total energy then is calculated by summation of the energy pulses. This principle is good for
very high values of energy as the saturation of numbers else will limit energy integration to
about one year with 50 kV and 3000 A. After that the accumulation will start on zero again.

18.2.3 Setting guidelines

The parameters are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

The following settings can be done for the energy calculation and demand handling function
ETPMMTR:

*GlobalBaseSel*: Selects the global base value group used by the function to define *IBase*, *UBase*
and *SBase*. Note that this function will only use *IBase* value.

*Operation*: Off/On

*EnaAcc*: Off/On is used to switch the accumulation of energy on and off.

*tEnergy*: Time interval when energy is measured.

*tEnergyOnPls*: gives the pulse length ON time of the pulse. It should be at least 100 ms when
connected to the Pulse counter function block. Typical value can be 100 ms.

*tEnergyOffPls*: gives the OFF time between pulses. Typical value can be 100 ms.

*EAFAccPlsQty* and *EARAccPlsQty*: gives the MWh value in each pulse. It should be selected
together with the setting of the Pulse counter (PCGGIO) settings to give the correct total pulse
value.

*ERFAccPlsQty* and *ERVAccPlsQty*: gives the MVArh value in each pulse. It should be selected
together with the setting of the Pulse counter (PCGGIO) settings to give the correct total pulse
value.

For the advanced user there are a number of settings for direction, zero clamping, max limit,
and so on. Normally, the default values are suitable for these parameters.
Section 19  Ethernet-based communication

19.1  Access point

19.1.1  Application

The access points are used to connect the IED to the communication buses (like the station bus) that use communication protocols. The access point can be used for single and redundant data communication. The access points are also used for communication with the merging units and for time synchronization using Precision Time Protocol (PTP).

19.1.2  Setting guidelines

The physical ports allocated to access points 2–6 have to be added in the hardware tool in PCM600 before the access points can be configured. The factory setting only includes the physical ports allocated to the front port and access point 1.

The settings for the access points are configured using the Ethernet configuration tool (ECT) in PCM600.

The access point is activated if the Operation checkbox is checked for the respective access point and a partial or common write to IED is performed.

To increase security, it is recommended to deactivate the access point when it is not in use.

Redundancy and PTP cannot be set for the front port (Access point 0) as redundant communication and PTP are only available for the rear optical Ethernet ports.

Subnetwork shows the SCL subnetwork to which the access point is connected. This column shows the SCL subnetworks available in the PCM600 project. SCL subnetworks can be created/deleted in the Subnetworks tab of IEC 61850 Configuration tool in PCM600.

When saving the ECT configuration after selecting a subnetwork, ECT creates the access point in the SCL model. Unselecting the subnetwork removes the access point from the SCL model. This column is editable for IEC61850 Ed2 IEDs and not editable for IEC61850 Ed1 IEDs because in IEC61850 Ed1 only one access point can be modelled in SCL.

The IP address can be set in IP address. ECT validates the value, the access points have to be on separate subnetworks.

The subnetwork mask can be set in Subnet mask. This field will be updated to the SCL model based on the Subnetwork selection.

To select which communication protocols can be run on the respective access points, check or uncheck the check box for the relevant protocol. The protocols are not activated/deactivated in ECT, only filtered for the specific access point. For information on how to activate the individual communication protocols, see the communication protocol chapters.
To increase security it is recommended to uncheck protocols that are not used on the access point.

The default gateway can be selected by entering the IP address in Default gateway. The default gateway is the router that is used to communicate with the devices in the other subnetwork. By default this is set to 0.0.0.0 which means that no default gateway is selected. ECT validates the entered value, but the default gateway has to be in the same subnetwork as the access point. The default gateway is the router that is being used as default, that is when no route has been set up for the destination. If communication with a device in another subnetwork is needed, a route has to be set up. For more information on routes, see the Routes chapter in the Technical manual and the Application manual.

DHCP can be activated for the front port from the LHMI in Main menu/Configuration/Communication/Ethernet configuration/Front port/DHCP:1

19.2 Redundant communication

19.2.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IEC 62439-3 Parallel redundancy protocol</td>
<td>PRP</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC 62439-3 High-availability seamless redundancy</td>
<td>HSR</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access point diagnostic for redundant Ethernet ports</td>
<td>RCHLCCH</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19.2.2 Application

Dynamic access point diagnostic (RCHLCCH) is used to supervise and assure redundant Ethernet communication over two channels. This will secure data transfer even though one communication channel might not be available for some reason.

Parallel Redundancy Protocol (PRP) and High-availability Seamless Redundancy (HSR) provides redundant communication over station bus running the available communication protocols. The redundant communication uses two Ethernet ports.
19.2.3 Setting guidelines

Redundant communication is configured with the Ethernet configuration tool in PCM600.
Redundancy: redundant communication is activated when the parameter is set to PRP-0, PRP-1 or HSR. The settings for the next access point will be hidden and PhyPortB will show the second port information. Redundant communication is activated after a common write to IED is done.

PRP-1 should be used primarily, PRP-0 is intended only for use in existing PRP-networks. PRP-1 and HSR can be combined in a mixed network.

If the access point is not taken into operation, the write option in Ethernet Configuration Tool can be used to activate the access point.

![Image of access point settings]

**Figure 230: ECT screen with Redundancy set to PRP-1 on Access point 1 and HSR Access point 3**

### 19.3 Merging unit

#### 19.3.1 Application

The IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE process bus communication protocol enables an IED to communicate with devices providing measured values in digital format, commonly known as Merging Units (MU). The rear access points are used for the communication.

The merging units (MU) are called so because they can gather analog values from one or more measuring transformers, sample the data and send the data over process bus to other clients (or subscribers) in the system. Some merging units are able to get data from classical measuring transformers, others from non-conventional measuring transducers and yet others can pick up data from both types.
19.3.2 Setting guidelines

For information on the merging unit setting guidelines, see section IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE communication protocol.

19.4 Routes

19.4.1 Application

Setting up a route enables communication to a device that is located in another subnetwork. Routing is used when the destination device is not in the same subnetwork as the default gateway.

The route specifies that when a package is sent to the destination device it should be sent through the selected router. If no route is specified the source device will not find the destination device.

19.4.2 Setting guidelines

Routes are configured using the Ethernet configuration tool in PCM600.

*Operation* for the route can be set to *On*/*Off* by checking and unchecking the check-box in the operation column.

*Gateway* specifies the address of the gateway.

*Destination* specifies the destination.

*Destination subnet mask* specifies the subnetwork mask of the destination.
Section 20  Station communication

20.1 Communication protocols

Each IED is provided with several communication interfaces enabling it to connect to one or many substation level systems or equipment, either on the Substation Automation (SA) bus or Substation Monitoring (SM) bus.

Available communication protocols are:

- IEC 61850-8-1 communication protocol
- IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE communication protocol
- LON communication protocol
- SPA communication protocol
- IEC 60870-5-103 communication protocol
- C37.118 communication protocol

Several protocols can be combined in the same IED.

20.2 IEC 61850-8-1 communication protocol

20.2.1 Application IEC 61850-8-1

IEC 61850-8-1 communication protocol allows vertical communication to HSI clients and allows horizontal communication between two or more intelligent electronic devices (IEDs) from one or several vendors to exchange information and to use it in the performance of their functions and for correct co-operation.

GOOSE (Generic Object Oriented Substation Event), which is a part of IEC 61850–8–1 standard, allows the IEDs to communicate state and control information amongst themselves, using a publish-subscribe mechanism. That is, upon detecting an event, the IED(s) use a multi-cast transmission to notify those devices that have registered to receive the data. An IED can, by publishing a GOOSE message, report its status. It can also request a control action to be directed at any device in the network.

Figure 232 shows the topology of an IEC 61850–8–1 configuration. IEC 61850–8–1 specifies only the interface to the substation LAN. The LAN itself is left to the system integrator.
Figure 232: SA system with IEC 61850–8–1

Figure 233 shows the GOOSE peer-to-peer communication.

Figure 233: Example of a broadcasted GOOSE message

20.2.2 Setting guidelines

There are two settings related to the IEC 61850–8–1 protocol:

*Operation*: User can set IEC 61850 communication to *On* or *Off*. 
**GOOSEPortEd1**: Selection of the Ethernet link where GOOSE traffic shall be sent and received. This is only valid for Edition 1 and can be ignored if Edition 2 is used. For Edition 2, the Ethernet link selection is done with the Ethernet Configuration Tool (ECT) in PCM600.

### 20.2.3 Horizontal communication via GOOSE

#### 20.2.3.1 Sending data

In addition to the data object and data attributes of the logical nodes, it is possible to send the outputs of the function blocks using the generic communication blocks. The outputs of this function can be set in a dataset and be sent in a GOOSE Control Block to other subscriber IEDs. There are different function blocks for different type of sending data.

**Generic communication function for Single Point indication SPGAPC, SP16GAPC**

**Application**

Generic communication function for Single Point Value (SPGAPC) function is used to send one single logical output to other systems or equipment in the substation. SP16GAPC can be used to send up to 16 single point values from the application functions running in the same cycle time. SPGAPC has one visible input and SPGAPC16 has 16 visible inputs that should be connected in the ACT tool.

**Setting guidelines**

There are no settings available for the user for SPGAPC.

**Generic communication function for Measured Value MVGAPC**

**Application**

Generic communication function for measured values (MVGAPC) function is used to send the instantaneous value of an analog signal to other systems or equipment in the substation. It can also be used inside the same IED, to attach a RANGE aspect to an analog value and to permit measurement supervision on that value.

**Setting guidelines**

The settings available for Generic communication function for Measured Value (MVGAPC) function allows the user to choose a deadband and a zero deadband for the monitored signal. Values within the zero deadband are considered as zero.

The high and low limit settings provides limits for the high-high-, high, normal, low and low-low ranges of the measured value. The actual range of the measured value is shown on the range output of MVGAPC function block. When a Measured value expander block (RANGE_XP) is connected to the range output, the logical outputs of the RANGE_XP are changed accordingly.

#### 20.2.3.2 Receiving data

The GOOSE data must be received at function blocks. There are different GOOSE receiving function blocks depending on the type of the received data. Refer to the Engineering manual for more information about how to configure GOOSE.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function block type</th>
<th>Data Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEBINRCV</td>
<td>16 single point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEINTLKRRCV</td>
<td>2 single points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16 double points</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEDPRCV</td>
<td>Double point</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
### Function block type
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function block type</th>
<th>Data Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEINTRCV</td>
<td>Integer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEMVRCV</td>
<td>Analog value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSESPRCV</td>
<td>Single point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEVCTRRCV</td>
<td>VCTR signals parallel mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSEXLNRCV</td>
<td>Switch status</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Application
The GOOSE receive function blocks are used to receive subscribed data from the GOOSE protocol. The validity of the data value is exposed as outputs of the function block as well as the validity of the communication. It is recommended to use these outputs to ensure that only valid data is handled on the subscriber IED. An example could be to control the external reservation before operating on a bay. In the figure below, the GOOSESPRCV is used to receive the status of the bay reservation. The validity of the received data is used in additional logic to guarantee that the value has good quality before operation on that bay.

![Figure 234: GOOSESPRCV and AND function blocks - checking the validity of the received data](IEC1600082v1-vsd)

### 20.3 IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE communication protocol

#### 20.3.1 Introduction

Every IED can be provided with communication interfaces enabling it to connect to the process buses in order to get data from analog data acquisition units close to the process (primary apparatus), commonly known as Merging Units (MU). The protocol used in this case is the IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE communication protocol.

The IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE standard does not specify the quality of the sampled values. Thus, the accuracy of the current and voltage inputs to the merging unit and the inaccuracy added by the merging unit must be coordinated with the requirement for the actual type of protection function.

Factors influencing the accuracy of the sampled values from the merging unit are, for example, anti aliasing filters, frequency range, step response, truncating, A/D conversion inaccuracy, time tagging accuracy etc.

In principle, the accuracy of the current and voltage transformers, together with the merging unit, will have the same quality as the direct input of currents and voltages.

The process bus physical layout can be arranged in several ways, described in Annex B of the standard, depending on what are the needs for sampled data in a substation.
Figure 235: Example of a station configuration with separated process bus and station bus

The IED can get analog values simultaneously from a classical CT or VT and from a Merging Unit, like in this example:

The merging units (MU) are called so because they can gather analog values from one or more measuring transformers, sample the data and send the data over process bus to other clients (or subscribers) in the system. Some merging units are able to get data from classical measuring transformers, others from non-conventional measuring transducers and yet others can pick up data from both types. The electronic part of a non-conventional measuring transducer (like a Rogowski coil or a capacitive divider) can represent a MU by itself as long as it can send sampled data over process bus.
Figure 236: Example of a station configuration with the IED receiving analog values from both classical measuring transformers and merging units.

20.3.2 Faulty merging unit for bay in service

When a merging unit goes faulty while the bay is in service, the protection functions connected to that merging unit get blocked. Also, protection functions configured in a 1 1/2 circuit breaker applications, where two SV streams from different merging units are combined get blocked. Thus, this has no effect on protection functions in a 1 1/2 circuit breaker configuration.

This can be resolved by connecting external binary input signals to the BLOCK input on the respective SMAI function blocks with the use of ACT. When the BLOCK input on a SMAI function is energized, the SMAI function delivers a magnitude of zero with good quality for all the channels. Thus, this has no effect on a busbar protection, nor protections in an 1 1/2 circuit breaker configuration.
SMAI function blocks exist in different cycle times, and all the SMAI blocks that receive SV streams from the merging units must have the block input signal configured in the same way to get the correct behavior.

**Figure 237: Configuration of current inputs using SMAIs in a 1 1/2 circuit breaker application.**

**Procedure to bring protections back into service and enable maintenance of a faulty merging unit**

1. Disconnect bay
2. Energize binary input, block of bay. Protections are now back in service.
3. Maintenance of the merging unit can start.

**Procedure to bring bay back into service after maintenance of a merging unit**

1. Energize merging unit.
2. De-energize binary input block of bay. Protections are now back in service.
3. Reconnect bay.

### 20.3.3 Bay out of service for maintenance

When a bay need maintenance and has energized merging unit connected, it is always a risk to get unplanned interruptions in the auxiliary power supply which may lead to unwanted blocking of protections.

This can be resolved by using the same ACT configuration recommendations and procedures as described in section [Faulty merging unit for bay in service](#).

### 20.3.4 Setting guidelines

Merging Units (MUs) have several settings on local HMI under:
Main menu/Configuration/Analog modules/MUX:92xx. The corresponding settings are also available in PST (PCM600).

Main menu/Configuration/Communication/Merging units configuration/MUX:92xx. The corresponding settings are also available in ECT (PCM600).

XX can take value 01-12.

20.3.4.1 Specific settings related to the IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE communication

The process bus communication IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE has specific settings, similar to the analog inputs modules.

If there are more than one sample group involved, time synch is mandatory. If there is no time synchronization, the protection functions will be blocked due to condition blocking.

CTStarPoint: These parameters specify the direction to or from object. See also section “Setting of current channels”.

SyncLostMode: If this parameter is set to Block and the IED hardware time synchronization is lost or the synchronization to the MU time is lost, the protection functions in the list will be blocked due to conditional blocking. If this parameter is set to BlockOnLostUTC, the protection functions in list are blocked if the IED hardware time synchronization is lost or the synchronization of the MU time is lost or the IED has lost global common synchronization (i.e. GPS, IRIG-B or PTP). SYNCH output will be set if IED hardware time synchronization is lost. MUSYNCH output will be set if either of MU or IED hardware time synchronization is lost.

Binary signals over LDCM are transmitted as valid and processed normally even when analog signals are transmitted as invalid due to loss of communication or loss of time synchronization.

Table 67: Blocked protection functions if IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE communication is interrupted and functions are connected to specific MUs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 Identification</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 Identification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Accidental energizing protection for synchronous generator</td>
<td>AEGPVOC</td>
<td>Two step overvoltage protection</td>
<td>OV2PTOV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broken conductor check</td>
<td>BRCPTOC</td>
<td>Four step single phase overcurrent protection</td>
<td>PH4SPTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capacitor bank protection</td>
<td>CBPGAPC</td>
<td>Radial feeder protection</td>
<td>PAPGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pole discordance protection</td>
<td>CCPDSC</td>
<td>Instantaneous phase overcurrent protection</td>
<td>PHPIOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breaker failure protection</td>
<td>CCRBRF</td>
<td>PoleSlip/Out-of-step protection</td>
<td>PSPPPAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breaker failure protection, single phase version</td>
<td>CCSRBFRF</td>
<td>Restricted earth fault protection, low impedance</td>
<td>REFPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current circuit supervision</td>
<td>CCSSPVC</td>
<td>Two step residual overvoltage protection</td>
<td>ROV2PTOV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compensated over- and undervoltage protection</td>
<td>COUVGAPC</td>
<td>Rate-of-change frequency protection</td>
<td>SAPFRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General current and voltage protection</td>
<td>CVGAPC</td>
<td>Overfrequency protection</td>
<td>SAPTOF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 Identification</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 Identification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current reversal and weak-end infeed logic for residual overcurrent protection</td>
<td>ECRWPSCH</td>
<td>Underfrequency protection</td>
<td>SAPTUF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four step residual overcurrent protection</td>
<td>EF4PTOC</td>
<td>Sudden change in current variation</td>
<td>SCCVPTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instantaneous residual overcurrent protection</td>
<td>EFPIOC</td>
<td>Sensitive Directional residual over current and power protection</td>
<td>SDEPSDE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase selection, quadrilateral characteristic with fixed angle</td>
<td>FDPSPDIS</td>
<td>Synchrocheck, energizing check, and synchronizing</td>
<td>SESRSYN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faulty phase identification with load encroachment</td>
<td>FMPSBDIS</td>
<td>Circuit breaker condition monitoring</td>
<td>SSCBR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phase selection, quadrilateral characteristic with settable angle</td>
<td>FRPSPDIS</td>
<td>Insulation gas monitoring</td>
<td>SSIMG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Frequency time accumulation protection</td>
<td>FTAQFVR</td>
<td>Insulation liquid monitoring</td>
<td>SSIML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fuse failure supervision</td>
<td>FUFSFVC</td>
<td>Stub protection</td>
<td>STBPTOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generator differential protection</td>
<td>GENPDIF</td>
<td>Transformer differential protection, two winding</td>
<td>T2WPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directional Overpower protection</td>
<td>GOPPDOP</td>
<td>Transformer differential protection, three winding</td>
<td>T3WPDIF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generator rotor overload protection</td>
<td>GRPTTTR</td>
<td>Automatic voltage control for tapchanger, single control</td>
<td>TRIATCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Generator stator overload protection</td>
<td>GSPTTTR</td>
<td>Automatic voltage control for tapchanger, parallel control</td>
<td>TRBATCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directional Underpower protection</td>
<td>GUPPDUP</td>
<td>Thermal overload protection, two time constants</td>
<td>TRPTTR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1Ph High impedance differential protection</td>
<td>HZPDIF</td>
<td>Two step undervoltage protection</td>
<td>UV2PTUV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line differential protection, 3 CT sets, 2-3 line ends</td>
<td>L3CPDIF</td>
<td>Voltage differential protection</td>
<td>VDCPTOV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line differential protection, 6 CT sets, 3-5 line ends</td>
<td>L6CPDIF</td>
<td>Fuse failure supervision</td>
<td>VDRFUF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low active power and power factor protection</td>
<td>LAPPAGPC</td>
<td>Voltage-restrained time overcurrent protection</td>
<td>VRPVOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative sequence overcurrent protection</td>
<td>LCNSPTOC</td>
<td>Local acceleration logic</td>
<td>ZCLCPSC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative sequence overvoltage protection</td>
<td>LCNSPTOV</td>
<td>Scheme communication logic for distance or overcurrent protection</td>
<td>ZCPSCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three phase overcurrent</td>
<td>LCP3PTOC</td>
<td>Current reversal and weak-end infeed logic for distance protection</td>
<td>ZCRWPSCH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Three phase undercurrent</td>
<td>LCP3PTUC</td>
<td>Automatic switch onto fault logic, voltage and current based</td>
<td>ZCVPSOF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal overload protection, one time constant</td>
<td>LCPTTR</td>
<td>Under impedance protection for generator</td>
<td>ZGVPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zero sequence overcurrent protection</td>
<td>LCZSPTOC</td>
<td>Fast distance protection</td>
<td>ZMFCPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zero sequence overvoltage protection</td>
<td>LCZSPTOV</td>
<td>High speed distance protection</td>
<td>ZMFPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line differential coordination</td>
<td>LDLPSCCH</td>
<td>Distance measuring zone, quadrilateral characteristic for series compensated lines</td>
<td>ZMCAPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional security logic for differential protection</td>
<td>LDRGFC</td>
<td>Distance measuring zone, quadrilateral characteristic for series compensated lines</td>
<td>ZMCPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of excitation</td>
<td>LEXPDIS</td>
<td>Fullscheme distance protection, mho characteristic</td>
<td>ZMHPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal overload protection, one time constant</td>
<td>LFPTTR</td>
<td>Fullscheme distance protection, quadrilateral for earth faults</td>
<td>ZMMAPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of voltage check</td>
<td>LOVPTUV</td>
<td>Fullscheme distance protection, quadrilateral for earth faults</td>
<td>ZMMPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line differential protection 3 CT sets, with inzone transformers, 2-3 line ends</td>
<td>LT3CPDIF</td>
<td>Distance protection zone, quadrilateral characteristic</td>
<td>ZMQAPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line differential protection 6 CT sets, with inzone transformers, 3-5 line ends</td>
<td>LT6CPDIF</td>
<td>Distance protection zone, quadrilateral characteristic</td>
<td>ZMQPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negativ sequence time overcurrent protection for machines</td>
<td>NS2PTOC</td>
<td>Distance protection zone, quadrilateral characteristic, separate settings</td>
<td>ZMRAPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four step directional negative phase sequence overcurrent protection</td>
<td>NS4PTOC</td>
<td>Distance protection zone, quadrilateral characteristic, separate settings</td>
<td>ZMRPDIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four step phase overcurrent protection</td>
<td>OC4PTOC</td>
<td>Power swing detection</td>
<td>ZMRPSB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overexcitation protection</td>
<td>OEXPVPH</td>
<td>Mho Impedance supervision logic</td>
<td>ZSMGAPC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Out-of-step protection</td>
<td>OOSPPAM</td>
<td>Transformer tank overcurrent protection</td>
<td>TPIIOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Busbar differential protection, check zone</td>
<td>BCZPDIF</td>
<td>Busbar differential protection, bus interconnection xx</td>
<td>BICPTRC_x, (1≤x≤5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Busbar differential protection, dynamic zone selection</td>
<td>BDZSGAPC</td>
<td>Busbar differential protection, zone 1</td>
<td>BZNPDIF_2x, (1≤x≤6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 Identification</th>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 Identification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Busbar differential protection, single phase feeder xx</td>
<td>BFPTRC_Fx, (1≤x≤24)</td>
<td>Through fault monitoring</td>
<td>PTRSTHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage delta supervision, 2 phase</td>
<td>DELVSPVC</td>
<td>Current delta supervision, 2 phase</td>
<td>DELISPVC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DELISPVC</td>
<td>Current harmonic monitoring, 2 phase</td>
<td>CHMMHAN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 20.3.4.2 Setting examples for IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE and time synchronization

The IED and the Merging Units (MU) should use the same time reference especially if analog data is used from several sources, for example from an internal TRM and an MU, or if several physical MUs are used. Having the same time reference is important to correlate data so that channels from different sources refer to the correct phase angle.

When only one MU is used as an analog source, it is theoretically possible to do without time synchronization. However, this would mean that timestamps for analog and binary data/events become uncorrelated. If the IED has no time synchronization source configured, then the binary data/events will be synchronized with the merging unit. However, the global/complete time might not be correct. Disturbance recordings then appear incorrect since analog data is timestamped by MU, and binary events use the internal IED time. It is thus recommended to use time synchronization also when analog data emanate from only one MU.

An external time source can be used to synchronize both the IED and the MU. It is also possible to use the MU as a clock master to synchronize the IED from the MU. When using an external clock, it is possible to set the IED to be synchronized via PPS,IRIG-B or PTP. It is also possible to use an internal GPS receiver in the IED (if the external clock is using GPS).
Using PTP for synchronizing the MU

Figure 238: Setting example with PTP synchronization

Settings on the local HMI under **Main menu/Configuration/Time/Synchronization/TIMESYNCHGEN:1/IEC61850-9-2:**

- **HwSyncSrc**: is not used as the SW-time and HW-time are connected with each other due to PTP
- **SyncLostMode**: set to **Block** to block protection functions if time synchronization is lost or set to **BlockOnLostUTC** if the protection functions are to be blocked when global common synchronization is lost
- **SyncAccLevel**: can be set to 1μs since this corresponds to a maximum phase angle error of 0.018 degrees at 50Hz

Settings on the local HMI under **Main menu/Configuration/Communication/Ethernet configuration/Access point/AP_X:**

- Operation: On
- PTP: On

Two status monitoring signals can be:

- **SYNCH** signal on the MUx function block indicates that protection functions are blocked due to loss of internal time synchronization to the IED
- **MUSYNCH** signal on the MUx function block monitors the synchronization flag `smpSynch` in the datastream and IED hardware time synchronization.
Using MU for time synchronization via PPS

This example is not valid when GPS time is used for differential protection, when PTP is enabled or when the PMU report is used.

![Diagram](IEC10000061=2=en=Original.vsd)

**Figure 239: Setting example when MU is the synchronizing source**

Settings on the local HMI under *Main menu/Configuration/Time/Synchronization/TIMESYNCHGEN:1/IEC61850-9-2:*

- *HwSyncSrc:* set to *PPS* as generated by the MU (ABB MU)
- *SyncLostMode:* set to *Block* to block protection functions if time synchronization is lost
- *SyncAccLevel:* can be set to 4μs since this corresponds to a maximum phase angle error of 0.072 degrees at 50Hz

Settings on the local HMI under *Main menu/Configuration/Time/Synchronization/TIMESYNCHGEN:1/General:*

- *fineSyncSource* can be set to something different to correlate events and data to other IEDs in the station.

Two status monitoring signals can be:

- SYNCH signal on the MUx function block indicates that protection functions are blocked due to loss of internal time synchronization to the IED.
- MUSYNCH signal on the MUx function block monitors the synchronization flag *smpSynch* in the datastream and IED hardware time synchronization.

SMPLOST indicates that merging unit data are generated by internal substitution or one/more channel's Quality is not good or merging unit is in Testmode/detailed quality=Test, IED is not in test mode.

Using external clock for time synchronization

This example is not valid when GPS time is used for differential protection, when PTP is enabled or when the PMU report is used.
**Figure 240: Setting example with external synchronization**

Settings on the local HMI under **Main menu/Configuration/Time/Synchronization/ TIMESYNCHGEN:1/IEC61850-9-2:**

- **HwSyncSrc:** set to PPS/IRIG-B depending on available outputs on the clock.
- **SyncLostMode:** set to *Block* to block protection functions if time synchronization is lost.
- **SyncAccLevel:** can be set to 4μs since this corresponds to a maximum phase angle error of 0.072 degrees at 50Hz.
- **fineSyncSource:** should be set to IRIG-B if available from the clock. If PPS is used for HWSyncSrc, "full-time" has to be acquired from another source. If station clock is on the local area network (LAN) and has an sntp-server, this is one option.

Two status monitoring signals can be:

- **SYNCH** signal on the MUx function block indicates that protection functions are blocked due to loss of internal time synchronization to the IED (that is loss of the hardware synchSrc).
- **MUSYNCH** signal on the MUx function block monitors the synchronization flag *smpSynch* in the datastream and IED hardware time synchronization.

**No time synchronization**

This example is not valid when GPS time is used for differential protection, when PTP is enabled or when the PMU report is used.
Figure 241: Setting example without time synchronization

It is also possible to use IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE communication without time synchronization.

Settings on the local HMI under Main menu/Configuration/Time/Synchronization/TIMESYNCHGEN:1/IEC61850-9-2:

- HwSyncSrc: set to Off
- SyncLostMode: set to No block to indicate that protection functions are not blocked
- SyncAccLevel: set to unspecified

Two status monitoring signals with no time synchronization:

- SYNCH signal on the MUx function block indicates that protection functions are blocked due to loss of internal time synchronization to the IED. Since SyncLostMode is set to No block, this signal is not set.
- MUSYNCH signal on the MUx function block is set if the datastream indicates time synchronization loss. However, protection functions are not blocked.

To get higher availability in protection functions, it is possible to avoid blocking during time synchronization loss if there is a single source of analog data. This means that if there is only one physical MU and no TRM, parameter SyncLostMode is set to No block but parameter HwSyncSrc is still set to PPS. This maintains analog and binary data correlation in disturbance recordings without blocking protection functions if PPS is lost.

20.3.5 IEC 61850 quality expander QUALEXP

The quality expander component is used to display the detailed quality of an IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE analog channel. The component expands the channel quality output of a Merging Unit analog channel received in the IED as per the IEC 61850-7-3 standard. This component can be used during the ACT monitoring to get the particular channel quality of the Merging Unit.

Figure 242 depicts the usage of the quality expander block in ACT.
The expanded quality bits are visible on the outputs as per IEC 61850-7-3 standard. When written to IED, the configuration will show the expanded form of the respective MU channel quality information during the online monitoring in the ACT.

The quality expander function is intended for monitoring purposes, not for being used in a logic controlling the behaviour of the protection or control functions in the IED. The function outputs are updated once every second and, therefore, do not reflect the quality bits in real time.

20.4 LON communication protocol

20.4.1 Application

An optical network can be used within the substation automation system. This enables communication with the IEDs through the LON bus from the operator's workplace, from the control center and also from other IEDs via bay-to-bay horizontal communication. For LON communication an SLM card should be ordered for the IEDs.
The fiber optic LON bus is implemented using either glass core or plastic core fiber optic cables.

### Table 68: Specification of the fiber optic connectors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Glass fiber</th>
<th>Plastic fiber</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cable connector</td>
<td>ST-connector</td>
<td>snap-in connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cable diameter</td>
<td>62.5/125 m</td>
<td>1 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. cable length</td>
<td>1000 m</td>
<td>10 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wavelength</td>
<td>820-900 nm</td>
<td>660 nm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmitted power</td>
<td>-13 dBm (HFBR-1414)</td>
<td>-13 dBm (HFBR-1521)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receiver sensitivity</td>
<td>-24 dBm (HFBR-2412)</td>
<td>-20 dBm (HFBR-2521)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### The LON Protocol

The LON protocol is specified in the LonTalkProtocol Specification Version 3 from Echelon Corporation. This protocol is designed for communication in control networks and is a peer-to-peer protocol where all the devices connected to the network can communicate with each other directly. For more information of the bay-to-bay communication, refer to the section Multiple command function.

### Hardware and software modules

The hardware needed for applying LON communication depends on the application, but one very central unit needed is the LON Star Coupler and optical fibers connecting the star coupler to the IEDs. To interface the IEDs from the MicroSCADA with Classic Monitor, application library LIB520 is required.

The HV Control 670 software module is included in the LIB520 high-voltage process package, which is a part of the Application Software Library in MicroSCADA applications.

The HV Control 670 software module is used for control functions in the IEDs. The module contains a process picture, dialogues and a tool to generate a process database for the control application in MicroSCADA.

When using MicroSCADA Monitor Pro instead of the Classic Monitor, SA LIB is used together with 670 series Object Type files.

Use the LON Network Tool (LNT) to set the LON communication. This is a software tool applied as one node on the LON bus. To communicate via LON, the IEDs need to know

- The node addresses of the other connected IEDs.
- The network variable selectors to be used.

This is organized by LNT.

The node address is transferred to LNT via the local HMI by setting the parameter `ServicePinMsg = Yes`. The node address is sent to LNT via the LON bus, or LNT can scan the network for new nodes.

The communication speed of the LON bus is set to the default of 1.25 Mbit/s. This can be changed by LNT.
20.4.2 MULTICMDRCV and MULTICMDSND

20.4.2.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multiple command and receive</td>
<td>MULTICMDRCV</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple command and send</td>
<td>MULTICMDSND</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20.4.2.2 Application

The IED provides two function blocks enabling several IEDs to send and receive signals via the interbay bus. The sending function block, MULTICMDSND, takes 16 binary inputs. LON enables these to be transmitted to the equivalent receiving function block, MULTICMDRCV, which has 16 binary outputs.

20.4.2.3 Setting guidelines

Settings
The parameters for the multiple command function are set via PCM600.

The Mode setting sets the outputs to either a Steady or Pulsed mode.

20.5 SPA communication protocol

20.5.1 Application

SPA communication protocol is an alternative to IEC 60870-5-103, and they use the same rear communication port.

When communicating with a PC connected to the utility substation LAN via WAN and the utility office LAN (see Figure 244), and when using the rear optical Ethernet port, the only hardware required for a station monitoring system is:

- Optical fibers from the IED to the utility substation LAN
- PC connected to the utility office LAN
SPA communication is mainly used for the Station Monitoring System. It can include different IEDs with remote communication possibilities. Connection to a PC can be made directly (if the PC is located in the substation), via a telephone modem through a telephone network with ITU (former CCITT) characteristics or via a LAN/WAN connection.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>glass</td>
<td>&lt;1000 m</td>
<td>according to optical budget</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plastic</td>
<td>&lt;25 m (inside cubicle)</td>
<td>according to optical budget</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Functionality**

The SPA protocol V2.5 is an ASCII-based protocol for serial communication. The communication is based on a master-slave principle, where the IED is a slave and the PC is the master. Only one master can be applied on each fiber optic loop. A program is required in the master computer for interpretation of the SPA-bus codes and for translation of the data that should be sent to the IED.

For the specification of the SPA protocol V2.5, refer to SPA-bus Communication Protocol V2.5.

### 20.5.2 Setting guidelines

SPA, IEC 60870-5-103 and DNP3 use the same rear communication port. This port can be set for SPA use on the local HMI under **Main menu /Configuration /Communication /Station communication/Port configuration/SLM optical serial port/PROTOCOL:1**. When the communication protocol is selected, the IED is automatically restarted, and the port then operates as a SPA port.

The SPA communication setting parameters are set on the local HMI under **Main menu/Configuration/Communication/Station communication/SPA/SPA:1**.

The most important SPA communication setting parameters are **SlaveAddress** and **BaudRate**. They are essential for all communication contact to the IED. **SlaveAddress** and **BaudRate** can be set only on the local HMI for rear and front channel communication.

**SlaveAddress** can be set to any value between 1–899 as long as the slave number is unique within the used SPA loop. **BaudRate** (communication speed) can be set between 300–38400 baud. **BaudRate** should be the same for the whole station although different communication speeds in a loop are possible. If different communication speeds are used in the same fiber...
optical loop or RS485 network, take this into account when making the communication setup
in the communication master (the PC).

With local fiber optic communication, communication speed is usually set to 19200 or 38400
baud. With telephone communication, the speed setting depends on the quality of the
connection and the type of modem used. Refer to technical data to determine the rated
communication speed for the selected communication interfaces.

The IED does not adapt its speed to the actual communication conditions
because the communication speed is set on the local HMI.

20.6 IEC 60870-5-103 communication protocol

20.6.1 Application

![Diagram](IEC05000660-4-en.vsd)

Figure 245: Example of IEC 60870-5-103 communication structure for a substation
automation system

IEC 60870-5-103 communication protocol is mainly used when a protection IED communicates
with a third party control or monitoring system. This system must have software that can
interpret the IEC 60870-5-103 communication messages.

When communicating locally in the station using a Personal Computer (PC) or a Remote
Terminal Unit (RTU) connected to the Communication and processing module, the only
hardware needed is optical fibers and an opto/electrical converter for the PC/RTU, or a RS-485
connection depending on the used IED communication interface.
20.6.1.1 Functionality

IEC 60870-5-103 is an unbalanced (master-slave) protocol for coded-bit serial communication exchanging information with a control system. In IEC terminology a primary station is a master and a secondary station is a slave. The communication is based on a point-to-point principle. The master must have software that can interpret the IEC 60870-5-103 communication messages. For detailed information about IEC 60870-5-103, refer to IEC 60870 standard part 5: Transmission protocols, and to the section 103, Companion standard for the informative interface of protection equipment.

20.6.1.2 Design

General

The protocol implementation consists of the following functions:

- Event handling
- Report of analog service values (measurands)
- Fault location
- Command handling
  - Autorecloser ON/OFF
  - Teleprotection ON/OFF
  - Protection ON/OFF
  - LED reset
  - Characteristics 1 - 4 (Setting groups)
- File transfer (disturbance files)
- Time synchronization

Hardware

When communicating locally with a Personal Computer (PC) or a Remote Terminal Unit (RTU) in the station, using the SPA/IEC port, the only hardware needed is:
- Optical fibers, glass/plastic
- Opto/electrical converter for the PC/RTU
- PC/RTU

Commands

The commands defined in the IEC 60870-5-103 protocol are represented in dedicated function blocks. These blocks have output signals for all available commands according to the protocol. For more information, refer to the Communication protocol manual, IEC 60870-5-103.

- IED commands in control direction
  
  Function block with defined IED functions in control direction, I103IEDCMD. This block use PARAMETR as FUNCTION TYPE, and INFORMATION NUMBER parameter is defined for each output signal.
  
  - Function commands in control direction
  
  Function block with pre-defined functions in control direction, I103CMD. This block includes the FUNCTION TYPE parameter, and the INFORMATION NUMBER parameter is defined for each output signal.
  
  - Function commands in control direction
  
  Function block with user defined functions in control direction, I103UserCMD. These function blocks include the FUNCTION TYPE parameter for each block in the private range, and the INFORMATION NUMBER parameter for each output signal.
**Status**

For more information on the function blocks below, refer to the *Communication protocol manual, IEC 60870-5-103*.

The events created in the IED available for the IEC 60870-5-103 protocol are based on the:

- **IED status indication in monitor direction**
  Function block with defined IED functions in monitor direction, I103IED. This block uses PARAMETER as FUNCTION TYPE, and INFORMATION NUMBER parameter is defined for each input signal.

- **Function status indication in monitor direction, user-defined**
  Function blocks with user-defined input signals in monitor direction, I103UserDef. These function blocks include the FUNCTION TYPE parameter for each block in the private range, and the INFORMATION NUMBER parameter for each input signal.

- **Supervision indications in monitor direction**
  Function block with defined functions for supervision indications in monitor direction, I103Superv. This block includes the FUNCTION TYPE parameter, and the INFORMATION NUMBER parameter is defined for each output signal.

- **Earth fault indications in monitor direction**
  Function block with defined functions for earth fault indications in monitor direction, I103EF. This block includes the FUNCTION TYPE parameter, and the INFORMATION NUMBER parameter is defined for each output signal.

- **Fault indications in monitor direction**
  Function block with defined functions for fault indications in monitor direction, I103FLTPROT. This block includes the FUNCTION TYPE parameter, and the INFORMATION NUMBER parameter is defined for each input signal.

  This block is suitable for distance protection, line differential, transformer differential, overcurrent and earth-fault protection functions.

- **Autorecloser indications in monitor direction**
  Function block with defined functions for autorecloser indications in monitor direction, I103AR. This block includes the FUNCTION TYPE parameter, and the INFORMATION NUMBER parameter is defined for each output signal.

**Measurands**

The measurands can be included as type 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4 and type 9 according to the standard.

- **Measurands in public range**
  Function block that reports all valid measuring types depending on connected signals, I103Meas.

- **Measurands in private range**
Function blocks with user defined input measurands in monitor direction, I103MeasUsr. These function blocks include the FUNCTION TYPE parameter for each block in the private range, and the INFORMATION NUMBER parameter for each block.

Fault location
The fault location is expressed in reactive ohms. In relation to the line length in reactive ohms, it gives the distance to the fault in percent. The data is available and reported when the fault locator function is included in the IED.

Disturbance recordings
- The transfer functionality is based on the Disturbance recorder function. The analog and binary signals recorded will be reported to the master by polling. The eight last disturbances that are recorded are available for transfer to the master. A file that has been transferred and acknowledged by the master cannot be transferred again.
- The binary signals that are included in the disturbance recorder are those that are connected to the disturbance function blocks B1RBDR to B22RBDR. These function blocks include the function type and the information number for each signal. For more information on the description of the Disturbance report in the Technical reference manual. The analog channels, that are reported, are those connected to the disturbance function blocks A1RADR to A4RADR. The eight first ones belong to the public range and the remaining ones to the private range.

20.6.2 Settings

20.6.2.1 Settings for RS485 and optical serial communication

General settings
SPA, DNP and IEC 60870-5-103 can be configured to operate on the SLM optical serial port while DNP and IEC 60870-5-103 additionally can utilize the RS485 port. A single protocol can be active on a given physical port at any time.

Two different areas in the HMI are used to configure the IEC 60870-5-103 protocol.

1. The port specific IEC 60870-5-103 protocol parameters are configured under:
   "Main menu/Configuration/Communication/Station Communication/IEC60870-5-103/"
   - <config-selector>
   - SlaveAddress
   - BaudRate
   - RevPolarity (optical channel only)
   - CycMeasRepTime
   - MasterTimeDomain
   - TimeSyncMode
   - EvalTimeAccuracy
   - EventRepMode
   - CmdMode
   - RepIntermediatePos
   <config-selector> is:
   - "OPTICAL103:1" for the optical serial channel on the SLM
   - "RS485103:1" for the RS485 port

2. The protocol to activate on a physical port is selected under:
   "Main menu/Configuration/Communication/Station Communication/Port configuration/"
   - RS485 port
The general settings for IEC 60870-5-103 communication are the following:

- **SlaveAddress** and **BaudRate**: Settings for slave number and communication speed (baud rate). The slave number can be set to any value between 1 and 254. The communication speed, can be set either to 9600 bits/s or 19200 bits/s.
- **RevPolarity**: Setting for inverting the light (or not). Standard IEC 60870-5-103 setting is **On**.
- **CycMeasRepTime**: See I103MEAS function block for more information.
- **EventRepMode**: Defines the mode for how events are reported. The event buffer size is 1000 events.

**Event reporting mode**

If **EventRepMode = SeqOfEvent**, all GI and spontaneous events will be delivered in the order they were generated by BSW. The most recent value is the latest value delivered. All GI data from a single block will come from the same cycle.

If **EventRepMode = HiPriSpont**, spontaneous events will be delivered prior to GI event. To prevent old GI data from being delivered after a new spontaneous event, the pending GI event is modified to contain the same value as the spontaneous event. As a result, the GI dataset is not time-correlated.

### 20.6.2.2 Settings from PCM600

**I103USEDEF**

For each input of the I103USEDEF function there is a setting for the information number of the connected signal. The information number can be set to any value between 0 and 255. To get proper operation of the sequence of events the event masks in the event function is to be set to ON_CHANGE. For single-command signals, the event mask is to be set to ON_SET.

In addition there is a setting on each event block for function type. Refer to description of the Main Function type set on the local HMI.

**Commands**

As for the commands defined in the protocol there is a dedicated function block with eight output signals. Use PCM600 to configure these signals. To realize the BlockOfinformation command, which is operated from the local HMI, the output BLKINFO on the IEC command function block ICOM has to be connected to an input on an event function block. This input must have the information number 20 (monitor direction blocked) according to the standard.
Disturbance Recordings

For each input of the Disturbance recorder function there is a setting for the information number of the connected signal. The function type and the information number can be set to any value between 0 and 255. To get INF and FUN for the recorded binary signals, there are parameters on the disturbance recorder for each input. The user must set these parameters to whatever he connects to the corresponding input.

Refer to description of Main Function type set on the local HMI.

Recorded analog channels are sent with ASDU26 and ASDU31. One information element in these ASDUs is called ACC, and it indicates the actual channel to be processed. The channels on disturbance recorder are sent with an ACC as shown in Table 69.

Table 69: Channels on disturbance recorder sent with a given ACC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DRA#-Input</th>
<th>ACC</th>
<th>IEC 60870-5-103 meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>IL1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>IL2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>IL3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>IN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>UL1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>UL2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>UL3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>UN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>68</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>Private range</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
### 20.6.3 Function and information types

Product type IEC103\texttt{mainFunType} value Comment:

- REL 128 Compatible range
- REC 242 Private range, use default
- RED 192 Compatible range
- RET 176 Compatible range
- REB 207 Private range
- REG 150 Private range
- REQ 245 Private range
- RER 152 Private range
- RES 118 Private range

Refer to the tables in the Technical reference manual /Station communication, specifying the information types supported by the communication protocol IEC 60870-5-103.

To support the information, corresponding functions must be included in the protection IED.

There is no representation for the following parts:

- Generating events for test mode
- Cause of transmission: Info no 11, Local operation

Glass or plastic fiber should be used. BFOC/2.5 is the recommended interface to use (BFOC/2.5 is the same as ST connectors). ST connectors are used with the optical power as specified in standard.

For more information, refer to IEC standard IEC 60870-5-103.

### 20.7 DNP3 Communication protocol

#### 20.7.1 Application

For more information on the application and setting guidelines for the DNP3 communication protocol refer to the DNP3 Communication protocol manual.
Section 21  Remote communication

21.1  Binary signal transfer

21.1.1  Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Binary signal transfer, receive</td>
<td>BinSignRec1_1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BinSignRec1_2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BinSignReceive2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary signal transfer, 2Mbit receive</td>
<td>BinSigRec1_12M</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BinSigRec1_22M</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary signal transfer, transmit</td>
<td>BinSignTrans1_1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BinSignTrans1_2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BinSignTransm2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binary signal transfer, 2Mbit transmit</td>
<td>BinSigTran1_12M</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>BinSigTran1_22M</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21.1.2  Application

The IEDs can be equipped with communication devices for line differential communication (not applicable for RER670) and/or communication of binary signals between IEDs. The same communication hardware is used for both purposes.

Sending of binary signals between two IEDs is used in teleprotection schemes and for direct transfer trips. In addition to this, there are application possibilities, for example, blocking/enabling functionality in the remote substation, changing setting group in the remote IED depending on the switching situation in the local substation and so on.

If equipped with a 64kbit/s LDCM module, the IED can be configured to send either 192 binary signals or 3 analog and 8 binary signals to a remote IED. If equipped with a 2Mbps LDCM module, the IED can send 9 analog channels and 192 binary channels to a remote IED.

Link forwarding
If it is not possible to have a communication link between each station, the solution has been to set the protection up in a slave-master-slave configuration. This means that in Figure 247, only IED-B has access to all currents and, therefore, this is the only place where the differential current is evaluated. If the evaluation results in a trip, the trip signal will be sent over the two communication links.

![3-end differential protection with two communication links](iecl6000077-en.png)
If the LDCM is in 2Mbit mode, you can send the three local currents as well as the three remote currents from the other links by configuring the transmitters in IED-B:

1. Ldcm312 transmitter sends the local currents and the three currents received by Ldcm313.
2. Ldcm313 transmitter sends the three local currents and the three currents received from Ldcm312.

As a result, six currents are received in IED-A and IED-C. These currents can be connected to the protection function together with the local three currents.

In order to forward the logic signals (for example, inter-trip or inter-block) between IED-A and IED-C, the setting LinkForwarded should be defined. In IED-B, it is set to LDCM313 for Ldcm312 and to LDCM312 for Ldcm313.

This setup results in a master-master-master configuration, but without the benefit of reverting to a slave-master-slave configuration in case of a communication link interruption. In case of a communication link interruption, all three IEDs would be blocked.

### 21.1.2.1 Communication hardware solutions

The LDCM (Line Data Communication Module) has an optical connection such that two IEDs can be connected over a direct fiber (multimode), as shown in figure 248. The protocol used is IEEE/ANSI C37.94. The distance with this solution is typical 110 km.

![Figure 248: Direct fiber optical connection between two IEDs with LDCM](en06000519-2.vsd)

The LDCM can also be used together with an external optical to galvanic G.703 converter or with an alternative external optical to galvanic X.21 as shown in figure 249. These solutions are aimed for connections to a multiplexer, which in turn is connected to a telecommunications transmission network (for example PDH).
When an external modem G.703 or X.21 is used, the connection between LDCM and the modem is made with a multimode fiber of max. 3 km length. The IEEE/ANSI C37.94 protocol is always used between LDCM and the modem.

Alternatively, a LDCM with X.21 built-in converter and micro D-sub 15-pole connector output can be used.

### 21.1.3 Setting guidelines

#### 64 kbit mode common settings

*ChannelMode* defines how an IED discards the LDCM information when one of the IEDs in the system is out of service: it can either be done on the IED out of service by setting all local LDCMs to channel mode *OutOfService* or at the remote end by setting the corresponding LDCM to channel mode *Blocked*. If *OutOfService* is selected, the IED should have active communication to the remote end during the whole maintenance process, that is, no restart or removal of the fiber can be done.

This setting does not apply to two-end communication.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blocked</td>
<td>IED does not use data from the LDCM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OutOfService</td>
<td>IED informs the remote end that it is out of service</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*TerminalNo* is used to assign a unique address to each LDCM in all current differential IEDs. Up to 256 LDCMs can be assigned a unique number. For example, in a local IED with two LDCMs:

- LDCM for slot 305: set *TerminalNo* to 1 and *RemoteTermNo* to 2
- LDCM for slot 306: set *TerminalNo* to 3 and *RemoteTermNo* to 4

In multiterminal current differential applications, with 4 LDCMs in each IED, up to 20 unique addresses must be set.
A unique address is necessary to give high security against incorrect addressing in the communication system. If the same number is used for TerminalNo in some of the LDCMs, a loop-back test in the communication system can give an incorrect trip.

RemoteTermNo is used to assign a number to each related LDCM in the remote IED. For each LDCM, RemoteTermNo is set to a different value than TerminalNo, but equal to the TerminalNo of the remote end LDCM. In the remote IED, TerminalNo and RemoteTermNo are reversed as follows:

- LDCM for slot 305: set TerminalNo to 2 and RemoteTermNo to 1
- LDCM for slot 306: set TerminalNo to 4 and RemoteTermNo to 3

The redundant channel is always configured to the lower position, for example:

- Slot 305: main channel
- Slot 306: redundant channel

The same is applicable for slot 312-313 and slot 322-323.

DiffSync defines the method of time synchronization for the line differential function: Echo or GPS.

Using Echo in this case is safe only if there is no risk of varying transmission asymmetry.

GPSSyncErr: when GPS synchronization is lost, synchronization of the line differential function continues for 16 s based on the stability in the local IED clocks. After that, setting Block blocks the line differential function or setting Echo keeps it on by using the Echo synchronization method.

Using Echo in this case is safe only if there is no risk of varying transmission asymmetry.

CommSync defines the Master and Slave relation in the communication system, and should not be mistaken for the synchronization of line differential current samples. When direct fiber is used, one LDCM is set as Master and the other as Slave. When a modem and multiplexer is used, the IED is always set as Slave because the telecommunication system provides the clock master.

OptoPower has two settings: LowPower and HighPower.

Short-range LDCM: Use LowPower for fibers 0 – 1 km and HighPower for fibers greater than 1 km.

Medium-range LDCM: Typical distance 80 km for both LowPower and HighPower.

Long-range LDCM: Typical distance 120 km for both LowPower and HighPower.

An optical budget calculation should be made for the actual case. For medium range LDCM and long range LDCM the recommendation is to use the LowPower setting to minimize the power consumption and keep the heat dissipation at minimum.
The *HighPower* setting adds 3 dBm extra optical power and can be used to increase the margin at distances close to maximum.

### Table 70: Optical budgets with C37.94 protocol

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of LDCM</th>
<th>Short range (SR)</th>
<th>Short range (SR)</th>
<th>Medium range (MR)</th>
<th>Long range (LR)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type of fibre</td>
<td>Multi-mode fiber glass 50/125 μm</td>
<td>Multi-mode fiber glass 62.5/125 μm</td>
<td>Single-mode fiber glass 9/125 μm</td>
<td>Single-mode fiber glass 9/125 μm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modem type</td>
<td>1MRK0002122-AB</td>
<td>1MRK0002122-AB</td>
<td>1MRK002311-AA</td>
<td>1MRK002311-BA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contact type</td>
<td>ST</td>
<td>ST</td>
<td>FC/PC</td>
<td>FC/PC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum output power</td>
<td>–21 dBm</td>
<td>–13.7 dBm</td>
<td>–3.2 dBm</td>
<td>–1.3 dBm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum receiver sensitivity</td>
<td>–32.5 dBm</td>
<td>–32.5 dBm</td>
<td>–30 dBm</td>
<td>–30 dBm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optical link budget</td>
<td>11.5 dB</td>
<td>18.8 dB</td>
<td>26.8 dB</td>
<td>28.7 dB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) Minimum output power is measured with 1 m of the selected fiber and the high power mode.
2) The optical budget includes a satisfactory margin for aging in transmitter and receiver during 20–30 years.

### Table 71: Example of input data for calculating the optical budget (maximum distance)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of LDCM</th>
<th>Short range (SR)</th>
<th>Short range (SR)</th>
<th>Medium range (MR)</th>
<th>Long range (LR)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type of fibre</td>
<td>Multi-mode fiber glass 50/125 μm</td>
<td>Multi-mode fiber glass 62.5/125 μm</td>
<td>Single-mode fiber glass 9/125 μm</td>
<td>Single-mode fiber glass 9/125 μm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modem type</td>
<td>1MRK0002122-AB</td>
<td>1MRK0002122-AB</td>
<td>1MRK002311-AA</td>
<td>1MRK002311-BA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Typical attenuation in fibre-optic cables</td>
<td>3 dB/km</td>
<td>3 dB/km</td>
<td>0.32 dB/km</td>
<td>0.21 dB/km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attenuation/Contact</td>
<td>1.5 dB/ST</td>
<td>1.5 dB/ST</td>
<td>0.3 dB/FC/PC</td>
<td>0.3 dB/FC/PC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factory splice attenuation</td>
<td>0.5 dB/splice 0.3 splices/km</td>
<td>0.5 dB/splice 0.1 splices/km</td>
<td>0.08 dB/splice 0.1 splices/km</td>
<td>0.08 dB/splice 0.1 splices/km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repair splices</td>
<td>0.25 dB/splice 0.1 splices/km</td>
<td>0.25 dB/splice 0.1 splices/km</td>
<td>0.1 dB/splice 0.05 splices/km</td>
<td>0.1 dB/splice 0.05 splices/km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiber margin for aging</td>
<td>0.1 dB/km</td>
<td>0.1 dB/km</td>
<td>0.01 dB/km</td>
<td>0.01 dB/km</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 72: Example of calculating the optical budget (maximum distance)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of LDCM</th>
<th>Short range (SR)</th>
<th>Short range (SR)</th>
<th>Medium range (MR)</th>
<th>Long range (LR)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type of fibre</td>
<td>Multi-mode fiber glass 50/125 μm</td>
<td>Multi-mode fiber glass 62.5/125 μm</td>
<td>Single-mode fiber glass 9/125 μm</td>
<td>Single-mode fiber glass 9/125 μm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modem type</td>
<td>1MRK0002122-AB</td>
<td>1MRK0002122-AB</td>
<td>1MRK002311-AA</td>
<td>1MRK002311-BA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum distance</td>
<td>2 km</td>
<td>3 km</td>
<td>80 km</td>
<td>120 km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attenuation in fibre-optic cables</td>
<td>6 dB</td>
<td>9 dB</td>
<td>25.6 dB</td>
<td>25.2 dB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 contacts</td>
<td>2 dB</td>
<td>3 dB</td>
<td>0.6 dB</td>
<td>0.6 dB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factory splice attenuation</td>
<td>0.3 dB</td>
<td>0.45 dB</td>
<td>0.64 dB</td>
<td>0.96 dB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repair splices</td>
<td>0.1 dB</td>
<td>0.3 dB</td>
<td>0.8 dB</td>
<td>1.2 dB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table continues on next page
Type of LDCM | Short range (SR) | Medium range (MR) | Long range (LR)  
---|---|---|---
Fiber margin for aging | 0.2 dB | 0.8 dB | 1.2 dB  
Total attenuation | 8.6 dB | 26.04 dB | 28.56 dB  
Optical link budget | 9 dB | 26.8 dB | 28.7 dB  
Link margin | 0.4 dB | 0.76 dB | 0.14 dB  

*ComAlarmDel* defines the time delay for communication failure alarm. In communication systems, route switching can sometimes cause interruptions with a duration of up to 50 ms. Too short a time delay can thus cause nuisance alarms.

*ComAlrmResDel* defines the time delay for communication failure alarm reset.

*RedChSwTime* defines the time delay before switching over to a redundant channel in case of primary channel failure.

*RedChRturnTime* defines the time delay before switching back to the primary channel after channel failure.

*AsymDelay* denotes asymmetry which is defined as transmission delay minus receive delay. If fixed asymmetry is known, *Echo* synchronization method can be used, provided that *AsymDelay* is properly set. From the definition follows that asymmetry is always positive at one end and negative at the other end.

*MaxTransmDelay* indicates maximum transmission delay. Data for maximum 40 ms transmission delay can be buffered up. Delay times in the range of some ms are common. If data arrive in wrong order, the oldest data is disregarded.

*MaxtDiffLevel* indicates the maximum time difference allowed between internal clocks in respective line ends.

### 64 kbit mode specific settings

*TransmCurri* is used to select among the following:

- one of the two possible local currents is transmitted
- sum of the two local currents is transmitted
- channel is used as a redundant backup channel

1½ breaker arrangement has two local currents, and the Current Transformer (CT) earthing for those can differ. *CT-SUM* transmits the sum of the two CT groups. *CT-DIFF1* transmits CT group 1 minus CT group 2 and *CT-DIFF2* transmits CT group 2 minus CT group 1.

*CT-GRP1* and *CT-GRP2* transmit the respective CT groups, and setting *RedundantChannel* determines that the channel is used as a redundant backup channel. The redundant channel takes the CT group setting of the main channel.

*RemAinLatency* corresponds to *LocAinLatency* set in the remote IED.

*AnalogLatency* specifies the time delay (number of samples) between actual sampling and the time the sample reaches LDCM. The value is set to 2 when transmitting analog data. When a merging unit according to IEC 61850-9-2 is used instead of the TRM, this parameter shall be set to 5.

*CompRange* value indicates the current peak value over which truncation is made. To set this value, knowledge of fault current levels is required. It is recommended to set the minimum...
range that will cover the expected fault current value. For example, if a 40kA fault level is expected on the network, the 0-50kA settings range should be chosen.
Section 22 Security

22.1 Authority status ATHSTAT

22.1.1 Application

Authority status (ATHSTAT) function is an indication function block, which informs about two events related to the IED and the user authorization:

- the fact that at least one user has tried to log on wrongly into the IED and it was blocked (the output USRBLKED)
- the fact that at least one user is logged on (the output LOGGEDON)

The two outputs of ATHSTAT function can be used in the configuration for different indication and alarming reasons, or can be sent to the station control for the same purpose.

22.2 Self supervision with internal event list INTERRSIG

22.2.1 Application

The protection and control IEDs have many functions included. The included self-supervision with internal event list function block provides good supervision of the IED. The fault signals make it easier to analyze and locate a fault.

Both hardware and software supervision is included and it is also possible to indicate possible faults through a hardware contact on the power supply module and/or through the communication.

Internal events are generated by the built-in supervisory functions. The supervisory functions supervise the status of the various modules in the IED and, in case of failure, a corresponding event is generated. Similarly, when the failure is corrected, a corresponding event is generated.

Apart from the built-in supervision of the various modules, events are also generated when the status changes for the:

- built-in real time clock (in operation/out of order).
- external time synchronization (in operation/out of order).

Events are also generated:

- whenever any setting in the IED is changed.

The internal events are time tagged with a resolution of 1 ms and stored in a list. The list can store up to 40 events. The list is based on the FIFO principle, that is, when it is full, the oldest event is overwritten. The list contents cannot be modified, but the whole list can be cleared using the Reset menu in the LHMI.

The list of internal events provides valuable information, which can be used during commissioning and fault tracing.
The information can, in addition to be viewed on the built in HMI, also be retrieved with the aid of a PC with PCM600 installed and by using the Event Monitoring Tool. The PC can either be connected to the front port, or to the port at the back of the IED.

22.3 Change lock CHNGLCK

22.3.1 Application

Change lock function CHNGLCK is used to block further changes to the IED configuration once the commissioning is complete. The purpose is to make it impossible to perform inadvertent IED configuration and setting changes.

However, when activated, CHNGLCK will still allow the following actions that does not involve reconfiguring of the IED:

- Monitoring
- Reading events
- Resetting events
- Reading disturbance data
- Clear disturbances
- Reset LEDs
- Reset counters and other runtime component states
- Control operations
- Set system time
- Enter and exit from test mode
- Change of active setting group

The binary input controlling the function is defined in ACT or SMT. The CHNGLCK function is configured using ACT.

LOCK Binary input signal that will activate/deactivate the function, defined in ACT or SMT.

When CHNGLCK has a logical one on its input, then all attempts to modify the IED configuration and setting will be denied and the message "Error: Changes blocked" will be displayed on the local HMI; in PCM600 the message will be "Operation denied by active ChangeLock". The CHNGLCK function should be configured so that it is controlled by a signal from a binary input card. This guarantees that by setting that signal to a logical zero, CHNGLCK is deactivated. If any logic is included in the signal path to the CHNGLCK input, that logic must be designed so that it cannot permanently issue a logical one to the CHNGLCK input. If such a situation would occur in spite of these precautions, then please contact the local ABB representative for remedial action.
22.4 Denial of service SCHLCCH/RCHLCCH

22.4.1 Application

The denial of service functionality is designed to limit the CPU load that can be produced by Ethernet network traffic on the IED. The communication facilities must not be allowed to compromise the primary functionality of the device. All inbound network traffic will be quota controlled so that too heavy network loads can be controlled. Heavy network load might for instance be the result of malfunctioning equipment connected to the network.

The functions Access point diagnostics function block measure the IED load from communication and, if necessary, limit it for not jeopardizing the IEDs control and protection functionality due to high CPU load. The function has the following denial of service related outputs:

• LINKSTS indicates the Ethernet link status for the rear ports (single communication)
• CHALISTS and CHBLISTS indicates the Ethernet link status for the rear ports channel A and B (redundant communication)
• LinkStatus indicates the Ethernet link status for the front port

22.4.2 Setting guidelines

The function does not have any parameters available in the local HMI or PCM600.
Section 23  Basic IED functions

23.1  IED identifiers TERMINALID

23.1.1  Application

IED identifiers (TERMINALID) function allows the user to identify the individual IED in the system, not only in the substation, but in a whole region or a country.

Use only characters A-Z, a-z and 0-9 in station, object and unit names.

23.2  Product information PRODINF

23.2.1  Application

Product information contains unchangeable data that uniquely identifies the IED.

Product information data is visible on the local HMI under Main menu/Diagnostics/IED status/Product identifiers and under Main menu/Diagnostics/IED Status/Identifiers:

- ProductVer
- ProductDef
- FirmwareVer
- SerialNo
- OrderingNo
- ProductionDate
- IEDProdType

Figure 250: IED summary

This information is very helpful when interacting with ABB product support (for example during repair and maintenance).

23.2.2  Factory defined settings

The factory defined settings are very useful for identifying a specific version and very helpful in the case of maintenance, repair, interchanging IEDs between different Substation Automation Systems and upgrading. The factory made settings can not be changed by the customer. They can only be viewed. The settings are found in the local HMI under Main menu/Diagnostics/IED status/Product identifiers

The following identifiers are available:

- IEDProdType
  - Describes the type of the IED. Example: REL670
- ProductDef
- Describes the release number from the production. Example: 2.1.0
- FirmwareVer
  - Describes the firmware version.
  - The firmware version can be checked from Main menu/Diagnostics/IED status/
    Product identifiers
  - Firmware version numbers run independently from the release production numbers. For every release number there can be one or more firmware versions depending on the small issues corrected in between releases.
- ProductVer
  - Describes the product version. Example: 2.1.0

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>is the Major version of the manufactured product this means, new platform of the product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>is the Minor version of the manufactured product this means, new functions or new hardware added to the product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>is the Major revision of the manufactured product this means, functions or hardware is either changed or enhanced in the product</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- IEDMainFunType
  - Main function type code according to IEC 60870-5-103. Example: 128 (meaning line protection).
- SerialNo
- OrderingNo
- ProductionDate

23.3 Measured value expander block RANGE_XP

23.3.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Measured value expander block RANGE_XP</td>
<td>RANGE_XP</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.3.2 Application

The current and voltage measurements functions (CVMMXN, CMMXU, VMMXU and VNMMXU), current and voltage sequence measurement functions (CMSQI and VMSQI) and IEC 61850 generic communication I/O functions (MVGAPC) are provided with measurement supervision functionality. All measured values can be supervised with four settable limits, that is low-low limit, low limit, high limit and high-high limit. The measure value expander block ( RANGE_XP) has been introduced to be able to translate the integer output signal from the measuring functions to 5 binary signals, that is below low-low limit, below low limit, normal, above high-high limit or above high limit. The output signals can be used as conditions in the configurable logic.

23.3.3 Setting guidelines

There are no settable parameters for the measured value expander block function.
23.4 Parameter setting groups

23.4.1 Application

Six sets of settings are available to optimize IED operation for different power system conditions. By creating and switching between fine tuned setting sets, either from the local HMI or configurable binary inputs, results in a highly adaptable IED that can cope with a variety of power system scenarios.

Different conditions in networks with different voltage levels require highly adaptable protection and control units to best provide for dependability, security and selectivity requirements. Protection units operate with a higher degree of availability, especially, if the setting values of their parameters are continuously optimized according to the conditions in the power system.

Operational departments can plan for different operating conditions in the primary equipment. The protection engineer can prepare the necessary optimized and pre-tested settings in advance for different protection functions. Six different groups of setting parameters are available in the IED. Any of them can be activated through the different programmable binary inputs by means of external or internal control signals.

A function block, SETGRPS, defines how many setting groups are used. Setting is done with parameter MAXSETGR and shall be set to the required value for each IED. Only the number of setting groups set will be available in the Parameter Setting tool for activation with the ActiveGroup function block.

23.4.2 Setting guidelines

The setting ActiveSetGrp, is used to select which parameter group to be active. The active group can also be selected with configured input to the function block SETGRPS.

The length of the pulse, sent out by the output signal SETCHGD when an active group has changed, is set with the parameter t.

The parameter MAXSETGR defines the maximum number of setting groups in use to switch between. Only the selected number of setting groups will be available in the Parameter Setting tool (PST) for activation with the ActiveGroup function block.

23.5 Rated system frequency PRIMVAL

23.5.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary system values</td>
<td>PRIMVAL</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.5.2 Application

The rated system frequency and phase rotation direction are set under Main menu/ Configuration/ Power system/ Primary Values in the local HMI and PCM600 parameter setting tree.
23.5.3 Setting guidelines

Set the system rated frequency. Refer to section "Signal matrix for analog inputs SMAI" for description on frequency tracking.

23.6 Summation block 3 phase 3PHSUM

23.6.1 Application

The analog summation block 3PHSUM function block is used in order to get the sum of two sets of 3 phase analog signals (of the same type) for those IED functions that might need it.

23.6.2 Setting guidelines

The summation block receives the three-phase signals from SMAI blocks. The summation block has several settings.

SummationType: Summation type (Group 1 + Group 2, Group 1 - Group 2, Group 2 - Group 1 or -(Group 1 + Group 2)).

DFTReference: The reference DFT block (InternalDFTRef, DFTRefGrp1 or External DFT ref).

DFTRefGrp1: This setting means use own internal adaptive DFT reference (this setting makes the SUM3PH self DFT adaptive, that is, it will use the measured frequency for the summation signal to adapt DFT).

InternalDFTRef: Gives fixed window DFT (to nominal system frequency).

ExternalDFTRef: This setting means that the DFT samples-per-cycle (adaptive DFT) will be controlled by SMAI1 SPFCOUT.

FreqMeasMinVal: The minimum value of the voltage for which the frequency is calculated, expressed as percent of UBasebase voltage setting (for each instance x).

GlobalBaseSel: Selects the global base value group used by the function to define (IBase), (UBase) and (SBase).

23.7 Global base values GBASVAL

23.7.1 Identification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Function description</th>
<th>IEC 61850 identification</th>
<th>IEC 60617 identification</th>
<th>ANSI/IEEE C37.2 device number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Global base values</td>
<td>GBASVAL</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23.7.2 Application

Global base values function (GBASVAL) is used to provide global values, common for all applicable functions within the IED. One set of global values consists of values for current, voltage and apparent power and it is possible to have twelve different sets.

This is an advantage since all applicable functions in the IED use a single source of base values. This facilitates consistency throughout the IED and also facilitates a single point for updating values when necessary.

Each applicable function in the IED has a parameter, GlobalBaseSel, defining one out of the twelve sets of GBASVAL functions.

23.7.3 Setting guidelines

UBase: Phase-to-phase voltage value to be used as a base value for applicable functions throughout the IED.

IBase: Phase current value to be used as a base value for applicable functions throughout the IED.

SBase: Standard apparent power value to be used as a base value for applicable functions throughout the IED, typically SBase=\sqrt{3}\cdot UBase\cdot IBase.

23.8 Signal matrix for binary inputs SMBI

23.8.1 Application

The Signal matrix for binary inputs function SMBI is used within the Application Configuration tool in direct relation with the Signal Matrix tool. SMBI represents the way binary inputs are brought in for one IED configuration.

23.8.2 Setting guidelines

There are no setting parameters for the Signal matrix for binary inputs SMBI available to the user in Parameter Setting tool. However, the user shall give a name to SMBI instance and the SMBI inputs, directly in the Application Configuration tool. These names will define SMBI function in the Signal Matrix tool. The user defined name for the input or output signal will also appear on the respective output or input signal.

23.9 Signal matrix for binary outputs SMBO

23.9.1 Application

The Signal matrix for binary outputs function SMBO is used within the Application Configuration tool in direct relation with the Signal Matrix tool. SMBO represents the way binary outputs are sent from one IED configuration.
23.9.2 Setting guidelines

There are no setting parameters for the Signal matrix for binary outputs SMBO available to the user in Parameter Setting tool. However, the user must give a name to SMBO instance and SMBO outputs, directly in the Application Configuration tool. These names will define SMBO function in the Signal Matrix tool.

23.10 Signal matrix for mA inputs SMMI

23.10.1 Application

The Signal matrix for mA inputs function SMMI is used within the Application Configuration tool in direct relation with the Signal Matrix tool. SMMI represents the way milliamp (mA) inputs are brought in for one IED configuration.

23.10.2 Setting guidelines

There are no setting parameters for the Signal matrix for mA inputs SMMI available to the user in the Parameter Setting tool. However, the user must give a name to SMMI instance and SMMI inputs, directly in the Application Configuration tool.

23.11 Signal matrix for analog inputs SMAI

23.11.1 Application

Signal matrix for analog inputs (SMAI), also known as the preprocessor function block, analyses the connected four analog signals (three phases and neutral) and calculates all relevant information from them like the phasor magnitude, phase angle, frequency, true RMS value, harmonics, sequence components and so on. This information is then used by the respective functions connected to this SMAI block in ACT (for example protection, measurement or monitoring functions).

23.11.2 Frequency values

The SMAI function includes a functionality based on the level of positive sequence voltage, MinValFreqMeas, to validate if the frequency measurement is valid or not. If the positive sequence voltage is lower than MinValFreqMeas, the function freezes the frequency output value for 500 ms and after that the frequency output is set to the nominal value. A signal is available for the SMAI function to prevent operation due to non-valid frequency values. MinValFreqMeas is set as % of UBase/√3

If SMAI setting ConnectionType is Ph-Ph, at least two of the inputs GRPxL1, GRPxL2 and GRPxL3, where 1≤x≤12, must be connected in order to calculate the positive sequence voltage. Note that phase to phase inputs shall always be connected as follows: L1-L2 to GRPxL1, L2-L3 to GRPxL2, L3-L1 to GRPxL3. If SMAI setting ConnectionType is Ph-N, all three inputs GRPxL1, GRPxL2 and GRPxL3 must be connected in order to calculate the positive sequence voltage.

If only one phase-phase voltage is available and SMAI setting ConnectionType is Ph-Ph, the user is advised to connect two (not three) of the inputs GRPxL1, GRPxL2 and GRPxL3 to the same voltage input as shown in figure 251 to make SMAI calculate a positive sequence voltage.
The above described scenario does not work if SMAI setting ConnectionType is Ph-N. If only one phase-earth voltage is available, the same type of connection can be used but the SMAI ConnectionType setting must still be Ph-Ph and this has to be accounted for when setting MinValFreqMeas. If SMAI setting ConnectionType is Ph-N and the same voltage is connected to all three SMAI inputs, the positive sequence voltage will be zero and the frequency functions will not work properly.

The outputs from the above configured SMAI block shall only be used for Overfrequency protection (SAPTOF), Underfrequency protection (SAPTUF) and Rate-of-change frequency protection (SAPFRC) due to that all other information except frequency and positive sequence voltage might be wrongly calculated.

### Setting guidelines

The parameters for the signal matrix for analog inputs (SMAI) functions are set via the local HMI or PCM600.

Every SMAI function block can receive four analog signals (three phases and one neutral value), either voltage or current. SMAI outputs give information about every aspect of the 3ph analog signals acquired (phase angle, RMS value, frequency and frequency derivates, and so on – 244 values in total). Besides the block “group name”, the analog inputs type (voltage or current) and the analog input names that can be set directly in ACT.

Application functions should be connected to a SMAI block with same task cycle as the application function, except for e.g. measurement functions that run in slow cycle tasks.

**DFTRefExtOut**: Parameter valid only for function block SMAI1.

Reference block for external output (SPFCOUT function output).

**DFTReference**: Reference DFT for the SMAI block use.

These DFT reference block settings decide DFT reference for DFT calculations. The setting InternalDFTRef will use fixed DFT reference based on set system frequency. DFTRefGrp(n) will use DFT reference from the selected group block, when own group is selected, an adaptive DFT reference will be used based on calculated signal frequency from own group. The setting ExternalDFTRef will use reference based on what is connected to input DFTSPFC.

The setting ConnectionType: Connection type for that specific instance (n) of the SMAI (if it is Ph-N or Ph-Ph). Depending on connection type setting the not connected Ph-N or Ph-Ph outputs will be calculated as long as they are possible to calculate. E.g. at Ph-Ph connection L1,
L2 and L3 will be calculated for use in symmetrical situations. If N component should be used respectively the phase component during faults $I_N/U_N$ must be connected to input 4.

**Negation:** If the user wants to negate the 3ph signal, it is possible to choose to negate only the phase signals $Negate3Ph$, only the neutral signal $NegateN$ or both $Negate3Ph+N$. negation means rotation with 180° of the vectors.

**GlobalBaseSel:** Selects the global base value group used by the function to define $(IBase)$, $(UBase)$ and $(SBase)$.

**MinValFreqMeas:** The minimum value of the voltage for which the frequency is calculated, expressed as percent of UBase (for each instance n).

Settings $DFTRefExtOut$ and $DFTReference$ shall be set to default value $InternalDFTRef$ if no VT inputs are available.

Even if the user sets the $AnalogInputType$ of a SMAI block to “Current”, the $MinValFreqMeas$ is still visible. However, using the current channel values as base for frequency measurement is **not recommendable** for a number of reasons, not last among them being the low level of currents that one can have in normal operating conditions.

**Examples of adaptive frequency tracking**

Preprocessing block shall only be used to feed functions within the same execution cycles (e.g. use preprocessing block with cycle 1 to feed transformer differential protection). The only exceptions are measurement functions (CVMXN, CMMXU, VMMXU, etc.) which shall be fed by preprocessing blocks with cycle 8.

When two or more preprocessing blocks are used to feed one protection function (e.g. over-power function GOPPDOP), it is of outmost importance that parameter setting $DFTReference$ has the same set value for all of the preprocessing blocks involved.
Figure 252: Twelve SMAI instances are grouped within one task time. SMAI blocks are available in three different task times in the IED. Two pointed instances are used in the following examples.

The examples show a situation with adaptive frequency tracking with one reference selected for all instances. In practice each instance can be adapted to the needs of the actual application. The adaptive frequency tracking is needed in IEDs that belong to the protection system of synchronous machines and that are active during run-up and shut-down of the machine. In other application the usual setting of the parameter DFTReference of SMAI is InternalDFTRef.

Example 1
Figure 253: Configuration for using an instance in task time group 1 as DFT reference

Assume instance SMAI7:7 in task time group 1 has been selected in the configuration to control the frequency tracking. Observe that the selected reference instance (i.e. frequency tracking master) must be a voltage type. Observe that positive sequence voltage is used for the frequency tracking feature.

For task time group 1 this gives the following settings (see Figure 252 for numbering):

- SMAI1:1: \textit{DFTRefExtOut} = \textit{DFTRefGrp7} to route SMAI7:7 reference to the SPFCOUT output, \textit{DFTReference} = \textit{DFTRefGrp7} for SMAI1:1 to use SMAI7:7 as reference (see Figure 253)

For task time group 2 this gives the following settings:

- SMAI1:13 – SMAI12:24: \textit{DFTReference} = \textit{ExternalDFTRef} to use DFTSPFC input of SMAI1:13 as reference (SMAI7:7)

For task time group 3 this gives the following settings:

- SMAI1:25 – SMAI12:36: \textit{DFTReference} = \textit{ExternalDFTRef} to use DFTSPFC input as reference (SMAI7:7)

Example 2
Figure 254: Configuration for using an instance in task time group 2 as DFT reference.

Assume instance SMAI4:16 in task time group 2 has been selected in the configuration to control the frequency tracking for all instances. Observe that the selected reference instance (i.e. frequency tracking master) must be a voltage type. Observe that positive sequence voltage is used for the frequency tracking feature.

For task time group 1 this gives the following settings (see Figure 252 for numbering):

SMAI1:1 – SMAI12:12: $DFTReference = ExternalDFTRef$ to use DFTSPFC input as reference (SMAI4:16)

For task time group 2 this gives the following settings:

SMAI1:13: $DFTRefExtOut = DFTRefGrp4$ to route SMAI4:16 reference to the SPFCOUT output, $DFTReference = DFTRefGrp4$ for SMAI1:13 to use SMAI4:16 as reference (see Figure 254)


For task time group 3 this gives the following settings:

SMAI1:25 – SMAI12:36: $DFTReference = ExternalDFTRef$ to use DFTSPFC input as reference (SMAI4:16)

23.12 Test mode functionality TESTMODE

23.12.1 Application

The protection and control IEDs may have a complex configuration with many included functions. To make the testing procedure easier, the IEDs include the feature that allows individual blocking of a single-, several-, or all functions.

This means that it is possible to see when a function is activated or trips. It also enables the user to follow the operation of several related functions to check correct functionality and to check parts of the configuration, and to check parts.
### IEC 61850 protocol test mode

The function block TESTMODE has implemented the extended testing mode capabilities for IEC 61850 Ed2 systems. Operator commands sent to the function block TESTMODE determine the behavior of the functions. The command can be given remotely from an IEC 61850 client or from the LHMI under the **Main menu/Test/Function test modes/Communication/Station Communication/IEC61850 LDO LLN0/LLD0LLN0:1**. The possible values of the function block TESTMODE are described in *Communication protocol manual, IEC 61850 Edition 1 and Edition 2.*

There is no setting in PCM600 via PST for the TESTMODE function block.

To be able to set the function block TESTMODE remotely, the setting via path on LHMI and in PST: **Main menu/Configuration/Communication/Station Communication/IEC61850-8-1/IEC61850-8-1:1 RemoteModControl** may not be set to *Off*. The possible values of the parameter *RemoteModControl* are *Off*, *Maintenance* or *All levels*. The *Off* value denies all access to function block TESTMODE from remote, *Maintenance* requires that the category of the originator (orCat) is *Maintenance* and *All levels* allow any orCat.

The DataObject Mod of the Root LD.LNN0 can be set on the LHMI under **Main menu/Test/Function test modes/Communication/Station communication/IEC61850 LD0 LLN0/LD0LLN0:1** to *On*, *Off*, *TestBlocked*, *Test* or *Blocked*. When the setting of the DataObject Mod is changed at this level, all Logical Nodes inside the logical device update their own behavior according to IEC61850-7-4. The supported values of the function block TESTMODE are described in *Communication protocol manual, IEC 61850 Edition 2*. When the function block TESTMODE is in test mode the Start LED on the LHMI is turned on with steady light.

The parameter *Mod* of any specific function block can be configured under **Main menu/Test/Function test modes/Communication/Station Communication**. The parameter *Mod* can be set on the LHMI to the same values as for the DataObject Mod of the Root LD.LNN0 to *On*, *Off*, *TestBlocked*, *Test* or *Blocked*. For Example, **Main menu/ Test/Function test modes/ Differential protection/GeneratorDiff(87G,3Id/I>)/ GENPDIF(87G,3Id/I>):1**.

It is possible that the behavior of the function block TESTMODE is also influenced by other sources as well, independent of the mode communicated via the IEC61850-8-1 station bus. For example the insertion of the test handle into the test switch with its auxiliary contact is connected to a BI on the IED and further inside the configuration to the input IED_TEST on the function block TESTMODE. Another example is when loss of Service Values appears, or as explained above the setting via the LHMI.

When setting via PST or LHMI the parameter *Operation* of any function in an IED is set to *Off*, the function is not executed and the behavior (*beh*) is set to *Off* and it is not possible to override it. When a behavior of a function is *Off* the function will not execute. The related *Mod* keeps its current state.

When IEC 61850 Mod of a function is set to *Off* or *Blocked*, the Start LED on the LHMI will be set to flashing to indicate the abnormal operation of the IED.

The IEC 61850-7-4 gives a detailed overview over all aspects of the test mode and other states of mode and behavior. The status of a function block behavior *Beh* is shown on the LHMI under
• When the Beh of a function block is set to Test, the function block is not blocked and all control commands with a test bit are accepted.

• When the Beh of a function block is set to Test/blocked, all control commands with a test bit are accepted. Outputs to the process via a non-IEC 61850 link data are blocked by the function block. Only process-related outputs on function blocks related to primary equipment are blocked. If there is an XCBR function block used, the outputs EXC_Open and EXC_Close are blocked.

• When the Beh of a function block is set to Blocked, all control commands with a test bit are accepted. Outputs to the process via a non-IEC 61850 link data are blocked by the function block. In addition, the function block can be blocked when their Beh is blocked. This can be done if the function block has a block input.

The block status of a component is shown on the LHMI as the Blk output under the same path as for Beh: Main menu/Test/Function status/Function group/Function block descriptive name/LN name/Outputs. If the Blk output is not shown, the component cannot be blocked.

23.12.2 Setting guidelines

Remember always that there are two possible ways to place the IED in the TestMode= On” state. If, the IED is set to normal operation (TestMode = Off), but the functions are still shown being in the test mode, the input signal IED_TEST on the TESTMODE function block is activated in the configuration.

Forcing of binary input and output signals is only possible when the IED is in IED test mode.

23.13 Time synchronization TIMESYNCHGEN

23.13.1 Application

Use time synchronization to achieve a common time base for the IEDs in a protection and control system. This makes it possible to compare events and disturbance data between all IEDs in the system. If a global common source (i.e. GPS) is used in different substations for the time synchronization, also comparisons and analysis between recordings made at different locations can be easily performed and a more accurate view of the actual sequence of events can be obtained.

Time-tagging of internal events and disturbances are an excellent help when evaluating faults. Without time synchronization, only the events within one IED can be compared with each other. With time synchronization, events and disturbances within the whole network, can be compared and evaluated.

In the IED, the internal time can be synchronized from the following sources:

• BIN (Binary Minute Pulse)
• DNP
• GPS
• IEC103
• SNTP
• IRIG-B
• SPA
• LON
• PPS
• IEEE 1588 (PTP)
For IEDs using PMU functionality, only PTP, GPS or IRIG-B or a combination of both GPS and IRIG-B is allowed.

For IEDs using IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE in “mixed mode” a time synchronization from an external clock is recommended to the IED and all connected merging units. The time synchronization from the clock to the IED can be PTP, optical PPS or IRIG-B. For IEDs using IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE from one single MU as analog data source, the MU and IED still need to be synchronized to each other. This could be done by letting the MU supply a PPS signal to the IED or by supplying a PPS signal from the IED to the MU, by using a GTM.

Out of these, LON and SPA contains two types of synchronization messages:

- Coarse time messages are sent every minute and contain complete date and time, that is year, month, day, hour, minute, second and millisecond.
- Fine time messages are sent every second and comprise only seconds and milliseconds.

The selection of the time source is done via the corresponding setting.

It is possible to select more than one time source, in which case one is backup for the other. The time synchronization source with the best calculated time-quality is automatically selected. For instance, if both GPS and IRIG-B are selected and both sources have the required accuracy, optical IRIG-B with IEEE1344 will be automatically selected as the time synchronization source. Or if GPS and SNTP are selected, when the GPS signal quality is bad, the IED will automatically choose SNTP as the time-source.

If PTP is activated, the device with the best accuracy within the synchronizing group will be selected as the source. For more information about PTP, see the Technical manual.

IEEE 1588 (PTP)

PTP according to IEEE 1588-2008 and specifically its profile IEC/IEEE 61850-9-3 for power utility automation is a synchronization method that can be used to maintain a common time within a station. This time can be synchronized to the global time using, for instance, a GPS receiver. If PTP is enabled on the IEDs and the switches that connect the station are compatible with IEEE 1588, the station will become synchronized to one common time with an accuracy of under 1us. Using an IED as a boundary clock between several networks will keep 1us accuracy on three levels or when using an HSR, 15 IEDs can be connected in a ring without losing a single microsecond in accuracy.

23.13.2 Setting guidelines

All the parameters related to time are divided into two categories: System time and Synchronization.

23.13.2.1 System time

The time is set with years, month, day, hour, minute, second and millisecond.

23.13.2.2 Synchronization

The setting parameters for the real-time clock with external time synchronization are set via local HMI or PCM600. The path for Time Synchronization parameters on local HMI is Main menu/Configuration/Time/Synchronization. The parameters are categorized as Time Synchronization (TIMESYNCHGEN) and IRIG-B settings (IRIG-B:1) in case that IRIG-B is used as the external time synchronization source.
TimeSynch
When the source of the time synchronization is selected on the local HMI, the parameter is called TimeSynch. The time synchronization source can also be set from PCM600. The setting alternatives are:

FineSyncSource can have the following values:

- Off
- SPA
- LON
- Bin (Binary Minute Pulse)
- GPS
- GPS+SPA
- GPS+LON
- GPS+BIN
- SNTP
- GPS+SNTP
- IRIG-B
- GPS+IRIG-B
- PPS

CoarseSyncSrc which can have the following values:

- Off
- SPA
- LON
- DNP
- IEC 60870-5-103

The function input to be used for minute-pulse synchronization is called BININPUT. For a description of the BININPUT settings, see the Technical Manual.

The system time can be set manually, either via the local HMI or via any of the communication ports. The time synchronization fine tunes the clock (seconds and milliseconds).

The parameter SyncMaster defines if the IED is a master, or not a master for time synchronization within a Substation Automation System, for IEDs connected in a communication network (IEC 61850-8-1). The SyncMaster can have the following values:

- Off
- SNTP -Server

Set the course time synchronizing source (CoarseSyncSrc) to Off when GPS time synchronization of line differential function is used. Set the fine time synchronization source (FineSyncSource) to GPS. The GPS will thus provide the complete time synchronization. GPS alone shall synchronize the analogue values in such systems.

All protection functions will be blocked if the AppSynch parameter is set to Synch while there is no 9-2 synchronization source. For more information please refer to the "IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE communication protocol" section.

IEEE 1588 (PTP)
Precision Time Protocol (PTP) is enabled/disabled using the Ethernet configuration tool /ECT) in PCM600.
PTP can be set to On, Off or Slave only. When set to Slave only the IED is connected to the PTP-group and will synchronize to the grandmaster but cannot function as the grandmaster.

A PTP-group is set up by connecting the IEDs to a network and enabling PTP. To set one IED as the grandmaster change Priority2 to 127 instead of the default 128.

Figure 255: Enabling PTP in ECT

The PTP VLAN tag must have the same value in station clock and in the IED. The default value is set to 0.

The PTP VLAN tag does not need to be the same on all access points in one IED. It is possible to mix as long as they are the same for all devices on each subnet.

Setting example

Figure 256: Example system

Figure 256 describes an example system. The REC and REL are both using the 9-2 stream from the SAM600, and gets its synch from the GPS. Moreover, the REL and REC both acts as a boundary clock to provide synch to the SAM600. The REL contains a GTM card, which has a PPS output that is used to synchronize merging units that are not PTP compliant. As a side effect, the GTM contains a GPS receiver and the REL acts as a backup of the GPS on the station bus.

On all access points, the PTP parameter is “ON”.

On the REL, the parameter FineSyncSource (under Configuration/Time/Synchronization/TIMESYNCHGEN:1/General) is set to “GPS” if there is a GPS antenna attached.

If the GTM is used as a PPS output only, the FineSyncSource is not set.
23.13.2.3 Process bus IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE synchronization

When process bus communication (IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE protocol) is used, it is essential that the merging units are synchronized with the hardware time of the IED (see Technical manual, section Design of the time system (clock synchronization)). To achieve this, PTP, PPS or IRIG-B can be used depending of the facilities of the merging unit.

If the merging unit supports PTP, use PTP. If PTP is used in the IED and the merging unit is not PTP capable, then synchronize the merging unit from the IED via a PPS out from the GTM. If PTP is used in the IED and the merging unit cannot be synchronized from the IED, then use GPS-based clocks to provide PTP synch as well as sync to the merging unit.

If synchronization of the IED and the merging unit is based on GPS, set the parameter SyncLostMode to BlockOnLostUTC in order to provide a block of protection functions whenever the global common time is lost.

If PTP is not used, use the same synchronization method for the HwSyncSrc as the merging unit provides. For instance, if the merging unit provides PPS as synchronization, use PPS as HwSyncSrc. If either PMU or LDCM in GPS-mode is used, that is, the hardware and software clocks are connected to each other, HwSyncSrc is not used and other means to synchronize the merging unit to the IED is required. Either FineSyncSource is set to the same source that the merging unit uses, or the PPS output from the GTM module is used to synchronize the merging unit. If the PPS output from the GTM module is used to synchronize the merging unit and PTP is not used, the IED does not know how the merging unit is synchronized and the parameter SyncLostMode must be set to NoBlock.

If the IED is used together with a merging unit and no time synchronization is available, for example, in the laboratory test, the IED will synchronize to the SV data stream. During the re-synchronization, the protection functions will be blocked once a second for about 45 ms, and this will continue for up to 10 minutes. To avoid this, configure PTP (IEEE 1588) to On for the access point where the merging unit is configured.
Section 24 Requirements

24.1 Current transformer requirements

The performance of a protection function will depend on the quality of the measured current signal. Saturation of the current transformers (CTs) will cause distortion of the current signals and can result in a failure to operate or cause unwanted operations of some functions. Consequently CT saturation can have an influence on both the dependability and the security of the protection. This protection IED has been designed to permit heavy CT saturation with maintained correct operation.

24.1.1 Current transformer basic classification and requirements

To guarantee correct operation, the current transformers (CTs) must be able to correctly reproduce the current for a minimum time before the CT will begin to saturate. To fulfill the requirement on a specified time to saturation the CTs must fulfill the requirements of a minimum secondary e.m.f. that is specified below.

CTs are specified according to many different classes and standards. In principle, there are three different types of protection CTs. These types are related to the design of the iron core and the presence of airgaps. Airgaps affects the properties of the remanent flux.

The following three different types of protection CTs have been specified:

- The High Remanence type with closed iron core and no specified limit of the remanent flux
- The Low Remanence type with small airgaps in the iron core and the remanent flux limit is specified to be maximum 10% of the saturation flux
- The Non Remanence type with big airgaps in the iron core and the remanent flux can be neglected

Even though no limit of the remanent flux is specified in the IEC standard for closed core CTs, it is a common opinion that the remanent flux is normally limited to maximum 75 - 80 % of the saturation flux.

Since approximately year 2000 some CT manufactures have introduced new core materials that gradually have increased the possible maximum levels of remanent flux even up to 95 % related to the hysteresis curve. Corresponding level of actual remanent flux is 90 % of the saturation flux ($\Psi_{sat}$). As the present CT standards have no limitation of the level of remanent flux, these CTs are also classified as for example, class TPX, P and PX according to IEC. The IEC TR 61869-100, Edition 1.0 2017-01, Instrument transformers – Guidance for application of current transformers in power system protection, is the first official document that highlighted this development. So far remanence factors of maximum 80% have been considered when CT requirements have been decided for ABB IEDs. Even in the future this level of remanent flux probably will be the maximum level that will be considered when decided the CT requirements. If higher remanence levels should be considered, it should often lead to unrealistic CT sizes.

Thus, now there is a need to limit the acceptable level of remanent flux. To be able to guarantee the performance of protection IEDs, we need to introduce the following classification of CTs.

There are many different standards and a lot of classes but fundamentally there are four different types of CTs:
The Very High Remanence (VHR) type is a CT with closed iron core (for example, protection classes TPX, P, PX according to IEC, class C, K according to ANSI/IEEE) and with an iron core material (new material, typically new alloy based magnetic materials) that gives a remanent flux higher than 80 % of the saturation flux.

The High Remanence (HR) type is a CT with closed iron core (for example, protection classes TPX, P, PX according to IEC, class C, K according to ANSI/IEEE) but with an iron core material (traditional material) that gives a remanent flux that is limited to maximum 80 % of the saturation flux.

The Low Remanence (LR) type is a CT with small airgaps in the iron core (for example, TPY, PR, PXR according to IEC) and the remanent flux limit is specified to be maximum 10% of the saturation flux.

The Non Remanence (NR) type is a CT with big airgaps in the core (for example, TPZ according to IEC) and the remanent flux can be neglected.

It is also possible that different CT classes of HR and LR type may be mixed.

CT type VHR (using new material) should not be used for protection CT cores. This means that it is important to specify that the remanence factor must not exceed 80 % when ordering for example, class P, PX or TPX CTs. If CT manufacturers are using new core material and are not able to fulfill this requirement, the CTs shall be specified with small airgaps and therefore will be CTs of LR type (for example, class PR, TPY or PXR). Very high remanence level in a protection core CT can cause the following problems for protection IEDs:

1. Unwanted operation of differential (i.e. unit) protections for external faults
2. Unacceptably delayed or even missing operation of all types of protections (for example, distance, differential, overcurrent, etc.) which can result in losing protection selectivity in the network

No information is available about how frequent the use of the new iron core material is for protection CT cores, but it is known that some CT manufacturers are using the new material while other manufacturers continue to use the old traditional core material for protection CT cores. In a case where VHR type CTs have been already installed, the calculated values of $E_{al}$ for HR type CTs, for which the formulas are given in this document, must be multiplied by factor two-and-a-half in order for VHR type CTs (i.e. with new material) to be used together with ABB protection IEDs. However, this may result in unacceptably big CT cores, which can be difficult to manufacture and fit in available space.

Different standards and classes specify the saturation e.m.f. in different ways but it is possible to approximately compare values from different classes. The rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. $E_{al}$ according to the IEC 61869–2 standard is used to specify the CT requirements for the IED. The requirements are also specified according to other standards.

24.1.2 Conditions

The requirements are a result of investigations performed in our network simulator. The current transformer models are representative for current transformers of high remanence and low remanence type. The results may not always be valid for non remanence type CTs (TPZ).

The performances of the protection functions have been checked in the range from symmetrical to fully asymmetrical fault currents. Primary time constants of at least 120 ms
have been considered at the tests. The current requirements below are thus applicable both for symmetrical and asymmetrical fault currents.

Depending on the protection function phase-to-earth, phase-to-phase and three-phase faults have been tested for different relevant fault positions for example, close in forward and reverse faults, zone 1 reach faults, internal and external faults. The dependability and security of the protection was verified by checking for example, time delays, unwanted operations, directionality, overreach and stability.

The remanence in the current transformer core can cause unwanted operations or minor additional time delays for some protection functions. As unwanted operations are not acceptable at all maximum remanence has been considered for fault cases critical for the security, for example, faults in reverse direction and external faults. Because of the almost negligible risk of additional time delays and the non-existent risk of failure to operate the remanence have not been considered for the dependability cases. The requirements below are therefore fully valid for all normal applications.

It is difficult to give general recommendations for additional margins for remanence to avoid the minor risk of an additional time delay. They depend on the performance and economy requirements. When current transformers of low remanence type (for example, TPY, PR) are used, normally no additional margin is needed. For current transformers of high remanence type (for example, P, PX, TPX) the small probability of fully asymmetrical faults, together with high remanence in the same direction as the flux generated by the fault, has to be kept in mind at the decision of an additional margin. Fully asymmetrical fault current will be achieved when the fault occurs at approximately zero voltage (0°). Investigations have shown that 95% of the faults in the network will occur when the voltage is between 40° and 90°. In addition fully asymmetrical fault current will not exist in all phases at the same time.

### 24.1.3 Fault current

The current transformer requirements are based on the maximum fault current for faults in different positions. Maximum fault current will occur for three-phase faults or single phase-to-earth faults. The current for a single phase-to-earth fault will exceed the current for a three-phase fault when the zero sequence impedance in the total fault loop is less than the positive sequence impedance.

When calculating the current transformer requirements, maximum fault current for the relevant fault position should be used and therefore both fault types have to be considered.

### 24.1.4 Secondary wire resistance and additional load

The voltage at the current transformer secondary terminals directly affects the current transformer saturation. This voltage is developed in a loop containing the secondary wires and the burden of all relays in the circuit. For earth faults the loop includes the phase and neutral wire, normally twice the resistance of the single secondary wire. For three-phase faults the neutral current is zero and it is just necessary to consider the resistance up to the point where the phase wires are connected to the common neutral wire. The most common practice is to use four wires secondary cables so it normally is sufficient to consider just a single secondary wire for the three-phase case.

The conclusion is that the loop resistance, twice the resistance of the single secondary wire, must be used in the calculation for phase-to-earth faults and the phase resistance, the resistance of a single secondary wire, may normally be used in the calculation for three-phase faults.

As the burden can be considerable different for three-phase faults and phase-to-earth faults it is important to consider both cases. Even in a case where the phase-to-earth fault current is smaller than the three-phase fault current the phase-to-earth fault can be dimensioning for the CT depending on the higher burden.
In isolated or high impedance earthed systems the phase-to-earth fault is not the dimensioning case. Therefore, the resistance of the single secondary wire can always be used in the calculation for this kind of power systems.

### 24.1.5 General current transformer requirements

The current transformer ratio is mainly selected based on power system data for example, maximum load and/or maximum fault current. It should be verified that the current to the protection is higher than the minimum operating value for all faults that are to be detected with the selected CT ratio. It should also be verified that the maximum possible fault current is within the limits of the IED.

The current error of the current transformer can limit the possibility to use a very sensitive setting of a sensitive residual overcurrent protection. If a very sensitive setting of this function will be used it is recommended that the current transformer should have an accuracy class which have an current error at rated primary current that is less than ±1% (for example, 5P). If current transformers with less accuracy are used it is advisable to check the actual unwanted residual current during the commissioning.

### 24.1.6 Rated equivalent secondary e.m.f. requirements

With regard to saturation of the current transformer all current transformers of high remanence and low remanence type that fulfill the requirements on the rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. $E_{al}$ below can be used. The characteristic of the non remanence type CT (TPZ) is not well defined as far as the phase angle error is concerned. If no explicit recommendation is given for a specific function we therefore recommend contacting ABB to confirm that the non remanence type can be used.

The CT requirements for the different functions below are specified as a rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. $E_{al}$ according to the IEC 61869-2 standard. Requirements for CTs specified according to other classes and standards are given at the end of this section.

#### 24.1.6.1 Breaker failure protection

The CTs must have a rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. $E_{al}$ that is larger than or equal to the required rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. $E_{alreq}$ below:

$$E_{al} \geq E_{alreq} = 5 \cdot I_{op} \cdot \frac{I_{sr}}{I_{pr}} \left( R_{ct} + R_{L} + \frac{S_{R}}{I_{r}^{2}} \right)$$

(Equation 133)

where:

- $I_{op}$: The primary operate value (A)
- $I_{pr}$: The rated primary CT current (A)
- $I_{sr}$: The rated secondary CT current (A)
- $I_{r}$: The rated current of the protection IED (A)
- $R_{ct}$: The secondary resistance of the CT ($\Omega$)
- $R_{L}$: The resistance of the secondary cable and additional load ($\Omega$). The loop resistance containing the phase and neutral wires, must be used for faults in solidly earthed systems. The resistance of a single secondary wire should be used for faults in high impedance earthed systems.
- $S_{R}$: The burden of an IED current input channel (VA). $S_{R}=0.020$ VA/channel for $I_{r}=1$ A and $S_{R}=0.150$ VA/channel for $I_{r}=5$ A
24.1.6.2 Non-directional instantaneous and definitive time, phase and residual overcurrent protection

The CTs must have a rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. \( E_{al} \) that is larger than or equal to the required rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. \( E_{alreq} \) below:

\[
E_{al} \geq E_{alreq} = 1.5 \cdot I_{op} \cdot \frac{I_{sr}}{I_{pr}} \left( R_{ct} + R_{L} + \frac{S_{R}}{I_{r}^{2}} \right)
\]

(Equation 134)

where:
- \( I_{op} \) The primary operate value (A)
- \( I_{pr} \) The rated primary CT current (A)
- \( I_{sr} \) The rated secondary CT current (A)
- \( I_{r} \) The rated current of the protection IED (A)
- \( R_{ct} \) The secondary resistance of the CT (\( \Omega \))
- \( R_{L} \) The resistance of the secondary cable and additional load (\( \Omega \)). The loop resistance containing the phase and neutral wires, must be used for faults in solidly earthed systems. The resistance of a single secondary wire should be used for faults in high impedance earthed systems.
- \( S_{R} \) The burden of an IED current input channel (VA). \( S_{R}=0.020 \text{ VA/channel for } I_{r}=1 \text{ A and } S_{R}=0.150 \text{ VA/channel for } I_{r}=5 \text{ A}.

24.1.6.3 Non-directional inverse time delayed phase and residual overcurrent protection

The requirement according to Equation 135 and Equation 136 does not need to be fulfilled if the high set instantaneous or definitive time stage is used. In this case Equation is the only necessary requirement.

If the inverse time delayed function is the only used overcurrent protection function the CTs must have a rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. \( E_{al} \) that is larger than or equal to the required rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. \( E_{alreq} \) below:

\[
E_{al} \geq E_{alreq} = 20 \cdot I_{op} \cdot \frac{I_{sr}}{I_{pr}} \left( R_{ct} + R_{L} + \frac{S_{R}}{I_{r}^{2}} \right)
\]

(Equation 135)

where:
- \( I_{op} \) The primary current set value of the inverse time function (A)
- \( I_{pr} \) The rated primary CT current (A)
- \( I_{sr} \) The rated secondary CT current (A)
- \( I_{r} \) The rated current of the protection IED (A)

Table continues on next page
The secondary resistance of the CT ($R_{ct}$)

- The resistance of the secondary cable and additional load ($R_L$). The loop resistance containing the phase and neutral wires, must be used for faults in solidly earthed systems. The resistance of a single secondary wire should be used for faults in high impedance earthed systems.

- The burden of an IED current input channel (VA). $S_R=0.020$ VA/channel for $I_r=1$ A and $S_R=0.150$ VA/channel for $I_r=5$ A

Independent of the value of $I_{op}$ the maximum required $E_{al}$ is specified according to the following:

\[
E_{al} \geq E_{alreq} = I_{kmax} \cdot \frac{I_{sr}}{I_{pr}} \left( R_{ct} + R_L + \frac{S_R}{I_r^2} \right)
\]

(Equation 136)

where

- $I_{kmax}$ Maximum primary fundamental frequency current for close-in faults (A)

### 24.1.6.4 Directional phase and residual overcurrent protection

If the directional overcurrent function is used the CTs must have a rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. $E_{al}$ that is larger than or equal to the required rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. $E_{alreq}$ below:

\[
E_{al} \geq E_{alreq} = I_{kmax} \cdot \frac{I_{sr}}{I_{pr}} \left( R_{ct} + R_L + \frac{S_R}{I_r^2} \right)
\]

(Equation 137)

where:

- $I_{kmax}$ Maximum primary fundamental frequency current for close-in forward and reverse faults (A)
- $I_{pr}$ The rated primary CT current (A)
- $I_{sr}$ The rated secondary CT current (A)
- $I_r$ The rated current of the protection IED (A)
- $R_{ct}$ The secondary resistance of the CT ($\Omega$)
- $R_L$ The resistance of the secondary cable and additional load ($\Omega$). The loop resistance containing the phase and neutral wires, must be used for faults in solidly earthed systems. The resistance of a single secondary wire should be used for faults in high impedance earthed systems.
- $S_R$ The burden of an IED current input channel (VA). $S_R=0.020$ VA/channel for $I_r=1$ A and $S_R=0.150$ VA/channel for $I_r=5$ A
24.1.7 Current transformer requirements for CTs according to other standards

All kinds of conventional magnetic core CTs are possible to use with the IEDs if they fulfill the requirements corresponding to the above specified expressed as the rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. $E_{al}$ according to the IEC 61869-2 standard. From different standards and available data for relaying applications it is possible to approximately calculate a secondary e.m.f. of the CT comparable with $E_{al}$. By comparing this with the required rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. $E_{alreq}$ it is possible to judge if the CT fulfills the requirements. The requirements according to some other standards are specified below.

24.1.7.1 Current transformers according to IEC 61869-2, class P, PR

A CT according to IEC 61869-2 is specified by the secondary limiting e.m.f. $E_{ALF}$. The value of the $E_{ALF}$ is approximately equal to the corresponding $E_{al}$. Therefore, the CTs according to class P and PR must have a secondary limiting e.m.f. $E_{ALF}$ that fulfills the following:

$$E_{ALF} > \max E_{alreq}$$

(Equation 138)

24.1.7.2 Current transformers according to IEC 61869-2, class PX, PXR (and old IEC 60044-6, class TPS and old British Standard, class X)

CTs according to these classes are specified approximately in the same way by a rated knee point e.m.f. $E_{knee}$ ($E_{k}$ for class PX and PXR, $E_{kneeBS}$ for class X and the limiting secondary voltage $U_{al}$ for TPS). The value of the $E_{knee}$ is lower than the corresponding $E_{al}$ according to IEC 61869-2. It is not possible to give a general relation between the $E_{knee}$ and the $E_{al}$ but normally the $E_{knee}$ is approximately 80 % of the $E_{al}$. Therefore, the CTs according to class PX, PXR, X and TPS must have a rated knee point e.m.f. $E_{knee}$ that fulfills the following:

$$E_{knee} \approx E_{k} \approx E_{kneeBS} \approx U_{al} > 0.8 \left( \text{maximum of } E_{alreq} \right)$$

(Equation 139)

24.1.7.3 Current transformers according to ANSI/IEEE

Current transformers according to ANSI/IEEE are partly specified in different ways. A rated secondary terminal voltage $U_{ANSI}$ is specified for a CT of class C. $U_{ANSI}$ is the secondary terminal voltage the CT will deliver to a standard burden at 20 times rated secondary current without exceeding 10 % ratio correction. There are a number of standardized $U_{ANSI}$ values for example, $U_{ANSI}$ is 400 V for a C400 CT. A corresponding rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. $E_{alANSI}$ can be estimated as follows:

$$E_{alANSI} = \left| 20 \cdot I_{sr} \cdot R_{ct} + U_{ANSI} \right| = \left| 20 \cdot I_{sr} \cdot R_{ct} + 20 \cdot I_{sr} \cdot Z_{bANSI} \right|$$

(Equation 140)

where:

- $Z_{bANSI}$ The impedance (that is, with a complex quantity) of the standard ANSI burden for the specific C class ($\Omega$)
- $U_{ANSI}$ The secondary terminal voltage for the specific C class (V)
The CTs according to class C must have a calculated rated equivalent limiting secondary e.m.f. \( E_{alANSI} \) that fulfils the following:

\[
E_{alANSI} > \text{maximum of } E_{alreq}
\]

(Equation 141)

A CT according to ANSI/IEEE is also specified by the knee point voltage \( U_{kneeANSI} \) that is graphically defined from an excitation curve. The knee point voltage \( U_{kneeANSI} \) normally has a lower value than the knee-point e.m.f. according to IEC and BS. \( U_{kneeANSI} \) can approximately be estimated to 75% of the corresponding \( E_{al} \) according to IEC 61869-2. Therefore, the CTs according to ANSI/IEEE must have a knee point voltage \( U_{kneeANSI} \) that fulfills the following:

\[
V_{kneeANSI} > 0.75 \cdot (\text{maximum of } E_{alreq})
\]

(Equation 142)

### 24.2 Voltage transformer requirements

The performance of a protection function will depend on the quality of the measured input signal. Transients caused by capacitive voltage transformers (CVTs) can affect some protection functions.

Magnetic or capacitive voltage transformers can be used.

The capacitive voltage transformers (CVTs) should fulfill the requirements according to the IEC 61869-5 standard regarding ferro-resonance and transients. The ferro-resonance requirements of the CVTs are specified in chapter 6.502 of the standard.

The transient responses for three different standard transient response classes, T1, T2 and T3 are specified in chapter 6.503 of the standard. CVTs according to all classes can be used.

The protection IED has effective filters for these transients, which gives secure and correct operation with CVTs.

### 24.3 SNTP server requirements

The SNTP server to be used is connected to the local network, that is not more than 4-5 switches or routers away from the IED. The SNTP server is dedicated for its task, or at least equipped with a real-time operating system, that is not a PC with SNTP server software. The SNTP server should be stable, that is, either synchronized from a stable source like GPS, or local without synchronization. Using a local SNTP server without synchronization as primary or secondary server in a redundant configuration is not recommended.

### 24.4 PTP requirements

For PTP to perform properly, the Ethernet equipment that is used needs to be compliant with IEEE1588. The clocks used must follow the IEEE1588 standard BMC (Best Master Algorithm) and shall, for instance, not claim class 7 for a longer time than it can guarantee 1us absolute accuracy.
24.5 Sample specification of communication requirements for the protection and control terminals in digital telecommunication networks

The communication requirements are based on echo timing.

**Bit Error Rate (BER) according to ITU-T G.821, G.826 and G.828**

- $<10^{-6}$ according to the standard for data and voice transfer

**Bit Error Rate (BER) for high availability of the differential protection**

- $<10^{-8}$ to $10^{-9}$ during normal operation
- $<10^{-6}$ during disturbed operation

During disturbed conditions, the trip security function can cope with high bit error rates up to $10^{-5}$ or even up to $10^{-4}$. The trip security can be configured to be independent of COMFAIL from the differential protection communication supervision, or blocked when COMFAIL is issued after receive error $>100$ms. (Default).

**Synchronization in SDH systems with G.703 E1 or IEEE C37.94**

The G.703 E1, 2 Mbit shall be set according to ITU-T G.803, G.810-13

- One master clock for the actual network
- The actual port Synchronized to the SDH system clock at 2048 kbit
- Synchronization; bit synchronized, synchronized mapping
- Maximum clock deviation $<\pm 50$ ppm nominal, $<\pm 100$ ppm operational
- Jitter and Wander according to ITU-T G.823 and G.825
- Buffer memory $<250$ μs, $<100$ μs asymmetric difference
- Format G.704 frame, structured etc.Format.
- No CRC-check

**Synchronization in PDH systems connected to SDH systems**

- Independent synchronization, asynchronous mapping
- The actual SDH port must be set to allow transmission of the master clock from the PDH-system via the SDH-system in transparent mode.
- Maximum clock deviation $<\pm 50$ ppm nominal, $<\pm 100$ ppm operational
- Jitter and Wander according to ITU-T G.823 and G.825
- Buffer memory $<100$ μs
- Format: Transparent
- Maximum channel delay
- Loop time $<40$ ms continuous (2 x 20 ms)

**IED with echo synchronization of differential clock (without GPS clock)**

- Both channels must have the same route with maximum asymmetry of 0.2-0.5 ms, depending on set sensitivity of the differential protection.
- A fixed asymmetry can be compensated (setting of asymmetric delay in built in HMI or the parameter setting tool PST).

**IED with GPS clock**

- Independent of asymmetry.
24.6 IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE Merging unit requirements

The merging units that supply the IED with measured values via the process bus must fulfill the IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE standard.

This part of the IEC 61850 is specifying “Communication Service Mapping (SCSM) – Sampled values over ISO/IEC 8802”, in other words – sampled data over Ethernet. The 9-2 part of the IEC 61850 protocol uses also definitions from 7-2, “Basic communication structure for substation and feeder equipment – Abstract communication service interface (ACSI)”. The set of functionality implemented in the IED (IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE) is a subset of the IEC 61850-9-2. For example the IED covers the client part of the standard, not the server part.

The standard does not define the sample rate for data, but in the UCA users group recommendations there are indicated sample rates that are adopted, by consensus, in the industry.

There are two sample rates defined: 80 samples/cycle (4000 samples/sec. at 50Hz or 4800 samples/sec. at 60 Hz) for a merging unit “type1” and 256 samples/cycle for a merging unit “type2”. The IED can receive data rates of 80 samples/cycle.

Note that the IEC/UCA 61850-9-2LE standard does not specify the quality of the sampled values, only the transportation. Thus, the accuracy of the current and voltage inputs to the merging unit and the inaccuracy added by the merging unit must be coordinated with the requirement for actual type of protection function.

Factors influencing the accuracy of the sampled values from the merging unit are for example anti aliasing filters, frequency range, step response, truncating, A/D conversion inaccuracy, time tagging accuracy etc.

In principle the accuracy of the current and voltage transformers, together with the merging unit, shall have the same quality as direct input of currents and voltages.
## Section 25  Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AC</td>
<td>Alternating current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>Actual channel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACT</td>
<td>Application configuration tool within PCM600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A/D converter</td>
<td>Analog-to-digital converter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADBS</td>
<td>Amplitude deadband supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADM</td>
<td>Analog digital conversion module, with time synchronization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AI</td>
<td>Analog input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANSI</td>
<td>American National Standards Institute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Autoreclosing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASCT</td>
<td>Auxiliary summation current transformer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASD</td>
<td>Adaptive signal detection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASDU</td>
<td>Application service data unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWG</td>
<td>American Wire Gauge standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BBP</td>
<td>Busbar protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFOC/2,5</td>
<td>Bayonet fiber optic connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BFP</td>
<td>Breaker failure protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BI</td>
<td>Binary input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIM</td>
<td>Binary input module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOM</td>
<td>Binary output module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOS</td>
<td>Binary outputs status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BR</td>
<td>External bistable relay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS</td>
<td>British Standards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BSR</td>
<td>Binary signal transfer function, receiver blocks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BST</td>
<td>Binary signal transfer function, transmit blocks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C37.94</td>
<td>IEEE/ANSI protocol used when sending binary signals between IEDs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAN</td>
<td>Controller Area Network. ISO standard (ISO 11898) for serial communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CB</td>
<td>Circuit breaker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBM</td>
<td>Combined backplane module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCM</td>
<td>CAN carrier module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCVT</td>
<td>Capacitive Coupled Voltage Transformer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class C</td>
<td>Protection Current Transformer class as per IEEE/ ANSI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMPPS</td>
<td>Combined megapulses per second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMT</td>
<td>Communication Management tool in PCM600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CO cycle</strong></td>
<td>Close-open cycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Codirectional</strong></td>
<td>Way of transmitting G.703 over a balanced line. Involves two twisted pairs making it possible to transmit information in both directions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COM</strong></td>
<td>Command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMTRADE</strong></td>
<td>Standard Common Format for Transient Data Exchange format for Disturbance recorder according to IEEE/ANSI C37.111, 1999 / IEC 60255-24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Contra-directional</strong></td>
<td>Way of transmitting G.703 over a balanced line. Involves four twisted pairs, two of which are used for transmitting data in both directions and two for transmitting clock signals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COT</strong></td>
<td>Cause of transmission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CPU</strong></td>
<td>Central processing unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CR</strong></td>
<td>Carrier receive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CRC</strong></td>
<td>Cyclic redundancy check</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CROB</strong></td>
<td>Control relay output block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CS</strong></td>
<td>Carrier send</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CT</strong></td>
<td>Current transformer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CU</strong></td>
<td>Communication unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CVT or CCVT</strong></td>
<td>Capacitive voltage transformer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DAR</strong></td>
<td>Delayed autoreclosing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DARPA</strong></td>
<td>Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (The US developer of the TCP/IP protocol etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DBDL</strong></td>
<td>Dead bus dead line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DBLL</strong></td>
<td>Dead bus live line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DC</strong></td>
<td>Direct current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DFC</strong></td>
<td>Data flow control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DFT</strong></td>
<td>Discrete Fourier transform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DHCP</strong></td>
<td>Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DIP-switch</strong></td>
<td>Small switch mounted on a printed circuit board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DI</strong></td>
<td>Digital input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DLLB</strong></td>
<td>Dead line live bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DNP</strong></td>
<td>Distributed Network Protocol as per IEEE Std 1815-2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DR</strong></td>
<td>Disturbance recorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DRAM</strong></td>
<td>Dynamic random access memory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DRH</strong></td>
<td>Disturbance report handler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DSP</strong></td>
<td>Digital signal processor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DTT</strong></td>
<td>Direct transfer trip scheme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ECT</strong></td>
<td>Ethernet configuration tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EHV network</strong></td>
<td>Extra high voltage network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EIA</strong></td>
<td>Electronic Industries Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EMC</strong></td>
<td>Electromagnetic compatibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EMF</strong></td>
<td>Electromotive force</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMI</td>
<td>Electromagnetic interference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EnFP</td>
<td>End fault protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPA</td>
<td>Enhanced performance architecture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESD</td>
<td>Electrostatic discharge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F-SMA</td>
<td>Type of optical fiber connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAN</td>
<td>Fault number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCB</td>
<td>Flow control bit; Frame count bit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOX 20</td>
<td>Modular 20 channel telecommunication system for speech, data and protection signals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOX 512/515</td>
<td>Access multiplexer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOX 6Plus</td>
<td>Compact time-division multiplexer for the transmission of up to seven duplex channels of digital data over optical fibers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FPN</td>
<td>Flexible product naming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTP</td>
<td>File Transfer Protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUN</td>
<td>Function type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.703</td>
<td>Electrical and functional description for digital lines used by local telephone companies. Can be transported over balanced and unbalanced lines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GCM</td>
<td>Communication interface module with carrier of GPS receiver module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDE</td>
<td>Graphical display editor within PCM600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GI</td>
<td>General interrogation command</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GIS</td>
<td>Gas-insulated switchgear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOOSE</td>
<td>Generic object-oriented substation event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPS</td>
<td>Global positioning system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSAL</td>
<td>Generic security application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSE</td>
<td>Generic substation event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDLC protocol</td>
<td>High-level data link control, protocol based on the HDLC standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HFBR connector type</td>
<td>Plastic fiber connector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLV circuit</td>
<td>Hazardous Live Voltage according to IEC60255-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HMI</td>
<td>Human-machine interface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSAR</td>
<td>High speed autoreclosing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSR</td>
<td>High-availability Seamless Redundancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HV</td>
<td>High-voltage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HVDC</td>
<td>High-voltage direct current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDBS</td>
<td>Integrating deadband supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC</td>
<td>International Electrical Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC 60044-6</td>
<td>IEC Standard, Instrument transformers – Part 6: Requirements for protective current transformers for transient performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC 60870-5-103</td>
<td>Communication standard for protection equipment. A serial master/slave protocol for point-to-point communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC 61850</td>
<td>Substation automation communication standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IEC 61850–8–1</td>
<td>Communication protocol standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IEEE</strong></td>
<td>Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IEEE 802.12</strong></td>
<td>A network technology standard that provides 100 Mbits/s on twisted-pair or optical fiber cable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IEEE P1386.1</strong></td>
<td>PCI Mezzanine Card (PMC) standard for local bus modules. References the CMC (IEEE P1386, also known as Common Mezzanine Card) standard for the mechanics and the PCI specifications from the PCI SIG (Special Interest Group) for the electrical EMF (Electromotive force).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IEEE 1686</strong></td>
<td>Standard for Substation Intelligent Electronic Devices (IEDs) Cyber Security Capabilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IED</strong></td>
<td>Intelligent electronic device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IET600</strong></td>
<td>Integrated engineering tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I-GIS</strong></td>
<td>Intelligent gas-insulated switchgear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IOM</strong></td>
<td>Binary input/output module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Instance</strong></td>
<td>When several occurrences of the same function are available in the IED, they are referred to as instances of that function. One instance of a function is identical to another of the same kind but has a different number in the IED user interfaces. The word “instance” is sometimes defined as an item of information that is representative of a type. In the same way an instance of a function in the IED is representative of a type of function.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IP</strong></td>
<td>1. Internet protocol. The network layer for the TCP/IP protocol suite widely used on Ethernet networks. IP is a connectionless, best-effort packet-switching protocol. It provides packet routing, fragmentation and reassembly through the data link layer. 2. Ingression protection, according to IEC 60529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IP 20</strong></td>
<td>Ingression protection, according to IEC 60529, level 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IP 40</strong></td>
<td>Ingression protection, according to IEC 60529, level 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IP 54</strong></td>
<td>Ingression protection, according to IEC 60529, level 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IRF</strong></td>
<td>Internal failure signal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IRIG-B:</strong></td>
<td>InterRange Instrumentation Group Time code format B, standard 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ITU</strong></td>
<td>International Telecommunications Union</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LAN</strong></td>
<td>Local area network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LIB 520</strong></td>
<td>High-voltage software module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LCD</strong></td>
<td>Liquid crystal display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LDCM</strong></td>
<td>Line data communication module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LDD</strong></td>
<td>Local detection device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LED</strong></td>
<td>Light-emitting diode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LNT</strong></td>
<td>LON network tool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LON</strong></td>
<td>Local operating network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MCB</strong></td>
<td>Miniature circuit breaker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MCM</strong></td>
<td>Mezzanine carrier module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MIM</strong></td>
<td>Milli-ampere module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MPM</strong></td>
<td>Main processing module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MVAL</strong></td>
<td>Value of measurement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MVB</strong></td>
<td>Multifunction vehicle bus. Standardized serial bus originally developed for use in trains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCC</td>
<td>National Control Centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOF</td>
<td>Number of grid faults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NUM</td>
<td>Numerical module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCO cycle</td>
<td>Open-close-open cycle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCP</td>
<td>Overcurrent protection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OEM</td>
<td>Optical Ethernet module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OLTC</td>
<td>On-load tap changer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTEV</td>
<td>Disturbance data recording initiated by other event than start/pick-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OV</td>
<td>Overvoltage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overreach</td>
<td>A term used to describe how the relay behaves during a fault condition. For example, a distance relay is overreaching when the impedance presented to it is smaller than the apparent impedance to the fault applied to the balance point, that is, the set reach. The relay “sees” the fault but perhaps it should not have seen it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCI</td>
<td>Peripheral component interconnect, a local data bus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCM</td>
<td>Pulse code modulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCM600</td>
<td>Protection and control IED manager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC-MIP</td>
<td>Mezzanine card standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PELV circuit</td>
<td>Protected Extra-Low Voltage circuit type according to IEC60255-27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMC</td>
<td>PCI Mezzanine card</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POR</td>
<td>Permissive overreach</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POTT</td>
<td>Permissive overreach transfer trip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process bus</td>
<td>Bus or LAN used at the process level, that is, in near proximity to the measured and/or controlled components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRP</td>
<td>Parallel redundancy protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSM</td>
<td>Power supply module</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PST</td>
<td>Parameter setting tool within PCM600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTP</td>
<td>Precision time protocol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PT ratio</td>
<td>Potential transformer or voltage transformer ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTTT</td>
<td>Permissive underreach transfer trip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RASC</td>
<td>Synchrocheck relay, COMBIFLEX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCA</td>
<td>Relay characteristic angle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RISC</td>
<td>Reduced instruction set computer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMS value</td>
<td>Root mean square value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RS422</td>
<td>A balanced serial interface for the transmission of digital data in point-to-point connections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RS485</td>
<td>Serial link according to EIA standard RS485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTC</td>
<td>Real-time clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTU</td>
<td>Remote terminal unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA</td>
<td>Substation Automation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBO</td>
<td>Select-before-operate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC</td>
<td>Switch or push button to close</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SCL  Short circuit location
SCS  Station control system
SCADA  Supervision, control and data acquisition
SCT  System configuration tool according to standard IEC 61850
SDU  Service data unit
SELV circuit  Safety Extra-Low Voltage circuit type according to IEC60255-27
SFP  Small form-factor pluggable (abbreviation)
      Optical Ethernet port (explanation)
SLM  Serial communication module.
SMA connector  Subminiature version A, A threaded connector with constant impedance.
SMT  Signal matrix tool within PCM600
SMS  Station monitoring system
SNTP  Simple network time protocol – is used to synchronize computer clocks on local area networks. This reduces the requirement to have accurate hardware clocks in every embedded system in a network. Each embedded node can instead synchronize with a remote clock, providing the required accuracy.
SOF  Status of fault
SPA  Strömberg Protection Acquisition (SPA), a serial master/slave protocol for point-to-point and ring communication.
SRY  Switch for CB ready condition
ST  Switch or push button to trip
Starpoint  Neutral point of transformer or generator
SVC  Static VAr compensation
TC  Trip coil
TCS  Trip circuit supervision
TCP  Transmission control protocol. The most common transport layer protocol used on Ethernet and the Internet.
TCP/IP  Transmission control protocol over Internet Protocol. The de facto standard Ethernet protocols incorporated into 4.2BSD Unix. TCP/IP was developed by DARPA for Internet working and encompasses both network layer and transport layer protocols. While TCP and IP specify two protocols at specific protocol layers, TCP/IP is often used to refer to the entire US Department of Defense protocol suite based upon these, including Telnet, FTP, UDP and RDP.
TEF  Time delayed earth-fault protection function
TLS  Transport Layer Security
TM  Transmit (disturbance data)
TNC connector  Threaded Neill-Concelman, a threaded constant impedance version of a BNC connector
TP  Trip (recorded fault)
TPZ, TPY, TPX, TPS  Current transformer class according to IEC
Transformer Module. This module transforms currents and voltages taken from the process into levels suitable for further signal processing.

Type identification

User management tool

Underreach
A term used to describe how the relay behaves during a fault condition. For example, a distance relay is underreaching when the impedance presented to it is greater than the apparent impedance to the fault applied to the balance point, that is, the set reach. The relay does not “see” the fault but perhaps it should have seen it. See also Overreach.

Coordinated Universal Time. A coordinated time scale, maintained by the Bureau International des Poids et Mesures (BIPM), which forms the basis of a coordinated dissemination of standard frequencies and time signals. UTC is derived from International Atomic Time (TAI) by the addition of a whole number of “leap seconds” to synchronize it with Universal Time 1 (UT1), thus allowing for the eccentricity of the Earth’s orbit, the rotational axis tilt (23.5 degrees), but still showing the Earth’s irregular rotation, on which UT1 is based. The Coordinated Universal Time is expressed using a 24-hour clock, and uses the Gregorian calendar. It is used for aeroplane and ship navigation, where it is also sometimes known by the military name, “Zulu time.” “Zulu” in the phonetic alphabet stands for “Z”, which stands for longitude zero.

Undervoltage

Weak end infeed logic

Voltage transformer

A digital signalling interface primarily used for telecom equipment

Three times zero-sequence current. Often referred to as the residual or the earth-fault current

Three times the zero sequence voltage. Often referred to as the residual voltage or the neutral point voltage